

# FIVE YEARS' WORK IN LIBRARIANSHIP

1951-1955

EDITED FOR  
THE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION

BY

P. H. SEWELL, F.L.A.

*Head of Department of Librarianship  
North-Western Polytechnic, London*

THE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION  
CHAUCER HOUSE, MALET PLACE  
LONDON

1958

53811

Downloaded from www.dbralibrary.org.in

Downloaded from [www.dbraulibrary.org.in](http://www.dbraulibrary.org.in)

PRINTED AND BOUND IN GREAT BRITAIN BY  
THE GARDEN CITY PRESS LIMITED  
LETCHWORTH, HERTFORDSHIRE

## CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	vii
SECTION I: NATIONAL AND ACADEMIC LIBRARIES	
1. INTRODUCTION, <i>by</i> KENNETH GARSIDE, M.A. . . . .	3
2. NATIONAL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> F. J. HILL, M.A., F.L.A. . . . .	6
3. UNIVERSITY AND COLLEGE LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> KENNETH GARSIDE, M.A. . . . .	19
4. TECHNICAL COLLEGE LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> G. H. WRIGHT, A.L.A. . . . .	40
5. THE LIBRARIES OF THE INSTITUTES OF EDUCATION, <i>by</i> MISS G. S. M. DE MONTMORENCY, F.L.A. . . . .	51
6. MEDICAL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> C. F. A. MARMOY, F.L.A. . . . .	55
SECTION II: SPECIAL LIBRARIES	
7. INDUSTRIAL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> W. D. PIGOTT, F.L.A. . . . .	75
8. GOVERNMENT LIBRARIES IN BRITAIN, <i>by</i> A. E. FOUNTAIN, B.A., F.L.A., <i>and</i> D. W. KING, F.L.A. . . . .	87
9. THE LIBRARIES OF LEARNED SOCIETIES AND PROFESSIONAL BODIES, <i>by</i> K. D. C. VERNON, F.L.A. . . . .	94
10. MUSIC LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> L. W. DUCK, A.L.A. . . . .	99
SECTION III: PUBLIC LIBRARIES	
11. URBAN LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> O. S. TOMLINSON, F.L.A. . . . .	107
12. PUBLIC LIBRARY COMMERCIAL AND TECHNICAL DEPARTMENTS, <i>by</i> K. J. RIDER, A.L.A. . . . .	135
13. COUNTY AND RURAL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> H. D. BUDGE, F.L.A. . . . .	147
SECTION IV: YOUNG PEOPLE'S LIBRARIES	
14. SCHOOL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> C. H. C. OSBORNE, M.A. . . . .	169
15. CHILDREN'S LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> EILEEN H. COLWELL, F.L.A. . . . .	174

## SECTION V: LIBRARY PRACTICE

16.	GENERAL LIBRARY ADMINISTRATION: SOME CURRENT TOPICS, <i>by</i> P. J. COX, F.L.A.	181
17.	BOOK SELECTION, <i>by</i> R. C. BENGE, F.L.A.	187
18.	CATALOGUING, <i>by</i> MARY PIGCOTT, B.A., F.L.A.	195
19.	CLASSIFICATION, <i>by</i> J. MILLS, F.L.A.	216
20.	REFERENCE SERVICE, <i>by</i> HAROLD SMITH, F.L.A.	245

## SECTION VI: MISCELLANEOUS

21.	LIBRARY CO-OPERATION: (1) LIBRARY CO-OPERATION IN THE UNITED KINGDOM, <i>by</i> M. C. POTTINGER, D.S.C., F.L.A.	255
	(2) LIBRARY CO-OPERATION OVERSEAS, <i>by</i> THE EDITOR	263
22.	EDUCATION FOR LIBRARIANSHIP, <i>by</i> ROY STOKES, F.L.A.	268
23.	LIBRARY BUILDINGS, <i>by</i> ANTHONY THOMPSON, M.A., F.L.A.	278
24.	CONTEMPORARY BOOK PRODUCTION, <i>by</i> J. D. REYNOLDS, F.L.A.	292
25.	HISTORICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY, <i>by</i> I. R. WILLISON, M.A., A.L.A.	300
26.	BIBLIOGRAPHICAL ORGANIZATION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIES, <i>by</i> A. J. WALFORD, M.A., PH.D., F.L.A.	319
27.	ARCHIVES, 1948-1955, <i>Edited by</i> ROGER ELLIS, M.A., F.S.A., F.R.HIST.S.	343
28.	DOCUMENTARY REPRODUCTION, <i>by</i> GRAHAM JONES, M.A., F.L.A.	395
	LIBRARY AND BIBLIOGRAPHICAL PERIODICALS REGULARLY COVERED BY LIBRARY SCIENCE ABSTRACTS AND ANY ABBREVIATIONS USED	403
	INDEX	409

## INTRODUCTION

WHEN *Library science abstracts* began its valuable service in 1951 it was decided that the Library Association's annual guide to progress in the field of librarianship, *The year's work in librarianship*, was no longer necessary. In 1953, however, it was agreed that there was a place for a publication which would draw attention to major trends, developments and publications over a period. So the idea of a quinquennial survey was born. *Five years' work*, like the *Year's work*, concerns itself primarily with developments in Britain and secondarily with developments abroad, especially those whose importance is such that they have influenced, or should influence, British practice.

Contributors to the present volume have more opportunity to assess and discover new directions in development than did their predecessors. They have at the same time the disadvantage of having to deal with a large mass of material from which they must select with care, and which they must summarize succinctly and accurately. To assist this process it seemed desirable to divide certain topics into their main constituents, so that an expert could sum up developments in his own area of expertise. So National and University Libraries are now dealt with in five groups, Special Libraries in four groups and a separate chapter is devoted to Public Library commercial and technical departments. Topics of Book-Selection, Reference Service and Documentary Reproduction are also considered independently.

In some cases groups of libraries have been dealt with separately because they have made rapid progress during the five years, e.g., Government, Technical College, Institute of Education and Music Libraries. The section on Archives also deserves some comment since it constitutes a formidable proportion of the whole work. This generous allocation of space seemed justified because of the recent rapid growth in importance of archive work and because many of the developments in this field—particularly in the Commonwealth—have so far been unrecorded.

It will be observed that some chapters include material published in 1956. Since the value of the survey depends partly on its topicality, it was decided to assemble contributions as rapidly as possible without putting too fine a point on period of coverage.

References have been collected at the end of each chapter and headings inserted so that they serve, to some extent, as select reading lists on their subject—although not in every case are author and title repeated. The style of periodical references, including the abbreviations for periodicals, follows in the main that of *Library science abstracts*, except that authors precede titles and a statement of month or season is omitted if an issue number is given. References to books follow styles described in British Standard (B.S. 1629 : 1950) *Bibliographical references*.

A survey of this type could easily become a dreary string of references connected by conventional phrases. That most chapters retain a highly individual flavour and that some are written from a defined point of view will, I think, add to the book's usefulness as well as to the pleasure it gives. As a mere amateur in such matters I found a particular pleasure in reading, for example, the chapters on Classification and Historical Bibliography.

The problem of overlapping between chapters on types of libraries and those on specific topics has been less than I anticipated and the index aims to reveal when a subject is dealt with from different standpoints. It is a matter of particular regret that the proposed chapters on "Library Professional Associations and Related Bodies" and on "Palaeography and Manuscripts" were not completed in time to permit their inclusion.

May I express the hope that this survey of what has been accomplished in librarianship in the years 1951-55 may serve to give an added impetus to progress in ensuing years. My last word must be one of sincere thanks to a most friendly and helpful band of contributors, to my good friend Mr. F. J. Cornell, Publications Officer of the Library Association, and to Joan Sewell for finding time to do an inordinate amount of typing.

P. H. SEWELL

Downloaded from www.dbraulibrarij.org

**Section I**

**National and Academic Libraries**

Downloaded from [www.dbraulibrary.org.in](http://www.dbraulibrary.org.in)

## Chapter 1

### INTRODUCTION

By KENNETH GARSIDE, M.A., *Deputy Librarian, University College, London*

IT is perhaps not too outrageous, in surveying the work done in librarianship during the second quinquennium after a major war, to borrow military terminology and to describe it as the phase of exploitation following that of consolidation. For consolidation was certainly the keynote of the years 1946-50, when librarians were taking stock of their position in a changed world and attempting to make up the ground lost through their countries' isolation from the literary output of their recently hostile neighbours, and when those libraries which had themselves become war casualties were making valiant efforts to restore their services. Only during the next five years, 1951-55, did it become realistic to look ahead and engage in those developments most calculated to improve the services which could be rendered by scholarly libraries both at home and abroad.

In the United Kingdom the development in this field most likely to bear fruit in years to come has most certainly been the inauguration in September 1950 of the Standing Conference of National and University Libraries (SCONUL). This body, representative of libraries rather than individual librarians, has as its avowed object the promotion of the work of the national and university libraries, and its founders believed that it would usefully provide opportunities for the discussion of matters of particular concern to these libraries by those responsible for their administration, and also represent their views to outside bodies more accurately and with more weight than could existing organizations. That SCONUL is fulfilling these functions there can be little doubt, despite the fact that the outside world hears little of its deliberations, the very value of which lies in the fact that they take the form of frank exchanges of views by senior librarians *in camera*. Its discussions, whether in general session or in sub-committee, have ranged widely over the fields of national and university library organization and administration and those aspects of bibliography of particular importance for research (<sup>1</sup>). SCONUL has already spoken with authority for the scholarly libraries of the country, and those concerned with the work of these libraries can only regret the circumstances which led to its foundation, for during the immediate post-war years the effectiveness of the Library Association as a mouthpiece for the learned libraries was impaired by the fact that its policies were governed largely by its vast personal membership, mostly engaged in the public library service and therefore often unaware of the special problems of the libraries represented by the new body. SCONUL has always asserted, however, that its activities should in no way conflict with those of existing organizations, and the University and Research Section of the Library Association has continued to be regarded as the forum for general discussions on topics in this field.

In most countries, including our own, there is a clear distinction between the national libraries on the one hand and the university libraries on the other. In the Germanic lands, however, university libraries are often also state libraries, deriving their funds from the national or provincial exchequer and owing their loyalties to the community at large as much as to their particular university. Certain implications of this dichotomy are discussed later, but its very existence makes it desirable to mention here, before proceeding to discuss activities peculiar to either category of library, general developments which have been observed in the German *wissenschaftliche Bibliotheken* during the period under review. Georg Leyh has sketched their historical background<sup>(2)</sup>, whilst both he<sup>(3)</sup> and Frederick W. J. Heuser<sup>(4)</sup> have, from different points of view, surveyed their postwar state and assessed their immediate needs. The situation in which the German research libraries found themselves at the end of the war has given birth to one of the boldest schemes of co-operation that can ever have been devised: in Western Germany the *Notgemeinschaft der Deutschen Wissenschaft*, now renamed *Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*, motivated both by the urgent need for a full coverage of the foreign publications required for research and also by the reduced financial resources of individual libraries, embarked upon a vast programme for the provision of foreign periodicals, a minimum number of titles of wide subject scope going to each general library, and other titles of specialised interest going to particular libraries designated as appropriate repositories for the particular subjects by agreement between the librarians themselves. Detailed progress reports on this scheme have appeared in the West German professional journals and in the annual reports of the *Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* itself<sup>(5)</sup>, whilst this and other schemes for co-operation between the research libraries of Western Germany have been surveyed for English readers by R. Juchhoff<sup>(6)</sup>. Parallel developments in East Germany, especially with regard to the co-operative acquisition of Eastern European material, have been the subject of a report by O. Tyszko<sup>(7)</sup>, whilst Werner Mecklenburg<sup>(8)</sup> has analysed the trend for scientists to use specialized libraries rather than general research libraries, which, he suggests, have a new mission in the Communist state.

The similar dichotomous character of Austrian research libraries has been described by Hugo Alker<sup>(9)</sup>, whose account of the war damage suffered by Austrian libraries was supplemented by a detailed survey by Josef Stummvoll and Karl Kammel<sup>(10)</sup> of their losses and plans for reconstruction.

In Scandinavia this characteristic is less sharply defined, but even there the literature of librarianship often of necessity covers both national and university libraries: Wilhelm Munthe<sup>(11)</sup> has traced half a century's development of Scandinavian, and particularly Norwegian, research libraries; Knud Larsen<sup>(12)</sup> has surveyed co-operation between the research libraries of Copenhagen; and U. Willers<sup>(13)</sup>, examining the problems of Swedish learned libraries at the end of the period under review, has recorded that several libraries in Stockholm are considering setting up a depository north of the city, and reveals that an intra-Scandinavian plan for a co-operative acquisitions policy is being discussed.

## REFERENCES

1. HUMPHREYS, K. W. The Standing Conference of National and University Libraries. *Libri* 7 (1) 1956, 41-44.
2. LEYH, GEORG. Zur Vorgeschichte der modernen wissenschaftlichen Bibliothek in Deutschland. *Ibid.* 4 (3) 1954, 193-202.
3. LEYH, GEORG. Katastrophe und Wiederaufbau der deutschen Bibliotheken. *Ibid.* 1 (3) 1951, 219-238.
4. HEUSER, FREDERICK W. J. German university and technical libraries: their organization, condition, activities and needs. New York: HICOG Education and Cultural Relations Division, Information Centers Branch, Museums, Fine Arts and Libraries Section, April 1951. ff. [ii], 54. [Mimeographed.]
5. Bericht der Deutschen Forschungsgemeinschaft. Bad Godesberg. [Annual.]
6. JUCHHOFF, R. The present state of library co-operation in Germany. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (11) 1954, 423-427.
7. TYSZKO, O. Bericht der Bibliothekskommission für Erwerbungsfragen. *Z. f. B.* 68 (3-4) 1954, 122-128.
8. MECKLENBURG, WERNER. Die derzeitigen Aufgaben der allgemeinen wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken. *Ibid.* 67 (9-10) 1953, 329-342.
9. ALKER, HUGO. Libraries and librarianship in Austria today. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (3) 1951, 38-43.
10. STUMMVOLL, JOSEF and KAMMEL, KARL. Die wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken in Österreich 1945-51. *Biblos* 1 (1) 1952, 8-15.
11. MUNTHE, WILHELM. Storbibliotekenes administrasjonsproblemer. *Nord. Tid.* 40 (3) 1953, 105-114.
12. LARSEN, KNUD. Co-operation between the research libraries of Copenhagen. *J. of Doc.* 7 (2) 1951, 83-91.
13. WILLERS, U. De verenskapelige biblioteken 1954-1955. *Biblioteksbladet* 40 (6) 1955, 285-290.

Downloaded from www.dlibra.org.pl

## Chapter 2

### NATIONAL LIBRARIES

By F. J. HILL, M.A., F.L.A., *Dept. of Printed Books, The British Museum*

**G**ENERAL SURVEY. The period under review has been one of great activity for the majority of national libraries. Many had suffered during the war years: buildings were reduced to ruins, collections perished or were dispersed, and staff, materials and money were lacking for the provision of an adequate response to demands which grew constantly more pressing amid the activities of world-wide conflict. Again, in the period immediately following, other needs more urgent than those of libraries had to be met. During the last five years, however, the work of reconstruction has progressed well. Damaged buildings have been repaired and new ones planned; books previously unobtainable have been purchased, and replacements sought for those destroyed; historic foundations have been reorganized, and new libraries have come into being.

The year 1953 marked the bicentenary of the foundation of the British Museum and the centenary of that of the National Library at Lima, each suitably commemorated, and also the birth of the Canadian National Library. Extensions to their buildings, long projected and urgently needed, have been brought to completion at Edinburgh and Aberystwyth, and the work of reconstruction at the British Museum and the Bibliothèque Nationale, delayed by the war, has made good progress. The older libraries have continued, as far as their resources allow, to adapt methods and develop collections in order to meet modern needs. Reports on work during the period under review, contributed by representatives of many national libraries and edited by David C. Mcarns, appeared in July 1955, under the title *Current trends in national libraries* (1).

The generous financial provision enjoyed by the Library of Congress and its great resources of staff, accommodation and equipment have made possible a tremendous expansion of its services during the present century, and it is natural that it should provide a model for some of the new national libraries, among them those of Turkey (1948), Burma (1952) and Canada (1953). In 1947 American consultants visited Tokyo to assist in the organization of the National Diet Library and in 1955 Unesco appointed an expert to advise in the establishment of the National Library of Burma. The development of a similar institution for Pakistan is taking place under the supervision of the Deputy National Librarian of Australia, who has been seconded for the purpose. As the first stage in this undertaking, a national bibliographical centre has been set up at Karachi, which is to devote particular attention to the need in Pakistan for a bibliographical service for science and industry. The foundation stone of a new national library for Algeria was laid in Algiers on April 20, 1954.

The need for a national library in New Zealand has been urged by the New Zealand Library Association, the President of which, in a letter to the Prime Minister, pointed out that the elements of such an institution already exist in the stock and services of two Wellington Libraries, that of the General Assembly and the Alexander Turnbull Library, together with the National Library Service. The most pressing need is for a building in which these collections may be brought together under safe and satisfactory conditions, and the necessary services carried out efficiently, and where the Dominion Archives may be housed.

Some of the smaller national libraries, having to combine with their other functions those of a municipal lending library, report difficulty in providing satisfactory service with limited funds. In Cape Town the South African Public Library found the time of its staff too much occupied in this way, although by 1953 a separate city library service had begun to function. The Librarian has expressed the hope that the Library may be merged with the Library of Parliament, and the new institution enabled to meet adequately the demands made on it<sup>(2)</sup>. In Lima the existence in the National Library of a flourishing juvenile department with its own story hour, cinema shows and football team has become an embarrassment to the authorities through its very success. The wear to books resulting from local lending at Lima has caused anxiety, and where possible duplicate copies are being provided, so that those received by legal deposit may be preserved in good condition for future use. At Canberra a municipal lending service is adequately housed and staffed as part of the activities of the Commonwealth National Library, and functions without difficulty.

In 1952 three men well known in the sphere of national libraries died: Sir Frederic Kenyon, from 1909-30 Director and Principal Librarian of the British Museum, Dr. Josef Bick, Director of the Austrian National Library from 1923-49, and Sir William Llewellyn Davies, who succeeded Sir John Ballinger in 1930 to become second Librarian of the National Library of Wales, and held this post until his death. Kenyon, after facing the difficulties of the first world war, was still in office when the preliminary steps were taken for the reconstruction of much of the library accommodation at the Museum and for the publication of a new edition of the General Catalogue of Printed Books. Similarly in Vienna under Bick new stacks were constructed and new catalogues begun, and he also improved the service to readers and raised the qualifications of the staff. He was removed from office by the Germans during the second world war, but returned in 1945. Sir William Llewellyn Davies, during whose tenure of office the main front of the library building at Aberystwyth was constructed, was succeeded by Dr. Thomas Parry. Mr. M. R. Dobie, who had served on the staff of the National Library of Scotland from 1929, since 1931 successively as Keeper of Manuscripts and Librarian, retired in 1953, and was succeeded by Mr. William Beattie, Keeper of Printed Books since 1931. In 1953 Mr. Lawrence Quincy Mumford, who had previously served in the New York and Cleveland Public Libraries, more recently as Director of the second system, commenced duty as the eleventh Librarian of Congress, upon the appointment of Dr. Luther Evans as Director-General of Unesco. In Ottawa during the same year Dr. William Kave Lamb, previously Dominion Archivist, became first Librarian of the National Library of Canada.

Dr. Lauri Oskar Tudeer, for many years Director of Helsinki University Library, retired in 1954 and died the following year.

**FUNCTIONS.** There are no two national libraries having identical obligations. All provide in some form a central collection for reference and research. Some lend from their collections or act as a national centre for inter-library lending, with or without the provision of union catalogues, while most contribute to the compilation of a general national bibliography, to which may be added the compilation of special subject bibliographies such as the *Bibliographie de l'histoire suisse* and the *Bibliographia medica helvetica*, which are prepared with the co-operation of the National Library at Berne<sup>(3)</sup>, or of subject indexes to periodicals, such as that published by the Library Association largely from material in the collections of the British Museum. Library services rendered to the central government may take the form of housing departmental records, a function of the Commonwealth National Library at Canberra<sup>(4)</sup>, or the maintenance of collections of books in the executive and judicial departments, twenty-eight of which are now the responsibility of the National Diet Library in Tokyo. The Canberra library has branch repositories for archives in Melbourne, Sydney and Brisbane, with others planned for Adelaide and Perth, and branch libraries in London and New York, and also provides library facilities in Papua, New Guinea and other outlying Australian territories. Loans of collections of books for adult classes were made by the National Library of Wales until 1951, when the task passed to the County Libraries. The State Library at Pretoria maintains a much-used branch collection in the Central Prison.

**GOVERNMENT.** In the field of library government the principal innovation during the period under review is again to be found in Ottawa, where the National Library Advisory Council came into being in 1953. It consists of the National Librarian (chairman), the two Librarians of Parliament, and twelve other persons, including a representative from each of the ten provinces. The South African Public Library was governed until 1954 by a Board of Trustees established under the South African Public Library Act of 1893<sup>(1)</sup>, but the Act has now been repealed, and the Library made subject to the State-Aided Institutions Act of 1931, which already applied to the State Library at Pretoria, the other national library of the Union. The effect is to limit the powers of the trustees in the creation of posts and the appointment of staff, while the number of Government representatives on the Board is increased. In Hungary the Hungarian Libraries Board has been abolished, and some of its functions have passed to the Széchenyi National Library.

**FINANCES.** The finances of many national libraries were seriously affected by the war and the difficulties of the years which followed. The Standing Commission on Museums and Galleries in its report for 1949-53<sup>(5)</sup> described the situation at the British Museum as "profoundly disquieting. . . . Continued shortage of staff, lack of money, failure to repair the damaged galleries and to provide proper accommodation render it increasingly difficult for the Museum to fulfil its purpose and to maintain its standards and reputation in the face of new and exacting demands made on museums and galleries at the present time."

The problem was particularly acute in the library, the report continued, where shortage of staff was making it impossible to give adequate attention to the acquisition of new material or to the cataloguing of works, both printed and manuscript, already received. The service to readers was inadequate, while at the Colindale newspaper library thousands of volumes of newspapers remained to be sorted. The completion of the South-West Quadrant would give space for the accessions of twelve to fifteen years but, long before that time had expired, the question of housing the national library would have to be settled.

As a provision against financial stringency in future years, efforts are being made to create endowment funds for the two South African national libraries, while the National Library of Wales, unable to turn to the Treasury for any assistance in capital expenditure, has had to rely on an appeal for £30,000 to complete the central block of its building—the final stage of the plan commenced in 1911. At the Library of Congress, a reduction in 1954 in the annual grant led to the introduction of economies in the purchasing programme of the Library.

**ACCESSIONS.** Despite these difficulties, annual totals of accessions continue to grow in almost every national library, and figures have in many cases been increased during the period under review by the acquisition of works unobtainable during the war years, or acquired to replace material destroyed by enemy action. Many gifts were dispatched from the United States for this purpose, being sent via the United States Book Exchange Inc., an independent institution housed in the Library of Congress and having over 600 member libraries in the United States and abroad. The Bibliothèque Nationale reported having distributed to French libraries material received from this source<sup>(8)</sup>. At the British Museum, exchange has been much developed since the war as a means of obtaining foreign material, particularly government publications. The volume of accessions received by this means in the National and University Library at Jerusalem also, is reported to have greatly increased, while legislation to permit the international exchange of publications is being sought in Mexico.

Legal deposit continues to be the main source of accessions for most national libraries. A new departure may be noted at the Library of Congress, where it has been found necessary to adopt a policy of selection for copyright accessions, only items of immediate or potential future value being retained. Exchange agreements are found to bring in much that is not finally kept: in the field of donations, tact and a clear exposition of the aims of the Library keep it from being inundated by gifts of marginal value. A steady decline in the appropriations for purchase has prevented any increased volume of accessions from this source. During the period 1944-54 no less than 5,225,000 items, 4,135,000 of them manuscripts, valued in all at \$6,000,000, were presented to the Library.

A new law passed in 1953 requires the deposit of six copies of works published in Israel, of which two are received by the National and University Library, and one each by the Library of the Knesset, the State Archives, the Ministry of Education, and the Ministry of the Interior. In Egypt a law passed in June 1954 requires the deposit at the National Library of five copies within one month of publication. Legislation to secure legal deposit is pending in Burma and Pakistan. A report on the National Library of Mexico issued in

1951 states that legal deposit is unsatisfactory as a source of Mexican publications, since no penalty is prescribed under the present law for failure to deposit. It is hoped to introduce into a new British Copyright Bill provisions to remove the inability of the National Library of Wales to include among works claimed by legal deposit expensive works published in limited editions. The value to a national library of legal deposit has been disclaimed by Dr. Brummel, librarian of the Royal Library at The Hague, who says that, in addition to bringing in the chaff with the grain, it would supply only a fraction of the needs of Dutch library users, while the concentration in Western Holland of general and specialized libraries in every field at short distances from one another and the existence of a highly developed system of inter-library loan make it unnecessary to have a single institution aiming to possess comprehensive collections of Dutch printed books and manuscripts. The Royal Library, therefore, limiting its acquisitions of modern works to those on the humanities, devotes particular care to the maintenance of its union catalogues and inter-library lending service and lends books from its own collections by post to readers in all parts of the country (1).

M. Julien Cain, commenting on the greatly increased volume and diversity of printed material produced and the problems which arise in consequence at the Bibliothèque Nationale, says that the situation calls for the decentralization of the national collections, more especially in the light of the great development of special libraries and documentation centres in Paris and throughout France. In the Library of Congress the rising cost of serials has resulted in the adoption of a new system of punched-card records and controls. From the cards machine-run lists by bookseller, appropriation or country of origin can be prepared, with an indication of the total annual cost, which renders possible a continuous review of active subscriptions and a systematic effort to reduce their number. Photographic reproduction methods have been introduced to avoid the costly typing of purchase requisitions.

The National Library of Scotland, while receiving British publications through legal deposit, co-operates in the purchase of foreign works with Edinburgh University Library to avoid unnecessary duplication, and restricts its purchases, generally speaking, to works on the humanities. The Librarian has emphasized the need to acquire more works from the German-speaking and Scandinavian countries. The prevailing use of English as the second language in Israel is reflected in the acquisitions programme of the National and University Library, where books received from Britain and the United States now outnumber those from continental Europe. For political reasons it is necessary to obtain material from the Arab countries through agents in London and Paris rather than directly (1).

In the United Kingdom the Friends of the National Libraries have continued to help libraries to acquire rare works otherwise beyond their financial resources. The help thus given by the Friends since their establishment in 1932 has not been restricted to the three national libraries of the United Kingdom; it was commemorated by a special exhibition at the British Museum in 1952 and has been imitated in other countries, notably Switzerland. The Friends of the National Libraries, together with the Pilgrim Trust and the National Art Collections Fund, assisted in the purchase for the British Museum of twelve manuscripts and eighty-three printed books from the library of the Earl of

Leicester at Holkham Hall in 1951, one of the most important additions made to the collections during the present century. The correspondence of the publishing house of William Blackwood from 1804 to 1900, some 80,000 letters, which was presented to the National Library of Scotland in 1942, formed the subject of an exhibition in 1952. At the National Library of Wales Welsh parish registers to 1850, previously housed in some twelve different repositories, were deposited in 1951 by the authorities of the Church in Wales. From Lima there is news of large additions to the manuscripts relating to the history of Peru. The Ormonde archives, providing a continuous record of a single family from the twelfth to the nineteenth century, were purchased for the National Library of Ireland in 1952, and the records of the Munster estates of the Boyle and Cavendish families, previously housed at Lismore Castle, were deposited in the Library during the same year.

**SERVICE TO READERS.** Among measures taken to improve the service offered to readers at the British Museum is the introduction of an enquiry desk into the Reading Room. This, by relieving the Superintendent and his deputy from the pressure of constant enquiries, has enabled them to carry out a revision of the 20,000 volumes of reference works in the room. A legislative reference service on the lines of that of the Library of Congress has been inaugurated as a new department in the Commonwealth National Library at Canberra and, in addition to answering enquiries, the staff compile bibliographies and guides to the literature of various subjects (\*). In Stockholm the reorganization of the Royal Library by departments was reviewed during 1953-55 and modified, the basic division into Swedish and foreign departments being abolished.

**CLASSIFICATION AND CATALOGUING.** As is reported in another chapter, important sections of the classification of the Library of Congress, first compiled nearly fifty years ago, have recently undergone revision. The Library of Congress has also assumed the task of preparing a new edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification. In the Soviet Union, the new system of classification prepared by the Lenin Library for use in Russian libraries has been completed. Two abridged versions for smaller libraries as well as a detailed version for the largest libraries, have been compiled. New systems of cataloguing and classification were introduced in 1950 at the Royal Library, Copenhagen. Author and subject catalogues on cards of international size, produced by the Multilith process, have been commenced for new accessions, which are being arranged on the shelves in order of accession within forty subject groups. New cataloguing rules have been introduced at Berne also, and the Turkish National Library has compiled a code of cataloguing rules, which has been published by the Turkish Library Association. A printed catalogue card service and the publication of a printed catalogue of Peruvian literature are under consideration by the National Library at Lima.

Using a duplicate copy on cards of the main catalogue, the only one to survive the war, a new author catalogue has been prepared by the staff of the National Library of Poland, and a classified subject catalogue has been in preparation since 1950. A union catalogue of old books in Polish libraries, proposed in 1951 at a conference of library and educational authorities, is also in compilation. The Library prepares printed catalogue cards for all its accessions

and distributes them to over 4,000 libraries and institutions. A service of printed catalogue cards has been provided by the National Library at Madrid since 1955.

**PUBLISHED CATALOGUES.** The progress of the new edition of the *General Catalogue of Printed Books* of the British Museum, begun in 1931, was hindered by the war, and it has not been possible to return to the prewar rate of publishing volumes. It is hoped, however, to make good these arrears during the next five years, and to bring out the *Subject-index of works added to the British Museum Library* at more frequent intervals, with five-yearly cumulations (<sup>1</sup>). Delay in the publication of the printed author catalogue has also been experienced at the Bibliothèque Nationale. At the present rate of publication the catalogue, of which the first volume appeared in 1897, will be completed in 1970, but it is hoped to accelerate the work (<sup>2</sup>) (<sup>3</sup>). A catalogue of music in the Hirsch collection, acquired by the British Museum in 1946, was published in 1951. The first volume of a catalogue of the library of Thomas Jefferson, already in the Library of Congress, was published in 1952, and in 1954 a catalogue of the collection presented in 1946 by Lessing J. Rosenwald. Another significant catalogue issued by the Library is *Twentieth century poetry in English; contemporary recordings of the poets reading their own poems. Catalog of phonograph records, 1951*, while the Librarian has reported the commencement of "the publication of periodical accessions lists to make known promptly its accessions from tension area."

**EXHIBITIONS.** The twelve exhibitions held by the British Museum to celebrate its bicentenary in 1953 were designed to show the great wealth of the collections in the principal literatures of the world. The South African Public Library took part in the commemoration of the tercentenary of the first settlement at the Cape by organizing an exhibition entitled "South Africa in print," displaying the development of printed material of all kinds relating to South Africa. A permanent exhibition to illustrate the history of the Russian book was opened at the Lenin Library in Moscow in 1953, and another, based on the collection of Baron van Westrecnen van Tiellandt and entitled "Museum of the Book," was opened in the Royal Library at The Hague in 1955. For librarians and other interested persons, 400 official tours of the Lenin Library were arranged during 1953. The demands on staff time made by the growing number of persons wishing to visit the Bibliothèque Nationale have made necessary special arrangements to canalize the visits and reduce disturbance to readers and staff to a minimum.

**PHOTOGRAPHY.** Microfilm equipment was installed in the Polish National Library in 1950 and, in addition to meeting the current demands of readers, is being used for the formation of a collection of films of rare and early printed books and manuscripts. In 1951 the Government of Finland commenced a special annual grant of about 6,000,000 marks to enable the National and University Library to film all Finnish newspapers from 1770 to the present time, a task expected to take ten years. In New Zealand the General Assembly Library has begun to film the majority of New Zealand newspapers with a view to their permanent preservation, and at Ankara the National Library has

initiated a programme of filming collections of manuscripts in Turkey. Photographic installations were completed in 1954 at the Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, Florence, and the National Diet Library, Tokyo, the latter the gift of the Rockefeller Foundation; from Santiago, however, it is reported that the National Library is not yet making any use of photocopying or microfilming processes.

**PRESERVATION.** The mechanical lamination process by which fragile paper is reinforced through the application of a transparent plastic facing to each side has been extensively used for the protection of manuscripts in the Library of Congress, and was introduced into the British Museum during 1955. A survey into the requirements of a long-term binding programme is being carried out at the Library of Congress, where in 1954 some 60,000 volumes were sent to be bound. A useful economy has been achieved by treating books in the early stages of disrepair with liquid plastic adhesive, thus postponing the need for expensive rebinding. Bactericidal lamps have been used experimentally in the treatment of bindings at the Lenin Library.

**BIBLIOGRAPHICAL WORK.** Bibliographical Institutes have been opened in conjunction with the National Library at Ankara and the Royal Library at Stockholm. The Stockholm institute assumed in 1953 the compilation of the national bibliography, previously published by the publishing and bookselling trade organizations, and it also produces an annual union list of foreign accessions of Swedish libraries. The British Museum has provided accommodation and the use of its resources for such co-operative bibliographical undertakings as the British National Bibliography and the British Union Catalogue of Periodicals.

Work continues on the compilation of the Irish National Bibliography, which is to include manuscript as well as printed material by Irish authors or connected in any way with Ireland. Documents in foreign libraries are being copied, and the entries, which are being made on cards, are to be available for distribution in card or microfilm form. To encourage international collaboration in the field of bibliography, the Hungarian National Library began in 1955 a series of bibliographies of literature of the People's Democracies. The Polish National Library publishes a bibliography of current periodicals, its own bulletin and bibliographical guides.

Outstanding among union catalogues, the National Union Catalogue at the Library of Congress now contains over 13,000,000 cards, and has four auxiliary catalogues, Cyrillic, Hebrew, Japanese and Chinese. Additional to these are the Checklist of Certain Periodicals, the basis of a future union catalogue of serials, and the National Register of Special Materials, but work on the Checklist, a loose-leaf list showing the location in over three hundred North American libraries of some 3,000 scientific and technical periodicals published in Europe and in other countries involved in the second world war, has been discontinued since 1951, while the National Register remains in the planning stage<sup>(10)</sup>. Other union catalogues commenced during the period under review include that of foreign accessions of French libraries compiled by the Bibliothèque Nationale since 1952. The New Zealand Bibliographic Centre has formed a union list of serials in New Zealand libraries.

**RELATIONS WITH OTHER LIBRARIES.** In Stockholm the Royal Library has been since 1949 the headquarters of a Joint Library Committee composed of the directors of the learned libraries of the capital. Since 1953 the Committee has operated a daily inter-library loan and transport service between Stockholm libraries. Inter-library lending services in Bulgaria, which are conducted by the V. Kolarov State Library in Sofia, were extended in 1955 to include popular reading rooms throughout the country.

In Tokyo a Committee for the Improvement of Bibliographical Service, having representatives of the Ministry of Education, the Japanese Science Council, library associations, publishers and the National Diet Library, was organized in 1951, and an inter-library lending system centred on the National Diet Library was introduced in 1953. The Library continues to send members of its staff abroad to study foreign library methods, and by 1955 eleven persons had been sent for this purpose. The Director of the Jewish National and University Library, Dr. Wormann, made a tour of libraries in the United States during 1952.

The general increase in their accessions and activities has brought as a consequence the need for additional staff in national libraries. The National Library of Wales, to give an example, has been authorized to employ a further five cataloguing assistants, and the Swiss National Library, where the total staff increased from thirty-one to thirty-nine between 1946 and 1953, was in the latter year awaiting authority to employ an additional five persons. The Berne Library plays an important part in the training of librarians for the diploma of the Swiss Library Association. At Lima a school of librarianship, which has existed in the National Library since 1943, offers a two-year course of instruction. The new National Library of Turkey reports difficulty in finding trained staff, but a school of librarianship has been established. In Ankara, however, as in Lima, the main difficulty lies in the low salaries offered to state-employed librarians. In Tokyo the absence of any pension scheme for the staff of the National Diet Library is giving rise to a problem through the steadily increasing average age of the staff. The need for improved salaries and conditions of service in the National Library of Ireland was stressed by the Director in his report for 1949-50; lack of staff has resulted in serious arrears of cataloguing in the Library.

**STAFF AND COURSES IN LIBRARIANSHIP.** The work of the Library Research Department of the Lenin Library during 1953 included holding seminars in librarianship and the publication of handbooks on library organization for village and small town libraries. Thirty-five official tours were made by members of the department to various parts of the Soviet Union to hold short courses in librarianship and advise on library work. The Bibliographical Institute of the Polish National Library provides technical instruction in bibliography and librarianship, and arranges meetings for authors, readers and literary critics.

**BUILDINGS.** Much building work has taken place during the period under review, both in making good war damage sustained by numerous national libraries and in carrying out programmes of reconstruction and modernization all the more urgently necessary after the delays resulting from the war. Among the national libraries still in serious need of new accommodation but without

any immediate prospect of obtaining it are those at Copenhagen, Lisbon and Rome. The construction of an urgently needed new building for the National Library of Ireland has had to be postponed indefinitely and temporary accommodation has been obtained. In the South African Public Library congestion is accompanied by a serious risk of fire, and in 1951 the trustees prepared at the request of the Government a scheme for a fireproof wing to be added to the present building which would form the first stage in the complete reconstruction of the Library. Though funds for the reconstruction of the Royal Library at Stockholm were voted in 1944-45, it has not yet been possible to make a start on the work. In Santiago, on the other hand, a new building for the Chilean National Library, projected since 1925, is now under construction, though the stacks, originally planned to contain the accessions of sixty to eighty years, now appear likely to become full by 1970. The Albertina, a new building for the Belgian Royal Library, was the subject of an architectural competition in 1938. After much subsequent modification of the design, work finally began on the building in 1954. In Canberra, where the first part of a new building was completed in 1934, portions of the book stock are housed in seven other buildings in various parts of the city, as well as in the Parliament House, where the administrative headquarters, processing sections and some 300,000 volumes are located. The design for the remainder of the building was revised in 1949 and again in 1952, but there is no news of any commencement of work.

In the British Museum the King's Library, damaged during an air raid in 1940, was reopened after repair in 1951, and the South-West Quadrant of the Iron Library, completely destroyed in 1941, has been rebuilt in accordance with the plan for the general reconstruction of the Iron Library drawn up before the war. It has been possible to incorporate in the new Quadrant additional staff offices and accommodation for the photographic service, in addition to providing greatly increased shelf room. The Reading Room was completely redecorated in 1951-52. Work has also begun on an extension to the Colindale Newspaper Library. The reconstruction of the Iron Library will not solve the problem of storage space for long, however, and proposals to acquire a site of seven and a half acres adjoining the Museum for the construction of a new national library building have given rise to much controversy, both before and since their official approval by the Ministry of Town and Country Planning<sup>(11)</sup>.

The Central Block of the National Library of Wales has been finished and was opened by H.M. the Queen on August 8, 1955, thus completing the original building begun in 1910. The Central Block, however, being mainly decorative, does not provide much storage accommodation, and it is therefore hoped to complete the bookstack, left unfinished in 1931<sup>(12)</sup>. In Edinburgh the new building of the National Library of Scotland, commenced before the war, was formally handed over by the Ministry of Works in 1955, and was to be opened in July 1956<sup>(13)</sup>.

The programme of reconstruction and development commenced by the Bibliothèque Nationale has been continued and offers a close parallel to work in the same field at the British Museum. Land beyond the original site has been purchased for further extensions, and administrative offices and classrooms for instruction in librarianship have been set up in temporary accommodation on the new sites, while at Versailles a second repository for newspapers, similar in

capacity and design to the first, was built in 1951-53. On September 1, 1954, work began on the construction of five additional decks above the main stack of the Library, which will provide an additional thirty-five kilometres of shelving<sup>(8)</sup>.

An additional building for the Lenin Library was completed towards the end of 1953. Among other accommodation it provides a reading room with over 300 places. In Warsaw, where work on a new national library building, scheduled to begin in 1940, was prevented by the war, the surviving remnants of the national collection have been housed in two temporary buildings. A six-year plan was drawn up for the construction of a new building in 1950-55, to house 10,000,000 volumes. In Pretoria an extension to the new building of the State Library, to cost £25,000, is in course of erection, and will provide additional stack space, staff workrooms and rooms for special collections. In Lima, work on the second stage of a new building for the National Library was scheduled to begin in 1955. An architectural competition was held for a new building to house the National Diet Library in Tokyo, and work on the first stage should be complete by 1958.

The first part of a deposit library was completed in 1955 at Urajärvi in Finland, to house little-used material from the National and University Library at Helsinki. It contains ten kilometres of shelving of the mobile "Compactus" type, and a second stack is to be completed in 1956. Meanwhile in the main library building at Helsinki a basement stack was completed in 1954, and another in a neighbouring building in the following year. The two provide some fifty-seven kilometres of shelving, and the removal of surplus books from the public rooms of the main building has made possible a reorganization of the accommodation there. In the Royal Library at Stockholm additional shelf space has been secured by the installation of "Stormor" mobile shelving. The main work of reconstruction in the buildings of the Deutsche Staatsbibliothek, Berlin (the former Preussische Staatsbibliothek), was completed in 1953<sup>(15)</sup>. 1,700,000 volumes were removed from the Library to Western Germany during the war, and the majority have been made available temporarily at the Westdeutsche Bibliothek, Marburg, pending their return to Berlin, but the rebuilding of stocks at Berlin has proceeded successfully, so that by 1954 they numbered 1,417,000 volumes, including many works in Slavonic languages.

**CANADIAN NATIONAL LIBRARY.** The Canadian National Library came into existence on January 1, 1953, as one of the results of the Report of the Royal Commission on National Development in the Arts, Letters and Sciences (the "Massey Report"), and incorporated the collections of the Library of Parliament, numbering some 550,000 volumes, which was damaged by fire, for the second time in its history, in August 1953<sup>(16)</sup>. The compilation of a national union catalogue and current national bibliographies and the acquisition of important foreign publications had already been begun in 1950 by the Canadian Bibliographic Centre, which was absorbed into the National Library. The Royal Commission recommended that the National Library should form a comprehensive collection of Canadiana, together with important works in other fields, and should include sound recordings and motion picture films in its buildings. It found that the existing legislation governing legal deposit was unsatisfactory, since no penalties were prescribed for non-compliance, and

recommended that any new law passed should apply to works imported into Canada for sale or distribution in any other manner. Decentralization of the collections was proposed by a number of interested bodies, but the Commission felt that this proposal was open to serious objection, and that the provision of microfilm copies would provide almost the same facilities to provincial and local libraries without dispersing the national collection. In view of the likelihood of requests for advice on library practice being received, a special information department should be included. The Commission found with regret that requests for the provision of local library services where none existed, on the lines of those provided by the Australian Commonwealth National Library, could not be considered to be within its terms of reference.

The National Library Advisory Committee, in a progress report submitted in November 1951, endorsed the recommendations of the Commission<sup>(27)</sup>. Among the proposals put forward by the Committee was one that the National Library should undertake a newspaper microfilming programme to supplement that of the Canadian Library Association. The Library could also assist other libraries, particularly the overcrowded Departmental libraries of Ottawa, by providing storage for little-used material, and its building should be designed with this in mind. Particulars of the new building, which is to house the Public Archives as well as the National Library, were announced in February 1955. It is to have a capacity of 2,000,000 volumes, the stacks being both below and above the principal rooms of the Library, and full advantage has been taken of the site, which faces the Ottawa River. An auditorium to seat 360 persons is to be included, while the main reading room, on the first floor overlooking the river, is to have an ultimate capacity of 200 places.

**THE FUTURE.** The new national libraries are fortunate in their ability to plan their activities in the light of the experience gained in older institutions, and to take full advantage of modern developments in building technique, compact storage equipment, photoduplication, microcopying and the like. In these developments the advice and assistance offered by Unesco to a number of recently established national libraries seems likely to result in the emergence of a common pattern, though naturally with modifications arising from local conditions. The centralization within such a library of inter-library loans, the production of national bibliographies and printed catalogue cards, the exchange of publications, and kindred services will make possible a full and economical use of the bibliographical resources of a country. The older national libraries, however, lacking in almost every instance the necessary funds and staff to meet in full the demands made on them, and more often than not in urgent need of additional accommodation, are obliged by the great amount of work and expense which would result from any major change in their methods to abide by their traditional ways, or by cautious experiment and compromise to adapt them little by little in the pursuit of current trends. Yet change is in the air. The reports of restrictions in the intake by legal deposit at the Library of Congress, the suggestion that the national collections of France should be decentralized, and the urgent problem of a new building which confronts the British Museum, are but three in a host of factors which may well bring about with unsuspected rapidity a change more fundamental than any hitherto in the form and functions of the national library.

## REFERENCES

*Note.*—The Annual Reports published by the majority of national libraries have been consulted wherever possible, but are not cited here individually.

1. MEARNS, DAVID C. Current trends in national libraries. D. C. Mearns, issue editor. *Lib. Trends* 4 (1) 1955, (1)-116.
2. VARLEY, D. H. and SPOHR, O. H. Some proposals for the development of national bibliographic services in South Africa. *S. Afr. Lib.* 22 (3) 1955, 79-88.
3. HILL, F. J. The Swiss National Library and its collection of Helvetica. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (2) 1954, 43-46.
4. BARTLETT, N. The beginnings of the Commonwealth National Library, Canberra. *Librarian* 42 (7) 1953, 143-146.
5. Standing Commission on Museums and Galleries. Report, 1949-53. H.M.S.O.
6. DOWNS, R. B. Mission in Mexico. *A.L.A. Bull.* 46 (10) 1952, 328, 329, 349, 350.
7. Les Catalogues imprimés de la Bibliothèque Nationale. 1953, pp. xxvii, 204.
8. CAIN, J. La Bibliothèque Nationale pendant les années 1945 à 1951. 1954. pp. vi, 295.
9. LACOUR, C. Remarques sur le service des bibliothèques dans la République Populaire de Pologne. *A.B.C.D.* (11) 1953, 296-298.
10. SIJORES, L. The National Union Catalog of the United States. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (6) 1953, 178-182.
11. Great British Libraries. V. The British Museum Library. *J.L.S.* 54, June 17, 24, 1955, 338, 356.
12. Great British Libraries. I. The National Library of Wales. *Ibid.* 52, July 19, 1953, 452.
13. Great British Libraries. II. The National Library of Scotland. *Ibid.* 52, Aug. 28, 1953, 555.
14. El Nuevo edificio de la Biblioteca Nacional. *Bol. de la Bib. Nac.* 2 (2), abr.-julio 1951, 3-15.
15. Die Deutsche Staatsbibliothek: Wiederaufbau und gegenwärtiger Stand der Arbeit. 1954.
16. CANADA. ROYAL COMMISSION ON NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT IN THE ARTS, LETTERS AND SCIENCES. Report. 1949-51. 1951. pp. xxi, 517.
17. CANADA. NATIONAL LIBRARY ADVISORY COMMITTEE. Progress report and recommendations. 1951-.

Downloaded from www.Indology.com

### Chapter 3

## UNIVERSITY AND COLLEGE LIBRARIES

By KENNETH GARSIDE, M.A., Deputy Librarian, University College, London

NO comprehensive survey of university or college library practice has appeared during the years 1951-55, nor has any attempt been made to analyse the trends which may have guided university and college librarians in the United Kingdom. Some are implicit in the activities of SCONUL, already mentioned, and others will become evident in the course of this chapter. E. G. Baxter<sup>(1)</sup> has surveyed the background to present-day practice in his well-documented historical account of developments in university libraries during the years 1919-50, and G. H. Briggs<sup>(2)</sup> has discussed the problems of English university libraries for the benefit of New Zealand readers. A complementary article by C. W. Collins<sup>(3)</sup> has discussed the problems of the four university libraries in that dominion, and F. H. Rogers<sup>(4)</sup> has pointed to the shortcomings of their resources, especially for the research worker, suggesting co-operative acquisition by New Zealand research libraries, supplemented by a greater degree of inter-lending with Australian university libraries, as a solution to their difficulties. The very important developments in the provision of university library services in the colonies are dealt with later.

We have a more complete picture of trends in the United States, and L. Jolley<sup>(5)</sup> has summarized them as he saw them at the beginning of the period under review. His conclusion that the significant difference between American and British libraries lies in the size of the former, and the problems to which size alone gives rise is amply borne out not only by contemporary American papers<sup>(6)</sup> <sup>(7)</sup> but also by the developments which have taken place during the quinquennium, and it can be no accident that the first number of the new journal *Library Trends* (July 1952) was devoted to this general theme. A Belgian writer<sup>(8)</sup> has expressed the view that America uses its university libraries more wisely than do European countries, but finds them lacking in works in foreign languages. Kenneth J. Brough<sup>(9)</sup> has published a study of American library practice based on the history of four important libraries over the past three-quarters of a century. Looking ahead, Haynes McMullen<sup>(10)</sup> has attempted to forecast the developments which the next half-century will see in American university libraries. Considering particularly the future of science libraries, C. E. Sunderlin<sup>(11)</sup> is concerned at the vast mass of periodical publications and the difficulties of indexing and abstracting inherent in such quantitative production of literature.

Germain Calmette<sup>(12)</sup> has discussed the developments of the past century in French university libraries with special reference to their resources, whilst a professor at the Sorbonne<sup>(13)</sup>, surveying recent trends, has pointed to the difficulties inherent in the expansion of the student population without

corresponding increase in accommodation and in the neglect which French university libraries suffered between the wars.

**FUNCTION OF THE UNIVERSITY OR COLLEGE LIBRARY.** The five years under review have seen an increasing awareness of the need to consider the techniques of university librarianship in relation to the library's function. At the Library Association's annual conference in 1955 two important papers, both by Scottish university librarians, were read on this theme: a profound study by L. W. Sharp<sup>(14)</sup> pointed to the dual purpose of the university library—its duty to serve both masters and scholars—and emphasized that this must be a governing factor in the way the library is organized; whilst R. O. MacKenna<sup>(15)</sup> developed this theme by examining how this factor influenced the service the library must offer, particularly with regard to its duty to conserve literature and at the same time to keep abreast of contemporary scholarship, and to its function to serve many specialists as well as to provide resources quite general in scope.

That the same subject actively occupies the thoughts of American librarians is shown by their own contributions to professional literature. Robert Vosper<sup>(16)</sup> insists that university libraries should not be content merely with reflecting the current curriculum of the academic community they serve but should provide the teaching staff and postgraduate students with access to collections which will encourage research and at the same time offer the undergraduate the opportunity to learn the use and love of books. Raynard C. Swank<sup>(17)</sup> has pointed to the development in the United States of the idea of the university library as a teaching instrument, and to its achievement of this function by the use of open access and the organization of the library by subject divisions, whilst John E. Burchard<sup>(18)</sup> has underlined its twofold purpose as a source of material for the research worker and as a stimulus to the undergraduate. Stanley E. Gwynn<sup>(19)</sup> would like to see the university library properly equipped to help the undergraduate instead of debarring him from the use of the main university library and segregating him in separate student or college libraries. The function of the college library itself is indeed a live issue, as is shown by the fact that a whole number of the *Library Quarterly*—that for October 1954—was devoted to papers read at a conference of the Graduate Library School of the University of Chicago on the place and function of the library in the four-year college, papers which were also published in volume form<sup>(20)</sup>; whilst Frank A. Lundy and Kathryn R. Renfro pointed elsewhere<sup>(21)</sup> to the function of the college library as the campus workshop.

That the ideal of a single university library catering at once for undergraduate and postgraduate, practised in England and now widely recommended in the United States, is not universally accepted even in Anglo-Saxon countries is demonstrated, for instance, in the recently opened Lamont Library at Harvard, whilst the same segregation of library resources is to be found in the new library at McGill University, which was planned to contain a separate undergraduate library; its librarian<sup>(22)</sup> justifies this segregation by asserting that "it is wasteful to let the ordinary undergraduate use a library suitable for the advanced student. He is hindered rather than helped by its complexity." When he goes on to claim that this "is the forthright solution of a library problem which is perhaps a typically American, and not yet an

English, one," he will be challenged by English university librarians as to the validity of his implied prognostication, for, though the elements of the segregation of the undergraduate do exist in the older universities, for historical reasons, the tendency in the United Kingdom is clearly against such segregation.

A different kind of segregation—that based on subject interests which has led to a conflict of scope and function between the main university library and a plethora of departmental libraries—has led Viktor Burr<sup>(23)</sup> to express the view that because of this fragmentation German university libraries should broaden their horizon and seek to serve the community at large by functioning as provincial or regional libraries and taking a more active part in inter-library lending. The university librarian at Leiden<sup>(24)</sup> suggests a similar service to the community at large for Dutch university libraries, but he takes care to stress that their primary purpose is as the servants of their own universities.

UNIVERSITY AND COLLEGE LIBRARY GOVERNMENT. The problem of departmental libraries in German universities is indeed a thorny one, which probably has its roots in the fact that so many German university libraries are also state libraries. Whilst Viktor Burr, as noted above, would accept the fragmentation brought about by these independent seminar and institute libraries, Hermann Tiemann<sup>(25)</sup> takes the opposite view and maintains that the central university library should assert itself over the departmental libraries, insisting on the need to cover all subject fields adequately in the main library. He ascribes this danger of fragmentation to ever-increasing subject specialization, a tendency which began over a century ago when the conception of the unity of all scholarship was abandoned and the humanities drifted apart from the natural sciences, and which he believes to have become even more marked since the war in the field of science, despite the increased overlapping of individual sciences. Probably the first of the older German universities to take a practical step towards a unification of library resources is the Humboldt University in Berlin; Willi Göber<sup>(26)</sup> has described and quoted the regulations which came into force there at the beginning of 1954 to ensure the co-ordination and maximum accessibility of all its library materials. But though the political structure of East Germany makes possible such drastic action in that one university, the same ideas are being canvassed in the West. In this context it is perhaps worth remarking that more than one visiting German librarian has been impressed by the compromise solution of the departmental library problem offered by the separate subject libraries, all within the college library and under the full control of its library committee and librarian, at University College, London; this feature, which was introduced originally by R. W. Chambers after studying the German system in operation, is thought worthy of special mention by Albert Predeck<sup>(27)</sup> in his impressions gained during a study tour of English libraries in 1953.

In the Western hemisphere Arthur M. McAnnally<sup>(28)</sup> has described how in the University of Illinois a solution has been worked out in which the departmental libraries are divided into subject groups by faculties and their librarians work together to co-ordinate the facilities and services they offer. When a new library building was planned for the North Dakota Agricultural College, a questionnaire was sent to 166 colleges in the United States to obtain information on current practice regarding departmental libraries<sup>(29)</sup>.

On the general theme of the government of American college libraries, Philip M. Benjamin<sup>(30)</sup> has emphasized the need for close co-operation between the principal of the college and the librarian, whilst Elizabeth Kientzle<sup>(31)</sup> has studied the status of the librarian *vis-à-vis* his library committee in eighty-nine colleges. Eugene H. Wilson<sup>(32)</sup> has examined the wider problems of the government and control of college libraries in the United States.

Judging from his criticism of their indifference to direct participation in broadcast programmes about library matters, not all American librarians will agree with Robert W. Orr<sup>(33)</sup> in his insistence on the need for organized public relations for university and college libraries, as distinct from relations on the campus itself; but his paper is a sign of the times and he deals with an aspect of library government which may have to be faced in a more positive manner, particularly if adequate funds are to be forthcoming.

FINANCE. The provision of adequate finance is a *sine qua non* of an efficient library, and the implication that their own libraries cannot in its absence offer all the resources for scholarship that might be expected of them is one which of necessity has had to be tolerated by British university librarians during the post-war years. On the other hand they have looked with envy on the handsome budgets of their American counterparts, and it is therefore startling to discover that, with the exception of a single article on practice in the Antipodes<sup>(34)</sup>, all the literature dealing specifically with university and college library finance published during the quinquennium under review appears to emanate from the United States.

The effect of the inflationary tendency of recent years has been the starting-point of a number of independent examinations made by American librarians<sup>(35-39)</sup>. One fact which emerges is that a smaller proportion of the total income of the university or college seems to be bestowed upon its library, although the latter must meet increased costs in all directions and at the same time often cater for a larger student body. Stephen A. McCarthy<sup>(40)</sup> has published a factual survey of the library expenditure of a number of American universities. Yet the importance of the library to the academic community is recognized by the commission of the Association of American Universities which has studied the financing of higher education generally<sup>(41)</sup>. Although Reuben Frodin<sup>(39)</sup> has pointed out that a large library is more economical than a small one, it is the director of America's largest university library who has taken the initiative in calling for investigations of the problems arising from the financial situation. This he has done both on a national scale, in particular in connection with a project of the Association of American Universities to sponsor a study of the financial problems of research libraries<sup>(42)</sup>, and in his own library at Harvard where he has set up a staff committee under his own chairmanship to seek a solution of its present and prospective problems<sup>(43)</sup><sup>(44)</sup>. Mainly at his instigation<sup>(45)</sup>, the Association of Research Libraries (a body similar to our own SCONUL) has published a report<sup>(46)</sup> of a conference of librarians, professors and university administrators convened to discuss these problems in the light of apprehensions which had been expressed about the growth of library expenditure in relation to university expenditure as a whole.

The general consensus of opinion in America points to a solution being found only in the complete overhaul of the academic library's activities, and attention

is drawn especially to the financial benefits which may accrue from co-operative measures in book selection and in book storage, and to the need to seek additional sources of income, whether from Federal aid, from gifts from individuals or industry, from funds for specific research contracts, or from fees charged for specific services. Similar co-operative methods have been advocated to meet similar problems in the university libraries of Britain by R. O. MacKenna<sup>(45)</sup> and R. J. Hoy<sup>(47)</sup>.

One article of general practical interest unconnected with the financial crisis is that by Charles W. Mixer<sup>(48)</sup> describing the revaluation for insurance carried out at Columbia in 1951, in which he makes the pertinent observation that the microfilming of the library's card catalogue resulted in the insurance cover on this item being reduced by over three-quarters.

**BOOK SELECTION.** In a succinct article intended primarily to be read in the United States, J. H. P. Pafford<sup>(49)</sup> analyses the question of book provision in the British university library with emphasis on the library's twofold purpose of serving both undergraduate and research worker. Perhaps not every British university librarian will accept his contention that the university library should provide multiple copies of standard undergraduate textbooks on a scale such as obtains in America; but none will quarrel with his assertion that the research worker needs strong collections of all the important literature in his own and allied fields and, through co-operation between specialized libraries, access to everything available elsewhere in his subject. J. W. Scott<sup>(50)</sup> sees book selection as reflecting the academic work carried on in the university, and examines means by which the librarian can enrich his book stock.

A general picture of acquisitions policy in the United States has been portrayed in a symposium<sup>(51)</sup> which has dealt with the subject from the points of view of the large university library and the small college library. The acquisitions policies of Harvard University have been discussed in two authoritative papers<sup>(52)</sup> <sup>(53)</sup>; here the problems of finance and space have made it necessary to slow down the rate of increase of accessions, discards going mainly to the New England Deposit Library. The same solution has been adopted at Yale<sup>(54)</sup>, where the former policy of attempting comprehensive coverage has had to be abandoned and a weeding-out programme, especially of secondary material, instituted; whilst at Stanford gifts are being selected as rigorously as purchases in order to avoid committing the library in future years to unnecessary storage costs. Keyes D. Metcalf<sup>(55)</sup> has examined possible solutions to the storage problem raised by the prohibitive cost of bookstacks, and the methods of selection for storage of less-used books adopted at Iowa State College have been described<sup>(56)</sup>. Another aspect of American acquisitions practice is reflected in a survey of the selection and organization of periodicals in forty junior college libraries in California<sup>(57)</sup>.

In contrast to the restrictive trend in book selection in America, the needs of the university libraries of younger countries are very different: J. W. Perry<sup>(58)</sup> has pointed out that it is imperative for South African universities to build up their resources boldly.

**ACQUISITIONS PROCEDURE.** A new departure in acquisitions procedure in an English university library is recorded by Joan M. Gladstone<sup>(59)</sup> in her

description of the use made of punched cards as a comprehensive order record at King's College, Newcastle upon Tyne. Arthur P. Sweet<sup>(60)</sup> has discussed the design and use of forms in accessions work, based on experience at Cornell. The problems of recording accessions of serials have received much attention in the United States: George N. Hartje<sup>(61)</sup> has compared the various types of visible index available in America and surveyed the organization of serial processing in a number of university libraries, whilst Neal Harlow<sup>(62)</sup> has described the work of the staff committee on serials procedure at the University of California, Los Angeles.

**ACCESS AND SERVICE TO READERS.** The services which a university or college library may be expected to offer to its readers fall broadly into two parts: assistance to the reader in learning how to use the resources which the library provides; and the actual provision of information, especially of bibliographical data, to the individual reader in response to a specific request.

It is probably now generally agreed that the university library ought systematically to fulfil the first of these services. The principle is accepted in Britain that an important part of a university education consists of learning how to use books and marshal ideas, as distinct from merely cramming facts to be reproduced in due course in an examination, and it is therefore clearly the duty of the university to ensure that the undergraduate receives instruction in this approach to his intellectual heritage. If disagreement exists, it is as to who shall give the instruction—whether the academic staff or the library staff. The problem was raised in a wider context by the Scientific Information Conference organized by the Royal Society in 1948, and subsequently given careful study by a working party of the University and Research Section of the Library Association, whose recommendations were published in 1949. R. O. MacKenna<sup>(63)</sup> has discussed these findings and elaborated upon them, examining carefully the problems facing the undergraduate when he first comes to use his university or college library. The problem is partly met by the issue of readers' guides to particular libraries—such guides have been prepared recently at Hull and Belfast, and a particularly comprehensive one at Vienna<sup>(64)</sup>—but these cannot attempt to provide the instruction in bibliographical work which is particularly important for the research student, a point underlined by an Indian librarian<sup>(65)</sup>.

There is, however, little room in the university library for the second kind of service to readers, which is akin to the reference function of a public library. As R. J. Hoy<sup>(47)</sup> has pointed out, the users of an academic library know what they want and how to get it to a greater extent than do the users of almost any other kind of library. Nevertheless, in a recently published collection of essays on reference work in different kinds of library, George H. Bushnell<sup>(66)</sup> has defined the whole of a central university library, as distinct from the libraries of constituent colleges or halls of residence, as a reference library, despite the anomaly that books may be lent outside the building. He has with justice emphasized the need for the library staff, if they do seek to answer queries raised by readers, not to be content to supply the first answer found in a work of reference but to follow the enquiry through to more specialized works, cross-checking the information and checking particularly the reliability of the sources as authorities on the particular subject.

That American librarians are thinking on similar lines is shown by the views which have been expressed by Leslie W. Dunlap<sup>(67)</sup> and N. Orwin Rush<sup>(68)</sup>, though British university librarians would question the desirability of providing bibliographies even for research students. Arguing against the provision of special undergraduate libraries, Stanley E. Gwynn<sup>(19)</sup> maintains that a comprehensive library can be made to satisfy the undergraduate provided he is trained to use it. Margaret Owen Hinton<sup>(69)</sup> has surveyed instruction for readers in 230 American academic libraries and discovered that only eighty issue handbooks whilst some others offer lectures on the use of the library. Saul Herner<sup>(70)</sup>, has examined the library habits of 600 scientists in eight subject groups at Johns Hopkins, and found that the pure scientist generally prefers to do his own bibliographical work in conventional research libraries, whereas the applied scientist likes to have his literature searches done for him and wants his references evaluated, extracted and summarized.

Under this general head it is appropriate to mention the growing awareness of university libraries of their responsibilities towards one class of research material in which they exercise a monopoly—that of unpublished theses. The regulations governing access to such material have usually been made by the senate of the university to which the theses have been submitted, the library serving merely as a depository, and the permitted degree of access to them has varied widely from university to university. In a pamphlet published by the Library Association in 1950 P. D. Record surveyed the position in each British university, and this survey forms the basis of an invaluable review article by J. H. P. Pafford<sup>(71)</sup> in which he has added some pertinent new points of his own, notably on the question of copyright. Using Record's survey as its starting-point, SCONUL made an approach to university authorities, asking them to revise their regulations to accord with certain standards of accessibility; the progress made in these negotiations, and a statement of SCONUL's standards, were reported in the second volume of the *Index of theses*<sup>(72)</sup> now published annually by Aslib. In the meantime the University of Leeds has commenced an annual bibliographical series comprising titles both of theses and of publications in which members of the University are authors or joint authors<sup>(73)</sup>. Abroad, List Alker<sup>(74)</sup><sup>(75)</sup> has published two volumes of titles of Vienna doctoral dissertations from 1937 to 1949 which closes a gap in the bibliography of this material; and Vernon D. Tate<sup>(76)</sup> has outlined a plan for the continued publication of abstracts of doctoral theses accepted by American universities and for their accessibility on microfilm.

CATALOGUING AND CLASSIFICATION. An authoritative paper on university library practice was prepared by R. S. Mortimer<sup>(77)</sup> for a vacation course on cataloguing principles and practice organized by the University of London School of Librarianship and Archives in 1953. This and other papers covering practice in other kinds of library were based factually on replies to a questionnaire sent out beforehand, and Mary Piggott<sup>(78)</sup> has commented on the information supplied by university and special libraries. Perhaps largely inspired by this course, University College, London, in 1955 anticipated a comprehensive revision of its cataloguing code by introducing new rules simplifying the form of heading for corporate bodies<sup>(79)</sup>.

In the United States Emily C. Schilpp<sup>(80)</sup> has described the practice at

Johns Hopkins in the cataloguing of serials, whilst the catalogue at Yale has been discussed by Jennette E. Hitchcock and F. Bernice Field<sup>(81)</sup>.

A new classification has been introduced at University College, London<sup>(82)</sup>. By choosing the particular academic subject as the unit of classification, it recognizes the fundamental purpose of the library of a modern university or college to serve the teaching and research carried on in the particular academic community.

The completion of the publication of the schedules of Bliss's bibliographic classification has led to its adoption in the new lending library of the University of London Library, at Royal Holloway College, in the new university college at Ibadan, Nigeria, and in the library of the University of Tasmania. It is generally thought that, of all the printed classifications, Bliss offers the arrangement most compatible with university needs.

At the Cheney Library in Boston, Mass., where the Library of Congress classification was adopted in 1948, the classified catalogue which is being compiled is believed to be the only one in an American university library<sup>(83)</sup>. Thelma Eaton<sup>(84)</sup> has analysed the replies to a questionnaire sent to over 900 college and university libraries in the United States, which show that 84.6 per cent. use Dewey.

**SPECIAL SERVICES.** The increasing use of microfilm in Sweden is described with special reference to the university library at Uppsala by Tönnes Kleberg<sup>(85)</sup>, who indicates not only its value in solving the space problem presented by voluminous files of newspapers and periodicals, but also the important part it can play in aiding scholarship by making available in one library the texts of manuscript and other rare collections kept elsewhere. Robert H. Muller<sup>(86)</sup> has surveyed the microfilming services of large university and research libraries in the United States.

Mary A. Renshaw<sup>(87)</sup> has discussed the working of a university archive repository, basing her paper on her own experience at Nottingham; whilst Mary Elizabeth Hinkley<sup>(88)</sup> has assessed the role the college library can play in the preservation and organization of the archive material of its own institution.

**INTER-LIBRARY CO-OPERATION.** Co-operation between university libraries has centred mainly around the question of repository libraries. In this country SCONUL in 1953 canvassed the idea of a repository to serve libraries in the London area, where problems of space are most acute<sup>(89)</sup>, and the University of London is actively examining the possibility of establishing such a repository. Meanwhile the Midwest Inter-Library Center was opened in 1951 mainly as an inter-university venture. At its dedication ceremony Ernest C. Colwell<sup>(90)</sup> stressed the importance of inter-university co-operation and Keyes D. Metcalf<sup>(91)</sup> pointed to fruitful avenues of co-operation between university libraries. The centre itself has been described by its director<sup>(92)</sup>.

The University of London, with its plethora of independent libraries, presents a special problem in the field of co-operation. There have long been agreements between individual libraries regarding the coverage of special subjects and informal consultation between librarians on various topical questions, but no established machinery such as could be expected to lead to general systematic co-operation. In 1954 such machinery at last came into

being with the setting up of a standing conference of the librarians of the various libraries of the University, which, working through a series of sub-committees, is studying problems of common interest and benefit.

In a wider field the Joint Standing Committee on Library Co-operation, representing the Association of University Teachers and the librarians of university and kindred institutions, launched in 1951 a scheme designed to ensure as complete a coverage as possible of books, etc., published before 1800 in libraries willing to lend. The proposal fell into two halves: individual libraries were asked to co-operate in recording their holdings of material printed before 1700; and each library was invited to set aside a portion of its budget to purchase such works other than those by major writers published within some decade prior to 1801. The proposal originated from the professorial side of the committee and was inspired by the fact that, whilst the works of famous writers of past centuries were usually available, a great many others were not known to be available in a library willing to lend and it was nobody's business to buy them. These minor works, which were sold quite cheaply when they appeared on the market but were increasingly being bought up for American libraries, were held to be of great importance as the written record and embodiment of the nation's past.

The trend towards co-operation between American university libraries has already been mentioned in another context. Robert Vosper<sup>(93)</sup> has surveyed its progress during a decade and a half, and shown that bold activity and generous thinking has led to the centre of gravity of research materials having shifted from Europe to the United States, so that even European scholars must often now go to America to find the sources for the study of the history of their own countries. R. L. W. Collison<sup>(94)</sup> has described some aspects of this co-operation.

**STAFF.** An increased understanding of the importance of the position occupied by the university or college library within the academic community is reflected in the emphasis laid upon academic attributes in the senior members of the library staff. L. W. Sharp<sup>(95)</sup> has urged the need for the librarian to be attuned to the spirit of his university, and J. H. P. Pafford<sup>(96)</sup> has asserted that a man with a good degree, plus subject knowledge, an appreciation of literature, and library experience, is more effective than one with no more than examination qualifications in library techniques. The same emphasis on the academic qualities required in the university librarian, and the consequent granting of academic status, is echoed in the United States in a series of published papers<sup>(97-100)</sup>.

At Leeds an enhanced degree of equation between the senior library staff and the academic staff has been marked by approval in principle of the granting of leave in respect of specific research work in progress, thus actively encouraging the prosecution of academic research by senior members of the library staff. M.-A. Borgeaud<sup>(101)</sup> takes for granted the scholarly character and status of the librarian, and considers how he ought to divide his time between academic research and administrative duties. An American college president<sup>(102)</sup> believes that the librarian can play a useful role in the academic community by observing and guiding the reading habits of individual students.

Equation between the senior, graduate, library staff and the comparable

grades of teaching staff is the basis of the recommended salary scales which were agreed between the Library Association and the Association of University Teachers in 1952<sup>(103)</sup>. These scales represent a marked advance on those agreed previously between the two bodies. The University and Research Section of the Library Association subsequently adopted a formula for the junior grades of library staff in which their salaries were related to comparable grades of administrative staff of the university<sup>(104)</sup>. Thus a framework of salaries and status has been set up for the entire library staff, knitting it closely into the structure of the institution it serves. Although the recommendations concerning juniors do no more than codify existing practice in most universities, by no means all have yet implemented or even accepted in principle those governing the senior library staff. A similar position has been observed in the United States<sup>(97)</sup>.

Criticisms of the professional examinations of the Library Association as seen from the standpoint of the assistant, and particularly the graduate assistant, in the university library have been voiced by Edith M. Owen and P. Havard-Williams<sup>(105)</sup><sup>(106)</sup>. Meanwhile the value of experience in different libraries has been recognized in London by the institution of short-term exchanges of staff between the university library and certain college libraries, whilst a few libraries now offer student assistantships to give new graduates a year's practical experience before entering upon a full-time course in a school of librarianship.

**ADMINISTRATIVE ORGANIZATION.** Although academic qualifications in the senior library staff are recognized as indicative both of a close understanding of the library needs of student or research worker and of an educational attainment, often of linguistic ability, which will qualify its holder for university library work, it is still common in British university libraries for the graduate to be employed primarily in a functional capacity—as a cataloguer or as superintendent of a general reading room, for instance—rather than in a capacity in which the library will derive the maximum benefit from his subject knowledge. Subject specialization is the rule in German university libraries, perhaps mainly because of their independent character already described, but there seems to be no fundamental reason why a similar system of staff duties should not obtain in our own Redbrick university libraries. During the past few years seniors have in fact been given such a role at University College, London, where each assistant librarian is assigned to a group of related subjects, preferably those in which he has taken his degree, and is made responsible for every aspect of the administration of these subject libraries, collaborating with the teaching departments concerned; it is believed that this plan secures for the library detailed attention to its resources in each subject and at the same time offers the assistant librarian a more comprehensive training than would be the case if he were concerned only with one technical function.

Clarence Gorchels<sup>(107)</sup> has described the development of a similar specialization plan at the State College in Washington and has pointed to three problems which the introduction of such a staff structure brings in its train, particularly the difficulty of recruiting specialists in the services. The importance of subject qualifications is underlined by two other American librarians<sup>(97)</sup><sup>(108)</sup>.

Donald Coney<sup>(109)</sup> has urged that more attention be paid to the principles of management, and especially to personnel management; the application of

these principles may be increasingly important in America, where library staffs are generally larger than in Britain, but L. W. Sharp<sup>(114)</sup> has warned us against too great a use of business management methods and the rigid staff hierarchy they engender, though, as R. T. Richnell<sup>(110)</sup> has reminded us, staff must be used as efficiently as possible. In the United States Robert A. Downs<sup>(95)</sup> has asserted that if more than half the library staff consists of professional librarians, they are probably doing too much clerical routine work. Arthur M. McAnnally<sup>(111)</sup> has reviewed developments in large academic libraries in America during the past two decades and finds a wide acceptance of "bifurcated functional organization," the underlying principle of which is that all library services can be categorized as either readers' services or technical services. The administrative practice at Harvard has been described by Keyes D. Metcalf and Edwin F. Williams<sup>(112)</sup>; Wyllis E. Wright<sup>(113)</sup> has considered the technical processes particularly from the point of view of costing and library economics; and Raynard C. Swank<sup>(114)</sup> has made an appraisal of these processes as practised in the University of Illinois Library.

**BUILDINGS AND EQUIPMENT.** This chapter is not the place for any detailed or exhaustive discussion of university and college library buildings, but attention may usefully be drawn here to certain specific developments. Wilfrid Bonser<sup>(115)</sup> has discussed the principles of university library planning with special reference to plans for a new building at Birmingham. At University College, London, where the occupation of the restored main building by the library was looked upon only as a temporary measure, all the furniture was designed in single units of standard sizes so as to facilitate their subsequent reassembly elsewhere; the lighting in the reading rooms has been the subject of much anxious experimentation, and some success has been achieved in illuminating the faces of bookcases by the use of fluorescent tubes in louvred fittings.

In the United States Robert H. Muller<sup>(116)</sup> has published a survey of planning activity in university and college libraries, and Ernest J. Reece<sup>(117)</sup> has analysed recent trends in planning and equipment. Raynard C. Swank<sup>(117)</sup> has pointed to the importance of such features as browsing rooms. Aesthetic qualities are given equal prominence with functional efficiency in library construction, and the flexibility permitted by the use of modular planning, coupled with the open stacks adjacent to reading space introduced in some recent American university library buildings, has made an impression on German librarians now faced with reconstruction<sup>(118)</sup>.

#### INDIVIDUAL LIBRARIES<sup>(119)</sup>

**BRITISH ISLES.** The Bodleian Library was the subject of one of the series of special articles on the great libraries of Britain published in *The Times Literary Supplement*<sup>(120)</sup>, whilst its history during the century up to his own retirement has been dealt with in a scholarly volume by Sir Edmund Craster<sup>(121)</sup>. John Selden's library<sup>(122)</sup> and the collections of Oriental manuscripts<sup>(123)</sup> have each been surveyed. Christmas 1955 saw the completion of the reconstruction of the Old Library after nine years' work<sup>(124)</sup>. D. M. Sutherland<sup>(125)</sup> has described the library of the Taylorian and discussed the problems of obtaining European

publications. Nora M. Lock<sup>(126)</sup> has described the building up of a library in the social sciences at Nuffield College.

At Cambridge the University Library has had preliminary drawings for an extension drawn up by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott, whilst the library has also been described in *The Times Literary Supplement*<sup>(127)</sup>. A detailed survey of some fifty departmental libraries of the University of Cambridge has been published by D. W. Butcher<sup>(128)</sup>.

In the University of London Library the books most frequently borrowed were collected together in a lending library which was opened in March 1952; this new feature is so widely used that the Goldsmiths' Librarian has found it necessary to draw attention to the danger that this popularity may have been achieved at the price of the less effective use of the library as a whole through neglect of its general catalogue by undergraduates. At University College, London, John Wilks<sup>(129)</sup> delivered a witty but profound lecture on the influence exerted on the development of university libraries by his most distinguished predecessor as librarian, R. W. Chambers, an influence which has been perpetuated in the college library itself in the series of small subject reading rooms already mentioned. Much post-war restoration has failed to provide adequate accommodation, and a temporary solution for the housing of tens of thousands of volumes which had remained inaccessible since the war was finally in sight at the end of the period under review in the shape of a store half a mile from the College, whilst long-term plans envisaged a library of a million volumes and seating 700 readers. King's College has plans for the first stage of a badly needed new library building, but unfortunately the actual work has had to be postponed. The newly founded Institute of Commonwealth Studies has declared that its library policy is to serve as a guide to materials rather than to build up a large collection itself.

At Durham plans for a new building on Palace Green remain unfulfilled, but a new science library under the control of the university librarian has been established in an annexe to the existing library; a catalogue of local maps in the university library has been issued as the first in a series of library publications<sup>(130)</sup>. At Newcastle the extension planned for King's College library has been postponed and the immediate crisis met, as at University College, London, by the opening of an overflow store half a mile away.

B. S. Page<sup>(131)</sup> has described in detail the facilities offered by the libraries of the University of Leeds for the study of technology; and a catalogue has been published of the Novello Cowden Clarke collection, given to the University in 1953<sup>(132)</sup>. The mezzanine bookstack floor in the Brotherton Library, for which provision was made in the original plans, has been constructed, aluminium being used for the shelving and stanchions, with flooring of plastic material. Sheffield<sup>(133)</sup> was able to start work on its new library building at the end of 1955, and Birmingham was on the point of doing so. Leicester has opened a library extension, and Bristol a new departmental library at the horticultural laboratories. The newly fledged University of Hull has plans for a new library, and A. Cuming has written a pamphlet surveying the history of the library during its first twenty-seven years.

In Scotland a new university library building is planned for Edinburgh and an extension for King's College, Aberdeen. William S. Mitchell has surveyed the early history of the library of the University of Aberdeen<sup>(134)</sup> and described

some of the work of the earliest identified local bookbinder contained in its collections<sup>(135)</sup>. Philip Ardagh<sup>(136)</sup> has published an historical account of the university library of St. Andrews and D. W. Doughty<sup>(137)</sup> one of the library of University College, Dundee.

As the first stage of expansion, an intermediate floor has been constructed in the old reading room of the library of the Queen's University, Belfast, and Jessie B. Webster<sup>(138)</sup> has described its medical library. At Magee University College, Londonderry, the bulk of the stock has been concentrated in the renovated and much extended main library, whilst the reorganization on modern lines of this little-known college library, founded as long ago as 1865, has been described by T. MacCallum Walker<sup>(139)</sup> <sup>(140)</sup>. Its parent university, Trinity College, Dublin, has plans for a new library building.

It would be wrong to close this account without some reference to the library of a unique college now defunct but whose library has risen like a phoenix from the ashes: the Polish University College in London, which was opened after the war to cater for the needs of demobilized Polish servicemen, had fulfilled its purpose by 1953 and was closed, but with the support of the Ministry of Education the library has been enabled to continue as a separate entity to serve the *émigré* Polish community<sup>(141)</sup>.

BRITISH COMMONWEALTH. The Inter-University Council for Higher Education in the Colonies has continued to foster and promote university institutions in British territories overseas; not the least of its problems has been that of providing library facilities adequate for academic teaching and research in places far away from established libraries. The Council has been fortunate in having as its library adviser Richard Offer<sup>(142)</sup> <sup>(143)</sup>, who has given accounts of the scope of the work which he has so successfully guided, not only surveying the growth of individual libraries and discussing their problems of staffing and planning of buildings for tropical climates, but also describing the unique bibliographical service which he has been able to devise for these remote libraries from his small office in Bloomsbury. More detailed accounts have been published of three of these colonial libraries: that of the University College of the West Indies<sup>(144)</sup>, which occupied a new permanent building in 1952 after suffering grievous damage through a hurricane in the previous year; that of University College, Ibadan, Nigeria<sup>(145)</sup>, which has, surprisingly, an important collection of Arabic manuscripts<sup>(146)</sup>; and that of the University College of the Gold Coast<sup>(147)</sup>. The significance of these libraries lies in the fact that they are more than college libraries; they are to all intents and purposes local national libraries.

In South Africa a description has appeared of the music library of the University of Cape Town<sup>(148)</sup>, whilst Beatrix H. Robinow has surveyed non-European library facilities at the University of Natal<sup>(149)</sup> and given an account of its medical library<sup>(150)</sup>. The new building for the University of Melbourne has been the subject of a report by K. A. Lodewycks<sup>(151)</sup>, and accounts have appeared of the problems both of finance<sup>(152)</sup> and of cataloguing and classification<sup>(153)</sup> at the University of Tasmania. Phyllis L. Foreman's description of the libraries of the University of Toronto<sup>(153)</sup> can be brought up to date by noting the occupation of a new building with a capacity of a million volumes in 1955. Richard Pennington<sup>(152)</sup> has described the extension to the

library at McGill, and Hilda Gifford<sup>(154)</sup> has given an account of the library Carleton College.

FOREIGN LIBRARIES. Mainly because of the existence of thriving local publications, the libraries of certain parts of the United States have perhaps received undue prominence in the professional literature. This is naturally true of Harvard, many of whose libraries have been described in the *Harvard Library Bulletin*, an outstanding contribution in which has been the historical survey by Philip J. McNiff<sup>(155)</sup> of Harvard College library from 1638 up to the opening of the Lamont library for undergraduates and the consequent reconstruction of the Widener library which was completed in 1952; and the same applies in Illinois, where, *inter alia*, Robert H. Muller<sup>(156)</sup> has described the organization of the library of Southern Illinois University and William Jackson<sup>(157)</sup> and David Jolly<sup>(158)</sup> have each described different aspects of the library resources of Northwestern University. The development of the research resources of the University of Illinois library has been traced by Wayne Stewart Yenawine<sup>(159)</sup>. Haynes McMullen<sup>(160)</sup> has published an historical account of the University of Chicago libraries, and Edith M. Fox<sup>(161)</sup> has described the origins of the local history collection at Cornell. Robert L. Collison has published a series of short articles on the university libraries of California<sup>(162-164)</sup>.

The reorganization of the library of the National University of Mexico to serve also as the national library has been described by Robert A. Downs<sup>(165)</sup>. Raynard C. Swank<sup>(166)</sup> has reported on the rehabilitation programme, sponsored by the United States Government, of the war-torn library of the University of the Philippines.

In Germany E. Zimmermann<sup>(167)</sup> has reported on the reconstruction of the state and university library at Hamburg. At Kiel the famous library of the Institut für Weltwirtschaft has been re-established, and the rebuilding of the university library at Münster in Westphalia has been set against the background of its four centuries of history by Chr. Weber<sup>(168)</sup>. Waldemar Stössel<sup>(169)</sup> has continued up to 1955 Albert Predeek's earlier account of the history of the university library at Jena, a contribution to which has also been published by Karl Bulling<sup>(170)</sup> in the *Festschrift* to Joris Vorstius; in this same volume were published chapters in the history of the university library at Greifswald by Ernst Zunker<sup>(171)</sup> and in that of Halle by Fritz Juntke<sup>(172)</sup>. New libraries have been needed to serve three universities founded (or in one case refounded) in Germany since the war: W. Menn<sup>(173)</sup> has described the re-establishment of the university at Mainz; Richard Döcker<sup>(174)</sup> has given an account of the new library at Saarbrücken; and Edgar Breitenbach<sup>(175)</sup> and Wieland Schmidt<sup>(176)</sup> have each described the library of the Free University at Berlin, founded for political reasons because the original Berlin University emerged from the post-war partitioning of Germany in the Russian sector of the capital. Hugo Alker<sup>(177)</sup><sup>(178)</sup> has made two further contributions to the history of the university library at Vienna.

Nearer home, J. F. Vandcrheyden<sup>(179)</sup> has given an account of the reconstruction of the university library at Louvain, twice devastated in successive wars, and Lucie J. N. K. van Aken<sup>(180)</sup> has provided a bibliography of Dutch early printed books in the university library at Amsterdam. Dorothy Mackay

Quynn<sup>(181)</sup> has written a short historical and descriptive account of the library of the Sorbonne, and Mariano Burriel Rodríguez<sup>(182)</sup> one of the university library of Zaragoza. Wilfrid Bonser<sup>(183-185)</sup> has given the fruits of his busman's holidays in Italy in the form of notes on libraries, many of them academic libraries, in that country.

Scandinavian libraries have been the subject of papers by George Gray<sup>(186)</sup> on the national and university library at Oslo, by Gerhard Munthe<sup>(187)</sup> on the manuscript resources of the university library at Bergen, by Stig Boberg<sup>(188)</sup> on the new building of the city and university library at Göteborg, and by Charles Ellsworth<sup>(189)</sup> on the history and present resources of the university library of Uppsala. J. Vallinkoski<sup>(190)</sup> and Kaarlo Lausti<sup>(191)</sup> have described plans for the university library at Helsinki, whilst Arvo Seppälä<sup>(192)</sup> has surveyed the thirty-odd libraries of the university which are concerned with medicine. Eero Neuvonen<sup>(193)</sup> has described the new buildings for the university library at Turku.

In Russia F. Spirina<sup>(194)</sup> marked the second centenary of the Moscow University library by publishing an historical account of that library; F. Medvedchikov<sup>(195)</sup> has described that of Kazakstan at the end of its second decade; M. Andreev<sup>(196)</sup> has given an account of the Oriental manuscripts in the library of Kazan State University; and A. Karimullin<sup>(197)</sup> has described the science library of the same university on its 150th anniversary. Because of the lack of readily available information about them, reference must be made here to the very brief descriptions of the university libraries at Ankara, Istanbul and Teheran contained in E. J. Carter's account of his visit to Turkey and Iran to discuss Unesco programmes<sup>(198)</sup>.

## REFERENCES

1. BAXTER, E. G. A preliminary historical survey of developments in university libraries in Great Britain, 1919-1950. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (9) 1954, 330-335; 56 (10) 1954, 389-393.
  2. BRIGGS, G. H. English university library development and the New Zealand scene. *N.Z. Libs.* 18 (7) 1955, 153-159.
  3. COLLINS, C. W. The university library in New Zealand today. *Ibid.* 17 (3) 1954, 71-79.
  4. ROGERS, F. H. The university library today and tomorrow. *Ibid.* 7 (5) 1954, 116-119.
  5. JOLLEY, L. Two impressions of North American academic libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (6) 1951, 186-191.
  6. LUNDY, FRANK and RENOVO, KATHRYN R. Problems confronting university libraries. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (3) 1951, 217-240, 272.
  7. WHITE, CARL M. A turn in the course of the university library. *Ibid.* 12 (1) 1951, 314-320.
  8. ALS, GEORGES. Quelques aspects de l'enseignement aux Etats-Unis. *Revue de l'Université de Bruxelles [N.S.]* 4 (5) 1952, 392-409.
  9. BROUGH, KENNETH J. Scholar's workshop: evolving conceptions of library service. Urbana, University of Illinois Press, 1953. pp. xv, 197 (*Illinois contributions to librarianship*, 5.)
  10. MCMULLEN, HAYNES. American university libraries, 1955-2005. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (3) 1955, 286-290, 295.
  11. SUNDFELIN, C. E. The future of science libraries. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 40 (2) 1952, 147-152.
  12. CALMETTE, GERMAIN. Des collections universitaires de L'Ancien Régime aux bibliothèques universitaires françaises contemporaines. *Archives . . . de Belgique* 26 (1) 1955, 18-31.
  13. PERRIN, CHARLES-EDMOND. Réflexions d'un usager. *Cahiers des Bibliothèques de France* 1, 1954, 11-26.
- Evolution of the University or College Library*
14. SHARP, L. W. What do we look for in a university library? *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 27-38.
  15. MACKENNA, R. O. The university library service. *Ibid.* 1955, 11-15.
  16. VOSPER, ROBERT. Some responsibilities of the university. *Lib. World* 55 (644) 1954, 130-132.

17. SWANK, RAYNARD C. The educational function of the university library. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 37-48.
18. BURCHARD, JOHN E. The library's function in education. *Univ. of Tennessee: Lib. Lectures* 1-3, 1952, 33-47.
19. GWYNN, STANLEY E. The liberal arts function of the university library. *Lib. Q.* 24 (4) 1954, 311-321.
20. FUSSLER, HERMAN H., ed. The function of the library in the modern college: papers presented before the nineteenth annual conference of the Graduate Library School of the University of Chicago, June 14-18, 1954. Chicago, 1954. pp. vii, 117.
21. LUNDY, FRANK A. and RENFRO, KATHRYN R. New frontiers for the college library. *Lib. J.* 76 (13) 1951, 1091-1096.
22. PENNINGTON, RICHARD. The new McGill library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (8) 1955, 303-304.
23. BURR, VEKTOR. Die Stellung der Universitätsbibliothek im Bildungswesen der Gegenwart. *Mitteilungsblatt* (Nordrhein-Westfalen) 3 (1) 1952, 15-20.
24. KESSEN, A. De taak van de universiteitsbibliotheek. *Bibliotheekgids* 118 (1) 1955, 50-62.

#### *University and College Library Government*

25. TIEMANN, HERMANN. Das Problem der Universitätsbibliothek heute. *Nach. f. Wissen. Bib.* 6 (5) 1953, 166-177.
26. GÖBER, WILLI. Das Bibliothekswesen einer Universität als Einheit. *Bibliothek, Bibliothekar, Bibliothekswissenschaft: Festschrift Joris Vorstius* . . . Leipzig, Harrassowitz, 1954. pp. 154-171.
27. PREDEEK, ALBERT. Aus englischen Bibliotheken: Beobachtungen auf einer Studienreise. *Libri* 5 (3) 1955, 201-222.
28. MCANNALLY, ARTHUR M. Co-ordinating the departmental library system. *Lib. Q.* 21 (2) 1951, 113-119.
29. BROBERG, J. W. and DUNBAR, R. E. Current status of departmental libraries in chemistry. *J. Chem. Education* 28 (8) 1951, 435-436.
30. BENJAMIN, PHILIP M. The relation between the librarian and the college administration. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (4) 1955, 350-352, 359.
31. KIENZLE, ELIZABETH. The college librarian and the library committee. *Lib. Q.* 21 (2) 1951, 120-126.
32. WILSON, EUGENE H. Government and control of the college library. *Ibid.* 24 (4) 1954, 296-310.
33. ORR, ROBERT W. Public relations for college and university libraries. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 123-135.

#### *Finance*

34. BORCHARDT, D. H. The distribution of the library book fund: experience and proposals at [Tasmania] U[niversity]. *Aust. Lib. J.* 3 (2) 1954, 59-62.
35. PARKER, RALPH H. Libraries in an inflationary circle. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (4) 1951, 338-342, 348.
36. HAMLIN, ARTHUR T. The financial and economic status of research libraries. *Lib. Q.* 23 (3) 1953, 190-198.
37. FUSSLER, HERMAN H. Readjustments by the librarian. *Ibid.* 23 (3) 1953, 216-229.
38. MCNEAL, ARCHIE L. Financial problems of university libraries. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 15 (4) 1954, 407-410, 420.
39. FRODIN, REUBEN. Finance and the college library. *Lib. Q.* 24 (4) 1954, 374-381.
40. MCCARTHY, STEPHEN A. Financial support of college and university libraries. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 105-122.
41. MILLETT, JOHN D. Financing higher education in the United States: staff report of the Commission on Financing Higher Education [of the Association of American Universities]. New York, Columbia U.P., 1952. pp. 107.
42. METCALF, KEYES D. Why we need to be investigated. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 15 (4) 1954, 383, 387, 392.
43. The Harvard University Library: a graphic summary. *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 9 (1) 1955, 79-104.
44. Report on the Harvard University Library. *Ibid.* 9 (3) 1955, 293-299.
45. METCALF, KEYES D. Financial problems of university libraries: a proposal for a conference. *Ibid.* 8 (1) 1954, 5-13.

46. ASSOCIATION OF RESEARCH LIBRARIES. Problems and prospects of the research library. Ed. by Edwin E. Williams. New Brunswick, N.J., Scarecrow Press. Bailey Bros. and Swinfen, 1955. pp. viii, 181.
47. HOY, R. J. Maximum value from current expenditure: university libraries. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch, Weekend Conf. Papers 1952*, 26-37.
48. MIXER, CHARLES W. Insurance evaluation of a university library's collection. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 13 (1) 1952, 18-23, 29.

*Book Selections*

49. PAFFORD, J. H. P. Book provision in the British university library. *Steckert-Hagler Book News* 9 (1) 1954, 1-3.
50. SCOTT, J. W. Book stock: building and maintenance, II: university libraries. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch, Weekend Conf. Papers, 1954*, 13-18.
51. Acquisition policy: a symposium. [Papers by Herman H. Fussler, Robert Vosper, and Eileen Thornton.] *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (4) 1953, 363-372.
52. METCALF, KEYES D. and WILLIAMS, EDWIN E. Acquisition policies of the Harvard Library. *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 6 (1) 1952, 15-26.
53. OSBORN, ANDREW D. The development of library resources at Harvard: problems and potentialities. *Ibid.* 9 (2) 1955, 197-212.
54. BABB, JAMES T. The future of the research library and the book collector. Books and Publishing Lecture Series [Simmons College, Boston, Mass.], vol. 1, 1953-54, 1-5.
55. METCALF, KEYES D. When bookstacks overflow. *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 8 (2) 1954, 204-212.
56. FRELEY, CHARLES E. and ORR, ROBERT W. A decade of book storage at Iowa State College. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (1) 1951, 7-10.
57. SMITH, L. HERMAN and HIDDEN, ELEANOR H. Selection and organization of periodicals in the junior college library. *Ibid.* 12 (4) 1951, 343-345.
58. PERRY, J. W. The university library as a capital asset. *Month* 6, 1955, 46-53.

*Acquisitions Procedure*

59. GLADSTONE, JOAN M. Marginal punched cards as an order record. *Libri* 5 (1) 1955, 365-369.
60. SWEET, ARTHUR P. Forums in acquisition work. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (4) 1953, 396-401, 452.
61. HARTJE, GEORGE N. Centralized serial records in university libraries. *Serial Slants* 1 (3) 1951, 14-22.
62. HARLOW, NEAL. Serials conference at UCLA. *Ibid.* 2 (2) 1951, 13-16.

*Access and Service to Readers*

63. MACKENNA, R. O. Instruction in the use of libraries: a university library problem. *J. of Doc.* 11 (2) 1955, 65-72.
64. ALKER, HUGO. Die Universitätsbibliothek Wien: Geschichte, Organisation, Benützung. Wien, 1951. pp. 38; 2. vermehrte u. verbesserte Aufl., 1953. pp. 68.
65. SUBRAHMANYAM, D. Research in universities and libraries. *Ind. Lib.* 6 (3) 1951, 69-76.
66. BUSHNELL, GEORGE H. Reference work in university libraries. The reference librarian in university, municipal and specialized libraries, ed. . . . by James D. Stewart. Grafton, 1951, 19-52.
67. DUNLAP, LESLIE W. Service to readers. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 49-57.
68. RUSH, N. ORWIN. Service to readers of university libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (10) 1953, 313-315.
69. HENTON, MARGARET OWEN. An evaluation of college and university library handbooks for students. *ACRL Microcard Series* 17, 1954. pp. iii, 83.
70. HERNER, SAUL. Information gathering habits of workers in pure and applied science. *Ind. Eng. Chem.* 46 (1) 1954, 228-236.
71. PATTORD, J. H. P. University theses. *J. of Doc.* 7 (2) 1951, 119-122. [Supplementary note: 7 (4) 1951, 268.]
72. Index of theses accepted for higher degrees in the universities of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. 1, 1950-51, etc. Aslib, 1933, etc. [Annual.]
73. UNIVERSITY OF LEEDS. Publications and titles of theses. 1951-52, etc. Leeds, 1954, etc. [Annual.]
74. ALKER, LISI. Verzeichnis der an der Universität Wien approbierten Dissertationen, 1945-49. Wien, O. Kerry, 1952. pp. xi, 104.

75. ALKER, LISL. Verzeichnis der an der Universität Wien approbierten Dissertationen, 1937-1944. Wien, O. Kerry, 1954. pp. xi, 206.
76. TATE, VERNON D. Defrosting a frozen asset: the publication of doctoral dissertations. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (1) 1953, 35-38, 45.

#### Cataloguing and Classification

77. MORTIMER, R. S. Cataloguing in university libraries. *Cataloguing principles and practice: an inquiry . . . ed. . . . by Mary Piggott.* Library Association, 1954, 117-129.
78. PIGGOTT, MARY. Cataloguing practice in university and special libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (5) 1954, 160-166.
79. TOOTH, A. E. Cataloguing rules and practice: changes at University College, London, in anticipation of a revised code. *J. of Doc.* 12 (2) 1956, 88-93.
80. SCHLEPP, EMILY C. Short-cuts in serials cataloguing? *Serial Slants* 1 (4) 1951, 2-9.
81. HITCHCOCK, JENNETTE E. and FIELD, F. BERNICE. Yale meets its catalog. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (3) 1951, 220-229.
82. GARSIDE, KENNETH. The basic principles of the new library classification at University College, London. *J. of Doc.* 10 (4) 1954, 169-192.
83. HERRICK, MARY DARRAH. The development of a classified catalog for a university library. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (4) 1953, 418-424.
84. EATON, THELMA. Classification in college and university libraries. *Ibid.* 16 (2) 1955, 168-176.

#### Special Services

85. KLEBERG, TÖNNES. Some of the uses of microfilm in the library of the University of Uppsala. *J. of Doc.* 7 (4) 1951, 224-251.
86. MULLER, ROBERT H. Microfilming services of large university and research libraries in the United States. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (3) 1955, 261-266.
87. RENSHAW, MARY A. A university archive repository. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (3) 1954, 75-80.
88. HENKLEY, MARY ELIZABETH. The role of the college library in the preservation and organization of the archives of its own institution. *ACRL Microcard Series* 28, 1954. pp. [6], 80.

#### Inter-Library Co-operation

89. Repository libraries. [Announcement by SCONUL.] *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (2) 1953, 42.
90. COLWELL, ERNEST C. Inter-university co-operation. *Lib. Q.* 22 (1) 1952, 1-4.
91. METCALF, RAYES D. University libraries face the future. *Ibid.* 22 (1) 1952, 5-12.
92. ESTERQUEST, RALPH T. The Midwest Inter-Library Center in Chicago. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (9) 1954, 336-342.
93. VOSPER, ROBERT. Resources of university libraries. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 58-72.
94. COLLISON, R. L. W. Aspects of co-operation in university and special libraries in the United States of America. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1953, 43-49.

#### Staff

95. DOWNS, ROBERT A. Are college and university librarians academic? *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 15 (1) 1954, 9-14.
96. The university librarian as bookman and administrator: a symposium. [Papers by Patricia Paylor, Maurice F. Tauber, Lawrence Clark Powell, and Kathleen Campbell.] *Ibid.* 15 (3) 1954, 313-337.
97. THOMPSON, LAWRENCE S. Preparation and status of personnel. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 95-104.
98. PARKER, WYMAN W. College-library personnel. *Lib. Q.* 24 (4) 1954, 348-357.
99. LUNDY, FRANK A. Faculty rank of professional librarians. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (1) 1951, 11-19; 12 (2) 1951, 109-122.
100. BRANNAN, NANCY. Academic status for the professional library staff of the University of Illinois. *Univ. of Illinois Lib. School Occ. Papers* 34, 1953. pp. 11.
101. BORGEAUD, MARC-AUG. Attitude intellectuelle du bibliothécaire. *Nach. d. Vereinigung Schweizer Bib.* 29 (1) 1953, 2-5.
102. TAYLOR, HAROLD. Students, books and librarians. *ACRL Monographs* 13, 1955, 13-16.
103. Council notes. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (11) 1952, 367.
104. Council notes. *Ibid.* 55 (7) 1953, 227.

105. OWEN, EDITH M. and HARVARD-WILLIAMS, P. University librarians and professional education. *Lib. Rev.* 13 (97) 1951-2, 16-18.
106. HARVARD-WILLIAMS, P. The university assistant and the L.A. examinations. *Lib. Asst.* 45 (4) 1952, 59-62.

*Administrative Organization*

107. GORCHELS, CLARENCE. Making subject specialists available for service. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (4) 1955, 347-349.
108. SHERA, JESSE H. The role of the college librarian—a reappraisal. *ACRL Monographs* 13, 1955, 6-12.
109. CONEY, DONALD. Management in college and university libraries. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 83-94.
110. RICHNELL, R. T. The efficient use of staff: university libraries. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch, Weekend Conf. Papers*, 1952, 9-15.
111. MCANNALLY, ARTHUR M. Organisation of college and university libraries. *Lib Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 20-36.
112. METCALP, KEYES D. and WILLIAMS, EDWIN E. The administrative structure of the Harvard University Library. *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 7 (1) 1953, 5-18.
113. WRICHT, WYLLIS E. Some aspects of the technical processes. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 73-82.
114. SWANK, RAYNARD C. Report of selected problems of the technical departments of the University of Illinois Library. *Univ. of Illinois Lib. School Occ. Papers*, 42, 1955, pp. 42.

*Buildings and Equipment*

115. BONSER, WILFRID. University library buildings: university library planning. *Aslib Proc.* 3 (2) 1951, 59-62.
116. MUELLER, ROBERT H. Future library building trends among colleges and universities. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (1) 1951, 33-36.
117. REECE, ERNEST J. Building planning and equipment. *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 136-155.
118. LIEBERS, G. Der Gedanke der "flexibility" in neueren amerikanischen Bibliothekbau. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (5) 1952, 225-242.

*Individual Libraries*

119. Much of the information about individual libraries is taken from their annual reports or from the University and Research Library Notes published at intervals in *Lib. Assn. Rec.*

*British Isles*

120. Great British libraries, IV: the Bodleian. *T.L.S.* 53 (2747) Sept. 24, 1954, 616.
121. CRASTER, SIR EDMUND. History of the Bodleian Library, 1845-1945. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1952. pp. xii, 372; 12 plates, 3 plans.
122. BARRATT, D. M. The library of John Selden and its late history. *Bodleian Lib. Rec.* 3 (31) 1951, 128-142.
123. BEESTON, A. F. L. The Oriental manuscript collections of the Bodleian Library. *Ibid.* 5 (2) 1954, 73-79.
124. Described by J. N. L. Myres in *The Times*, Jan. 3, 1956.
125. SUTHERLAND, D. M. The Taylor Institution Library at Oxford. *Sixthert-Hazfuer Book News* 8 (7) 1954, 77-79.
126. LOCK, NORA M. The building up of a library in the social sciences at Nuffield College, Oxford. *J. of Doc.* 7 (1) 1951, 1-9.
127. Great British libraries, III: Cambridge: University Library. *T.L.S.* 53 (2721) March 26, 1954, 207.
128. BUTCHER, D. W. The departmental libraries of the University of Cambridge. *J. of Doc.* 7 (4) 1951, 221-243.
129. WILKS, JOHN. The influence of R. W. Chambers on the development of university libraries. (Second Chambers memorial lecture delivered at University College, London, 29 January 1953.) H. K. Lewis for the College, 1953. pp. 17.
130. TURNER, RUTH M., comp. Maps of Durham, 1576-1872, in the University Library, Durham, including some other maps of local interest. *Durham University Library publication* 1, 1954. pp. 40.
131. PACE, B. S. The facilities of the Leeds University libraries for the study of technology. *Aslib Proc.* 3 (2) 1951, 131-135.

132. UNIVERSITY OF LEEDS: BROTHERTON LIBRARY. The Novello Cowden Clarke collection. Leeds, 1955. pp. 19.
133. P[RYTON], S. A. The new Library. *Sheffield Univ. Gazette*, March 25, 1956, 1-5.
134. MITCHELL, WM. S. The common library of New Aberdeen, 1785. *Libri* 4 (4) 1954, 330-344.
135. MITCHELL, WM. S. The Aberdeen bindings of Francis Van Hagen, 1626-36. *Ibid.* 5 (2) 1954, 156-161.
136. ARDACH, PHILIP. The University Library of St. Andrews. *Librarian* 41 (10) 1952, 199-205.
137. DOUGHTY, D. W. The library of University College, Dundee: its history, 1883-1953. *J. of Doc.* 10 (3) 1954, 113-122.
138. WEBSTER, JESSIE B. The medical library of Queen's University, Belfast. *Bull. Med. Sect. Lib. Assn.* 21 (Dec. 1954), 2-3.
139. WALKER, T. MACCALLUM. New beginnings. *Librarian* 42 (4) 1953, 65-67.
140. WALKER, T. MACCALLUM. Magee University College. *An Leabharlann* 12 (3) 1954, 89-95.
141. DANILEWICZ, MARIA L. "Operation survival": a critical year for Polish readers in Great Britain. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (4) 1954, 126-127.

#### British Commonwealth

142. OFFOR, RICHARD. University libraries in the British colonies and the Sudan. *Libri* 5 (1) 1954, 54-75.
143. OFFOR, RICHARD. The development of university libraries in British overseas territories. *Aslib Proc.* 6 (3) 1954, 151-158.
144. HOLDSWORTH, H. University College of the West Indies Library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (9) 1953, 278-281.
145. PERRY, RUTH. Nigeria's university library. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (3) 1955, 257-260, 269.
146. KENSDALE, W. E. N. The Arabic manuscript collection of the library of the University College of Ibadan, Nigeria. *WALA News* 2 (2) 1955, 21-25.
147. WALKER, A. ELISE. The University College of the Gold Coast library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (5) 1954, 166-170.
148. PERRY, J. W. and PATERSON, MRS. W. M. The music library of the University of Cape Town. *S. Afr. Libs.* 23 (1) 1955, 3-6.
149. ROBINOW, BEATRIX H. Non-European library facilities at the University of Natal. *Ibid.* 21 (4) 1954, 110-112.
150. ROBINOW, BEATRIX H. The medical library, University of Natal. *Ibid.* 23 (2) 1955, 43-46.
151. LODIEWYCKE, K. A. Melbourne University: report on library building plans. *Aust. Lib. J.* 4 (2) 1955, 57-62.
152. BORCHARDT, D. H., MARSHALL, M. J. and DUNN, L. J. University of Tasmania library in a state of Bliss. *Ibid.* 4 (2) 1955, 48-52.
153. FOREMAN, PHYLLIS L. The University of Toronto libraries. *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 35 (1) 1951, 9-13.
154. GIFFORD, HILDA. Carleton College library. *Can. Lib. Assn. Bull.* 8 (5) 1952, 130-135.

#### Foreign Libraries

155. MCNIFF, PHILIP J. Public service in the Widener Library. *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 8 (2) 1954, 228-232.
156. MÜLLER, ROBERT H. The library of Southern Illinois University. *Illinois Libs.* 33 (4) 1951, 175-179.
157. JACKSON, WILLIAM. The development of library resources at Northwestern University. *Univ. of Illinois Lib. School Occ. Papers* 26, 1952, 1-11.
158. JOLLY, DAVID. The libraries of Northwestern University library. *Illinois Libs.* 36 (1) 1954, 21-28; 36 (2) 1954, 81-88; 36 (3) 1954, 114-121.
159. YENAWINE, WAYNE STEWART. The influence of scholars on research library development at the University of Illinois. *Dissertation Abstracts* 15 (5) 1955, 835-836.
160. McMULLENS, HAYNES. Administration of the University of Chicago libraries, 1892-1928. *Lib. Q.* 22 (4) 1952, 325-334; 23 (1) 1953, 23-32.
161. FOX, EDITH M. The genesis of Cornell University's collection of regional history. *Amer. Arch.* 14 (2) 1951, 105-116.
162. COLLISON, R. L. W. Library work at an American university. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (2) 1952, 169-172.
163. COLLISON, ROBERT L. The University of California library at Berkeley. *Lib. World* 34 (625) 1952, 5-6.
164. COLLISON, ROBERT L. A library with a problem. *Ibid.* 54 (626-627) 1952, 23-24.

165. DOWNS, ROBERT A. Mission in Mexico. *ALA Bull.* 46 (10) 1952, 328-329, 349-350.
166. SWANK, RAYNARD C. Report on the library of the University of the Philippines. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (3) 1955, 247-250.
167. ZIMMERMANN, E. Der Umbau des Gebäudes der Staats- und Universitäts-Bibliothek Hamburg. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (4) 1952, 168-179.
168. WEBER, CHR. Der Wiederaufbau der Universitätsbibliothek Münster i W. *Ibid.* 4 (4) 1951, 117-130.
169. STÖSSEL, WALDEMAR. Die Universitätsbibliothek Jena 1950-1955. *Z. f. B.* 69 (9-10) 1955, 331-343.
170. BULLING, KARL. Aus der Jenaer bibliothekarischen Tätigkeit Johann Samuel Erschs. Bibliothek, Bibliothekar, Bibliothekswissenschaft: Festschrift Joris Vorstius... Leipzig, Harrassowitz, 1954, 296-315.
171. ZUNKER, ERNST. Der Greifswalder "Medizinische Lesezirkel" vom Jahre 1802. *Ibid.* 415-431.
172. JUNTKE, FRITZ. Das Reglement für die Bibliothek der Universität zu Halle vom 20. Mai 1823. *Ibid.*, 323-342.
173. MENN, W. Die Universitätsbibliothek Mainz. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (4) 1952, 142-148.
174. DÖCKER, RICHARD. Die Universitäts-Bibliothek in Saarbrücken. *Architektur u. Wohnform* [Stuttgart] 63 (6) 1955, 236-243.
175. BREITENBACH, EDGAR. Free University library. *Lib. J.* 79 (22) 1954, 2355-2359.
176. SCHMIDT, WIFLAND. Die Universitätsbibliothek der Freien Universität Berlin. *Libri* 4 (4) 1954, 293-301.
177. ALKER, HUGO. Geschichte der Sachkatalogisierung an der Universitätsbibliothek Wien 1774-1954. Festschrift Joris Vorstius, 118-132.
178. ALKER, HUGO. Das Gebäude der alten Wiener Universitätsbibliothek in der Postgasse. *Biblos* 4 (3) 1955, 89-107.
179. VANDERHEYDEN, J. F. De Leuvense Universiteitsbibliotheek thans. *Bibliotheks-gids* 28 (4) 1952, 67-70.
180. AKEN, LUCIE J. N. K. VAN. Een inventaris van oude drukken. *Bibliotheksleven* 36 (2) 1951, 49-50.
181. QUINN, DOROTHY MACKAY. The Sorbonne library, Paris. *Sch. Lib. Rev.* 5 (6) 1952, 204-205, 237.
182. RODRÍGUEZ, MARIANG BURRIEL. Biblioteca universitaria de Zaragoza. *Bolet. Dir. Cen.* 4 (25) 1955, 8-12.
183. BONSER, WILFRID. Notes on some libraries in the north of Italy. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (2) 1951, 43-49.
184. BONSER, WILFRID. The libraries of Florence. *Ibid.* 54 (10) 1952, 324-329.
185. BONSER, WILFRID. Medical (and other) libraries in Rome. *Ibid.* 57 (11) 1955, 431-434.
186. GRAY, GEORGE. The National and University Library, Oslo. *Lib. World* 55 (642) 1953, 83-85.
187. MUNTHE, GERHARD. Samlingene av manuskripter, diplomater og dokumenter i Universitetsbiblioteket i Bergen. *Bibliotek og Forskning Årbok* 4, 1955, 93-99.
188. BOBERG, STIG. Göteborg stadsbiblioteks nybyggnad. *Bogens Verden* 36 (9) 1954, 510-515.
189. ELLSWORTH, CHARLES. Carolina rediviva, Uppsala University library. *Books* 295, 1955, 158-161.
190. VALLINEOSKI, J. Kansalliskirjastomme saa lisätiloja. *Kirkjastolehti* 47 (7) 1954, 156-157.
191. LAUSI, KAARLO. Helsingin Yliopiston Ylioppolaskunnan kirjaston uusi talo. *Ibid.* 48 (9) 1955, 210-216.
192. SEPPÄLÄ, ARVO. Library activity in the medical departments of the University of Helsinki. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (3) 1955, 266-275.
193. NEUVONEN, EERO. Turun Yliopiston kirjaston uudet rakennukset. *Kirkjastolehti* 48 (1) 1955, 2-9.
194. SPIRINA, E. [The second centenary of the Moscow University library.] *Bibliotekar'* (U.S.S.R.) 1955 (3) 28-33.
195. MEDVEDCHIKOV, F. [The twentieth anniversary of the library of the University of Kazakstan.] *Ibid.* 1954 (10), 41-43.
196. ANDREFF, M. Vostochnye rukopisi Biblioteki Kazamskogo Gosudarstvennogo Universiteta. *Ibid.* 1951 (5), 29-31.
197. KARIMULLIN, A. [The 150th anniversary of the science library of Kazan University.] *Ibid.* 1954 (10) 35-40.
198. CARTER, E. J. Head of UNESCO Libraries Division visits Turkey and Iran. *Unesco Bull.* 5 (7) 1951, 241-244.

## Chapter 4

### TECHNICAL COLLEGE LIBRARIES

By G. H. WRIGHT, A.L.A., *Technical Librarian, Hertfordshire County Council*

**D**URING the past ten years scientific and technical education has steadily grown in importance in Britain since the demand for scientists, technologists and technicians has exceeded the supply. Additional training centres became vital and the local education authorities, with the support of the Ministry of Education, began to expand their provision for technical education. New buildings and extensions for pre-war colleges, new colleges and more advanced training courses were provided. In a Memorandum on Higher Technological Education, issued by the Association of Teachers in Technical Institutions (A.T.T.I.)<sup>(1)</sup> 1955, it was claimed that by 1953 these technical colleges were making contributions of comparable magnitude to the universities in the provision of higher technological education.

This rapid expansion in technical colleges produced many problems, including a desire from some colleges to award their own form of degree. Successive governments studied the problems involved and in 1956 a policy for the future was defined in a Government White Paper on Technical Education (Cmd. 9703)<sup>(2)</sup>. Prior to the publication of the White Paper, the National Advisory Council on Education for Industry and Commerce had recommended that a new qualification be recognized for students attending technical colleges. The Minister of Education approved this suggestion and an independent body, the National Council for Technological Awards, was formed. For librarians the importance of this Council lies in paragraph 14 of a memorandum it has issued on *The recognition of courses in technical colleges leading to the Diploma in Technology*<sup>(3)</sup>. This states simply but concisely, "the college will be expected to provide good library facilities and good social amenities." The Government White Paper in paragraphs 105 and 106 gives a clearer presentation of the Minister's views on what constitutes "good library facilities."

When founded, only very few technical colleges had library provision and the subsequent addition of a library in those colleges without them has been slow<sup>(4)</sup>. The 1938 Report of a Joint Committee on Libraries in Technical Institutions<sup>(5)</sup> stated that "the lack of library provision was in many cases due not to the parsimony of the local education authorities but that the importance of the library had not been stressed by the Principal nor his staff." Sixteen years later, in 1954, the London and Home Counties Branch of the Regional Advisory Council for Higher Technological Education issued a report, and subsequently an appendix to the report, on "Libraries in Colleges of Further Education"<sup>(6)</sup>. This was followed in 1955 by a similar document issued by the Southern Regional Council for Further Education<sup>(6)</sup><sup>(7)</sup>. Each surveyed and made recommendations for library provision in the colleges within their regions.

The first gave definite suggestions for stock, size, expenditure and staff; the second provided more general recommendations, particularly in relation to library provision in the smaller college. Both illustrated clearly the paucity of library provision within their regions.

Nevertheless during the last five years there has been a steady improvement in the number of libraries established in the colleges. In 1938 only twenty-one full-time librarians were employed, but now there are eighty, and advertisements for qualified librarians to administer new libraries appear regularly.

The increase in the number of qualified librarians entering this field of librarianship, and the similarity of the problems they faced, created a desire for mutual discussion. Through the efforts of a small group of college librarians in the London area, a general meeting was called in 1954 and, subsequently, a new sub-section to the University and Research Section of the Library Association was formed for Colleges of Technology and Further Education.

The constitution of this Sub-Section states that the "object of the Sub-Section shall be to foster the formation, growth and usefulness of libraries in Colleges of Technology and Further Education. It shall promote this object by organizing conference meetings and social intercourse at Library and Educational Conferences, and by publication." As membership covers the whole of the United Kingdom and as in most cases the librarian works single-handed, it has not been easy to arrange general meetings. This being the case, the Sub-Section issues a quarterly Bulletin<sup>(7)</sup> to provide members with a forum for the exchange of information. Each issue contains statistics for at least two college libraries and, whenever possible, detailed plans are reproduced. Thus plans have appeared for Dartford, Birmingham and Manchester Colleges of Technology and also for the Northampton Polytechnic. A bibliography of articles, illustrations and comments relating to college libraries is included with each issue.

During 1955 the Sub-Section Committee prepared a memorandum describing library provision within the colleges and suggesting how it could be improved. This document, as finally approved by the Library Association Council, was sent by the Council to the Scientific and Technical Information Committee of the Advisory Council on Scientific Policy, Office of the Lord President<sup>(8)</sup>. This memorandum achieved widespread publicity and comments appeared in *The Times*, *Nature*, *Engineering*, and many other journals. A further document published by the Sub-Section in 1957 gives basic recommendations for libraries in colleges of advanced technology, regional technical colleges and those area technical colleges which have advanced full-time or sandwich courses<sup>(9)</sup>.

There is little available information regarding libraries in technical colleges overseas, although in 1954 the United States Department of Health, Education and Welfare published a pamphlet, *Statistics of libraries in institutions of higher education, 1951-52*<sup>(9)</sup>, which gave statistics for forty-one technological schools. Only one received less than 100 periodicals but three received more than 2,000 and held between 200,000 to 500,000 volumes. In England the highest number of periodicals taken by one college of technology is Manchester, which receives 500 and holds over 40,000 volumes.

Technical colleges affiliated to universities were approached during 1954 with a view to setting up a special section of IFLA for technical college

libraries. As reported by Dr. E. Hemlin, of the Library of Chalmers Tekniska Hogskola<sup>(10)</sup>, the idea was favourably received. The suggested activities of the new section were: studies of training and recruitment, relationships with university libraries, exchange of students, accession lists and publications (three reprints have been issued), international loans, buildings, service to industry, preparation of lists of forthcoming literature, classification, cataloguing and union catalogues.

FUNCTION. The functions of the library as outlined in the L. A. Memorandum<sup>(8)</sup> are:

- (a) To provide a comprehensive selection of literature covering the requirements of the college syllabus, together with a selection from the humanities to help a student to broaden his reading beyond his particular course.
- (b) To enable students to be trained in seeking, collating and applying information for themselves.
- (c) To provide for the teaching staff a substantial nucleus of the more advanced and specialist works, together with those periodicals necessary to enable them to keep abreast of latest developments in their subjects.
- (d) To provide an information service for both students and staff to assist them in their studies and research activities.

It was also pointed out that "such libraries could make a useful contribution to the technical information service for industry." The Government White Paper<sup>(2)</sup> is more definite on this subject: "It [the College Library] can also, however, give valuable service by making its resources available to local industry and by acting as a centre for the supply of technical information and the exchange of technical ideas. In this way the library can make some return for the release of part-time teachers from industry, which is so vital to the Government's plans."

The idea that a technical college library can provide an information service for industry has aroused lively comment. The issue was debated in the correspondence column of *Engineering* by G. H. Wright and R. Rates<sup>(15)</sup>. Later an article on the subject by G. H. Wright was published in *Engineer*<sup>(16)</sup>, which indicated not only how some college libraries were assisting industry but why more attention should be given to the value of the contribution the college can make in this direction.

In November 1955 Dr. Urquhart read a paper at Chaucer House under the provocative title "Should a new public technical library service be based on the Technical Colleges?"<sup>(18)</sup> and the paper was widely publicized and discussed. The *Library Review* obtained the views of Dr. E. A. Savage, L. L. Arden, W. Caldwell and W. A. Munford and published their comments as a symposium<sup>(19)</sup>. Later in 1956 Dr. Urquhart read a paper outlining his views on the subject at the annual conference of the Association of Technical Institutions<sup>(20)</sup>. His first paper outlined sixteen propositions for discussion but his paper to the A.T.I. was a practical outline of the importance and value of the service as it affected technical education. Most librarians will agree that no one library can hope to give an adequate information service to industry. Such a

service can only be possible on a mutually co-operative basis within a defined region. In such a co-operative system the technical college library has a part to play.

Turning from theory to practice, it is interesting to note that some technical colleges in Sweden do provide an information service to industry and gain considerably from the financial contributions that industry offers in return. Meanwhile in England, Hertfordshire<sup>(21)</sup> took the first step by appointing a Technical Librarian to inaugurate a technical library service for the county, based on their colleges of technology and further education.

**ADMINISTRATION.** The college librarian is normally directly responsible to the Principal for the administration of his department. Library committees are rare. Where they exist they may consist of heads of all departments together with the Principal and librarian or, instead of the heads of each department, a representative from the teaching staff may be nominated. At the Regent Street Polytechnic<sup>(22)</sup> the Library Advisory Committee consists of representatives of the governing body and teaching staff, the Men's and Women's Councils, the Director of Education, the secretary of the Polytechnic and the Librarian, who acts as clerk to the committee. These committees mainly consider problems relating to the function of the library within the college, the service it provides, or the purchase of expensive acquisitions. Book selecting is not dealt with by these committees nor do they interview or appoint library staff. Meetings may be held regularly or, as in Manchester, at the request of the librarian.

**FINANCES.** The annual financial vote varies enormously between colleges<sup>(14)</sup>. In the 1938 report<sup>(4)</sup> it was suggested that the annual allocation for provision of books, periodicals and binding should be 3s. per head for the first 2,000 students and 2s. per head for each subsequent student. At 1955 valuation this was assessed at 8s. and 5s. 4d. respectively. The London and Home Counties Regional Advisory Council Report<sup>(5)</sup> suggested figures according to size and scope of the college, ranging from £800 for colleges doing mainly part-time work with recording of 250,000 student hours, to £2,000 for those with 1,000,000 student hours of which two-thirds are full time.

The Sub-Section of Colleges of Technology and Further Education have proposed another formula for colleges where advanced work is in progress. Full-time staff, postgraduate and research students are assessed at fifteen points each, part-time staff five points each, university standard ten points per 1,000 student hours, advanced standard six points per 1,000 student hours, school standard two points per 1,000 student hours. Each point is valued at 5s. 6d. at 1956 valuation. In a survey of the principal college libraries by the Sub-Section, the average overall expenditure was 10s. 2d. per head, the lowest being 4s. 1d., the highest £1. The various formulas that have been proposed were adequately discussed in an article by E. G. Baxter published in the *L.A. Record*<sup>(13)</sup>.

The librarian is expected to estimate his requirements for each financial year. In most cases the financial year does not coincide with the academic year. Some libraries, such as Bolton Technical College, prefer to allocate sums of money to each department to spend on books. This may be wise where demands exceed the purchasing power available, but if this system is adopted, a substantial proportion must be left to be spent at the librarian's discretion. It is more usual

for the librarian to be responsible for the whole vote, although he may still choose to allocate proportions to each department as a guide for himself to ensure a balanced stock.

Three colleges have benefited during the last five years from the generosity of the Carnegie Trust. The library at Kumasi College of Technology<sup>(24)</sup> received a grant for \$10,000 and special grants have been made to the West of Scotland Agricultural College to establish a branch library and to the Royal Technical College, Glasgow, for the purchase of books for the library.

**BOOK SELECTION.** The 1938 report stated that the librarian "cannot possibly judge of the usefulness or otherwise of the specialist books required in connection with the varied aspects of its work." This is interpreted in some quarters to mean that the librarian will not be responsible for book selection. This is opposed by most librarians. The need for close co-operation between subject specialist and librarian is paramount, but the final decision on purchase should be left with the librarian<sup>(25)</sup>. In dealing with reference and also the less advanced stock, the teaching staff will rely very much on the judgment of an experienced librarian, and in some cases balanced stock can only be achieved by the supervision of the librarian.

In the last two or three years concern has been expressed at the narrow field of study offered to the technologist, and Principals have given much more consideration to the introduction of the humanities into the curriculum. A special committee dealing with this approach discussed the importance of the library and published their findings under the title *Liberal education in a technical age* (1955)<sup>(26)</sup>. An account of Hatfield Technical College Library by M. Argles<sup>(27)</sup> also illustrated how a library can assist in broadening the outlook of technical students. The library of Bath Technical College may be instanced as showing a predominately non-technical bias in its small stock of approximately 1,000 volumes with the intention of providing a wider cultural background than the normal college work allows.

Most writers and, indeed, all the principal reports on libraries have stressed that college libraries will be predominantly technical and that students should be encouraged to utilize their public library for more general reading. Nevertheless it is agreed that books on the social, economical and historical aspects of the students' work should be included. Apart from the bookstock some college libraries, such as Battersca, Manchester and Northern Polytechnic, house their M.Sc. theses. A few technical college libraries have opened their doors to the general public and obtained a library licence to secure a 10 per cent discount under the Net Book Agreement. Others, such as those administered by the L.C.C., purchase books through a central purchasing department administered by the Council. This deals directly with the publishers and frequently obtains favourable discounts. As financial resources are limited, any means of increasing the vote is valuable, but a rigid application of such a system can be harmful since many books should be seen before purchase to aid selection and, for this, co-operation with the publisher and bookseller is necessary. Freedom for the librarian to purchase his stock direct makes possible a closer relationship with the bookseller and generally provides a quicker and more efficient service. The bookseller's interest in the proposed expansion of technical college libraries has been discussed by W. Norman in the *Bookseller*<sup>(28)</sup>.

ACCESS. Open access is favoured in all cases where full-time librarians are employed, although a few retain glass doors so that the room may be available for private study until late in the evening when, owing to shortage of staff, supervision is impracticable.

Not all colleges allow students to borrow. Birmingham College of Art and Rugby College of Technology and Art are for reference use only. At Portsmouth students may only borrow on the written request of a lecturer. Other colleges allow limited loans. In colleges where borrowing is allowed, all important textbooks are duplicated so that a copy will always be available in the library. Books may also be withdrawn from the lending stock if the demand exceeds the supply, so that all students will have the opportunity to refer to them.

CLASSIFICATION AND CATALOGUES. The Dewey Decimal Classification is favoured but others, such as Poplar Technical College and Birmingham College of Art<sup>(31)</sup>, use the U.D.C. In many cases where Dewey is used, the U.D.C. has been adopted for those subjects where detailed classification is required. The Bliss classification has not found the same favour in these colleges as it has in Institutes of Education. Nevertheless it has been adopted successfully at the Kumasi College of Technology and the City of London College.

Classified card catalogues with author and subject indexes are used extensively. Whilst the L.A.-A.L.A. Joint Code is normally followed, bibliographical data is kept to the minimum, though annotations and added entries are considered essential. Some periodical indexing is carried out in many London colleges. Such entries are compiled on coloured cards to distinguish them within the catalogue. Many accession and periodical lists are produced and circulated not only within the college but to co-operating libraries. Bibliographies and select reading guides are also issued by most libraries as and when requested.

USE OF LIBRARIES. Instruction in the use of the library<sup>(32)</sup> <sup>(33)</sup> and the need to ensure that the student is able to use the catalogue and other bibliographies has been the concern of all librarians in this field. Many furnish a printed or duplicated guide of the library to every student. At the London School of Printing and Graphic Arts and Birmingham and Gloucester technical colleges, one general guide for all students has been produced, but at Westminster and Watford technical colleges, separate guides with a departmental subject bias are favoured. Apart from printed guides, introductory talks are generally given to students at the beginning of the autumn session. Close co-operation with all lecturers is vital if the student is to be encouraged to make full use of the service offered. Occasionally, as at Westminster and Bolton, special talks are given by the librarian to senior students on the material and sources of information on their trade or profession.

The librarian may be expected to arrange exhibitions either in or outside the library, or at least be consulted in the provision of technical literature and booklists for display. The trade and technical Press have commented on the exhibitions arranged at Westminster Technical College library<sup>(34)</sup> <sup>(35)</sup> every fortnight during term time over the past two years. Co-operation in the provision of equipment is readily forthcoming from industry for this purpose.

**EQUIPMENT.** Microfilm provision is still slight. A Recordak library reader is in use at Rugby; a V.C. Portable microfilm reader at Birmingham College of Commerce; a Kodak A.H.3 at Manchester and North-Western Polytechnic and a French "Kangaroo" also at Manchester. Microcards are being used at Manchester, both to obtain back runs of periodicals and to save space with little-used research materials. Over 7,000 cards held represent nine titles<sup>(43)</sup>. The filing and issuing of films, film-strips and lantern slides may also be the responsibility of the librarian. Such items are purchased by teaching departments and not out of the library budget.

Many libraries possess equipment for reflex printing whilst at the same time they will make extensive use of the Science Library photocopying service. Where a drawing office is required for a teaching department, photocopying equipment may be needed, in which case it is normally made available for the rest of the college. No college library possesses a bindery, though where a department with a bindery exists, arrangements can sometimes be made for the more expensive books to be bound in the college.

**CO-OPERATION.** Only one or two colleges are reluctant to co-operate with other libraries; indeed, during the last five years the desire to co-operate has been one of the most outstanding features of this field of librarianship. Apart from membership of Aslib and the Regional Bureau, many are members of the Science Library Supplementary Service, outliers of the N.C.L. and subscribe to H. K. Lewis.

A union catalogue of periodicals has been compiled for London and Middlesex colleges. In Hertfordshire the colleges are members of the Hertfordshire Special Library Group, for which, as in the North-Western area, an excellent union catalogue of periodicals is available. Some colleges, such as Manchester and Northern Polytechnic, have their holdings listed in B.U.C.O.P. or in the Aslib special subject group lists. Meanwhile librarians in colleges of art are at present discussing the possibilities of mutually co-operating in the production of adequate indexes to cover the field of industrial design.

Every effort is made to co-operate in such local schemes as Cicris<sup>(36)</sup>, and to maintain good relationship with other local libraries. At Battersea a branch library near the Polytechnic stocks duplicates of volumes which the Polytechnic librarian knows will be in great demand. Such mutual balancing of the stock is obviously desirable.

The United States Book Exchange and the British National Book Centre have assisted many colleges to acquire useful sets of periodicals needed to assist staff and students with the more advanced work<sup>(37)</sup>. Like other libraries, many receive gifts both in material and money. At Coventry the Textile Society and Pharmaceutical Association have presented the library with collections of books. At Manchester some local industries have subscribed for important acquisitions.

**STAFF.** The qualification, status and salary of librarians has been the subject of a memorandum issued by the L.A. in 1954<sup>(38)</sup>. In publishing their recommendations the L.A. sought the co-operation of the Association of Technical Institutions, the Association of Principals in Technical Institutions and the Association of Teachers in Technical Institutions, and Mr. W. A. Munford<sup>(39)</sup> read a paper on the subject at the annual general meeting of the

A.T.I. in 1953. In the 1938 report (4) the joint committee had agreed that the librarian "should always be regarded as equal in status to members of the teaching staff and be paid in the Burnham Technical Scale." The L.A. adopted this recommendation in principle but gave more specific recommendations in respect of qualifications and substituted the national salary grades for local authorities' services in place of the Burnham Technical Scales. Prior to the appearance of the L.A. recommendations, only six colleges employed librarians on the Burnham Technical scales: Birmingham, Cardiff, Coventry, Glasgow, Leicester and Wigan. Leicester subsequently converted to the national salary grades.

As the recent L.A. memorandum illustrated, salaries are far from consistent, and it seems essential that a separate salary scale must be negotiated at a higher level if the standard of library service in these colleges is to be improved. Probably one of the most important steps in establishing the principle of grading according to the standard of work involved has been the award in 1956 of a higher salary scale for librarians in certain colleges administered by the L.C.C.

In Kent the college librarians are part of the county library staff. In Hertfordshire, although an integrated library service for the county has been envisaged, the technical librarian and library staff are members of the county education department. The county library of Durham is also responsible for staffing the County Farm Institute at Houghall (41). In only two colleges, Stockton and Hatfield, does the librarian attend meetings of the heads of departments. At Hatfield the librarian is also a member of the college committee, dealing with internal administrative matters, and a member of the Steering Committee of the Board of Governors.

**BUILDINGS.** Apart from the general reports already mentioned, the only official guidance regarding accommodation is that given in the Ministry of Education Building Bulletin No. 5 (42). "A library is indispensable in a college of further education. Its size may range from about 1,000 square feet for colleges with a student capacity of 1,500 to 2,000 square feet for colleges with 3,000 places. In addition to this allowance should be made for storage and supervision and for a small and preferably separate area for the receipt of new books and the repair of old ones. A small office for the librarian may also be needed. A reading room for journals and periodicals may sometimes be required so that the library itself can be used wholly for private study."

Probably in no other field have so many libraries been erected during the last five years. At Manchester (43) (44) the new library is in three parts with a total floor area of 7,300 square feet. The stack in two decks covers 2,000 square feet, the main library is 2,750 square feet and the reading room 2,550 square feet. The library and reading room accommodate 150 readers, and there are three lounge chairs as extras close to the periodical racks, which are of the pigeon-hole type and provide space for 500 periodical titles. The main library will contain about 10,000 volumes of modern books and the last ten years of most periodicals.

The Birmingham College of Technology (45) is 1,826 square feet with a stack-room of 1,600 square feet, workroom and librarian's office. Periodical stands display periodicals vertically in tiers with storage space beneath in cupboards. An unusual design has been provided at Dartford Technical

College<sup>(46)</sup>, where the library is octagonal in shape. Entrance is by means of a staircase from the main entrance hall to the control hub in the centre of the library. Roof lighting allows maximum wall space for shelving.

The library at Hatfield Technical College<sup>(27)</sup> (47), opened in 1952, is above the main entrance hall covering an area of 1,800 square feet. There are two small bays, one for reference stock and one for periodicals. There is also a combined office and issue counter and a very small store-room. All furniture and shelving is in African walnut and artificial lighting is provided by large fluorescent "mattresses." The capacity is about 13,500 books. A new extension is now planned for this library of 3,000 square feet providing a total capacity of 40,000 books.

Liverpool College of Commerce library<sup>(48)</sup> (49), which occupies the top floor of the college extension erected in 1954, is 2,116 square feet, providing accommodation for 8,000 books and forty-four readers. A periodical stand and the librarian's desk, incorporating a shelf for the display of the sheaf catalogue, are of an unusual design. Flooring is in blue mottled rubber.

The sizes of a few other college libraries either established or in the course of erection include Derby (2,500 square feet), Letchworth (1,500 square feet), Northampton Polytechnic (3,928 square feet), Norwich (2,000 square feet), Plymouth (2,500 square feet with an office 200 square feet), and Westminster Technical College (1,500 square feet)<sup>(50)</sup>.

Apart from buildings, mention has also been made of the new lighting installed at Battersea Polytechnic<sup>(51)</sup>. Natural lighting is obtained through stained-glass windows placed in each alcove, which considerably reduces the amount of daylight admitted. Artificial lighting from fluorescent lights is relied upon throughout most of the year.

Since this chapter was written, the Minister of Education has issued an important circular on technical college library provision<sup>(54)</sup>. This gives specific recommendations on staff, accommodation, books and finance. It is suggested that seating accommodation should vary from 7 per cent of the "maximum student capacity" where the maximum capacity is not over 1,000, to 4 per cent where the maximum capacity exceeds 3,000. The size of the library can be derived by multiplying the number of seats by 32 square feet. Provision should also be made for a work-room and office, each to be between 120-150 square feet. It is recommended that the annual allowance for books and periodicals may "reasonably range from about £500 in a small college" to "about £2,000 in a college of advanced technology."

## REFERENCES

### General

1. ASSOCIATION OF TEACHERS IN TECHNICAL INSTITUTIONS. Memorandum on higher technological education. *Technical Jnl.* 47 (5) 1955, 124-131.
2. MINISTRY OF EDUCATION. Technical education. Cmd. 9703, H.M.S.O. 1956. pp. 23.
3. NATIONAL COUNCIL FOR TECHNOLOGICAL AWARDS. Recognition of courses in technical colleges leading to the diploma in technology. 1956. pp. 3.
4. ASSOCIATION OF TECHNICAL INSTITUTIONS, ASSOCIATION OF PRINCIPALS IN TECHNICAL INSTITUTIONS AND ASSOCIATION OF TEACHERS IN TECHNICAL INSTITUTIONS. Libraries in technical institutions, report by a joint committee. 1938.
5. REGIONAL ADVISORY COUNCIL FOR HIGHER TECHNOLOGICAL EDUCATION, LONDON AND HOME COUNTIES. Libraries in colleges of further education; a report. 1954. Appendix: a survey of library facilities in art, commercial and technical colleges in the region, 1953-54. June 1955.

6. SOUTHERN REGIONAL COUNCIL FOR FURTHER EDUCATION. Libraries for colleges of further education. Regional Academic Board, Reading, 1955. pp. 4.
7. *Colleges of Technology and Further Education*. (Sub-Section of the University and Research section of the Library Association.) *Bulletin* No. 1, Jan. 1955.
8. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. Libraries in Colleges of Technology and Further Education. A memorandum for the Scientific and Technical Information Committee of the Advisory Council on Scientific Policy, Office of the Lord President of the Council. 1956. pp. 4.
9. UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION AND WELFARE. Statistics of libraries in institutions of higher education 1951-52. 1954.
10. HEMLIN, E. Technical libraries. *Actes FIAB*. 20me session 1954-55, 96-101.
11. ARDERN, L. L. Aspects of special librarianship, technical college libraries. *Libn. Assn. Conf. Proc.*, 1952, 70-75.
12. WRIGHT, G. H. Libraries for colleges of further education. *Education* 107 (2784) 1956, 924-5 (reviews reference 6).
13. BAXTER, E. G. Some problems of technical college libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (1) 1954, 2-6. 23 refs.
14. NORMAN, W. Technological education and the trade. *Bookseller* April 14, 1956, 1058-1060. 19 refs.

#### *Industrial Information Service*

15. RATES, R. D. and WRIGHT, G. H. Local information service; technical college libraries help industrial firms. Correspondence. *Engineering* 179 (4644) 1955, 100; (4645) 1955, 132; (4648) 1955, 229; (4650) 1955, 293; (4651) 1955, 330.
16. WRIGHT, G. H. Technical college libraries, a service to industry. *Engineer* 200 (5194) 1955, 219-220.
17. YESCOMBE, E. R. and RATES, R. D. Libraries and industry. Correspondence. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (4) 1955, 164-2; 57 (6) 1955, 238.
18. URQUHART, D. J. Future public technological library services; should a new public technical library service be based on the technical colleges? *Aslib Proc.* 8 (1) 1956, 23-37. Correspondence and other comments appeared in many journals but see *Bookseller* Nov. 19, 1955; *Engineering* 180 (4683) 586.
19. SAVAGE, E. A. and others. Technical college libraries; a symposium. *Lib. Rev.* (117) 1956, 313-320.
20. URQUHART, D. J. Technical college library as a service to industry. Association of Technical Institutions. Annual general meeting. Dublin, 1956.
21. HERTFORDSHIRE COUNTY COUNCIL. Memorandum for an integrated technical college library service. (Reported in) *Education* September 2, 1955.
22. WRIGHT, G. H. Importance of a college library, its function in education and its potentialities as a local information centre. *Hotel and Catering Review* 1956, 89, 91. illus.

#### *Library Guides*

23. THE POLYTECHNIC, LONDON. Guide to the library with an historical introduction. 1955.
24. KUMASI COLLEGE OF TECHNOLOGY. Calendar, 1956.  
(It should be noted that many colleges have issued duplicated lists not recorded here but which would be sent on request to a serious reader.)

#### *Book Selecting*

25. WRIGHT, G. H. and YESCOMBE, E. R. Technical college library service. *Education* 105 (2732) 1955, 1048-1050.

#### *Liberal Education*

26. NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF ADULT EDUCATION, THE A.P.T.I. AND A.T.I. Liberal education in a technical age. Report of a committee. Parrish, 1955. pp. 128.
27. ARGLES, M. Technical college library. *Vocational Aspect of Secondary and Further Education*. Spring 1955, 8-14. 11 refs. (describes Hatfield Technical College).
28. ARGLES, M. Library in liberal education. *Adult Education* 28 (2) 1955, 126-132.
29. DIGGLE, M. Liberal education for technical college students; the place of English. *Vocational Aspect of Secondary and Further Education* 7 (15) 1955, 106-113.
30. ROSS, A. M. Some considerations of the antithesis between a liberal and a technical education. *Ibid.* 5 (11) 1953, 96-105.

## Classification

31. BIRMINGHAM COLLEGE OF ART. U.D.C. as applied in the library. The College, 1956.

## Exhibitions and Library Usage

32. WRIGHT, G. H. Exploiting the technical college library. *Education* 107 (2768) 1956, 235-236.  
 33. Methods of encouraging the use of libraries. *Colleges of Technology and Further Education. Bulletin* 3, 1955, 3.  
 34. Coffee features in technical college display. *Coffee Trade News* 6 (6) 1955, 10-11. illus.  
 35. Exhibitions in a college. *Engineering* 181 (4704) 1956, 295.

## Co-operation and Gifts

36. ACTON TECHNICAL COLLEGE. Annual report, session 1954-55.  
 37. NORTHERN POLYTECHNIC AND NATIONAL COLLEGE OF RUBBER TECHNOLOGY. Library. Report of the librarian for sessions 1948- .

## Staff

38. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. Recommendations of the Council on qualifications, status and salaries of technical college librarians. 1954.  
 39. MUNFORD, W. A. Libraries in technical colleges. Association of Technical Institutions, 1953. pp. 11.  
 40. HASLEGRAVE, H. L. Status of librarians; technical colleges. *Times Educ. Supplement* July 29, 1949, 525.

## Buildings and Equipment

41. WISE, E. Library in the farm institute, its purpose and value. *Houghall Record* Spring 1955, 29-36.  
 42. MINISTRY OF EDUCATION. New colleges of further education. *Building Bulletin* No. 5. 1955. 2nd edition.  
 43. ARDERN, L. L. Manchester College of Technology library and its assistance to industry. *Ashb Proc.* 7 (3) 1955, 136-140.  
 44. Manchester College of Technology. *Colleges of Technology and Further Education. Bulletin* 6. 1956, 3-4, 2 plans.  
 45. College of Technology, Birmingham. *Ibid.* 5. 1956, 5, plan.  
 46. Dartford Technical College. *Ibid.* 3. 1955, plan.  
 47. HAYFIELD TECHNICAL COLLEGE. Report of the A. S. Butler Library for 1953-54.  
 48. SNAPE, W. H. Liverpool College of Commerce library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (8) 1955, 305.  
 49. BRADBURY, R. Liverpool College of Commerce library. *Archit. & Building News* 204, 1953, 504-507.  
 50. Westminster Technical College, Vincent Square, S.W. *Builder* 186 (5787) 1954, 109-113.  
 51. New lighting at Battersea Polytechnic. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (10) 1951, 327. illus.  
 52. [WRIGHT, G. H.] Some thoughts on technical college libraries; their design and exploitation by a library correspondent. *School Government Chronicle* 147 (3352) 1954, 137-139.

## Standards

53. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION SUB-SECTION FOR COLLEGES OF TECHNOLOGY AND FURTHER EDUCATION. Standards for library service in colleges of technology. 1957. pp. 16.  
 54. MINISTRY OF EDUCATION. Libraries in technology colleges. Circular 322, April 12, 1957. pp. 7.

## Chapter 5

# THE LIBRARIES OF THE INSTITUTES OF EDUCATION

By Miss G. S. M. DE MONTMORENCY, F.L.A., *Librarian, University of London  
Institute of Education*

THE libraries of the University Institutes of Education in England form a fairly new group of specialist libraries, for they are peculiar to themselves in both origin and work, and again may differ within the group. The London Institute of Education has a long history before the McNair Report (Great Britain. Board of Education. *Teachers and Youth Leaders. Report of the Committee appointed by the President of the Board of Education to consider the supply, recruitment and training of teachers and youth leaders. 1944*) caused the creation of the University Institutes of Education of Birmingham, Bristol, Durham, Exeter, Hull, Leeds, Leicester, Liverpool, Manchester, Nottingham, Oxford, Reading, Sheffield and Southampton, South Wales and Monmouthshire and the Cambridge Institute of Education.

The last five years have shown steady increase in size of stock and development of work in libraries of Institutes of Education (1) (4), but it is necessary to remember that all such institute librarianship depends on the work required by the Institutes of Education. The English Institutes have as a common goal the academic link between the training colleges and the universities to which they belong or serve, but they have an individual approach to that goal and obviously their libraries follow suit. Therefore size of stock is not necessarily of great interest, but instead the development of the library work required, and even ability to change its course as occasion demands, is of prime importance. The common goal has given the librarians of English Institutes of Education opportunities to work together on various projects of value to education librarianship. Therefore in 1950 an official group of librarians of Institutes of Education was formed after the first meeting held at the Cambridge I.A. University and Research Section Conference, and since then two group meetings are held each session to discuss bibliographical work and other matters of mutual interest (2). The two standing projects are the "Union catalogue of the libraries of Institutes of Education" and the "Index to selected British educational periodicals."

The "Union catalogue of Institutes of Education libraries" was started and held by Birmingham in 1951, and is kept up to date by the regular accessions lists issued by the Institutes of Education libraries. London is only included from 1948, as the library of over 75,000 stock of an Institute of Education different in origin and type from the new Institutes of Education was too large for complete inclusion in this catalogue. The union catalogue forms the base of an Institutes of Education inter-library loan scheme in addition to its serious

Bakht-cr-Ruda, Sudan, which is more comparable with the Area Training Organization Librarianship of the other English Institutes. The following addresses of some oversea Institutes of Education will be of interest.

Unesco Institute of Education,  
Hamburg 13,  
Feldbrunnenstrasse 70,  
Germany.

Norges Læraerhøgskole,  
Lade,  
Trondheim,  
Norway.

Indian Institute of Education,  
11 Horniman Circle,  
Fort Bombay,  
India.

Institute of Education,  
Bakht-cr-Ruda,  
Sudan.

Central Institute of Education,  
Probyn Road,  
Delhi 9,  
India.

Teachers' Institute of Thailand,  
Bangkok,  
Thailand.

Institute of Education,  
16 Sharin Amin Saaby Pasha,  
Mounirah, Cairo,  
Egypt.

Institute of Education,  
University College of the Gold Coast,  
Achimota,  
Gold Coast.

Institute of Education for Women Teachers,  
3 Sharin Prince Said,  
Zamalek, Cairo,  
Egypt.

Institute of Education,  
University College,  
Ibadan,  
Nigeria.

**TRAINING COLLEGE LIBRARIES.** In England each Institute of Education Area includes a varying number of constituent colleges for the training of teachers and university education departments with their own libraries, which are their own domestic concern for their own work. They are specialist libraries for teachers in training and their object is to provide books required by lecturers for their students. The development of the Institutes of Education has influenced indirectly the trend of book selection in training college libraries towards a wider field of education thought and practice. Most training college students, in addition to their college library, have access both individually and through their libraries to academic and county libraries within their Institute of Education Area as well as receiving invaluable help from local public libraries.

There has been slow but steady increase of appointments of professional librarians to training colleges in the last five years: this is a specialized form of librarianship because training college librarians must be ready to assist students with the bibliographical side of librarianship. On the other hand, many training colleges still prefer to use lecturer-librarians who have some advantage in being able to close-knit the academic work of the college and the use of the library. Occasionally a lecturer-librarian has a professional librarian as an assistant who is therefore able to deal with the mechanics of librarianship.

**OVERSEAS TRAINING COLLEGE LIBRARIES.** I saw many training colleges in the course of travelling across the world on a Unesco Fellowship in 1952. The training college libraries in New South Wales and Victoria, Australia, have particularly fine buildings as well as excellent stock and adequate professional staff to run them. On the other hand, the librarians appeared to do less unofficial

tutorial work with students, which is an essential service in English training college libraries. It was interesting to find in Indonesia, Ceylon, India and East and West Africa that there were similar variations of training college library conditions and work as in England. One fact is clear, however, that the considerable increase of interest in training college librarianship in England in these last years is found equally in training college work overseas. The mailing list of the International Society of Training College Librarians *Newsletter* has increased significantly. The *Newsletter* aims at making a small link between training college librarians for bibliographical purposes and stimulating interest in simple mechanics of librarianship. It must be remembered that the majority of training college librarians are lecturer-librarians and therefore elementary information on practical matters can be valuable. The *Newsletter* is issued once a term and usually includes articles on particular training college libraries.

## REFERENCES

1. SAUNDERS, W. L. and FREEMAN, C. B. 'The libraries of Institutes of Education. *Lib. Assn. Rev.* 55 (7) 1953, 207-212.
2. SAUNDERS, W. L. and FIFOOT, E. R. S. Bibliographical co-operation between the libraries of Institutes of Education. *Ibid.* 57 (10) 1955, 405-408.
3. FIFOOT, E. R. S. A detailed account of the Index to selected British educational periodicals. *Ibid.* 57 (10) 1955, 407-408.
4. *Times Educational Supplement*, November 16, 1956. Institute Libraries.

## SELECT LIST OF ARTICLES ON SOME EDUCATION LIBRARIES

*University of London Institute of Education Library Bulletin*

- No. 1. 1949. University of London Institute of Education. The Central Library.  
 No. 10. 1952. The Sydney Training College Library. By the Librarian.  
 No. 17. 1955. MACLAIN, A. C. State School Libraries and Librarians in Tasmania, Australia.  
 No. 18. 1955. HILLIARD, F. H. Institutes of Education in West Africa.  
 No. 20. 1956. HEINDAL, H. K. Librarianship in the training of Primary School Teachers in Norway.  
 No. 21. 1956. COWIE, L. W. The New Library of the College of S. Mark and S. John.

*International Society of Training College Librarians Newsletter*

- No. 4. 1950. MONTEBANCY, G. DE. The University of London Institute of Education Library  
 No. 6. 1951. TIBBLES, C. Dunedin Teachers' Training College Library, New Zealand.  
 No. 8. 1952. KIGUNDU, E. W. Teacher Training College Library in Uganda.  
 No. 9. 1952. JOHNSTON, J. F. The College Library Service during School Practice. Some experiments at Edge Hill, Ormskirk, Lancs.  
 No. 10. 1952. DOWST, R. F. Library Service in the Teachers' College, Balmain, New South Wales, Australia.  
 No. 13. 1954. JOHNSTON, J. F. School Librarianship. (Special course given at Edge Hill Training College, Ormskirk, Lancs, since 1948.)  
 No. 17. 1956. BHANGSAHHA, SA-ANG. Khuru Sapha Library (Teachers' Institute of Thailand Library).  
 AGIB, O. The work of the Institute of Education Library, Bakhr-er-Ruda, (Sudan).  
 DELVI, M. A. The Training College Libraries in Bombay State.  
 APATA, I. BAMIDELE. Training Colleges in Nigeria.  
 No. 18. 1956. HIANG, LEE SEK. The Libraries Bureau, Indonesia.  
 DOWST, R. F. Some notes on Teachers' College Libraries in New South Wales.

## Chapter 6

### MEDICAL LIBRARIES

By C. F. A. MARMOY, F.L.A., *Thane Library of Medical Sciences, University College, London*

#### HISTORICAL BACKGROUND. CURRENT GROWTH

FIRST INTERNATIONAL CONGRESS ON MEDICAL LIBRARIANSHIP, 1953. Accounts of the past and present state of medical libraries have been combined in several papers, particularly at the First International Congress on Medical Librarianship, London, 1953. In 1950 the Library Association Medical Section Committee had considered the possibility of holding such a congress<sup>(1)</sup>. Early in 1952 some members of the Section formed an organizing committee and, when the Congress took place, eighteen months' hard work were fully rewarded by its success; the receptions held by the great medical corporations and societies in London were a generous tribute from the medical profession. The six symposia given were: Role of the medical librarian in the world today, Historical symposium, Classification, Medical libraries of the world, Education and training for medical librarianship, Centralization of medical library resources; in addition there was a discussion following two papers on international co-operation for the medical librarian. The indexing of current medical literature was the dominating subject of the "open forum."

The finely produced *Proceedings* which appeared in 1954<sup>(2)</sup> include an appended list of articles on medical library literature, 1950-52, compiled by G. R. Pendrill (pp. 423-451). This was in fact derived from a bibliography for the period 1949-53 by the same compiler<sup>(3)</sup>, containing no fewer than 881 items, with an appendix on hospital patients' libraries listing a further 233 items.\* It will be obvious that a survey of five years' work in medical librarianship must therefore be selective in treatment and scope.

General impressions of the Congress by overseas visitors have been given by L. Margueriète Prime<sup>(4)</sup> and Agnes C. Dick<sup>(5)</sup>, while Dr. A. Hahn<sup>(6)</sup> has discussed various points raised during the proceedings, concluding with suggestions for consideration by French medical librarians.

GENERAL HISTORY OF MEDICAL LIBRARIES; MEDICO-HISTORICAL LIBRARIES. Dr. A. Kessen<sup>(7)</sup> has outlined the history of medical libraries with reference to those in the Netherlands. These have lagged behind those of France, Germany, England, and, most of all, the United States, where 200 medical libraries were founded between 1900 and 1939. In historical articles on British medical libraries W. J. Bishop<sup>(8)</sup> deals with some London medical

\* I am indebted to Mr. Pendrill for the use of this bibliography and, prior to publication, of the supplement for 1954 (*Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 44 (2) 1956, 166-174).—C.F.A.M.

libraries and L. Jolley<sup>(9)</sup> <sup>(10)</sup> those in Scotland; Dr. J. H. Widdess<sup>(11)</sup> tells of the two great libraries of the Royal Colleges in Dublin.

Gertrude Annan<sup>(12)</sup>, surveying recent trends in American medical historical libraries, shows that rare books now form only a part of the historical collection, the limits of which now extend to fairly recent times. The Historical Library of Yale Medical Library includes all material, except serials, up to the last twenty-five years. The Armed Forces Medical Library includes material up to 1800 in its History of Medicine Division; the many problems involved in building up a comprehensive collection for this Division are discussed by W. J. Wilson<sup>(13)</sup>. In Britain a brief account has appeared of the history, scope and purpose of the Wellcome Historical Medical Library<sup>(14)</sup>, while Douglas Guthrie<sup>(15)</sup> has noted treasures in the medico-historical libraries of the Royal Australasian College of Surgeons and the University of Otago Medical School.

RECENT DEVELOPMENTS IN MEDICAL LIBRARIES. In a general survey of medical libraries in the post-war world, Janet Doe<sup>(16)</sup> includes news of individual developments country by country. Of international importance is the "national medical library of America" about which much has been written. An impressive account of ten years' progress to 1954 in reorganization and reorientation of the activities of the Armed Forces Medical Library (known as the Army Medical Library until 1952) is given by Estelle Brodman, M. Ruth MacDonald and the Director, Lt.-Col. F. B. Rogers<sup>(17)</sup>. Far-reaching decisions to correct the deficiencies shown in the critical Survey of 1944 have been implemented, while basic principles in planning the new library building are explained by J. A. Oley<sup>(18)</sup>.

In Britain the Royal Society of Medicine, thanks to the munificence of the Wellcome Trustees, has nearly doubled the library accommodation. This extension, on the second floor, includes the Wellcome Research Library and bibliographical and administrative quarters. The former will hold 50,000 volumes and seats twenty-five readers; it is devoted to encyclopaedic works and journals mainly of surgical interest<sup>(19)</sup> <sup>(20)</sup>. Historical accounts of the Library have also appeared<sup>(21)</sup> <sup>(22)</sup>. The Library of the Royal College of Surgeons of England has fared less happily. A new reading room for specialist collections was added in 1954, but its acquisition was offset by the unexpected temporary loss, due to rebuilding operations, of the annexe housing the current bookstock<sup>(23)</sup> <sup>(24)</sup>. W. R. LeFanu has recounted something of the history of this famous library<sup>(25)</sup>. From Scotland, L. Jolley and Margaret D. Bell<sup>(26)</sup>, describe the many activities of seven major medical libraries; this includes evidence of continuing Scottish interest in medical history. In Belfast, in September 1953, the Queen's University Library transferred its medical section, apart from pre-clinical material, to the new Medical Library in the Institute of Clinical Science. Jessie B. Webster<sup>(27)</sup> describes the new library, which comprises a main reading room, two smaller rooms for postgraduates and undergraduates respectively, and a basement stack for 26,000 volumes. She states that the Ulster Medical Society Library functions in liaison with Queen's University Medical Library, the latter being open to the medical profession in Ulster<sup>(28)</sup>.

The Medical Library of the University of Cape Town moved into its own building in September 1953. The library serves not only the Medical School

and the Groote Schuur Hospital but also the members of the South African Medical Association in Cape Province. The present bookstock totals about 33,000 volumes, and the new library will hold 80,000 volumes and accommodate 220 readers, states R. F. M. Immelman<sup>(29)</sup>. Another medical library was founded in 1952 at the new University of Natal Medical School, Durban. In 1954 it moved into new quarters in Umbilo, and Beatrix H. Robinow<sup>(30)</sup> describes its progress, acknowledging a world-wide flow of gifts of books and journals. In Kampala, Uganda, the Makerere College Medical Library moved into new medical school buildings in 1951<sup>(31)</sup>. In West Africa interest centres on Nigeria, and accounts of progress have been given by Hilda Clark and D. A. Cannon<sup>(32)</sup> and by J. Harris<sup>(33)</sup>. Much detailed information on medical libraries south of the Sahara has become available in directory form<sup>(34)</sup>. India's largest medical library is the Directorate-General of Health Services Library at New Delhi. Accounts of this have been given by Dr. S. A. Chitale<sup>(35)</sup><sup>(36)</sup>, who states that there are some fifty libraries in India attached to medical schools and research institutes, though many are small.

In the United States 100 new medical libraries have joined the Medical Library Association since 1945, according to Janet Doe<sup>(16)</sup>. The Veterans' Administration alone has established 165 since the war, and F. Mohrhardt<sup>(37)</sup> has described how the urgent need for trained medical librarians has been met. Dorothy M. Cramer and Frances K. Fox<sup>(38)</sup> have traced the history of the National Institutes of Health Library, which was moved in 1953 to the new Clinical Center at Bethesda.

In France the famous library of the Faculty of Medicine of Paris opened in 1953 a new periodical room for the current year's issues only; the daily intake of current periodicals is stated by P. Valléry-Radot<sup>(39)</sup> to be 120-150 issues. The library possesses about 600,000 volumes, with 12,000 periodicals, and is used by 140,000 readers annually; in relating the history of the library Dr. A. Hahn<sup>(40)</sup> mentions the record of a "loan" of books in 1391! In Lille the new Faculty of Medicine Library was opened in November 1952, though the reading room was still unfinished. Mlle Bruchet<sup>(41)</sup> describes the new building, notable features being the circular reading room, a periodical room and two reading rooms for students. Mme Mullet-Jean<sup>(42)</sup>, of the Library of the Faculty of Medicine and Pharmacy at Lyons, adds to our knowledge of French medical libraries.

A brief indication of the growth of Russian medical libraries is given in a note on those in the Ukraine, where on January 1, 1954, the number of medical libraries (excluding 834 hospital medical libraries) exceeded 1,000, with 5,500,000 works<sup>(43)</sup>.

#### ORGANIZATION AND ADMINISTRATION

Medical library organization follows various patterns, there being several types of medical libraries. J. L. Thornton<sup>(44)</sup> gives the principal divisions as (1) teaching libraries attached to universities and medical schools, (2) libraries housed by medical societies and institutions, and (3) postgraduate research libraries. These may be subdivided or combined; geographical location may influence both direction and rate of progress. In an account of the organization and state of the twelve London medical school libraries, Thornton<sup>(45)</sup> points out that, owing to their proximity to large medical collections, some of them have

often been neglected. Provincial medical schools, however, must be more self-supporting, and it is here that association with society medical libraries may be found. Another possible type, with wide variations, is the medical library in a non-teaching hospital; this may be for staff, students or nurses, and such a "hospital library" should be recognized as being distinct from a "patients' library" (46).

At a symposium held in 1952 three types of British medical libraries were represented. The Medical Library of Liverpool University, described by Miss I. B. Jones (47), functions as a departmental library administered under the Medical Faculty Library Committee, with a yearly faculty allocation from the main library grant. The Liverpool Medical Institution Library, described by W. A. Lee (48), works in close liaison with the University Medical Library, but has a separate existence in its own building. In Manchester, however, the Medical Society Library being in the Medical School, union eventually ensued, as G. Wilson (49) relates. The joint medical library is administered by a library committee of five university and three medical society representatives as a sub-committee of the Council of the University. A more elaborate symposium on types of American medical libraries (50) covers also medical research, hospital medical and state medical libraries, the latter being free circulating libraries established by a number of state legislatures, usually in connection with state universities.

The age-old problem of centralization versus decentralization has received close attention with regard to university medical school libraries, both as to the relationship between the main university library and the medical library and to the merging of separate departmental libraries into a central medical library. At the 1953 Congress, Louise Darling (51) described the happy solution of carefully co-ordinated decentralization reached in organizing the new Biomedical Library of the University of California. Dr. A. Kessen (52) also discussed the problem and gave a world-wide survey of the present position. A closer analysis has been made by W. D. Postell (53), invited to survey the problem in connection with the new medical library for the University of Florida. He lists three types of collegiate medical libraries: the first has centralization of direction, finance and technical services in the main university library; the second is similar but with technical services performed by its own staff under the medical librarian, while the third is decentralized, with the medical librarian responsible to the dean of the medical school. Postell maintains that the third type is superior for speed in serving readers, adequate coverage, accessibility and use. As F. D. Bryant (54) reports, the University of Florida subsequently chose centralization, with some important reservations.

The standpoint of the university librarian is put by F. A. Lundy (55), discussing the administrative relationship of the medical college library to the medical college itself and to the rest of a typical American state university library. Librarians of the individual colleges, including medicine, should be responsible for book and periodical selection, but separate departments for ordering and cataloguing, as well as separate bookstocks and reading rooms, are no longer necessary. A medical teacher's views are given by Professor Chauncey D. Leake (56) in considering the role of the medical school library in the school's teaching programme. He sees the library as the intellectual heart of the university health centre. The relation of medical libraries to medical education

has also been the subject of a symposium in a special issue of the *Journal of medical education* <sup>(57)</sup>. Essentially a general account of medical school and university medical library facilities, the symposium includes descriptions of some of the largest libraries of this kind in the United States.

Decentralization of university library stock in order to establish a central medical library is reported from Finland by A. Seppälä <sup>(58)</sup> <sup>(59)</sup>, who describes the plans for such a library at Helsinki. No opposition was made to combining the medical works from the university library with those from the medical associations; books and periodicals in the various research institutes will, however, stay where they are. Other examples of transference come from Belfast <sup>(27)</sup> and Lille <sup>(41)</sup>. Amalgamation of medical and dental library resources for the University of Alabama Medical Center is described by Mildred Crowe <sup>(60)</sup>.

Standards for medical school libraries and for hospital medical libraries have been considered by committees of the Medical Library Association <sup>(61)</sup> <sup>(62)</sup>. The Committee on Criteria for Medical School Libraries has now published preliminary results of a survey of medical school libraries in the United States and Canada <sup>(63)</sup>. Details given concern staff, proximity of other libraries, services, holdings, budget, physical facilities and future planning.

Income and expenditure harass everyone. Marcella Glasgow <sup>(64)</sup> offers guidance in preparing a medical school library budget. A major source of increased expenditure is the steady rise in periodical subscriptions, and W. Bonser and Margaret Russell <sup>(65)</sup> and M. Wada <sup>(66)</sup> have criticized post-war increases in the prices of certain German medical periodicals. Support for this protest comes from the U.S.A., where the Medical Library Association survey for 1948-1950-1952 <sup>(67)</sup> shows that whereas the average annual subscription for seventy-five leading American medical journals was \$6.60 each, an average of \$40.30 each was shown for thirty German periodicals from one prominent publisher and \$12.25 each for fifteen periodicals from other German publishers. In this connection IFLA has suggested to the publisher most concerned that articles in languages other than German should be published in order to increase circulation and thereby lower subscriptions <sup>(68)</sup>.

**BOOK AND PERIODICAL SELECTION.** Assistance in selecting books and periodicals is available from several quarters. The Library Association Medical Section issued a selective list for the hospital medical library in 1952 <sup>(69)</sup>, while a fuller list came from the American College of Surgeons in 1955 <sup>(70)</sup>, this being prefaced by concise yet adequate advice on organization and management by L. Margueriete Prime. Charlotte Kenton <sup>(71)</sup> lists selected reference tools for hospital medical libraries in a paper on the subject. New periodicals need no longer be overlooked, thanks to the new MLA serial publication *Vital notes on new periodicals* <sup>(72)</sup> which began in 1952.

#### CLASSIFICATION

The "march of medicine" has been well reflected in published classification schemes for medical literature. One new scheme has appeared, others have been revised.

*The Army Medical Library Classification*, First Edition, 1951 <sup>(73)</sup>, was

preceded by the Preliminary Edition of 1948. The 1944 Survey Committee on the state of the Library had recommended the adoption of a modern scheme of classification with a fairly simple notation, in place of the century-old system with 200 classes devoid of hierarchical or logical arrangement and notation. The chosen scheme should combine the notation of the Library of Congress system with the basic plan of the Cunningham Classification. As existing LC schedules QM-QR and R could not be revised according to this plan, the letters QS-QZ and W, undeveloped in LC, were adopted. The Preliminary Edition was very detailed in order to allow for uniform development; the simplified First Edition was then evolved, differing in a number of important respects from the earlier version. The choice of the physiological system as the basis for construction of the schedules holds for the most part, though the letters QS-QZ are no longer solely for pre-clinical sciences. This scheme thus differs fundamentally from the LC classification, where physiological systems are classed with the pre-clinical sciences, diseases of organs being included in class R. Lt.-Col. F. B. Rogers<sup>(74)</sup> has discussed the principles followed in applying the new scheme in the Armed Forces Medical Library. That it will be kept up to date is evident from the subsequent lists of additions and changes, no. 4, 1955, containing news of a second edition.

The Library of Congress Classification, class R, Medicine, has been revised. The third edition, 1952<sup>(75)</sup>, replaces that of 1921; the long interval and the detailed nature of the scheme have necessitated reconstruction of the class as well as a revision of detail. An account of it is given by D. J. Haykin<sup>(76)</sup>. The arrangement and terminology of diseases is based on the World Health Organization's classification of diseases.

The Barnard Classification first appeared in 1936. The second edition, 1955<sup>(77)</sup>, was described in advance by C. C. Barnard<sup>(78)</sup>. Thorough revision has led to certain structural changes; twice as many topics have been included with individual notation, and alternative placings have been provided much more freely. Two notable features are the eleven auxiliary schedules and the alternative notation for adapting the scheme to serve in a general medical library.

The fourth edition of Eileen R. Cunningham's *Classification for medical literature*, 1955<sup>(79)</sup>, comes nine years after the third but, apart from the sections on psychology and psychiatry, it does not show any major changes. Class Y, radiation and radioactivity, roentgenology, and atomic medicine, has, however, been developed. Of other systems the section on medicine of the UDC appeared again in 1951 as a German revision (third international edition)<sup>(80)</sup>. This appears to have been slightly expanded but otherwise unaltered.

Two symposia on medical classification schemes have been held: one at the 1953 Congress<sup>(81)</sup>, the other by the Medical Library Association<sup>(82)</sup>. At the former Eileen R. Cunningham<sup>(83)</sup> summed up the problems of medical library classification, preferring revised indexes and supplementary pages rather than frequent revised editions. Lucia Graf<sup>(84)</sup> presented statistical tables showing the use made of classification schemes for medical literature. More recently Dr. Graf has presented an analytical study of this subject, including detailed appendices covering types of catalogues used as well as systems of classification<sup>(85)</sup>. The MLA symposium includes papers on the following schemes: Army Medical Library (both editions), Boston, Dewey, LC and Cunningham.

The Black system of classification for dental literature, adapted from Dewey, was published in a second edition in 1952<sup>(86)</sup>. Dorothy B. Dragonette<sup>(87)</sup> has compared the scheme with the dental section of the Army Medical Library Classification.

#### MEDICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

**HISTORY.** Two notable books offer an historical approach to the subject. J. F. Fulton's Rosenbach Lectures *The great medical bibliographers*, 1951<sup>(88)</sup>, is a bio-bibliographical study tracing through the centuries since the invention of printing the humanistic character of the major works of medical bibliography. The other book, *The development of medical bibliography*, by Estelle Brodman, 1954<sup>(89)</sup>, is a careful analysis of the problems facing medical bibliographers of all times. She concludes that while the search must continue for a system which is able to accept exponential growth of the literature, for some time to come existing methods must be kept going as efficiently as possible. That medical bibliography still lacks the means for it "to cover the entire medical literature . . . accurately, promptly, and in easily usable form," to quote Brodman, is hardly surprising in view of the magnitude of the task. Fresh efforts to cope with it have been made at all levels, international, national, regional and individual. However, as Eileen R. Cunningham<sup>(90)</sup> recently pointed out to medical teachers, "the medical profession as a whole has remained apathetic to the situation."

**CURRENT BIBLIOGRAPHY.** (a) *Study of the problem.*—The Unesco Report of the Co-ordinating Committee on Abstracting and Indexing in the Medical and Biological Sciences, 1951<sup>(91)</sup>, records meetings held 1946-49. The only fruitful result of its investigations was the publication of *World medical periodicals*, 1953, edited by L. T. Morton<sup>(92)</sup>. Listing 3,908 current titles the volume gives for each title details including frequency and place of publication, language, and coverage by ten abstracting services. One may note here the World Health Organization Library's annotated list of 179 current indexing and abstracting periodicals in the medical and biological sciences, issued in 1953<sup>(93)</sup>.

In the United States the Committee of Consultants for the Study of the Indexes to Medical Literature published by the Army Medical Library issued their "Final Summary Report, 1948-52"<sup>(94)</sup>. This Committee's recommendations had resulted in the discontinuance of the *Index-Catalogue*, and the development of the *Current list of medical literature*. In a statement of general policy the Committee stressed that the medical indexing service is properly a Federal function, and called on the Government to provide such a service. It also recognized that further research on methods was needed, and gave active support to the Medical Indexing Project at the Welch Medical Library, Johns Hopkins University. This project, begun in 1948, came to an end in 1953; interim accounts were given by its director, Dr. S. V. Larkey<sup>(95)</sup>, and by Brodman<sup>(89)</sup>. The full report *Survey of world medical serials and coverage by indexing and abstracting services*<sup>(96)</sup> was issued in 1954. Information on 6,925 periodicals in medicine and related fields was prepared on data sheets, and much of this was coded and punched on IBM cards for machine analysis. The chief items for analyses were country, frequency, type, contents, subject-matter and

coverage by thirty-seven indexing and abstracting services. Of the total number of serials 4,454 were classed as substantive serials, the remainder being hospital reports, documents, congress proceedings, etc. Of the substantive serials 2,604, or 61 per cent, were found to be covered by the thirty-seven services. Five major services were studied in detail. Results show that, in general, pre-clinical and clinical fields are well covered except for pharmacology, physical therapy and rehabilitation. Coverage is low for public health (except for industrial medicine), legal, economic, historical and educational aspects of medicine, and to a lesser extent for military and aviation medicine; it is also very low in related fields of dentistry, pharmacy and nursing. Comparisons between the five major services reveal considerable overlapping, but also the necessity for most or all of them to be consulted for adequate coverage. Automatic punched-card techniques used in the preparation of subject-heading lists, both by the Indexing Project and by the *Current list of medical literature*, are described by E. Garfield<sup>(97)</sup>.

Individual studies have been made by others. A. Neclameghan<sup>(98)</sup> presents a statistical study of the titles in *World medical periodicals*, and elsewhere<sup>(99)</sup> clearly reveals the limitations of abstracting journals, particularly in comprehensiveness and recency, in a careful comparison of two abstracting services for surgical literature. Theresa M. Severn<sup>(100)</sup> compares the coverage, both by subject and by national groupings, of *Chemical abstracts*, *Current list of medical literature* and *Quarterly cumulative index medicus*. Extensive duplication of certain subjects, especially by the last two services, underlines the need for co-operation between them. The situation in France has been surveyed by Dr. A. Hahn<sup>(101)</sup>, who points out that specialized indexing and abstracting journals there represent a great amount of duplication of effort, and suggests that their activities should be co-ordinated by a central official documentation centre. He would restrict the coverage to French medical periodicals with some selected foreign ones, leaving the remainder of these to be indexed and abstracted by the *Current list*, the *Index medicus*, *Excerpta medica* and the *Zentralblätter*. Janet Doe<sup>(102)</sup> has suggested the combination of indexing and abstracting services, with the work divided between two centres, one in Europe and the other in America. This would be in English, as the German-speaking world have re-established their *Zentralblätter*. The pertinent linguistic problems are also discussed in the survey of developments in indexing by Dr. M. Fishbein<sup>(103)</sup>.

(b) *Published indexes and abstracts*.—The period has seen the steady development of the *Current list of medical literature*, first issued in enlarged form in 1950, and which now indexes over 100,000 articles annually. E. Brodman<sup>(104)</sup> reports still more proposed changes in format, frequency and indexing. Since 1952, separate author and subject indexes have been provided; various experiments in format have occurred, and a statement on subject indexing policy issued (preface to vol. 25, 1954, repeated in the "Subject Heading Authority List"). The editor, Seymour Taine<sup>(105)</sup>, has outlined his views on the subject approach to medical periodical literature. The *Subject heading authority list*, 1954<sup>(106)</sup>, merits careful study, being the fruit of research on principles and practice in indexing conducted by the Armed Forces Medical Library in conjunction with its sponsored Medical Indexing Project at the Welch Medical Library<sup>(107)</sup>. Mortimer Taube<sup>(108)</sup> claims that it is not a subject-heading list at all, but "the first published list of uniterms." The

differences between subject headings for books and those for periodical articles have been analysed by F. B. Rogers<sup>(109)</sup>, who holds that subject headings used in periodical indexes in the sciences are not very different from those used in book catalogues, the former requiring topical subdivision, the latter more main headings prior to subdivision. British librarians are mostly of the opinion that existing subject-heading guides are not suitable for the average medical library catalogue<sup>(110)</sup>.

Since 1954 the defunct *British abstracts*, Section AIII, has been replaced by *British abstracts of medical sciences*, while *Excerpta medica* has added two new sections, Section XVI, Cancer, beginning 1953, and Section XVII, Public health, social medicine and hygiene, from 1955<sup>(111)</sup>. *Current work in the history of medicine*<sup>(112)</sup> is a pleasing new quarterly indexing tool issued by the Wellcome Historical Medical Library, the first volume covering 1954. Books as well as periodical literature are included.

(c) *Unpublished indexes (library indexes)*.—In order to defeat the time lag between publication of an article and its appearance in the published indexes and abstracts, some libraries undertake indexing of current issues. Fanny J. Anderson<sup>(113)</sup> tells of an experiment in co-operative indexing, when eleven libraries of various types in the Detroit area indexed seventy-five selected periodicals for the period November 1953 to March 1954. Lack of clerical help caused its cessation. Marjorie Henderson<sup>(114)</sup> reports the indexing by five assistants of 550 journals taken by the Library of the College of Medicine, State University of New York. In Britain A. E. Fountain<sup>(115)</sup> states that the Ministry of Health Library maintains a selective classified index to current periodical literature, compiled not only from the 400 journals received but also from other indexes and bibliographies. An even larger scheme is described by H. A. Izant<sup>(116)</sup> of the World Health Organization Library, where nearly 1,000 journals are scrutinized for articles of interest. E. P. Koumans<sup>(117)</sup> details the methods of indexing under UDC numbers in the Medical and Pharmaceutical Library at The Hague.

RETROSPECTIVE BIBLIOGRAPHY. It is sad to record that the fifty-eighth and last volume of the four series of the *Index-Catalogue* of the Armed Forces Medical Library appeared in 1955<sup>(118)</sup>. Begun by Billings at a time when about 20,000 articles were published annually, it has proved unequal to coping with the enormous mass of twentieth-century medical literature. Though it now contains about 3,000,000 subject references, nearly as many again are in the unpublished files. The last volume leaves the fourth series half completed; it covers the letters MH-MN, including a large number of topics in a "military section." A short supplementary series, greatly modified, will be issued in five or six volumes, and this will properly complete the published *Index-Catalogue*, the greatest source of organized information on any major division of knowledge. For historical material it will never be equalled, and C. F. Mayer<sup>(119)</sup> has written an appreciation of it as a tool of research in medicine and history. In its place the Armed Forces Medical Library began an annual catalogue in 1949. This records the cataloguing and re-cataloguing of books, serials and monograph supplements achieved each year; the entries for 1954 are, however, only to be found in the cumulative issue for 1950-54<sup>(120)</sup>. The annual volumes for 1950-53 each consist of an author catalogue with a subject

index; the cumulative issue comprises separate author and subject catalogues, each in three volumes.

The contents of the Wellcome Historical Medical Library are becoming more widely known. The catalogue of incunabula, 1954, compiled by F. N. L. Poynter <sup>(121)</sup>, records 632 items in short-title entries with references to standard bibliographies for complete details, and includes indexes to subjects, printers and towns, inscriptions and signatures. It is announced that a *Catalogue of books printed before 1850* is now being prepared for the press <sup>(122)</sup>. Another great medico-historical library is that bequeathed by Dr. Erik Waller to the Royal University of Uppsala. The illustrated catalogue, *Bibliotheca Walleriana*, appeared in 1955 <sup>(123)</sup>, and includes books illustrating the history of medicine and science totalling over 20,000 items.

A notable catalogue of periodical holdings is the *Catalogue des principaux périodiques et congrès de la Bibliothèque de la Faculté de Médecine de Paris*, 1952 <sup>(124)</sup>. This lists about 4,000 titles out of the library's total of 12,000 sets. Both books and periodicals are included in the *Catalogue of modern works, 1900-1954* in the Memorial Library of the Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons <sup>(125)</sup>. This is an author catalogue with a subject index and appended lists of periodicals and reports; it will be followed by annual supplements, and fills a gap in the bibliography of this special field.

Medical bibliography in general has been enriched by the enlarged second edition of Garrison and Morton's *Medical bibliography: an annotated check-list of texts, etc.*, 1954 <sup>(126)</sup>. Bibliographies on individual subjects are too numerous to mention, but one may note the 1954 reproduction of Pauly's *Bibliographie des sciences médicales*, 1874 <sup>(127)</sup>, with sources of medical bibliography, biography, history and geography of earlier days. Notice should also be taken of the series of bibliographies compiled by the Armed Forces Medical Library, the latest giving 2,970 references on the structure, composition and growth of bone, 1930-53, issued 1955 <sup>(128)</sup>. Bibliographies of individual authors include W. R. LeFanu's *A bio-bibliography of Edward Jenner, 1749-1823*, 1951 <sup>(129)</sup>, and the second edition of Sir Geoffrey Keynes's bibliography of William Harvey, 1955 <sup>(130)</sup>.

#### MEDICAL LIBRARY CO-OPERATION

NATIONAL AND REGIONAL. W. R. LeFanu <sup>(131)</sup> points out that the creation of the Medical Section of the Library Association has promoted an atmosphere in which co-operation can thrive. The Section Exchange has a fine record, and a recent description of its work is given by its manager, F. N. L. Poynter <sup>(132)</sup>. LeFanu also outlines the scope of the London Medical Libraries Co-operation Scheme; elsewhere, C. C. Barnard <sup>(133)</sup> adds to this account. The Scheme has produced a union list on cards of current periodicals in eight libraries and, through a bulletin, endeavours to transfer unwanted material to more logical locations, and to anticipate which libraries should subscribe to certain new journals. Helen M. Brandreth <sup>(134)</sup> has noted the establishment of an inter-library loan scheme among London medical schools. For this purpose the group has issued a list of some 430 current periodicals taken by its twelve members <sup>(135)</sup>. London medical libraries in all number about fifty. As F. N. L. Poynter <sup>(136)</sup> estimates, the total stock in these libraries increases by at least 10,000 volumes a year. He has suggested a combined depository and exchange centre.

In areas with few medical libraries these may also co-operate more closely with scientific and other learned libraries. M. C. Pottinger<sup>(137)</sup> has observed this in Edinburgh, where the medical libraries of the two royal colleges and the university have set a good example.

In Melbourne the Central Medical Library Organization, Victoria, was created in 1953 out of an unofficial movement begun three years earlier. The support was secured of the University and sixteen interested institutions and other bodies, most of whom subscribed £25 each towards expenses for the year 1953-54. Anne Harrison<sup>(138)</sup> records that during this experimental period a new union list of periodicals was completed on cards, some rationalization of holdings achieved, and a statement on library standards issued. Now the organization has been set on a firm basis as a properly constituted, financially self-supporting body with one full-time librarian and a part-time assistant. Co-operation in India has resulted in the publication of a union catalogue of about 1,600 periodicals available in Indian medical libraries, according to Dr. S. A. Chitale<sup>(135)</sup><sup>(136)</sup>.

In America the Medical Library Association has always been the mainspring of co-operative activity in this field. The latest annual report<sup>(139)</sup> offers impressive evidence of this. Among recent ventures one of its committees has outlined a pilot study for a "Union list of medical periodicals for the United States and Canada"<sup>(140)</sup>. In addition to its high cost, Gregory's *Union list* is unsatisfactory in that it includes only a small proportion of American medical libraries.

INTERNATIONAL. The Medical Library Association set up a committee on international co-operation in 1947-48 and this committee reports annually. In 1951 the chairman, Eileen R. Cunningham, surveyed a three-year programme which included fellowships for foreign medical librarians and international exchange of periodicals and books<sup>(141)</sup>. At the 1953 Congress Mrs. Cunningham<sup>(142)</sup> urged improvements in international exchanges and in international bibliographic services and standardization. E. Carter<sup>(143)</sup> spoke on Unesco's part in assisting medical librarianship and documentation; further information is available about this<sup>(144)</sup>. The congress set up a committee to consider methods of promoting international relationships. A proposal to form an international medical library association was not then agreed to, but a European Medical Library Association was approved, and a draft constitution has been prepared. One result of the congress was to inspire Dutch and French medical librarians to form national associations<sup>(145)</sup><sup>(146)</sup>.

#### EDUCATION AND TRAINING FOR MEDICAL LIBRARIANSHIP

This was the subject of a symposium at the 1953 Congress. W. J. Bishop<sup>(147)</sup> observed that medical librarianship is misunderstood by many; with the vast output of modern medical literature, with some 4,000 current journals, its study and mastery has become a whole-time job calling for highly specialized training. This, of course, applies to the higher grade of medical library workers; division into professional and clerical or manual grades is inevitable. The Library Association's final examination includes medical

librarianship as an optional subject, and by way of preparation two courses of lectures have been held at the North-Western Polytechnic in London. As our medical libraries are so scattered, correspondence courses, apprenticeship and internship should also be provided. There are not only different types of medical libraries, but also dental, pharmaceutical and veterinary libraries to be considered. Helen M. Brandteth<sup>(148)</sup> discussed what self-training is possible when organized medical library instruction has not been available.

The difference in the American approach was clearly seen in three other papers. Estelle Brodman<sup>(149)</sup> gave a general historical survey, and compared American, British and German methods. In America courses and certification (by the Medical Library Association) are kept separate; the latter is voluntary and is not by examination but is based on university or other training. Two sponsored courses at Columbia and Emory Universities were outlined by Mildred Jordan<sup>(150)</sup>. Wilma Troxel<sup>(151)</sup> emphasized that future developments cannot be divorced from progress in general library education; after 1954 all certificates will be awarded according to training. The Committee on Standards for Medical Librarianship has four active sub-committees, on certification, curriculum, internship and recruitment. Importance is attached to recruiting, and Irene Strieby<sup>(152)</sup> has described American methods. Estelle Brodman<sup>(153)</sup> notes that although about sixty new medical librarians could be absorbed annually, only half the number are forthcoming from the specialized courses available.

American views on the ideal training for medical librarianship have been crystallized by Mary L. Marshall<sup>(154)</sup>. The importance of Latin and several foreign languages (rather than intensive study of one or two) is stressed. Next comes specialized subject training, mainly in the sciences, for which a four-year course has been worked out by Louisiana State University. This would qualify for a B.Sc. degree and the student would proceed to a master's degree in medical librarianship by a five-quarter course, three quarters being devoted to general library subjects, the remaining two to medical library topics (medical bibliography, periodicals, classification schemes, subject cataloguing, etc.). Finally an internship of at least six months should follow. Such a system of training has now been offered by the University of Michigan Department of Library Science, and is discussed by Mary P. Parsons<sup>(155)</sup>.

#### REFERENCE WORK AND READER GUIDANCE

J. L. Thornton<sup>(44)</sup> has given an account of the implications of reference work for the medical librarian. Research workers are apt to rely on the librarian for most of the work that can be accomplished in the library, particularly if they combine teaching with research. The preparation of bibliographies can be most time-consuming, and W. M. Gallagher<sup>(156)</sup> has given advice on methods and materials. T. E. Keys<sup>(157)</sup>, of the Mayo Clinic, emphasizes that younger readers should be taught how to compile their own bibliographies and how to keep references up to date. Lectures and papers by librarians and doctors on the use of medical libraries testify to the increasing demand for such instruction. F. B. Rogers<sup>(158)</sup> states that more than half the American medical schools give some instruction in the use of the library and in bibliographical method; the mean figure for time devoted to this is four to five hours. In a few large libraries, chiefly American, manuals have been prepared

for the users, and E. Meycrhoff<sup>(159)</sup> debates the contents of such manuals; he cites L. T. Morton's *How to use a medical library* as an excellent model. The second edition of Morton's book, 1952<sup>(160)</sup>, has been completely rewritten and includes chapters on the development of medical periodicals and abstracting services. A new work rather more suitable for American readers is W. D. Postell's *Applied medical bibliography for students*, 1955<sup>(161)</sup>. Barbara C. Johnson and R. L. McFarland<sup>(162)</sup> offer suggestions to psychiatric investigators, giving practical instruction in bibliographical methods. Instruction in medical bibliography is the core of reader guidance, and a panel discussion on this topic was held by the Medical Library Association in 1952<sup>(163)</sup>.

Examples of lectures and papers giving general instruction are those by F. A. Tubbs<sup>(164)</sup> of St. Thomas's Hospital Medical School (whose library he describes more fully elsewhere<sup>(166)</sup>) and G. Wilson<sup>(165)</sup> of Manchester University Medical Library. Dr. A. L. Goodall<sup>(167)</sup> has given a lecture demonstrating in detail the potentialities of the Library of the Royal Faculty of Physicians and Surgeons of Glasgow. In the same way American dental libraries offer guidance, as described by Arline Robinson<sup>(168)</sup>, while Helen Hlavac<sup>(169)</sup> of New York University College of Dentistry has outlined special instruction given in bibliographical methods and tools. Pharmaceutical students receive similar help and Bernice L. Dunten<sup>(170)</sup>, Clara A. Robeson<sup>(171)</sup> and Martha J. K. Zachert<sup>(172)</sup> have reported their methods. Emphasis is laid on the different instruction needed by the student at various stages in his career.

## REFERENCES

*Historical Background. Current Growth*

1. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. Annual report . . . for the year ended 31st December, 1950. p. 22R.
2. Proceedings of the First International Congress on Medical Librarianship, London, 20-25 July, 1953. Edited by F. N. L. Poynter. *Libri* 3, 1954. pp. xxxi, 451.
3. PENDRILL, G. R. Medical library literature, 1949-1953. A bibliography submitted in part requirement for University of London Diploma in Librarianship, May 1954. pp. vi, [113]. *Typescript*.
4. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 42 (1) 1954, 32-53.
5. *S. Afr. Libs.* 22 (3) 1955, 97-99.
6. *Assn. Bib. Fr. Bull.* n.s., 12 (novembre) 1953, 16-23.

*General History of Medical Libraries; Medico-Historical Libraries*

7. *Bibliotheekleven* 38 (3) 1953, 73-81.
8. *Brit. Med. Bull.* 7 (4) 1951, 335-341.
9. *Ibid.* 8 (2-3) 1952, 256-261.
10. *Libri* 3, 1954, 166-177.
11. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 81-87.
12. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 67-74.
13. *Lib. Q.* 21 (4) 1951, 248-266.
14. WELLCOME HISTORICAL MEDICAL LIBRARY. A brief account of its history, scope and purpose. 1951. pp. 12.
15. *Proc. R. Soc. Med.* 47 (12) 1954, 1059-1060.

*Recent Developments in Medical Libraries*

16. *Libri* 3, 1954, 150-159.
17. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 42 (4) 1954, 439-446.
18. *Ibid.* 42 (4) 1954, 454-457.
19. ROYAL SOCIETY OF MEDICINE. Reception for the First International Congress on Medical Librarianship, July 22nd, 1953. pp. 3.

20. *Proc. R. Soc. Med.* 47 (1) 1954, 1-8.
21. *Brit. Med. J.* 1953, ii (Dec. 5), 1264-1266.
22. DAVIDSON, M. The Royal Society of Medicine: the realization of an ideal. 1955. Ch. VII. *The Library*, 118-137.
23. *Ann. R. Coll. Surg. Engl.* 15 (5) 1954, 340-341.
24. *Med. Pr.* 230 (July 22, 1953), 103-105.
25. *Ann. R. Coll. Surg. Engl.* 9 (6) 1951, 366-382.
26. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (3) 1955, 356-365.
27. *Bull. Med. Sect. Lib. Assn.* 21 (Dec.) 1954, 2-3.
28. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 40 (1) 1952, 58-60.
29. *S. Afr. Libs.* 21 (3) 1954, 73-76.
30. *Ibid.* 23 (2) 1955, 43-46.
31. *Brit. Med. J.* 1951, 1 (June 23), 1444.
32. *Libri* 3, 1954, 183-187.
33. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 188-190.
34. SCIENTIFIC COUNCIL FOR AFRICA SOUTH OF THE SAHARA. *Publ. no. 10. Directory of scientific and technical libraries south of the Sahara.* 1954. pp. 71.
35. *Libri* 3, 1954, 134-136.
36. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (4) 1955, 534-536.
37. *Ibid.* 39 (3) 1951, 177-181.
38. *Ibid.* 42 (2) 1954, 176-182.
39. *Pr. méd.* 62 (1) 1954, 17-18.
40. *Histoire de la Médecine* 4 (1) 1954, 8-20.
41. *Assn. Bib. Fr. Bull.* 31.8., 10 (février) 1953, 11-13.
42. *Libri* 3, 1954, 141-140.
43. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (4) 1955, 85.

#### *Organization and Administration*

44. STEWART, J. D. editor. *The reference librarian.* 1957. Ch. VI, 199-228.
45. *Med. Pr.* 230 (July 22, 1953), 99-102.
46. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (9) 1953, 284-288.
47. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (3) 1953, 220-224.
48. *Ibid.* 41 (3) 1953, 224-229.
49. *Ibid.* 41 (3) 1953, 230-237.
50. *Ibid.* 43 (2) 1955, 177-216.
51. *Libri* 3, 1954, 258-267.
52. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 268-278.
53. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 42 (4) 1954, 458-467.
54. *Ibid.* 43 (2) 1955, 272-275.
55. *Ibid.* 41 (4) 1953, 319-332.
56. *Ibid.* 41 (4) 1953, 369-378.
57. *J. Med. Educ.* 30 (9) 1955, 489-532.
58. *Libri* 3, 1954, 254-257.
59. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (3) 1955, 366-375.
60. *Libri* 3, 1954, 279-284.
61. Report of the Committee on Criteria for Medical School Libraries. 1952. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 40 (4) 1952, 467-468; — [do.] 1953. *Ibid.* 42 (1) 1954, 99-100.
62. Report of the Hospital Group. 1952. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 40 (4) 1952, 384-387.
63. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (1) 1953, 12-23.
64. *Ibid.* 41 (3) 1953, 252-257.
65. *Libri* 3, 1954, 310-321.
66. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 322-324.
67. *J. Amer. Med. Ass.* 154 (8) 1954, 687.
68. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (4) 1955, 539.

#### *Book and Periodical Selection*

69. L.A. MEDICAL SECTION. Books and periodicals for medical libraries in hospitals. L.A., 1952. pp. 16.
70. *Bull. Amer. Coll. Surg.* 40 (4) 1955, 225-267.

71. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 40 (4) 1952, 369-380.  
 72. *Vital notes on medical periodicals 1-1952-1952*. Philadelphia. (Periodicals and Serial Publications Committee of the Medical Library Association.) *Quarterly*.

#### Classification

73. UNITED STATES. ARMY MEDICAL LIBRARY. Classification. Medicine: First Edition. 1951. Washington. pp. 275 (- Changes and additions. Lists nos. 1-4. 1952-55).  
 74. *Libri* 3, 1954, 114-118.  
 75. UNITED STATES. LIBRARY OF CONGRESS. Classification. Class R: Medicine. 3rd ed. Washington, 1952. pp. xiv, 240.  
 76. *Libri* 3, 1954, 104-108.  
 77. BARNARD, C. C. A classification for medical and veterinary libraries. 2nd ed. H. K. Lewis, 1955. pp. viii, 279.  
 78. *Libri* 3, 1954, 109-113.  
 79. CUNNINGHAM, E. R. and STEINKE, E. G. Classification for medical literature. 4th ed. Nashville, Vanderbilt U.P., 1955. pp. xix, 164.  
 80. DEUTSCHE NORMENAUSSCHUSS. Dezimal-Klassifikation. Deutsche Gesamtausgabe. [F.H.D. Publ. no. 196]. Berlin, Cologne, Beuth-Vertrieb, 1951. pp. 559-766.  
 81. *Libri* 3, 1954, 104-126.  
 82. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (4) 1953, 333-360.  
 83. *Libri* 3, 1954, 119-122.  
 84. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 123-124.  
 85. *Rev. of Doc.* 22 (2) 1955, 47-78.  
 86. BLACK, A. D. *Classification for dental literature. 2nd revision*. Chicago, American Dental Association, 1952.  
 87. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (4) 1953, 388-392.

#### Medical Bibliography

88. FULTON, J. F. The great medical bibliographers: a study in humanism. Philadelphia, U. Pennsylvania P., 1951. pp. xv, 107.  
 89. BRODMAN, E. The development of medical bibliography. Baltimore, Medical Library Association, Publ. no. 1, 1954. pp. ix, 226.  
 90. *J. Med. Educ.* 30 (9) 1955, 518-526.

#### Current Bibliography

91. UNESCO. Report on the activities . . . of the Co-ordinating Committee on Abstracting and Indexing in the Medical and Biological Sciences. [1951.] Paris. pp. 92.  
 92. UNESCO and WHO. World medical periodicals. Paris, 1953. pp. xvi, 237.  
 93. WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION. *Library news*, 6, suppl. no. 1, 1953. pp. 42.  
 94. *Amer. Doc.* 3 (4) 1952, 219-222.  
 95. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (1) 1953, 32-40.  
 96. HIMWICH, W. A., *et al.* Survey of world medical serials and coverage by indexing and abstracting services. Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Univ., 1954. pp. xi, 79, appendices. *Processed*.  
 97. *J. of Doc.* 10 (1) 1954, 1-10.  
 98. *Annals of Lib. Sci.* 2 (3) 1955, 89-96.  
 99. *J. of Doc.* 10 (4) 1954, 193-200.  
 100. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (4) 1955, 474-483.  
 101. MAUCLÈS, L. N., editor. Rapport sur les bibliographies internationales spécialisées courantes en France. Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale, 1953. pp. 92-101.  
 102. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 39 (1) 1951, 23-27.  
 103. *Ibid.* 40 (2) 1952, 116-121.

#### Published Indexes and Abstracts

104. *Ibid.* 43 (4) 1955, 547.  
 105. *Ibid.* 39 (2) 1951, 118-121.  
 106. UNITED STATES. ARMED FORCES MEDICAL LIBRARY. CURRENT LIST DIVISION. Subject heading authority list. Washington, 1954. pp. ix, 267.  
 107. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (7) 1953, 41-43.  
 108. *Ibid.* 43 (2) 1955, 319-323.

109. TAUBER, M. F. *editor*. The subject analysis of library materials. New York, Columbia University, School of Library Service, 1953. pp. 73-82.
110. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION, MEDICAL SECTION. Report of the Sub-Committee on Subject Headings for Medical Libraries. 1953. pp. 14. *Duplicated*.
111. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (2) 1955, 338.
112. *Current work in the history of medicine 1- . 1954- . Wellcome Historical Medical Library Quarterly.*

*Unpublished Indexes (Library Indexes)*

113. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (2) 1955, 285-287.
114. *Libri* 3, 1954, 298-301.
115. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 32-38.
116. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 9-16.
117. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 295-297.

*Retrospective Bibliography*

118. UNITED STATES. ARMED FORCES MEDICAL LIBRARY. Index-Catalogue of the Library of the Surgeon General's Office, etc. 4th Series, vol. II. MH-MN. Washington, 1955. pp. v, [79], 1506.
119. UNDERWOOD, E. A. *editor*. Science, medicine and history. Essays . . . written in honour of Charles Singer. O.U.P. vol. 2, pp. 482-493.
120. UNITED STATES. ARMED FORCES MEDICAL LIBRARY. Armed Forces Medical Catalog. A cumulative list of works . . . 1950-1954. Ann Arbor, J. W. Edwards, 1955. 6 vols.
121. POYNTER, F. N. L. *compiler*. A catalogue of incunabula in the Wellcome Historical Medical Library. O.U.P., 1954. pp. xv, 160.
122. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 42 (2) 1954, 262.
123. SALANDER, H. *compiler*. Bibliotheca Walleriana: the books illustrating the history of medicine and science collected by Dr. Erik Waller, etc. Stockholm, Almqvist & Wiksell, 1955. (Acta Bibliothecae R. Universitatis Upsaliensis, 8-9.) 2 vols.
124. HAHN, A. *editor*. Catalogue des principaux périodiques et congrès de la Bibliothèque de la Faculté de Médecine de Paris. Paris, Person, 1952. pp. x, 437.
125. ROYAL COLLEGE OF VETERINARY SURGEONS. Memorial Library. Catalogue of modern works, 1900-1954. 1955. pp. 98.
126. GARRISON, F. H. and MORTON, L. T. Medical bibliography: a check-list of texts illustrating the history of medicine. 2nd ed. Gratten, 1954. pp. xiii, 655.
127. PAULY, A. *editor*. Bibliographie des sciences médicales. (1874.) London, D. Verschoyle, 1954. pp. xx, 1758, [72].
128. UNITED STATES. ARMED FORCES MEDICAL LIBRARY. REFERENCE DIVISION. The structure, composition and growth of bone, 1930-1953: a bibliography, compiled by M. C. Spencer and R. Uhler. Washington, 1955. pp. x, 190.
129. LEFANU, W. R. A bio-bibliography of Edward Jenner, 1749-1823. Harvey & Blythe, 1957. pp. 176.
130. KEYNES, G. A bibliography of the writings of Dr. William Harvey, 1578-1657. 2nd ed. Cambridge, C.U.P. 1953. pp. xiii, 79.

*Medical Library Co-operation, National and Regional*

131. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 39 (4) 1957, 250-255.
132. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (1) 1955, 7-3.
133. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (1) 1955, 21-22.
134. *Ibid.* 56 (8) 1954, 314.
135. List of current medical periodicals taken by the London medical schools. [1954.] pp. 27. *Duplicated*.
136. *Libri* 3, 1954, 285-291.
137. *Aslib Proc.* 3 (3) 1953, 155-162.
138. *Aust. Lib. J.* 4 (1) 1955, 19-22.
139. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (4) 1955, 484-550.
140. *Ibid.* 42 (1) 1954, 94-97.

*International Co-operation*

141. *Ibid.* 39 (4) 1957, 295-305.
142. *Libri* 3, 1954, 414-418.
143. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 402-413.

144. *Unesco Bull.* 7 (5-6) 1953, 73-82.  
 145. *Libri* 3, 1954, 419.  
 146. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 42 (4) 1954, 501.

*Education and Training for Medical Librarianship*

147. *Libri* 3, 1954, 232-237.  
 148. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 226-231.  
 149. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 205-213.  
 150. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 214-218.  
 151. *Ibid.* 3, 1954, 219-225.  
 152. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (2) 1955, 177-183.  
 153. *Publ. Hlth. Rep., Wash.* 70 (5) 1955, 473-478.  
 154. *Lib. Q.* 24 (1) 1954, 13-15.  
 155. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (3) 1955, 397-401.

*Reference Work and Reader Guidance*

156. *Ibid.* 42 (1) 1954, 23-29.  
 157. *Journal-Lancet* 72 (12) 1952, 565-566, 589.  
 158. *Proceedings of the First World Conference on Medical Education, London, 1953.* O.U.P., 1954. pp. 522-526.  
 159. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (2) 1953, 118-121.  
 160. MORTON, L. T. *How to use a medical library.* 2nd ed. Heinemann Medical Books, 1952. pp. vii, 44.  
 161. POSTELL, W. D. *Applied medical bibliography for students.* Springfield, Ill., Thomas, 1955 (*American lecture series*, no. 255). pp. xi, 142.  
 162. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 43 (3) 1955, 347-355.  
 163. *Ibid.* 40 (4) 1952, 355-368.  
 164. *St. Thom. Hosp. Gaz.* 49 (6) 1951, 208-216.  
 165. *Med. Pr.* 227 (20) 1952, 456-460.  
 166. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (8) 1953, 252-254.  
 167. *Glasgow Med. J.* 35 (12) 1954, 366-374.  
 168. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (4) 1953, 384-387.  
 169. *Ibid.* 40 (4) 1952, 360-362.  
 170. *Ibid.* 41 (4) 1953, 410-413.  
 171. *Ibid.* 40 (4) 1952, 363-365.  
 172. *Ibid.* 43 (2) 1955, 296-299.

Section II  
Special Libraries

Downloaded from [www.dbraulibrary.org.in](http://www.dbraulibrary.org.in)

## Chapter 7

### INDUSTRIAL LIBRARIES

By W. D. PIGOTT, F.L.A., *Information Officer and Librarian, The Associated Ethyl Company Limited, Engine Laboratory, Bletchley*

**I**NTRODUCTION. GENERAL TRENDS IN INDUSTRY. The establishment of many more libraries during the period under review may be attributed to the realization that conscious progress depends on an efficient and speedy supply of up-to-the-minute information. Between 1,200 and 1,500 British firms are now estimated to have established libraries or information departments. The rate at which they are being set up is increasing, and industrial libraries now exist in sufficient numbers to be accepted as integral parts of a large concern. There is an awareness of the need to employ suitably qualified staff<sup>(1)</sup>. Industry is acknowledging the expert who is trained to collect, organize and disseminate needed information by the employment of tested general library practices. Where libraries and information services are already established, there is an increasing tendency to provide a company-wide service instead of having smaller units attached to departments. Some decentralized firms, however, are finding it more expedient to develop separate and independent libraries rather than depend on the parent company for service. Each I.C.I. division has a library of its own. Inclusion of the library as part of a larger unit of technical information, as at the Dow Chemical Company<sup>(2)</sup>, although not general, cannot be dismissed as an unlikely possibility. It has materialized in several firms and research associations in this country, of which the libraries of the United Steel Companies Limited, near Rotherham, Motor Industry Research Association and, more recently, the Associated Ethyl Company Limited, at its Ellesmere Port establishment, are examples.

A demand for standardization is growing, but although much has been achieved, certain aspects of industrial library work are difficult to treat in this manner, either because of the differences between types of library or because they are impossible to evaluate quantitatively. Libraries are marked by the most strenuous individualism, and the demands made by different companies have made it difficult to achieve real uniformity. Further complications have arisen from conflict between librarians and documentalists; a result of the impact of industrialization on bibliographical and information work and the lack of ability of the more conservative librarians to appreciate the requirements of the new situation<sup>(3)</sup>. Any attempt at demarcation seems to invite disaster.

ORGANIZATIONAL RELATIONS AND CONCEPT OF FUNCTION. The great divergency of conditions makes it impossible to generalize over administration policies, and it is difficult to evaluate a service in terms of cost, because such information does not exist<sup>(4)</sup>. Centralized purchasing, personnel allocation,

accounting and other management practices introduced by company administrators, have exercised a great influence on industrial libraries, which exist solely to save time and money. The determining factors are the parent organization, management concept of function, users and their location and available resources<sup>(6)</sup>. Relations with managements were discussed at the Special Libraries Association Convention in 1954<sup>(6)</sup>.

The industrial library is essentially a service organization and there is a consciousness that firms should develop commercial information services along with their technical ones. Sir Alfred Egerton said at the Aslib and F.B.I. one-day conference in 1952 that methods developed for dissemination of scientific knowledge could be applied to production, distribution and management<sup>(7)</sup>. These may be provided by two separate libraries<sup>(8)</sup>. A commercial service has developed parallel with a technical one at the Du Pont de Nemours Company in the U.S.A.<sup>(9)</sup>. This points to the increasing emphasis on the library as the logical information centre.

In Britain the position of the librarian in his own organization has been greatly debated, and a definition of function would be helpful to clear up an unsatisfactory position which weakens the chance of maintaining a good service<sup>(10)</sup>. The need is growing for the librarian to take over more of the scientist's work. It may be wasteful for engineers to have to carry out literature searches<sup>(11)</sup>, but, at the same time, it is not entirely the librarian's job. An intelligent approach to training and division of work would be economical.

Management interest in libraries and their problems has been considerably aroused, and consultants and executives have made studies of technical libraries and outlined policies, duties and qualifications<sup>(12)</sup><sup>(13)</sup>. Commenting on the advantages to be gained from a well-run company library, Rose L. Vormelker<sup>(14)</sup> gives some very practical advice on equipment, staff and technical processes involved. Copious references are given. The functional approach to planning a service was used by the Atlantic Research Association. Sixty scientists and engineers were interviewed to determine what services and publications they used most. Publications were then acquired in the proportion suggested by the interviews<sup>(15)</sup>.

It is now generally accepted that the management has certain responsibilities. In return the librarian has been urged constantly to bear in mind the purpose he is serving, in attempting to prove that library research moves fast, costs less and gives results sooner than laboratory research<sup>(16)</sup>. It should be a dynamic force in the research process<sup>(17)</sup>.

Time and motion studies have not been numerous, and although surveys of libraries have become an accepted part of library management, little study has been made of the carrying into effect of the recommendations<sup>(18)</sup>.

**PLANNING AND ORGANIZING A SERVICE.** An increase in the importance of libraries, particularly in the newer industries, has led to the allocation of improved accommodation. The library is no longer regarded as an offshoot of the chief chemist's department, and where rebuilding is contemplated, suitable space for library premises is usually included in the plans. An analogy has been made between an information library and a process plant in planning matters. This functional approach, using flow sheets, was dealt with at the Aslib conference in 1951<sup>(19)</sup>. It claims that a library is a system of flows and that its

functional representation should be shown in flow diagrams when planning a new library.

There is little published guidance in planning industrial libraries. S. Hermer<sup>(20)</sup> gives some useful hints on making the most of available space. *Special libraries—planning and equipment*, edited by Margaret Hilligan, was published in 1955 by the Science Technology Division of the Special Libraries Association. A comprehensive and long-awaited handbook, which contains a great deal of information previously scattered in periodical literature, is *A handbook of special librarianship and information work*, under the general editorship of Wilfred Ashworth, published by Aslib in 1955. The book is of value as a reference tool, not only for planning but for the whole field of librarianship in industry and research. Extensive lists of references are provided. The many contributors are acknowledged experts and pioneers, to whom, D. V. Arnold remarks, "This book can stand as a tribute and a reminder to all special librarians that theirs is a service that can never become standardized routine, but must constantly change with the varying demands made on it by organizations that are themselves always developing."

The library of S. C. Johnson and Son is an example of unique library planning<sup>(21)</sup>. The layout and furniture were specially designed and a hoist is provided for the speedy delivery of books. Among the larger new libraries or extensions recently opened are those at the Dyestuffs Division of I.C.I. Limited at Manchester<sup>(22)</sup>, and in the U.S.A. that of the Dow Chemical Company.

The supply of information to the small firm continues to be a difficult problem. Most firms are too small to run their own services, and the Cutlery Research Council<sup>(23)</sup> has found that special methods were needed to persuade small firms to make use of information. Critical surveys are made of the literature by the information department. This is prepared for distribution by the research staff, since only they are considered really familiar with the language and outlook of those in the industry, and can reduce the information to simple terms without making it appear amateurish. To supplement this service, members of the research staff make it their job to go out to firms to help in the solution of their problems.

The organization and value of small-scale information services is dealt with comprehensively by A. H. Raine<sup>(24)</sup>. At every stage the library should be planned with the purpose in view. It is this principle that conditions the building up of a library<sup>(25)</sup>. Guidance for executives in planning a library is given in an article in *Research*<sup>(26)</sup> and some practical advice is forthcoming from D. J. Foskett<sup>(27)</sup> concerning the sources of information, methods of distribution and increased value of factory libraries by co-operation. Useful information on costing, planning and staffing a small technical library may be obtained from a paper by Marjorie O. Baker<sup>(28)</sup>.

To stimulate the establishment of new industrial libraries in South Africa, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research published an outline of what a small special library can do, what it costs and how to start it<sup>(29)</sup>.

The lack of books dealing with special libraries is only too obvious, and Lucille Jackson's book is especially welcome<sup>(30)</sup>. The chapters are by various contributors and show little duplication. Most subjects are covered, and of particular interest to industrial librarians are the chapters on budgeting and documentation.

It is not always possible in industry to have all material in one place. Where subsidiary collections have grown up, it is the tendency to bring them under the control of the central library<sup>(31)</sup>. Only where a collection of books is brought under the control of a qualified librarian can a balanced collection be built up and its value increased<sup>(32)</sup>.

**SUPPLY OF INFORMATION AND TECHNIQUES.** The increasing complexity and volume of scientific literature has been responsible for a "bottle-neck" in the dissemination and retrieval of information, and librarians have become more conscious of the problems involved in indexing and abstracting. The special treatment of periodicals is dealt with in a comprehensive review of the literature by D. Grenfell<sup>(33)</sup>. This brings together a great deal of material on their treatment in special libraries which has not previously been collected.

The suggestion that separate reports should replace periodicals<sup>(34)</sup> would create greater difficulties in listing and location. Attempts have been made to dispense with circulation. Greater efficiency at lower cost has been found by the Arnold Engineering Development Centre<sup>(35)</sup>, which sends xerographic copies of contents pages to all people on the circulation list. Requests for periodicals are subsequently only received for those containing articles actually wanted. The advantages and disadvantages of this system are explained by T. J. Hopkin, who uses such a system with 100 periodicals<sup>(36)</sup>. The cost of circulating photographic copies of contents pages may seem exorbitant, but co-operative effort by pooling resources would enable a greater number of libraries to use this system. A commercial project which may have far-reaching results is *Current articles unlimited*. Commencing in July 1955, the company undertakes to supply, by prompt weekly mailings, multiple copies of contents pages of hundreds of medical-technical periodicals. A twofold advantage presents itself. These could be used instead of circulating the actual periodicals initially and also as a means of keeping company personnel abreast of current articles in periodicals not subscribed to. Libraries at present experimenting with photographic copies of contents lists are those of the Upjohn and Lederle companies in the U.S.A.<sup>(37)</sup>. Circulation of periodicals has been dispensed with at the Pittsburgh Consolidated Coal Company and review slips are routed to company personnel<sup>(38)</sup>. The Detroit Edison Company speeds up circulation by the use of punched cards<sup>(39)</sup>.

The emergence and increasing importance of research reports and material not published in the normal way has led to the reconsideration of techniques<sup>(40)</sup>. Because these reports are not amenable to traditional methods of bibliographical description and demand an intensive subject analysis, a whole new discipline has been built up around them. The treatment of reports is dealt with in a practical way by Aslib<sup>(41)</sup> and in an article in *American documentation*<sup>(42)</sup>. The use of microfilm for little-used reports is a practical suggestion<sup>(43)</sup>. The research report is essentially a post-war feature and its development presents a serious challenge to librarianship, which can only be overcome by a new approach to professional organization in these fields. There appears to be an attitude of indifference and lack of co-operation with the actions taking place in documentation circles. If new methods are not adopted because they are foreign to library practice, there is a risk of the role of librarian becoming a subordinate one in the handling of technical information<sup>(44)</sup>.

Subject indexing has increased in importance. Printed lists of headings continue to appear, but the absence of these in many fields has resulted in a great divergence of practice<sup>(45)</sup>. The Uniterm system of indexing has come to the fore and has been criticized<sup>(46)</sup>.

A project which, it is hoped, may have a far-reaching effect on making information retrieval more efficient is the "Classification Research Group," which was formed as a result of the Scientific Information Conference in 1948. The Group is undertaking a practical and detailed examination of a series of subject fields; reviewing the basic principles of bibliographic classification without allegiance to any one scheme<sup>(47)</sup>.

At least one company claims to have neither library nor librarian yet organizes an indexing service and makes its own subject headings<sup>(48)</sup>. Imagination and flexibility are the keynotes of success in indexing and cataloguing<sup>(49)</sup> and there is a growing tendency to streamline these routine procedures. Shelf register, accessions record and catalogue have been combined into one operation<sup>(50)</sup>, and routine statistics are being pruned to leave more time for dealing with the increasing amount of inquiry work<sup>(51)</sup>.

Securing the return of books to the library is of constant concern. Various ways of encouraging this are in operation<sup>(52)</sup>.

A wide acceptance of the necessity for library bulletins, as a means of disseminating information and advertising library services, is apparent<sup>(53)</sup>. In the U.S.A. they are a particularly well-established function. In format and content they vary widely.

Binding periodicals for retention depends on many factors—the frequency with which it is necessary to consult earlier files, the proximity to large technical libraries and the cost involved determine binding policy. From the co-operative viewpoint most industrial librarians are aware of the necessity to preserve much periodical literature which is not otherwise available. It is often sufficient to retain temporary unbound files of five- or ten-year periods. Some librarians extract contents lists and pages covering articles of special interest for separate filing, and find this more efficacious<sup>(54)</sup>.

Pamphlets and trade catalogues form part of the library's stock, and new ideas have emerged over storage, classification and discarding so that information can be located from every angle<sup>(55)</sup>. Books are of importance second only to periodicals, and there is a growing tendency to maintain coverage in the basic sciences as well as in technology<sup>(56)</sup>.

Delays in borrowing, due to increased use of the inter-library machinery for loan, is causing more librarians to build up back files of periodicals. B. C. Vickery suggests three bases for the calculation of the need for early files<sup>(57)</sup>: the advice of the expert, the frequency with which the title is quoted and the frequency with which it is necessary to borrow the titles.

The increased cost of periodicals has been felt in many budgets, and Dr. R. S. Cahn attempted at the First International Congress on Documentation of Applied Chemistry, held in November 1955, to secure greater support from industry for meeting increased costs in the production of scientific periodicals.

Publicity of library and information services has received a greater impetus in the United States than in this country. Beneficial effects of good publicity, backed by competent work of an experienced staff, can be rendered effective

throughout the entire organization<sup>(58)</sup>. There are three methods—written (bulletins, reports, methods of handling correspondence, etc.), oral (seminars and work with staff members) and personal (tactful handling of loan and circulation problems, and relations with outside organizations).

It takes performance to build reputation, and Alma C. Mitchell<sup>(59)</sup> emphasizes the importance of the library as the logical information centre. It is a research division and a service department. The physical set-up and mechanical methods employed are minor factors in comparison with the important one of making the library indispensable in an organization.

**TRAINING AND STATUS.** The position concerning training and qualifications is of unusual interest. Discussion and even controversy has been prolific among librarians on the need for personnel with a background other than that of a public library. A. G. Kay in his article "Qualifications for special library work"<sup>(60)</sup> presents points most effectively. He discusses basic requirements, value of practical experience and relationships with other spheres of librarianship. He is severely critical of the Library Association's professional standards and gives sound reasons why, in his opinion, these are unrealistic for the industrial library field. The intelligent and stimulating correspondence subsequently published<sup>(61)</sup>, and in which the Association was accused of apathy, throws into striking relief the relevance of his remarks. The fact that the subject was given prominence in a periodical having non-library objectives may be considered as evidence of the increasing interest in library problems.

The Library Association examinations include papers on special librarianship, and further suggestions for inclusion in the syllabus have been made<sup>(62)</sup>. At the Hastings conference in 1954 it was suggested that the Association should adapt its organization to make better provision for the needs of special librarians and that examinations should be extended to provide for training in specialized work. "One of the gravest faults of the special librarian today is the lack of sound technical knowledge in the field of his employer's speciality."<sup>(63)</sup>

Although Aslib itself does not offer formal courses of training for examinations, it does hold regular ones of three to seven days. A course on information work was arranged by that body in February 1954.

It has been suggested that Aslib should issue its own diploma and that an Institute of Documentation be founded, to be sponsored by Aslib<sup>(64)</sup>. The institute would conduct examinations. The position of Documentation Scientists in the Civil Service has been suggested for creation.

The conflict between librarians and documentalists has become bitter and might endanger co-operation between related fields<sup>(65)</sup>. The possession of subject qualifications in addition to—or as an alternative to—library ones continues to be greatly debated.

The lack of training facilities is apparent in South Africa<sup>(66)</sup>, where it has been suggested that much of the training imparted in general librarianship is of little use to the industrial librarian. Training for two years has been suggested in Germany, and a course for industrial librarians has been arranged in Malmö as a study circle<sup>(67)</sup>. In Holland there is a general awareness that training is needed and attempts have been made there to organize facilities for industrial librarians.

In America only has any real attempt been made to organize training on a sound professional basis. It has been agreed that preparation in a subject field is essential and courses with a combination of both subject and library qualifications are offered<sup>(68)</sup>. Statements have been prepared setting out the optimum, yet practical, programmes for training in science, technology, medicine and finance, and an experimental programme was developed in 1948 and 1952.

The way in which subject qualifications are needed is illustrated by Irene M. Strieby<sup>(69)</sup>. The Special Libraries Association has issued publications on careers in industrial libraries, and guidance clinics are held at the universities to emphasize the work in industry. Fifty-eight per cent of the library schools in the U.S.A. offer courses in special librarianship<sup>(70)</sup>, and industrial training is given in many libraries there. The Industrial Oil Product Company of Chicago has devised a programme to compensate in some degree for the lack of library training facilities<sup>(71)</sup>.

Little information is forthcoming on salaries; that which is suggests that they range between £500 a year and upwards of £2,000. On February 7, 1956, an article in the *Financial Times* mentions that a survey carried out among a small section of information officers in 1954 showed that the average salary of men between twenty-six and thirty was £610 and that between the ages of thirty-one and thirty-five it was £1,064 per annum. Such statistics as there are suggest that the number of women engaged on information work is slightly less than the number of men.

CO-OPERATION AND PROFESSIONAL ACTIVITIES. Industrial libraries are probably more dependent on schemes of co-operation than any other type of library, and an interesting movement has been apparent among them—together with other libraries—to organize themselves regionally and by subject interest. In the U.S.A. the divisions of the Special Libraries Association have increased rapidly. In this country, fostering the movement, is the recently formed Reference and Special Libraries Section of the Library Association, which is tackling the difficulties of the industrial librarian with vigour. Working parties of the various groups are producing union lists of periodicals, directories and lists of translators. It is mainly due to the enthusiasm of its members that more time at conferences has been devoted to the problems of the industrial librarian. Aslib is attempting to meet the demand by the establishment of its subject groups and its branches. A plea for the better integration of research information has resulted in the "Sheffield scheme" being emulated in various parts of the country<sup>(72)</sup>, notably in Hull and the West London district (CICRIS). The South-eastern Regional Board for Industry has co-operated in the initiation of a scheme to cover its area and the "Hertfordshire scheme" is an interesting experiment<sup>(73)</sup>. The Luton and District Technical Information Service is yet another example of voluntary efforts in co-operation.

To avoid the expense of duplication by libraries of co-operating firms, the Institute of Aeronautical Sciences has organized a co-operative project. The Institute specializes in obtaining difficult and obscure references<sup>(74)</sup>. Some valuable suggestions have been forthcoming regarding regional organization and the setting up of special library bureaux to serve industrial libraries<sup>(75)</sup>. The benefits of co-operation are not universally enjoyed by industrial libraries, as

many of them belong neither to regional library bureaux, N.C.L., Aslib nor research associations.

Increased borrowing directly between industrial libraries is the outcome of personal contact, and, to reduce the cost of loans, many more libraries are finding it expedient to supply photocopies instead of loaning actual material. This is a practice carried out on a large scale by many of the research associations. The various book exchange schemes which are now operating have benefited many new libraries.

From Germany comes a suggestion to set up central documentation centres for all important industries. These would survey all literature of interest and build up complete libraries on the subject and furnish studies of special subjects on demand<sup>(76)</sup>.

The Verein Deutscher Elektrotechniker has inaugurated a scheme whereby member firms combine to produce a weekly periodical index journal. Each firm is responsible for covering a certain number of periodicals. UDC classification is used and, if the venture is successful, it is hoped to produce a more ambitious scheme with abstracts<sup>(77)</sup>.

Co-operation among pharmaceutical libraries in the U.S.A. has resulted in a high order of service to their own organizations and to the interchange of ideas and materials. The Division of Chemical Literature of the American Chemical Society and the American Institute of Documentation have carried out valuable work to aid industry. The publishing division of the Special Libraries Association has continued to produce many useful publications.

**PROGRESS IN INDIVIDUAL FIELDS.** The range and working methods of industrial libraries have developed so rapidly that the fields now covered preclude any possibility of commenting on all. American libraries hold a leading position. Remarkable achievements have been made among pharmaceutical libraries, where industry realizes that good research is dependent on good libraries. It has been estimated there that literature research can save 10 per cent of research costs<sup>(78)</sup>. Most pharmaceutical libraries also serve non-scientific departments of firms. The libraries of the Upjohn, Lilly and Squibb companies are of particular importance in this field of progress. In this country the chemical industry in its widest sense is leading. The electrical industry, particularly on the electronic side, and the aircraft industry are close followers. Petroleum and pharmaceutical libraries now exist in sufficient numbers to consider some form of grouping. Agency libraries are to the forefront in the U.S.A., and, in recognition of the importance of this type of library, the American Association of Advertising Agencies has done much to advance the cause of the agency library<sup>(79)</sup>. Rapid progress in the aeronautical field is apparent, and the establishment of the Aslib Aeronautical Group is indicative of the co-operation in this field.

In the engineering field, the iron and steel firm of Georg Fischer at Schaffhausen has dedicated a fine, and possibly unique, collection of books to the service of industry<sup>(80)</sup>. This is to be kept up to date and is known as the Iron Library.

One of the largest chemical libraries in Germany to escape damage from bombing, the research library at Farbenfabrik at Leverkusen, is carrying out valuable service to the war-damaged industrial libraries of that country.

Realizing the effects that the lack of availability of literature may have on the recovery of Germany, the firm made its library services available to less-fortunate firms. The demand has been enormous, and Farbenfabrik Bayer has had to suspend loans of books in favour of microfilm or photocopies<sup>(81)</sup>.

From an administrative angle, and because it is decentralized, the I.C.I. library system of Australia and New Zealand presents some interesting developments. Due to the large area covered, the system operates from a headquarters through liaison centres at factories and interstate offices<sup>(82)</sup>.

**MECHANIZATION.** Documentation has not kept pace with the progress of science and technology, with the result that dissemination and retrieval of information is at a very critical stage. Technical means of keeping abreast of literature are being developed, but it is doubtful if any industrial library is large enough to support the various electronic devices which are on the market. The second volume of Holmstrom's *Facts, files and action* is outstanding for its review of the various means of recording and retrieving information, and is certainly a good guide for the industrialist faced with the problem of setting up an information service<sup>(83)</sup>.

Most industrial libraries have some form of photocopying apparatus and a microfilm reader. The range of photocopying apparatus now available is extensive and a choice depends on the type and amount of work it is necessary to copy. Microfilm cameras are being used, particularly for filming research reports. More libraries are buying microcard readers now that good ones are available and more works are being added on microcard. Latterly an attempt has been made to re-popularize microfilm, which is, generally speaking, not so acceptable as microcard. The traditional method of storing microfilm has been an obstacle to its general popularity, but new horizons have been shown with the Kodak Minicard and the Filmsort system, whereby films can be mounted in a frame and filed in catalogue drawers. The system has proved successful for use with punched cards<sup>(84)</sup>.

Reproduction of catalogue cards by mechanical means is carried out by many libraries, and interesting experiments have been tried with Adroma, Banda, and other dyeline processes. The United Steel Companies Limited finds an Emidicta paper disc machine invaluable.

The Farbenfabrik Bayer library uses mechanically sorted punched cards<sup>(85)</sup>, but there is some doubt generally among industrial librarians regarding their usefulness for complicated searching. The Gmelin Institute<sup>(87)</sup> claims to have proved their value, but only where highly trained staffs are provided for the exploitation. A magnetic indicator board has been put into service at Tate and Lyle Research Laboratories<sup>(88)</sup>. This records the movements of periodicals, but appears to be only suitable for the smaller library.

A survey of mechanical apparatus so far designed, or adapted, for bibliographical research appeared in the *Library Association Record*<sup>(89)</sup>, with the suggestion that the Reference and Special Libraries Section undertakes a study. Valuable experiments which may influence industrial libraries have been carried out by the Telefact Foundation<sup>(90)</sup>, which is mainly interested in the supply of information and not the mass media of communication, the Massachusetts Institute of Technology<sup>(91)</sup> and the Battelle Memorial Institute<sup>(92)</sup>.

CONCLUSION. The greatest need in industry today appears to be co-ordination of resources. The wealth of literature which exists in this country alone could be better organized to industry's advantage. The American Special Libraries Association has shown the value of co-operative effort. The findings of the Manchester Joint Research Council<sup>(98)</sup> reveal that industry is, apparently, satisfied with the adequacy of available sources of information. The survey was carried out locally, but its findings are of value throughout the country and reveal a wide divergence of practice and interest among smaller and medium-sized firms. Two hundred and twenty-five firms were visited, of which ninety-six had libraries, only eleven employed trained librarians and twenty-one operated without staffs. Clearly there is a very real need, in spite of the increase in number of industrial libraries, of some means of informing those engaged in industry of the advantages to be gained by systematic collection, organization and dissemination of information. Industry is aware of the sources of information, but many firms make only a limited use of them. Aslib, the Council found, was not used very widely. Public libraries were used by approximately 50 per cent of the firms, but only 25 per cent used them frequently. It is too early to forecast if the survey will result in the establishment of more libraries, but it is apparent that industry generally has realized that a well-run library cannot fail to be a profitable source of information and inspiration, and a fundamental tool during the progress of research. The scope of the work is widening, and librarians are being called upon to use their techniques and knowledge of information sources to assist industry in many different fields, and it is in the newer industries that the greatest progress is being achieved.

## REFERENCES

- General Trends in Industry*
1. RIDER, K. J. *Engineer* 195 (Feb. 13, 1953), 252-254.
  2. STRIBBY, I. M. *Lib. Trends* 1 (2) 1952, 173-188.
  3. BRIET, S. *Rev. Doc.* 21 (2) 1954, 4-45.
- Organizational Relations and Concepts of Function*
4. STRIBBY, I. M. *Lib. Trends* 1 (2) 1953, 173-188.
  5. GRAHAM, E. C. *Spec. Libs.* 45 (9) 1954, 367-370.
  6. CAVANAGH, E. S. and others. *Ibid.* 43 (7) 1952, 233-245.
  7. *Engineering* 173 (March 21, 1952), 371.
  8. BOSKETT, D. J. L.A., *London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Papers.* 1951, 18-24.
  9. SORKUP, R. *Spec. Libs.* 43 (10) 1952, 389-395.
  10. COLLISON, R. L. *Lib. Trends* 1 (2) 1952, 233-239.
  11. CHAFFEE, R. W. *Machine Design* 24 (9) 1952, 110-127.
  12. FIELD, H. W. *Spec. Libs.* 43 (7) 1952, 253-255.
  13. THOMAS, C. L. *Ibid.* 43 (7) 1952, 259-261.
  14. VORMELKER, R. L. *J. Industr. Training* 5 (5) 1951, 2-6, 13-16, 18, 26.
  15. *Chem. & Eng. News* 32 (Dec. 13, 1954), 4980-4982.
  16. THOMAS, C. L. *Spec. Libs.* 43 (7) 1952, 259-261.
  17. GRANFIELD, W. J. *Ibid.* 43 (4) 1952, 131-134.
  18. HOWARD, P. *Lib. Trends* 2 (3) 1954, 428-436.
- Planning and Organizing a Service*
19. REED, J. B. *Aslib Proc.* 3 (4) 1951, 245-252, *diags.*, and *Ibid.* 3 (2) 1951, 63-68, *diags.*
  20. HEENER, S. *Spec. Libs.* 42 (1) 1951, 5-12.
  21. KUZEL, I. M. *Ibid.* 42 (10) 1951, 374-379.

22. I.C.I. LTD. 'The libraries of the Dycstuffs Division. 1955. pp. 16, *illus.*, *plans*. also DAVIDSON, I. M. and FAIRBAIRN, R. E. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (10) 1955, 402-405, *illus*.
23. KINGTON, C. N. *Metal Treatment and Drop Forging* 21 (Sept. 1954), 425-429.
24. RAINE, A. H. *Aslib. Proc.* 3 (1) 1951, 31-35.
25. SHIRES, G. A. *Ibid.* 3 (3) 1951, 151-154.
26. UVAROV, E. B. *Research* 5 (Nov. 1952), 510-514.
27. FOSKETT, D. J. *Aslib. Proc.* 5 (1) 1953, 3-8.
28. BAKER, MARJORIE O. *Spec. Libs.* 46 (3) 1955, 103-108, *diagns*.
29. MEWS, HAZEL. Books are tools: the organization of small technical libraries for South African industries. Pretoria, C.S. & I.R., 1951. Council for Scientific and Industrial Research.
30. JACKSON, L. ed. *Technical Libraries: their organisation and management*. New York, Special Libraries Association, 1951.
31. ARNOLD, D. V. *Secretary* 18 (11) 1951, 497-500.
32. DAVIES, G. R. *Manager* 20 (4) 1952, 228-229.

#### *Supply of Information and Techniques*

33. GRENFELL, D. Periodicals and serials: their treatment in special libraries. *Aslib*, 1953. (*Aslib manuals*.)
34. HENKLE, H. *Lib. Trends* 1 (2) 1952, 210-218.
35. RANDALL, G. E. *Spec. Libs.* 45 (9) 1954, 371-373.
36. HOPKIN, T. J. *Ibid.* 46 (5) 1955, 211-212.
37. *Ibid.* 42 (1) 1951, 28.
38. ANDERSON, S. G. *Ibid.* 45 (6) 1954, 245-249.
39. BUMGARDNER, H. E. *Ibid.* 43 (3) 1952, 92-93, 102.
40. TAUBE, M. *Ibid.* 43 (6) 1952, 206-208.
41. "CLOVER HILL" pseud. *Aslib aeronautical Group Newsletter* no. 2 (Oct. 1952), 5-8.
42. FRANCIS, E. S. *Amer. Doc.* 3 (2) 1952, 117-119.
43. ORNE, J. *Ibid.* 3 (2) 1952, 101-105.
44. CARTER, I. *Spec. Libs.* 45 (10) 1951, 407-413.
45. IZZO, H. *Ibid.* 42 (6) 1951, 214-215, 239.
46. MORRIS, JACK C. *J. Cat. & Class.* 10 (3) 1954, 111-118.
47. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 262-268.
48. WEINBERG, S. *Aslib. Proc.* 3 (1) 1951, 22-29.
49. HORN, J. *Spec. Libs.* 43 (7) 1952, 250-253.
50. TAYLOR, L. *Aslib. Proc.* 3 (3) 1951, 159-164.
51. WIT, P. E. DE. *S. Afr. Libs.* 19 (1) 1951, 23-25.
52. STREBEY, I. M. Books—lost or stolen. Indianapolis, Lilly Research Laboratories, 1951. pp. 5.
53. JACKSON, L. *Spec. Libs.* 44 (9) 1953, 266-269.
54. STYRING, H. K. *Times Review of Industry* 6 (April 1952), 17.
55. KEHL, M. M. *Spec. Libs.* 45 (1) 1954, 17-19.
56. THOMAS, C. L. *Ibid.* 43 (7) 1952, 259-261.
57. VICKERY, B. C. *Aslib. Proc.* 5 (2) 1953, 69-74, *diagns*.
58. SPITZER, E. E. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 26 (7) 1952, 550-552.
59. MITCHELL, A. C. *Spec. Libs.* 43 (1) 1952, 18-21, 34, 38.

#### *Training and Status*

60. KAY, A. G. *Engineer* 198 (July 23, 1954), 130-132.
61. *Ibid.* 198 (July 30, 1954), 164-165.
62. BAKER, E. A. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.*, 1954. 77-82.
63. HESLOP, M. R. *Spec. Libs.* 44 (1) 1953, 27-29.
64. FOSTER, A. G. *Lab. Practice* 7 (9) 1952, 415-416.
65. BRIEF, S. *Rev. Doc.* 21 (2) 1954, 41-45.
66. LLOYD, J. R. *S. Afr. Libs.* 20 (2) 1952, 55-58.
67. SELANDER, E. *Tid. f. Dok.* 7 (5) 1951, 52-54.
68. *Lib. Q.* 24 (1) 1954, 1-20 and *Lib. Trends* 1 (2) 1952, 244-255.
69. STREBEY, I. M. The chemical librarian in industry. Indianapolis, Lilly Research Laboratories, 1951. pp. 7.
70. BURKE, J. F. *Spec. Libs.* 42 (10) 1951, 381-383, 395.
71. GILL, M. *Ibid.* 43 (3) 1952, 82-83, 104-106.

*Co-operation and Professional Activities*

72. ARDERN, L. L. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (5) 1953, 158-160.  
 73. VICKERY, B. C. and AUSTIN, M. *Ibid.* 53 (7) 1951, 225-226.  
 74. STEINMETZ, M. Aslib aeronautical Group. Second annual conference. Preprint no. 3. pp. 3.  
 75. FILON, S. P. L. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (5) 1953, 160.  
 76. MATTHES, M. *Nach. f. Dok.* 2 (3) 1951, supp. i-v.  
 77. FRANK, OTTO. *Ibid.* 3 (4) 1954, 187-190.

*Progress in Individual Fields*

78. SOUTHERN, W. A. *Drug and Cosmetic Ind.* 71 (Aug. 1952), 182-183, 265, 267.  
 79. FRANKENSTEIN, K. D. and others. *Spec. Libs.* 43 (1) 1952, 7-18.  
 80. *Engineering* 173 (May 9, 1952), 592-593 illus.  
 81. STOETZER, W. *Unser Werk* 2 (July-Aug. 1951), 23-27.  
 82. STIDSON, M. A. C. *Information* 4 (2) 1951, 14-17.

*Mechanization*

83. HOLMSTROM, J. E. Facts, files and action in business and public affairs. Part 2: filing, indexing and circulation. Chapman & Hall, 1953.  
 84. TYLER, A. W. and others. *Amer. Doc.* 6 (1) 1955, 18-30, *diags.*  
 85. DAVISON, G. H. *Aslib Proc.* 4 (3) 1952, 121-129.  
 86. STOETZER, W. *Nach. f. Dok.* 3 (4) 1952, 189-192.  
 87. PIETSCH, E. *A.B.C.D.* no. 7 (Jan.-Feb. 1953), 193-199 (*Abs. J. of Doc.* 9 (4) 1953, 256).  
 88. FARRADANE, J. F. L. *Aslib Proc.* 3 (3) 1951, 155-158.  
 89. JAMIESON, D. R. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (7) 1951, 216-221.  
 90. *Amer. Doc.* 2 (3) 1951, 182-184.  
 91. HENKLE, H. H. *Lib. Trends* 1 (2) 1952, 210-218.  
 92. *Chem. & Eng. News* 31 (April 20, 1953), 1664.

*Conclusion*

93. MANCHESTER JOINT RESEARCH COUNCIL. Industry and science: a study of their relationship based on a survey of firms in the greater Manchester area and carried out by the Manchester joint research council 1950-1953. Manchester, University Press, 1954. pp. vii, 188, *tables.*

## Chapter 8

### GOVERNMENT LIBRARIES IN BRITAIN

By A. E. FOUNTAIN, B.A., F.L.A., *Librarian, Ministry of Health*, and  
D. W. KING, F.L.A., *Librarian, War Office*

**I**NTRODUCTION AND DEFINITION. It would perhaps be as well to begin this chapter by attempting some sort of definition of a Government library. This is not as easy as might at first be thought. Perhaps if we say that, for our purpose, a Government library is one which is staffed by civil servants we shall get as near as we can to a reasonable definition. This will exclude such libraries as those of the British Council, of the Commonwealth Agricultural Bureaux, of Research Associations and of Medical and Agricultural Research Council establishments as well as those of public corporations.

Two libraries—the British Museum and the National Library of Scotland—although staffed by civil servants have been dealt with in the chapter on National Libraries and are therefore omitted here.

**TYPES OF LIBRARIES.** The libraries coming within our definition may conveniently be grouped under five headings: (i) libraries of a "national" character (e.g., Science Library, Patent Office); (ii) museum libraries (e.g., Victoria and Albert, British Museum (Natural History)); (iii) headquarters libraries of administrative Government departments (e.g., War Office, Ministry of Agriculture); (iv) libraries of training establishments (e.g., Royal Military College of Science, Fire Service College, the Police Colleges); and (v) libraries of research establishments (more particularly those of the Department of Scientific and Industrial Research and of the Ministry of Supply, though there are a number of other departments represented in this group).

**GENERAL.** The period under review has been one of great activity in Government libraries. The most important landmark is the official Establishment Circular known as E.C. 40/49<sup>(1)</sup> issued by the Treasury at the end of 1949 and which made provision for the setting up of a distinct Librarian Class. Its publication was the culmination of a prolonged battle between the Treasury on the one hand and the Institution of Professional Civil Servants on the other and signified that at last the Treasury had recognized the need for professionally qualified librarians in the Government service. E.C. 40/49 led to recruitment of more professional librarians and, as a natural corollary, to the reorganization of many libraries and the development of their services. The circular has also, as we shall see, stimulated interest in the training of junior library staff and has encouraged clerical officers and others to sit for, and pass, Library Association examinations. In addition, major regroupings of Government departments have necessitated further reorganization of libraries

and quite a number have been re-equipped and refitted. All this can fairly be regarded as a sign of the increasing importance attaching to libraries in Government offices.

**E.C. 40/49 AND ITS EFFECTS.** The Treasury Circular of December 1949 gave authority to departments who wished to do so to appoint professional librarians (the qualification required being *either* Chartered Librarian *or* the University of London Diploma in Librarianship), who, it was emphasized, should be fully employed on professional duties. The terms and conditions of service of the various grades within the new Librarian Class were to be equated with those of the Executive Class. At first there were three grades: (i) Chief Librarian, equal to Senior Executive Officer or, exceptionally, to Chief Executive Officer; (ii) Librarian, equal to Higher Executive Officer; and (iii) Assistant Librarian, equal to Executive Officer. But in 1952 a four-grade structure was set up with the following grade titles: Librarian Grade I, equal to Chief Executive Officer; Librarian Grade II, equal to Senior Executive Officer; Librarian Grade III, equal to Higher Executive Officer; and Librarian Grade IV, equal to Executive Officer. Recruitment to the basic grade (now Librarian Grade IV) was to be either by open competition or by the promotion of clerical officers "or other agents" (to quote the Treasury Circular) who had studied part time, while working in Government libraries, and had passed the appropriate examinations.

The effects of E.C. 40/49 have been very marked throughout the period of our review, in particular as regards the number of qualified staff. Before the circular was promulgated there were in post less than twenty. The latest (1956) figures are: ninety-eight Librarian Class posts and twenty-nine serving in other classes, although permanently engaged on library work in the Government service.

The training of junior staff was also greatly affected by E.C. 40/49. The provision for the promotion of clerical officers, etc., who qualified while serving in Government libraries stimulated interest in Library Association examinations. In 1949 the numbers taking these examinations could have been counted on the fingers of one hand. From 1950 onwards the numbers so increased that, by the end of 1955, twenty-five members of Government library staffs had completed the Registration Examination and some fifty others were actively pursuing courses of study. Since 1951 the Librarians' Group of the Institution of Professional Civil Servants has been arranging one-day revision courses for Civil Service students who are about to take Library Association examinations. The tutors are all Government librarians, specialists in the subjects they teach, and who give up their time voluntarily to the work. Every year about forty civil servants are successful in the various parts of Library Association examinations.

**REORGANIZATION OF LIBRARIES.** The influx of professional staff during the five-year period has, of course, led to the reorganization and modernizing of many Government libraries. To give a few examples: the libraries of the War Office, Colonial Office, Board of Trade, Ministry of Agriculture, Ministry of Health and the Royal Observatory (amongst others) have been or are being reclassified and in most cases recatalogued; the Patent Office has extended its

reader facilities; in Edinburgh the libraries of four Scottish departments have been merged to form the "St. Andrews House Library." Most other libraries have been improved to a greater or less degree and at least a dozen have been re-equipped and refitted either in completely new buildings (e.g., Board of Trade, Ministry of Agriculture) or in their former premises (e.g., War Office, Ministry of Health).

In recataloguing, the introduction of professional staffs has resulted in the application of accepted codes. Hitherto cataloguing methods in many Government libraries had been very haphazard. A variety of standard schemes have been used for reclassifying. Four libraries (Board of Trade, Colonial Office, the Fire Service College and the Imperial Institute) have adopted the Library of Congress classification. (This scheme was already in use in the Home Office and in the Ministry of Housing and Local Government.) The Ministry of Health and the Royal Botanic Garden, Edinburgh, have chosen the Bliss classification. The Board of Inland Revenue, the British Museum (Natural History), the Ministry of Supply Central Library, the Ministry of Transport and Civil Aviation, St. Andrews House and the War Office have joined DSIR Headquarters and research station libraries, the Meteorological Office, the Royal Aircraft Establishment, the Science Library and the Ministry of Works in using UDC. One library—the Foreign Office—has employed the Dewey classification, already in use in the Ministry of Agriculture (Whitehall Place), the Photographs and Reference Libraries of the Central Office of Information, the Treasury, the Ministry of Fuel and Power and the Ministry of Labour and National Service. A number of Government libraries, however, still adhere to "home-made" schemes.

**REGROUPING OF DEPARTMENTS.** Policy decisions made by the Cabinet have resulted in various departments being merged with others and their functions transferred. Accordingly the libraries of the departments concerned have had their fields of interest widened or narrowed down as the case may be. The most far reaching of these changes are listed below.

The first regrouping in our period took place in January 1951 when the Ministry of Health shed its functions relating to housing, local government, environmental sanitation (a euphemism for sewers and drains), water supply and coast protection. These functions were taken over by a new department called Ministry of Local Government and Planning, which also absorbed the old Ministry of Town and Country Planning. As a result about a quarter of the stock of the Ministry of Health library was transferred. The new department was rechristened Ministry of Housing and Local Government in November 1951.

Next, in August 1953, the Ministry of Civil Aviation was merged with the Ministry of Transport to become the Ministry of Transport and Civil Aviation. The libraries of the two departments were integrated into one. At the same time the Ministry of Pensions (the department responsible for pensions, welfare and medical services for the disabled of both world wars) ceased separate existence. Its medical work was transferred to the Ministry of Health and all its other functions went to the Ministry of National Insurance, which became known as the Ministry of Pensions and National Insurance. The libraries of both receiving departments had their scope thus extended.

Then in 1954, again in August, a separate United Kingdom Atomic

Energy Authority was set up and to it were transferred the various libraries, two of them large and important ones, which were previously under the control of the Ministry of Supply. The UKAEA is now a public corporation and its libraries no longer therefore come within the definition we have given of Government libraries. The last of the important mergers within our period took place in April 1955 and resulted in the Ministry of Food being absorbed into the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries to form the Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food. In this case the two libraries, while put in charge of a single librarian, remain physically separated and are known respectively as the Whitehall Place Library (Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries) and the Great Westminster House Library (ex-Ministry of Food).

In addition to these major changes a number of minor transfers of functions have taken place during the past five years (e.g., the transfer of some food hygiene work from the Ministry of Agriculture to the Ministry of Health in 1955).

**STAFF, CONDITIONS OF SERVICE, ETC.** In sixteen of the twenty-five major administrative Government departments, the higher posts in the libraries are filled by members of the Librarian Class: in the remainder they are filled by members of the Executive Class. It must be emphasized that the sixteen departments only use qualified librarians for work which is of a professional character—administration, cataloguing and classification, bibliographical research. For other duties, Executive or clerical officers are employed. The salary scales and conditions of service in the Librarian Class correspond exactly with those of the Executive Class. Salary scales have been consolidated as a result of the recommendations of the Royal Commission on the Civil Service (the Priestley Commission)<sup>(2)</sup>. The "national" and museum libraries are staffed normally by the special museum classes of Keepers (including Deputy Keeper and Assistant Keeper grades, Research Assistants and Museum Assistants), but here, too, Librarian Class grades are beginning to appear. It should also be noted that a number of those serving in the higher museum grades employed in libraries are in fact qualified librarians. The training establishments (Royal Military College of Science, Fire Service College, Police Colleges, etc.) have Librarian Class grades. Ministry of Supply research establishments are gradually replacing scientific and experimental officers by Librarian Class grades. DSIR research station libraries are still staffed by members of the scientific grades of the Civil Service but several of these are also qualified librarians and many others are taking Library Association examinations.

In common with other civil servants, most library staffs now have a five-day week of forty-two hours in London and forty-four hours in the provinces—another result of the Priestley Commission. Some libraries open on Saturday mornings and the Patent Office does not close until 5 p.m. on Saturdays.

**I.P.C.S. AND OTHER STAFF ASSOCIATIONS.** Whitleyism plays a very important part in the Civil Service, and the Treasury encourages every civil servant to join his appropriate staff association. The one recognized for professional, scientific and technical staffs (and this, of course, includes librarians) is the Institution of Professional Civil Servants with a total membership of

over 50,000, to which 90 per cent of all professional librarians in Government service belong. Each department as a rule has its own branch, but in addition special classes employed in several departments are organized into groups on which each department employing members of that particular class is represented. There is thus a Librarians' Group which watches the interests of all professional librarians in the Civil Service (whether members of the Librarian Class or not) from the points of view of salaries, conditions of service, training facilities, etc.\* It also, as opportunity offers, presses for the introduction of professional librarians in departments where they have not previously been employed. During the period under review the Group has met twenty-four times and has been represented on sixteen deputations to the Treasury, or to departments, on matters affecting professional librarians. It has also maintained close contact with the Library Association.

Unqualified library staff belong to their appropriate staff associations: I.P.C.S. if they are professional or scientific; the Society of Civil Servants if they are Executive; and the Civil Service Clerical Association if clerical. Certain senior museum library staff (other than scientific) are represented by the Association of First Division Civil Servants, which acts for administrative officers.

**CIRCLE OF STATE LIBRARIANS.** In addition to the staff associations there is an informal educational and social body for members of Government library staffs—the Circle of State Librarians. This organization, which began as a small discussion group for Whitehall librarians in the early nineteen-thirties, ceased to meet after the outbreak of the 1939-45 war but was revived in 1946. In the early post-war years its membership was largely confined to senior officials and considerable attention was paid to questions of policy. In 1952, however, it was decided to throw the Circle open to all grades of Government library staffs and to limit the Circle's activities to the organization of meetings, visits and social functions. The membership of the Circle in its new form has risen to well over 200, of which 66 per cent serve in junior grades (Librarians Grade IV, Clerical Officers, Museum Assistants, Assistants Scientific, etc.). The Circle's affairs are directed by a committee on which senior and junior grades have equal representation. In 1955 two groups, one for cataloguers and one for those engaged in enquiry work, were formed to meet special needs and have enjoyed excellent support. Up to 1951 the Circle published a quarterly journal, *The State Librarian*, but, proving too expensive, it was replaced by a series of duplicated bulletins and news-letters. Since 1953 the Library Association Registration Examination fees of members unable to obtain assistance from their own Departments are paid out of Circle funds. In 1955 a loan collection of librarianship textbooks was purchased (*see Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (τ) 1955, 18).

**COMMITTEE OF DEPARTMENTAL LIBRARIANS.** The Circle of State Librarians' decision to cease to be a policy-making body coincided with the setting up of an official standing Committee of Departmental Librarians on which each of the twenty-five major administrative Government departments is represented by its librarian. This body discusses matters, other than those

\* The authors of this article have been respectively Secretary and Chairman of the I.P.C.S. Librarians' Group since 1950. Mr. King has also been Secretary (later Joint Secretary) of the Circle of State Librarians since 1952.—Editor.

which come within the province of the staff associations, of common interest to these libraries and makes representations to the Treasury. It is also consulted by the Treasury when they wish to have the views of departmental librarians.

**SERVICES PROVIDED BY GOVERNMENT LIBRARIES.** The first duty of all Government libraries is, of course, to provide a service for the staff of their own departments. All, however, co-operate fully with other Government departments and an inter-departmental van service facilitates inter-library loans. In addition most libraries are willing to help bona fide research workers in their special fields. A few libraries (e.g., Ministry of Agriculture, Ministry of Education) announce themselves as being open to the public. The O. & M. Division of the Treasury published in 1952 <sup>(3)</sup> a guide to Government libraries which sets out briefly the main contents of each library and shows which are willing, and under what circumstances, to extend their services outside their own department. A new edition, primarily designed for the non-official user, is in preparation.

The general tendency throughout the period has been for Government libraries to show an increasing awareness of the need for inter-library co-operation and to be more willing to lend to libraries outside the Government service. As a rule (although there are exceptions) books are not lent to individuals outside the service. Some libraries are outliers of the National Central Library and many of them participate in the Science Library Supplementary Lending Scheme.

Nearly all Government libraries now issue bulletins of accessions and many also produce lists of periodical articles (occasionally with annotations) dealing with subjects within their fields of interest. Such lists often include details of publications issued by their own departments but which are not on sale at H.M.S.O. and are therefore difficult to trace from the normal bibliographical sources. Among the few libraries which produce printed lists are the War Office and the Foreign Office Printed Library, but an attractively printed cover is often used where duplicated lists are issued. The great majority of these accessions lists are issued monthly. Exceptions are: the Imperial Institute and the Patent Office (weekly); Foreign Office and the Ministry of Works (fortnightly); and the Ministry of Housing and Local Government (every two months). Certain libraries have now begun to supplement their accessions lists with lists primarily designed for the outside user; e.g., the Ministry of Agriculture's *Current agricultural literature*, and *Recent military books* from the War Office.

The practice of issuing lists of periodicals has become general in recent years. In most cases these include only periodicals currently received but a few list all their holdings. The Science Library publishes a list of its current journals through H.M.S.O.; the first edition appeared in 1904 and the latest, the eighth, was published in 1956 <sup>(4)</sup>. A useful union list of periodicals held in Ministry of Supply establishments, compiled by the Royal Aircraft Establishment Library, was issued in 1956.

**DESCRIPTIONS OF GOVERNMENT LIBRARIES.** A paper by A. J. Walford <sup>(5)</sup> gives a good general account of Government libraries at the beginning of our five-year period. Dr. Walford also contributed a chapter on Government

libraries to the ALA *Primer of assistance to readers*, first published in 1951 and revised in 1956<sup>(8)</sup>. In 1951 the University of London School of Librarianship held an Easter Vacation Course on "Government information and the research worker." Representatives of twenty-four Government departments (in twelve cases the librarian) described their publications and the information in other forms which could be made available. Most of the papers mention the library, if only briefly, and the part it plays in this work. The papers were published in 1952<sup>(7)</sup>. In the same year a guide to the India Office Library was issued<sup>(8)</sup>, and an Aslib symposium included a paper on Government libraries in general and the Safety in Mines Research Establishment in particular<sup>(9)</sup>. Two papers presented to the First International Congress on Medical Librarianship in 1953 may be mentioned, one on the Ministry of Health Library<sup>(10)</sup> and the other on the Science Library<sup>(11)</sup>. The work of the Board of Trade Library was described in the *Treasury O. & M. Bulletin* in 1952<sup>(12)</sup>, and an account of the Patent Office appeared in 1955<sup>(13)</sup>. Finally, a detailed account of the Royal Aircraft Establishment Library Service was issued in duplicated form in 1954<sup>(14)</sup>.

## REFERENCES

1. [A note on "Librarians in Government Departments," including the text of E.C. 40/49.] *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 52 (3) 1950, 91-92.
2. ROYAL COMMISSION ON THE CIVIL SERVICE, 1953-55. (Pricstley Commission). Report. (Cmd. 9613.) H.M.S.O., 1955. pp. viii, 238.
3. TREASURY, O. & M. DIVISION. A guide to Government libraries. H.M.S.O., 1952. pp. iv, 120.
4. SCIENCE MUSEUM. Hand list of short titles of current periodicals in the Science Library. 8th edition. H.M.S.O., 1956. pp. iv, 426.
5. WAIFFORD, A. J. Government libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 52 (11) 1950, 410-415.
6. WALFORD, A. J. Assistance in Government libraries. In: HEPWORTH, P. A primer of assistance to readers. 2nd edition. Association of Assistant Librarians, 1956, 40-43.
7. STAVELEY, R., editor. Government Information and the research worker. Library Association, 1952. pp. vi, 228.
8. SLUTTON, S. C. A guide to the India Office Library. H.M.S.O., 1952. pp. iv, 62.
9. SMITH, E. B. The Government library—with special reference to the library of the Safety in Mines Research Establishment. *Aslib Proc.*, 4 (1) 1952, 132-138.
10. FOUNTAIN, A. E. The library services of the British Ministry of Health. *Libri* 3 1954, 32-38.
11. PARKER, H. J. Science Museum Library. *Ibid.* 3 1954, 326-330.
12. MALLABER, K. A. Books in the Board of Trade. *O. & M. Bull.* 7 (4) 1952, 40-47.
13. GRAVELL, F. W. Patents and the Patent Office Library. *Aslib Proc.* 7 (2) 1955, 92-100.
14. WRIGHT, R. C. and DYKE, M. The Royal Aircraft Establishment Library service. (*Royal Aircraft Establishment, Farnborough, Library Memorandum No. 12.*) Farnborough, Hants, Royal Aircraft Establishment, 1954. pp. 13. [Published in modified form in: *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (2) 1956, 464-470.]

## Chapter 9

# THE LIBRARIES OF LEARNED SOCIETIES AND PROFESSIONAL BODIES

By K. D. C. VERNON, F.L.A., *Librarian, The Royal Institution of Great Britain*

ALL learned and professional societies exist in order to promote some branch of learning and to bring together groups of people with a common interest or profession. Such societies have been in existence in this country since 1662, when the Royal Society of London was founded.

For the most part the men who originally formed the societies recognized the fact that the members would need libraries, and so the libraries were usually started about the same time as the societies were founded. Thus it has come about that many of these libraries possess fine collections of rare and early works and their books reflect the development of various branches of learning over long periods of time.

The libraries are departments of the institutions which they serve; they have no separate status of their own and they are both financed and governed by the council or governing body of the society, which is responsible only to its members. And in this country our societies are still completely independent bodies, the vast majority of which receive no Government support. These libraries, therefore, whether they be great or small, are the property of the members of the societies who, through their subscriptions, pay for their upkeep, and the members are the users of the libraries.

It is important to appreciate these facts when considering the developments which have taken place in libraries of this kind, and it is also important to remember that in the older societies, with their fine traditions and records of service to scholarship, changes in the libraries are closely bound up with the way in which the work of the societies is supported and developed by the members.

During the five years under review there have been numerous signs of an increasing awareness on the part of learned and professional societies that their libraries must be so moulded that they may play an active and important part in the work of the society and that white elephants can no longer be supported in a rapidly changing world. The professional societies, many of which serve expanding professions, have, broadly speaking, been developing their library services as their needs change; other kinds of learned societies have met their post-war difficulties realistically and are taking appropriate steps to overcome their problems.

It is a rare occurrence for a learned or professional society to be able to build a new library, but the Institute of Bankers and the Chartered Institute of Secretaries, the latter as a result of war damage<sup>(1)</sup>, have both opened well-planned modern libraries for their members. The Institute of Bankers' library is a notable example of the best type of planning for a special library and

particular attention has been paid to such features as the lighting, shelving and the elimination of noise. The Institution of Production Engineers has grown so rapidly that it had to find new accommodation and moved into its present charming Adam house in 1954. Here, the Institution's Hazleton Memorial Library which was opened in 1950, consisting of some 4,000 books and 300 current periodicals, has been well furnished and equipped for its purpose.

Several other libraries of societies, for example the Royal Statistical Society, have moved to new quarters; while the Institution of Mining and Metallurgy and the Institution of Mining Engineers, which had shared a joint library for thirty years, faced and accomplished the unenviable task of unscrambling the egg and dividing the library, with its stock of some 25,000 items, when the two institutions decided to split and move each to different premises. The division of the catalogue was a major problem because the UDC system had been introduced in 1949 and used for material added to the library since that date. So the opportunity of classifying the remainder of the stock was seized and two classified catalogues have now been produced.

A major policy change for the joint library of the Hellenic and Roman Societies was effected in 1953 when the University of London Institute of Classical Studies was founded on the premises of the two societies. The joint library was divided into two—"primary" material, being reference books and original publications, and "secondary," being everything not included in the first category. The primary section became the property of the Institute, the secondary section remained the property of the societies.

Major alterations and extensions have been made in several libraries. Of particular interest is the expansion of the National Institute of Economic and Social Research, which was carried out in 1952 by the conversion of the original house and its neighbour into one building. As a result of this, the Institute has been provided with a library which is equipped with most attractive modern furniture and lighting, while the bookstock has been increased from 7,000 to 12,000 items during the years 1950-55. Another successful little extension has been at the library of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers (a large library with a high ceiling), where a gallery, with space for over 7,000 extra volumes, has been added. The library of the Chemical Society, which was bursting its seams, has been provided with considerable extra storage space to meet the need to absorb the rapidly increasing flood of chemical literature. The library has also been successfully redecorated and furnished and considerable alterations have been carried out in the reading rooms in order to provide better accommodation for readers and staff. The staff counter in the main room is an interesting example of design in library furniture, in which the librarian and designer have worked together to incorporate their ideas. The stock of books and periodicals has been rearranged more suitably and the catalogue is being completely revised. The small library of the Physical Society, which was formerly a joint library with the Institute of Physics until 1952, has expanded by taking over another room in the same building, and determined efforts are now being made to encourage the members of the Society to make better use of the improved library facilities. Other libraries, such as the Royal Empire Society (rebuilding after war damage), the Marine Biological Association and the Royal Institute of British Architects, have alterations and extensions in hand, but these have not been completed during the period under review.

There has been a definite trend in the libraries of societies during recent years towards improving their catalogues, many of which are both old and also unsuitable by modern standards. This trend has sometimes been inspired by the fact that the use made of some libraries has been hampered because the catalogue does not adequately display the library's resources, and also by the desire of some societies to provide a better library service for their members, including those who could only make use of a postal service. To meet this need printed catalogues have been produced by the National Book League, the Royal Society of Arts, the Royal Photographic Society and others. The Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors and the Institution of Electrical Engineers are two of several societies which have issued new editions of their catalogues. Other libraries issue printed lists of their new accessions so that members of the societies concerned who are unable to visit the library frequently may be kept informed of the books which are available to them. These accession lists are usually published in the society's own publications; but the Royal Institute of British Architects publishes a quarterly *Library bulletin* (started in 1948), which is excellently produced and contains lists of new accessions, short abstracts of articles in periodicals, and other information about the library.

Many libraries of societies still have their books arranged on the shelves by an old fixed shelf location scheme which was inherited from the nineteenth century. A lack of both funds and staff has frequently prevented any major improvements to the catalogue or any rearrangement of the books; but during the five years under review big efforts have been made in a number of libraries to make their catalogues and classification systems more suited to modern needs. The Royal Aeronautical Society, the Royal Statistical Society and the Royal Agricultural Society have recatalogued their libraries and the latter has introduced the Dewey system of classification. The Institution of Civil Engineers has classified its big library by the UDC. The National Book League, the National Institute of Economic and Social Research, the Royal Institution and the Royal Statistical Society have all adopted the Bliss Bibliographic Classification, or modifications of it, for classifying their books either completely or in part. The Zoological Society has introduced the same system for their acquisitions since 1950 and for their index of articles in periodicals.

It is interesting to find that the Bliss system of classification is winning advocates amongst libraries of societies. Perhaps the attractiveness of a simple notation and a logical system which lends itself fairly readily to modifications are the reasons why Bliss is being adopted by libraries of this type. The library of the Folk Lore Society, however, which is kept at University College, London, has evolved a new classification for folklore which is based on the system recently introduced into the College library<sup>(2)</sup>.

The invaluable collection of scientific manuscripts, archives and letters belonging to the Royal Society has been sorted, catalogued and made more accessible than it was before. This work has been carried out because it was felt that the collection of manuscript material, which was previously in some disorder, should be arranged more appropriately before the celebration of the tercentenary of the Society's foundation<sup>(3)</sup>. The archives and letters of the Royal Society of Arts, which was founded in 1754, have also been arranged and indexed for the first time. The collection of architectural drawings belonging to the Royal Institute of British Architects is still in the process of being

catalogued and the big task of identifying all these drawings is still going on. A notable addition to this collection has been a gift of 3,000 drawings, formerly in the possession of the late Sir Edwin Lutyens. Similar attention has been paid to the prints and drawings in the library of the Society of Antiquaries and the catalogue of these has been revised.

Lending systems for members have been introduced in the libraries of the Royal Agricultural Society and the Royal Institution. Other societies, especially several professional bodies, have reported an increase in the use made of their libraries within recent years. New printed catalogues, improvements in cataloguing and classification methods, and more liberal interlending policies through the National Central Library and through Aslib, are doubtless having the good effect of stimulating members of societies to take a more lively interest in their fine libraries. It sometimes happens, however, that the more specialized libraries have to exercise considerable discretion in the number of volumes which they lend through the National Central Library, otherwise they might become heavily involved in one-way lending to other libraries without having the need to borrow books in anything like the same proportion, and the members of the societies concerned could easily suffer because of their liberality.

Problems of space, which are common companions to all librarians, have stirred some societies to prune their collections of subjects which are outside their field. The older societies in particular have in the past often accumulated large numbers of books, frequently as gifts, which are now quite outside the scope of the work of the society or the interests of its members. Such books do, it is true, reflect the broad reading habits of people during the nineteenth century, when the division between the sciences and the humanities was laudably less pronounced than it is now. It has therefore been found necessary to review the policies of some libraries and to ease their shelving problems by disposing of selected volumes which are now more appropriate to other libraries. The Royal Institution, the Royal Society of Arts and the Geological Society have been facing this problem in recent years.

Another development which is gaining momentum is the preparation of bibliographies, which some libraries of societies and professional bodies have been able to undertake as a service to their members. The Royal Institute of British Architects has set a good example in this kind of activity and the bibliographies prepared by this library are now well known. The Institution of Production Engineers is another body whose library is performing a similar valuable service.

Photocopying of articles from periodicals is also being done to an increasing extent in order that bound volumes of periodicals may be retained in libraries for reference purposes rather than be lent out. Some libraries are also making more use of microfilms and investigating the possibilities of microcards.

These activities are a welcome indication of the desire, which more and more societies and professional bodies are showing, to make their libraries more useful to their members and through them to the community at large. Difficulties of financing new projects, and the need to incorporate any new policies with the fine old traditions which so many of our societies have, mean that libraries of this nature cannot be revolutionized in a moment, even if it were desirable to do so. But the five years from 1951 to 1955 have definitely been a period of steady progress. The future for some libraries of societies and

professional bodies has been in doubt during the war and the immediate post-war years, but it now seems that for those which survived this difficult time there is a good prospect that they will now continue to improve their services and overcome their problems. The fine old library of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society was completely destroyed during the war, but the determination which is being shown there to make a new start is an example to the more faint-hearted. Many of the professional bodies are going from strength to strength. Our learned societies, too, although their work and progress is less spectacular, still have the chance to add much to scholarship, and their libraries are frequently their most valuable possession. Such libraries must continue to develop their services.

## REFERENCES

1. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (6) 1956, 224-227.
2. *Folk-Lore* 66 (June 1955), 267-281.
3. *Notes Roy. Soc. Lond.* 12 (1) 1956, 21-39.

Downloaded from www.dbraulibrary.org.in

## Chapter 10

### MUSIC LIBRARIES

By L. W. DUCK, A.L.A., *Librarian, Henry Watson Music Library, Manchester Public Libraries*

THE period under review is chiefly memorable for a growing awareness of the fact that there are in Great Britain a considerable number of music libraries, and that the common ground between them would profitably repay a little sensible cultivation. America, with its own Music Library Association, has an impressive array of projects to its credit, but it was not until the formation of the International Association of Music Libraries at a conference in Paris in 1951 that it proved possible to make a beginning in this country in the form of a United Kingdom branch of this international body.

At an inaugural meeting held on March 23, 1953, in London the aims of the I.A.M.L. were explained and the possible programme of a United Kingdom branch outlined. The subsequent involvement of the branch in both the international and domestic spheres has become a significant factor in the pattern of its activities.

An account of the I.A.M.L., given at the Third International Congress of Music Libraries and distributed by Unesco (<sup>1</sup>), records among the aims of the Association that it shall co-ordinate all the activities of music libraries, help forward all work connected with music bibliography and librarianship, encourage the exchange and loan of music, stimulate the establishment of lists and catalogues, take measures to safeguard musical treasures, and set up *ad hoc* working committees to deal with special problems. Among the most important projects the Association has sponsored, or in which it has collaborated, are the preparation of an *International repertory of musical sources*, the publication of a series of *Documenta musicologica* and the provision of an *International code for cataloguing music*; three special sections have also been set up, dealing with broadcasting, gramophone record and public music libraries respectively. Under consideration are the adaptation of the *American Music index* for international coverage and an international plan for the microfilming of manuscripts and rare printed works (<sup>2</sup>).

Beginning in 1954 the I.A.M.L. has issued its own journal—*Fontes artis musicae*. This has general articles connected with music collections and sources, catalogues of music libraries, reports, lists of members, and selective lists of music and books published during the preceding months, arranged under countries of origin. It has so far been published twice in each year.

The United Kingdom Branch of the I.A.M.L., while supporting the activities of the Association outlined above, has also pursued a vigorous policy of its own under the guidance of its President (A. Hyatt King), Chairman (J. H. Davies), Secretary/Treasurer (W. H. Stock) and elected Committee

representing various facets of the profession. Membership, which may be institutional, personal or as an associate, topped the 100 mark by early 1955, which was considered encouraging in view of the small number of designated music librarians in Great Britain. The largest membership came from public libraries (forty-one), followed by university (eleven) and copyright (ten) libraries and librarians. It is hoped that the journal mentioned above, which is included in the membership fee, will appeal to libraries that are prevented from joining societies but may subscribe to society publications.

The activities of the United Kingdom Branch have taken two forms—the arrangement of meetings for members, and the appointment of sub-committees. The former, which have also included visits to places of interest, have been successful but mainly confined to the London area; the proliferation of sub-committees witnesses to the abundant vitality of the branch and qualifies for inclusion here because they embrace all the progressive elements in British music librarianship for the period under review. The projects of the working sub-committees are mostly too young to be documented from the professional Press, but more will doubtless be heard of them in the near future. They include a British journal of music librarianship, music exhibitions, gramophone record libraries, classification and cataloguing, bibliography, a standard music catalogue (with the Library Association, British Museum, the Music Publishers' Association and *BNB*) and standardization of symbols of music (with the British Standards Institution).

One of the greatest problems of musicians, librarians and scholars working in Great Britain—that of locating particular items of early-printed music—is now well on the way to being solved. The idea of a census of music printed before 1800 in British libraries, actively canvassed by Professor O. E. Deutsch in 1945, became a reality in the following year, thanks to generous financial help from the late Mr. Gerald Cooper. The British Union Catalogue<sup>(4)</sup> received further financial support from the Pilgrim Trust in 1952, and is now complete so far as the assembling of information is concerned. The original editor, O. E. Deutsch, was succeeded in 1950 by Edith B. Schnapper, who was associated in the preparation of Vol. IV of the Hirsch catalogue. (It should be noted that the unofficial printed account by Vincent Duckles<sup>(5)</sup> is incorrect in some respects, and should be read in conjunction with the subsequent letter from the Hon. Secretary, A. Hyatt King<sup>(6)</sup>.)

Three types of library are represented in the Union Catalogue—public libraries, university libraries, and those associated with schools, colleges and halls. The contents of over 100 have been examined, mostly personally by Mr. the results far exceeding the original estimate, which was planned to be accommodated on an interleaved copy of the two-volume British Museum printed music (1487-1800) prepared by W. Barclay Squire and published in 1912. This method has now been abandoned in favour of using separate catalogue slips of works not included among the 45,000 in the B.M. catalogue. In addition to its obvious use as a location guide, the Union Catalogue provided will be a most valuable source of bibliographical data for the study of musical research. The British Union Catalogue of Music was first registered on January 19, 1955, the directors being C. B. Oldman and J. H. Willis.

At an international level a similar project is now firmly established.

Known as the *International inventory of musical sources* (also referred to as the International "Directory" or "Repertory" of Musical Sources—translations of the official French title *Répertoire international des sources musicales*—or loosely as "the new Eitner"), a joint committee of the International Musicological Society and the International Association of Music Libraries was formed to plan the work, meeting initially in Paris in 1952 (?). The *Inventory* will include both manuscript and printed music before 1800, with the locations of where it is to be found. The information is first being assembled on cards at the Bibliothèque Nationale in Paris, and will, it is hoped, be published; a main alphabetical author list, with supplements covering anthologies, books and periodicals, is envisaged. The work will be done by national committees, with a co-ordinating secretariat; Unesco is providing financial support. Attention is at present being directed to anthologies (or compilations containing works by more than one composer). Since July 1954 the secretariat has published news of its progress in *Répertoire international des sources musicales: plans, rapports, communiqués* (French and English texts). It is clear that the completion of the Union Catalogue will greatly help the British contribution to this impressive scheme.

The British Museum continues to issue its yearly volumes of accessions to the *Catalogue of printed music*, in which music printed before 1800 is placed in a separate sequence. Part 53 (1951) was devoted to music in the Hirsch library, which that indefatigable collector continued to enrich until his death in 1951. It is the more valuable in that the first two volumes of the four-volume *Katalog der Musikbibliothek Paul Hirsch* (1928-1947) are now out of print. The British Museum publication excludes some 6,000 works of literature which it is hoped may appear later. London University now issues quarterly lists of music accessions separately instead of in complete volume form as previously. As the only published catalogue of the several fine music libraries in Cambridge is that of the Fitzwilliam Museum, a brief résumé of the contents of the Rowe Music Library at King's College, in an article by Jill Vlasto, is useful to have (\*). Of the public libraries, Liverpool's *Catalogue of the music library* (1954) is the only comprehensive printed catalogue to be issued in the period under review. Announced as the largest dictionary catalogue ever printed in English, its 572 double-column pages include author, subject and title entries in one alphabet, with a minimum of bibliographical detail. The Henry Watson Music Library, Manchester, has completed the first stage of a complete catalogue of its music, books and manuscripts dating from before 1801. The entries are at present only on slips not available to the public, but it is hoped that publication will be possible in the near future. A list of opera scores has been issued by the Central Music Library, and other lists or catalogues in booklet form have been put out by Nottinghamshire County, Newcastle and Reading among others.

There is little to report from this country in the field of cataloguing theory, apart from the appointment of the Cataloguing Sub-committee of the United Kingdom Branch of the I.A.M.L., referred to above, the immediate purpose of which is to formulate an agreed scheme for the cataloguing of manuscripts. A chapter on the indexing of music and gramophone records appeared in R. L. Collison's *Indexes and indexing* (1953). In 1952 Washington University, St. Louis, U.S.A., issued a valuable index to the history of music, compiled by Ernst C. Krohn. The publications indexed include the better-known English, American and German periodicals, the subject arrangement

being by periods similar to those used in the history of art. From America also comes news of an intriguing experiment described in "The Cataloguing of music in the visual arts," by Albert G. Hess<sup>(9)</sup>. The need for such a catalogue arose in connection with the Duluth Branch of the University of Minnesota, where an "Archive of music representations in the visual arts" had been established. "Filmsort" cards  $7\frac{3}{8}$  inches by  $3\frac{1}{4}$  inches were used, with a  $1\frac{1}{8}$ -inch square opening near the left end in which a positive microfilm of the picture relating to the entry is mounted. As many "aspects" needed bringing out, coloured tabs along the top edge of the card were used and a special classification devised, the criteria being period, iconographic subject, medium and nationality.

The classification of folk music and dance is the subject of a paper by Margaret Dean-Smith<sup>(10)</sup> in which she describes her adaptation of Library of Congress tables and notation for the "assemblage of apparently disparate subjects" that constitute the Cecil Sharp Library. The same writer also draws upon her wartime experiences in the B.B.C. Gramophone Library for her "Proposals towards the cataloguing of gramophone records in a library of national scope"<sup>(11)</sup>. Main entry under title is advocated on the grounds that "in a library which tackles 'everything' there is a high proportion of material which is remembered only by its title (even if it is not anonymous)." The cataloguing of libretti is dealt with in two German articles by F. Grasberger<sup>(12)</sup><sup>(13)</sup>, who favours main entry by title in a separate catalogue. The difficulties of this thorny problem are illustrated by the fact that in Germany the main entry is usually to be found under the name of the composer of the opera, while in Austria the name of the author of the text is preferred.

Two publications from the Library of Congress may have a more than local application: they are *Music subject headings used on printed catalog cards of the Library of Congress*<sup>(14)</sup> and *Rules for descriptive cataloguing in the Library of Congress: Phonorecords. Preliminary edition*<sup>(15)</sup>. The former includes all the valid headings from the provisional lists published by the Music Library Association in 1935 and 1937, with many new headings. By treating the record labels with a respect deriving from the cataloguing of books, the phonorecord supplement has earned a certain amount of criticism which may be reflected in the final version. Incidental commentary on Class M of the Library of Congress scheme may be found in an article: "A classified catalogue of music scores: some problems"<sup>(16)</sup>, by Maurice B. Line, who also points out the need for a new set of schedules for pre-1750 music. An important publication which has so far not received the amount of comment one might have expected is the third volume of H. E. Bliss's *A bibliographic classification . . . Classes L-Z*<sup>(17)</sup>, in which sub-classes VV-VX are devoted to music. The schedules do not unfortunately succeed in reducing this intractable subject to a satisfactory order, and there are a number of absurdities, a few of which have been corrected in the revisions issued in bulletin form.

A number of gramophone record lending departments have been established in public libraries during the last five years, notably Poplar (1951), Edmonton, Woolwich (1952), Wood Green (1953), Finchley, Fulham, Stoke Newington (1954) and Southwark (1955). The total number of libraries providing records is now over sixty, two-thirds being in the Greater London area. One interesting fact which emerges is that it seems easier for small authorities to obtain the necessary permission to incur expenditure than large

ones—of the libraries known to exist, eleven serve populations of over 200,000, fifteen between 100,000 and 200,000, and twenty-four below 100,000. Whatever conclusions may be drawn from this tendency, it is clear that authorities are encouraged by the proximity of neighbouring collections: 70 per cent of the Metropolitan boroughs have record libraries, whereas the figure for the North of England and Scotland is only 2½ per cent.

A factor of importance is a radical change, since 1950, in the physical character of the records themselves. The long-playing record turning at 33½ revolutions per minute has, in the space of a few years, become the standard means of ending serious music; a census made in Coventry in April 1955 showed that in a collection containing roughly the same number of "78s" and "LPs", 80 per cent of the total number on issue were LPs. The resulting problems of administration are still being worked out, and render even such a comparatively recent work as C. D. Overton's *The gramophone record library* (18) out of date in some respects. It is indeed doubtful if the time is yet ripe for a standard textbook on the subject, so diverse are the methods used in different libraries. A summary of the position, based on a questionnaire circulated by Middlesbrough Public Libraries, is given by L. G. Lovell in an article "Gramophone record provision in public libraries" (19). This gave rise to a correspondence in which a number of opinions were ventilated (20). Meanwhile, the Library Association made a positive contribution in its model "Regulations for public libraries" (21), a section of which is devoted to the gramophone library.

## REFERENCES

1. UNESCO. INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF MUSIC LIBRARIES. Report on the Third International Congress of Music Libraries, Unesco House, Paris, July 22-25, 1951. pp. 17.
2. *Fontes Artis Musicae* 1 (1) 1954, 7-11.
3. INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF MUSIC LIBRARIES—UNITED KINGDOM BRANCH. Second annual report, 1954-55.
4. *J. of Doc.* 9 (2) 1953, 117-121.
5. *Music Lib. Assn. Notes* Second series, VIII (2) 1951, 279-282.
6. *Ibid.* Second series, VIII (3) 1951, 313.
7. *Ibid.* Second series, IX (2) 1952, 213-225.
8. *Music Review* 12 (1) 1951, 72-75.
9. *Music Lib. Assn. Notes* Second series, XI (4) 1954, 527-542.
10. *J. of Doc.* 7 (4) 1951, 215-220.
11. *Ibid.* 8 (3) 1952, 147-156.
12. *Z. f. B.* 66 (1) 1952, 28-47.
13. *Ibid.* 66 (3) 1952, 206-219.
14. Washington, D.C.: Library of Congress, 1952. pp. x, 133.
15. *Ibid.* pp. 10.
16. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (11) 1952, 362-364.
17. New York, H. W. Wilson, 1953.
18. Grafton, 1951. pp. 123.
19. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (7) 1954, 251-259.
20. *Ibid.* 56 (9, 11, 12) 1954 and 57 (1, 2, 3, 5) 1955.
21. *Ibid.* 55 (8) 1953, 257-258.

**Section III**  
**Public Libraries**

Downloaded from [www.dbraulibrary.org.in](http://www.dbraulibrary.org.in)

## Chapter 11

### URBAN LIBRARIES

By O. S. TOMLINSON, F.L.A., *Deputy Borough Librarian, Finchley Public Libraries*

#### GREAT BRITAIN

THE Annual Public Library statistics for Great Britain and Northern Ireland have shown steady rises in each of the years under review, and the latest five-year comparative table<sup>(1)</sup> shows the following (1949-50 figures are included for comparison).

	Lending Library issues	Total stock	Total expenditure £	Expenditure on books £	Full-time staff
1949-50	306,100,000	—	8,653,000	2,170,000	10,820
1950-51	314,700,000	—	9,130,000	2,305,000	11,300
1951-52	340,900,000	—	10,373,000	2,372,000	11,560
1952-53	359,700,000	56,056,000	11,183,500	2,868,600	11,730
1953-54	370,605,000	57,418,000	11,804,000	3,002,000	12,160
1954-55	386,300,000	61,500,000	12,810,000	3,180,000	12,390

There were 587 library authorities in the United Kingdom working through 31,249 service points, of which 577 were municipal central libraries and county headquarters, 1,191 full-time branches and 29,841 part-time centres, including school, hospital and prison libraries. In addition, 158 mobile libraries served a large number of stations at regular intervals.

The quinquennial report of the London and Home Counties Branch of the Library Association for the years 1949-54<sup>(2)</sup> shows that, in urban libraries in the area during those five years, the number of books issued in 1954 was 84,646,954, as against 72,236,406 in 1949 (an increase of 12,410,548), bookstocks rose by 22 per cent from 9,216,928 to 11,242,716, registered readers rose from 2,208,965 (26.4 per cent of population) to 2,571,315 (29.2 per cent of population), and the total expenditure on urban municipal libraries increased by 45.7 per cent (£2,105,265 in 1949 to £3,068,411 in 1954). It must be noted that during these years the cost of books, salaries, commodities and services generally increased considerably but, even so, the issue figures reveal that a great increase of volume of work took place. It is interesting to see<sup>(3)</sup> that, since the year of the first of these reports (1924), the population served by urban and county libraries has grown from 6,818,817 to 13,770,066 (101 per cent) whilst the annual book issue has risen from 23,237,887 to 119,313,162 (440 per cent), the bookstocks from 3,139,804 to 16,020,982 (410 per cent), and the readers from 656,570 to 3,574,728 (444 per cent).

FUNCTIONS. "The topic of the year" in 1951 was, according to A. C. Jones<sup>(4)</sup>, the sub-literature problem, and he proceeded to defend the provision of light fiction (but not sub-literature). Not only was this the "topic of the

year," but the topic of the five years; for the continual search for a definition of the purpose and policy of the public library has been a continuing theme of the period. Sayers<sup>(5)</sup> has pointed out that the attitude of librarians to book selection has changed, due to increased book funds and to the fact that "education" is no longer the only aim of the public library. In his Presidential Address to the Library Association, McColvin<sup>(6)</sup> expressed the view that the librarian should meet all necessary demands, limited only by quality, and that preference should be given to material which only an adequately supported library could provide, it being no function of public libraries to provide material which could easily be obtained elsewhere.

In a composite article New<sup>(7)</sup> sums up the whole question of the provision of light literature and quotes varying opinions expressed by Ashby<sup>(8)</sup>, Birch<sup>(9)</sup>, Elliott<sup>(10)</sup>, Donne-Smith<sup>(11)</sup>, Carter<sup>(12)</sup> and Jones's editorial referred to above. Balnaves<sup>(13)</sup> and Birch<sup>(14)</sup> made further contributions to the controversy. New<sup>(7)</sup> also refers to the parallel problem that has become a topic of importance—the influence of the best-seller on book selection. This was the subject of articles by Haugh<sup>(15)</sup>, who stated that, to combat this effect, Bristol does not accept reservations until twelve months old (a policy since modified). In another place Haugh<sup>(16)</sup> also refers to the problem of stock provision and points out that professional status depends on the pursuit of worthwhile objectives, and the same theme is considered by Lynn<sup>(17)</sup>.

It is perhaps appropriate to mention here the survey of reading habits in Bermondsey, Tottenham and Wandsworth described by Stuart<sup>(18)</sup>, who finds, *inter alia*, that membership of public libraries does not alter with age, but is considerably larger in higher-educated groups, and a report of a survey taken at Esher in which Boulter<sup>(19)</sup> mentions that distance from the library was the most important influence on degree of coverage, and that higher-income groups used the library more than the lower ones.

Murison<sup>(20)</sup> presented an historical approach to the purpose of the public library and its modern significance in education, recreation and social fields. This was generally well noticed, but received some criticism for its many quotations from other works. The social significance of the public library is examined in a paper by Sharr<sup>(21)</sup>, who considers the effect of such outside events as the decline in Britain's purchasing power, educational developments and the eclipse of liberal values.

**GOVERNMENT AND LEGISLATION.** The year 1955 will ever ring in the memory of Scottish librarians, as does 1919 with their English colleagues, for in that year was passed the Act<sup>(22)</sup> long hoped for by them. The history of the fight for new library legislation in Scotland, which covers many more years than the scope of this survey, is succinctly préciséd in articles by Dow<sup>(23)</sup>, who describes the thirty years' fight of the Council of the Scottish Library Association, and Paton<sup>(24)</sup>, who gives the story of the hazardous passage of the Bill through Parliament and its receipt of the Royal Assent on the last day of the Parliamentary session. The Act removes the statutory rate limitation on expenditure and borrowing power of Scottish library authorities, empowers library authorities to co-operate with each other, provides for arrangements which compel them to contribute to the Scottish Central Library, empowers them to revoke a previous decision to adopt the Public Libraries Acts and

extends their power to lend books and other material. A commentary on these provisions is given by Paton<sup>(25)</sup>. It is agreed that this Act does not go as far as Scottish librarians would wish, but it represents a great advance, and as large a measure of agreement as could be expected on the recommendations of the Advisory Council on Education in Scotland. The report of this body<sup>(26)</sup> was critically reviewed by a group of Scottish librarians<sup>(27)</sup> and by an English county librarian<sup>(28)</sup>. Criticism was made of the recommendation that library services should be under county control, and the Advisory Council fell under heavy fire because no professional librarian was a member, nor was evidence sought from the Library Association, nor any library visited outside Scotland.

Recommended regulations for public libraries were approved by the Library Association on May 29, 1953, based on recommendations of the Association of Metropolitan Chief Librarians from a draft prepared by H. J. Rengert<sup>(29)</sup>. A notable feature is the detailed regulations for gramophone record libraries.

Another five years passed without any general library legislation for England and Wales, but library matters received attention in the Coventry Corporation Act, 1954<sup>(30)</sup>, where opportunity was taken to make "fines" legal. Doubts on their legality have been frequently expressed, and brought to a head by an article<sup>(31)</sup> which received widespread notice in the daily Press, national and local, accompanied by opinions of librarians, town clerks, councillors and members of the general reading public. The Coventry Act specifies a period of loan, a maximum penalty for non-return, and prohibition on the use of the library if fines remain unpaid, and this formula was also included in similar local Acts, including that promoted by the L.C.C.<sup>(32)</sup>, and numerous Bills presented to Parliament during this period, but not enacted before 1956.

Mention must be made of the Library Association Council's recommendations for "Local Government reorganization and Public Libraries," the basis for which was described by McColvin<sup>(33)</sup>. These were presented to the Annual General Meeting at Southport in 1955, rejected by that meeting, but later approved by a postal ballot of members.\*

In 1952, Kent County relinquished its library powers in respect of the Borough of Gillingham, and Norman Tomlinson<sup>(34)</sup> describes this transfer of a fully developed library system. An interesting comparison is the transfer of library powers from Hampshire County Council to Aldershot Borough Council (which had hitherto received scant service). This was effected in 1954, and French<sup>(35)</sup> outlines the early stages in the development of the new service consequent to the transfer. In reverse, the following districts relinquished their independent powers to the county authority: 1950, Dalton-in-Furness to Lancashire; 1951, Hitchin to Hertfordshire, Holyhead to Anglesey, Lcominster to Herefordshire; 1952, Blaenau Festiniog, Bala, Corwen, Dolgelly and Llanwchllyn to Merionethshire, Montgomery M.B. to Montgomeryshire; 1953, Bodmin to Cornwall, Beaumaris to Anglesey, Halkyn to Flintshire; 1954, Llanberis to Caernarvon, Trimdon to Durham County.

\* The recommendations relating to compulsory surrender of powers by small urban authorities or compulsory arrangements for joint services were subsequently rejected by the Annual General Meeting, 1956.

The Library Association Conference of 1952 heard two papers on current financial needs<sup>(36)</sup> (37), both advocating sufficient financial provision to ensure good bookstocks and adequately qualified staff. The increase in financial allocation to libraries is noted earlier.

The "fines" question, the legal implications of which have already been mentioned, produced articles on the ethics and practical value of making charges by Bickerton<sup>(38)</sup> and by Simpson<sup>(39)</sup>, who described and defended the Coventry Corporation's Bill to legalize fines, whilst Whiteman<sup>(40)</sup> stated the contrary case.

In 1951 was born the controversy which became known as the "Penny Levy," a suggestion, based on the Scandinavian system of State aid for authorship, that a penny should be paid by readers for each loan of a library book and the proceeds distributed to authors. The idea was closely associated with the name of John Brophy<sup>(41)</sup>, but a similar idea was suggested earlier by Eric Leyland<sup>(42)</sup>. A vigorous correspondence ensued in the *Bookseller*<sup>(43)</sup>, and the topic received a good deal of notice in the Press. Snaith<sup>(44)</sup> produced a whimsical essay on the subject, supposedly written many years hence.

**BUILDINGS.** A report<sup>(45)</sup> on post-war library buildings shows that four permanent central libraries (including three municipal) and forty branches had been completed from 1945 to April 1952. Most of these were prefabricated structures. Seventy-seven schemes of extension and alteration due to reorganization were completed (including twenty-eight at municipal central libraries); 109 buildings were adapted as permanent libraries (including six municipal central libraries); work was in hand for sixty-eight buildings (including sixteen municipal central libraries); and details are given of projected building schemes which had either received or been refused licences or sanctions to build. Although licensing and other sanctions eased a little shortly after the date of this survey, the worsening economic situation brought further setbacks, and it is not easy to assess the situation at the end of 1955.

Among many others there have been descriptions of new buildings or conversions to central libraries at Warrington<sup>(46)</sup>, Shipley<sup>(47)</sup>, Arnold<sup>(48)</sup>, Lowestoft<sup>(49)</sup>, Wigan<sup>(50)</sup>, Airdrie<sup>(51)</sup>, Penzance<sup>(52)</sup>, Peterborough<sup>(53)</sup>, Dover<sup>(54)</sup>, Newcastle upon Tyne<sup>(55)</sup>, Glasgow<sup>(56)</sup>, Chesterfield<sup>(57)</sup>, Atherton<sup>(58)</sup>, Tunbridge Wells<sup>(59)</sup>, Weston - super - Mare<sup>(60)</sup> and Gillingham<sup>(61)</sup>. Of the branch libraries completed during these five years, prior mention must be made of the Manor Branch of Sheffield<sup>(62)</sup> (which was probably the largest branch library in Britain when it was built). Begun in May 1939, suspended during the war and not completed until 1953, it is the first British library to be planned on the "modular" or "unit" system and has attracted nation-wide attention and interest. Other branches, in addition to those mentioned in the chapter on Buildings, described include Liverpool (Speke)<sup>(63)</sup>, Glasgow (King's Park)<sup>(64)</sup>, Plymouth (Woodland Port and Ernesettle)<sup>(65)</sup>, Coventry (Canley)<sup>(66)</sup>, Brighton (Rottingdean)<sup>(67)</sup>, Brierley Hill (Kingswinford)<sup>(68)</sup>, Swinton<sup>(69)</sup> and Bootle (Orrell)<sup>(70)</sup>. The relative costs of providing a branch for an overspill area of 15,000-20,000 readers are outlined by a Deputy Town Clerk<sup>(71)</sup>.

Mobile libraries serving urban authorities have been introduced at Battersea<sup>(72)</sup>, Acton<sup>(73)</sup>, Woolwich<sup>(74)</sup> and elsewhere.

ORGANIZATION AND METHODS. The large increases in book issues and their consequent effect on the administration and routine processes, combined with the need for financial stringency imposed by increased cost of goods and services during the period, has turned the thoughts of librarians to detailed examination of the various methods used in the job. Some library authorities have initiated organization and method surveys of all their departments (including the library), either by their own committees and officers or by independent consultants, whilst at least one library has been the subject of detailed scrutiny by the Metropolitan Boroughs Joint Standing Committee's own "O. & M." team. All the reports of these investigations have been of a confidential nature and so not published, but "O. & M." was the theme of the Library Association's London and Home Counties Branch Conference in 1952, when papers were given by Mikardo<sup>(76)</sup> (who gave a general survey of business administration study methods) and Coyne<sup>(78)</sup> (who was then leader of the Metropolitan Boroughs' "O. & M." team). Headicar<sup>(77)</sup> also writes on this subject and stresses the value of independent investigators. Eight methods of stock record procedures are analysed by Bengé<sup>(78)</sup>, whilst the use of punched cards for stock records is the subject of an article by Jones<sup>(79)</sup>. In an effort to cope with the special problems of intensively busy periods at Westminster, a revolutionary method of book issue by tokens was devised and described by McColvin<sup>(80)</sup>, and Maidment<sup>(81)</sup> discusses the relative merits and demerits of numerous charging systems in current use. In 1955 Wandsworth Public Libraries introduced photo-charging to England, in an effort to find a way of simplifying their charging problems and to effect savings in time, staff and materials. An interim report on the experiment is given by Corbett<sup>(82)</sup>. Haugh<sup>(83)</sup> describes new methods for the recovery of overdues and the registration of new readers at Bristol, and the former subject is also dealt with by Pocklington<sup>(84)</sup>.

The results of an investigation into the use of the book reservation service at Coventry and an analysis of a questionnaire on similar services at other libraries are outlined and commented upon by Simpson<sup>(85)</sup>.

Apart from the "light literature" question referred to above, there has been little fresh thought on the subject of bookstocks and their selection and maintenance, though Reynolds<sup>(86)</sup>, Brodie<sup>(87)</sup> and Hunt<sup>(88)</sup> examined the subject at conferences held in 1954. Hinton<sup>(89)</sup> gives an account of the changeover to centralized book ordering and processing at Newcastle upon Tyne, and the scheme for allocation of home-reading books to pool stock rather than to individual libraries, and Bryon<sup>(90)</sup> suggests a scheme of book selection based on regional library schemes and the use of advisory subject specialists.

Many libraries are finding paper-backed editions a convenient and cheap method of providing recreational reading material, and Hornsey's use of *Penguins* is described by Stevenson<sup>(91)</sup>.

The advent of the *British National Bibliography* has brought many changes, and its use has been extended far beyond its obvious purposes as a bibliographical tool and an aid to classification and cataloguing. Haslam<sup>(92)</sup> describes its use in Manchester City Libraries and Shercliff<sup>(93)</sup> its use as a substitute for a catalogue in a Manchester branch, Butcher<sup>(94)</sup> shows its value for book selection, machine cataloguing and regional bureau notification at Hampstead, and Sharp<sup>(95)</sup> its uses at Croydon.

SERVICES. The traditional division of the public library into "Reference" and "Lending" has long been criticized, and attempts have been made to introduce subject departments into British libraries. Much more would have been done, no doubt, had it been possible for new buildings to be erected or old ones drastically modified, but, even so, some schemes of subject grouping and departmentalization have been described by Bryon<sup>(96)</sup> at Eccles and McClellan<sup>(97)</sup> at Tottenham. The current position of gramophone records collections in public libraries is detailed by Lovell<sup>(98)</sup> in analysing the replies to a questionnaire sent to libraries with such collections. It is said that there are fifty-one record collections out of 580 library authorities, and of these thirty-three are in the Greater London area. The latter are described in more detail in the London and Home Counties quinquennial report, 1955<sup>(99)</sup>. The long-playing record has come into its own during these years and Bryant<sup>(100)</sup> and Howes<sup>(101)</sup> have written about these in relation to public record collection. Overton<sup>(102)</sup> contributed the first British book on the subject of record collections.

On other special services there have been two important contributions in the *Library Association Pamphlet* series, Allsop<sup>(103)</sup> on the work of a mental hospital library and Watson<sup>(104)</sup> on libraries in prisons. Callander<sup>(105)</sup> gives a practical paper on the work of Croydon's library bindery. The increasing number of foreign immigrants making their homes in Britain has increased demands for foreign literature, and this is considered in an article in the *Kent Newsletter*<sup>(106)</sup>. Stephens<sup>(107)</sup> discusses the present state of archive preservation.

In view of the large amount of discussion on library public relations activities throughout the years, it is surprising to find few British references to the topic during the period, the principal one being the report<sup>(108)</sup> of the Sixth Annual Conference of the Association of Assistant Librarians in 1955, which had "Publicity" as its theme.

Library co-operation in general is dealt with elsewhere, but here we must note the account by Marshall<sup>(109)</sup> of the Kendal-Westmorland scheme begun in 1948 and Cotton's description<sup>(110)</sup> of the scheme of co-operative book purchase in the libraries of South-East Lancashire and Cheshire, and a similar scheme in the Rossendale area of N.E. Lancs. The Metropolitan Special Collections scheme had been working for almost seven years when Rossiter<sup>(111)</sup> wrote the article in which he criticizes its weaknesses in the field of periodical provision and makes suggestions for improvements. General inter-availability of tickets is discussed by Pike<sup>(112)</sup>, who suggests a national scheme of co-ordinated provision in place of the present piecemeal arrangements.

STAFF. 1953 saw the publication of the Library Association's "Recommendations on welfare and working conditions of public library staffs" (known as the "Tighe Report")<sup>(113)</sup>, and in the same year a review of salaries and gradings of public library staffs was issued<sup>(114)</sup>, showing progress since the original grading scheme of 1948. This shows, *inter alia*, that 549 upgradings of posts had occurred since 1950 and that there were 3,379 library posts graded on APT or JNC "lettered" grades. The division of staff into professional and non-professional categories received further attention, and its application in public libraries was discussed by Christopher<sup>(115)</sup> and Wilden-Hart<sup>(116)</sup>. An interesting article from the pen of "Martin Wandesford"<sup>(117)</sup> arose from the topic of posts advertised at inadequate salaries which caused a good deal of heat

during the years under review, and examined some of the factors which determine a public librarian's salary. A small-scale scheme for the interchange of professional library staffs between two neighbouring authorities is described by McClellan <sup>(118)</sup>.

### INTERNATIONAL

This survey would not be complete without a reference to the work of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, for its programme has included many activities to encourage the development of public libraries as centres of popular education and culture. Three of the principal events mentioned in a general article by Petersen <sup>(119)</sup> are the seminar on the Role of libraries in Adult Education held at Malmö, Sweden, in 1950, the conference on Library services in Latin America held in October 1951, at São Paulo, Brazil, and the Delhi Public Library project. The São Paulo Conference is further described in the Unesco Bulletins, February-March 1952 <sup>(120)</sup>, and from it arose the project to establish a pilot library scheme at Medellín in Colombia. This library, jointly organized by the Government of Colombia and Unesco, is planned as a model to stimulate the development of library services in Latin America. It commenced in 1954 with 11,000 books, and undertook several extension activities, and is described by Perna <sup>(121)</sup>. The Delhi Public Library is mentioned later in the section on India. A seminar was held at Ibadan, Nigeria, in 1953 to study the library problems of Africa; one result of this was the formation of the West African Library Association. The gatherings at Malmö, São Paulo and Ibadan are fully reported in three publications of Unesco <sup>(122)</sup> <sup>(123)</sup> <sup>(124)</sup>, and Sydney <sup>(125)</sup> lists the principal recommendations of the Ibadan seminar.

The work of the International Federation of Library Associations has been valuable if less spectacular. At their meeting in Vienna in 1953, the Public Library Committee of IFLA set down the conditions necessary for a good public library service, and included statements that the service should be financed from public funds as a Government responsibility, be organized under the local authority covering as large an area as possible with maximum co-operation, and with State aid and encouragement <sup>(126)</sup>. The Third International Congress of Librarians held at Brussels in 1955 resolved that the working paper on the development of the public library service submitted by the Public Library Committee of IFLA, and adopted unanimously by the meeting of the Public Library section, be adopted as a statement of principles and objective, and that it be sent to all library associations for their consideration; that governments of all countries be earnestly requested to consider making grants for the improvement of public library services and for their establishment where they do not exist, and that Unesco be requested to prepare, in collaboration with IFLA, material explaining the need for good public library service and outlining the principles of library organization for distribution to local authorities, especially in those countries where so far no adequate service exists <sup>(127)</sup>.

### COMMONWEALTH

The pattern of public library services in the Commonwealth has been summarized by Sewell <sup>(128)</sup>, who has noted four general types of organization: (1) federated local libraries with provincial support; (2) State library services

which retain the local library as an independent unit but give financial assistance or lend collections of books; (3) State library services which assume responsibility for book supply, leaving the local library authority responsible for buildings and staffing; (4) State or regional library services with completely centralized administration. From these observations he deduces certain generalizations about the kind of service appropriate to various kinds of areas. In an earlier work, Flood<sup>(120)</sup> has given a general survey of colonial libraries, dealing mainly with the Caribbean colonies.

#### AUSTRALIA

The general picture of developments in Australia is of increased State grants to municipalities (which are local authority areas often larger than towns) and to subscription libraries. It is natural that much of the progress should be in extending the service to the scattered rural communities and reference is made to the comprehensive activities of the Library Board of Western Australia and similar schemes under "County and rural libraries."

Thomson<sup>(130)</sup> describes the subsidized library system in New South Wales, and Shaw<sup>(131)</sup> states that 137 municipal and shire councils in New South Wales have adopted the Library Act of 1939 and 116 are operating services to 1,766,000 people. Local authorities received £321,450 in subsidies in 1954 (this is almost ten times more than the amount given in 1944). In 1953 rate income of £263,448 was spent on libraries (£137,137 above the legal minimum) and bookstocks exceeded 853,000.

A common pattern is for the local libraries to provide a service for surrounding districts (with State aid), but in Tasmania the State is responsible for the municipal service to Hobart. The modernization of the old subscription library to become the State Library is described by Makepeace<sup>(132)</sup>, who also mentions the financial arrangements involved.

#### CANADA

The Canadian Library Service is still in a state of infancy so far as its coverage of the population is concerned. Although most of the major cities are well provided, barely 7 to 10 per cent of rural Canada was receiving a service at the beginning of our period. Recent advances since then are mentioned on pp. 158-159. The great divergence of facilities is shown by "An English Emigrant"<sup>(133)</sup> who cites the adverse effects of inadequate municipal rates in most provinces.

Gregory<sup>(134)</sup> describes three new libraries opened in the York Township area of Toronto in 1951, and the new Port Arthur Library built at a cost of \$185,000 is the subject of a contribution by Porter<sup>(135)</sup>. The bookmobile is an obvious asset in such scattered communities as need service in Canada, and new ones are noted at London<sup>(136)</sup>, St. Thomas<sup>(137)</sup> and Chatham, Ontario<sup>(138)</sup>.

In 1951 over 25,000,000 books were lent by the 798 libraries, of which "307 are free public libraries and 444 association libraries (mostly receiving financial aid)." These libraries spent \$6,448,000 and employed 1,397 staff.

In common with other countries the Canadian Library Association has been considering standards of service and has published its detailed recommendations for books, staff, operational conditions and financial support needed to provide an adequate service for Canada<sup>(139)</sup>.

An interesting administrative arrangement is described by Lewis<sup>(140)</sup> in the use of the Retail Credit Bureau in Vancouver, which prevents readers with overdue books from obtaining credits, and has resulted in the return of many outstanding loans.

### GOLD COAST (GHANA)

Describing the work of the Gold Coast Library Service set up in 1950, Evans<sup>(141)</sup> mentions that six libraries have been started in large towns and that the first building for the Ashanti Regional Library was nearing completion at a cost of £25,000. The total expenditure in 1953 was £50,000 and circulation was 172,000, excluding book boxes. Details of later developments are given under "County and rural libraries."

### INDIA

The difficulties of running a library service in India are considerable. The vast number of tongues, the widespread illiteracy, the small number of books in some of the dialects, the poor quality of the book materials, the pests which attack them, the impossibility of professional organization—these are some mentioned by Makin<sup>(142)</sup>. Yet attempts have been made, and seem to be modestly successful. The Delhi Public Library project followed the decision of Unesco to organize in a member State, as part of a campaign to spread fundamental education, with the assistance of its Government, a pilot scheme of library service mainly for newly literate persons. The scheme was inaugurated on October 27, 1951, and a combined lending, reference and reading room, with children's library and halls, is housed in the former Wavell canteen. The library is adapted to Indian life and will be controlled, staffed and ultimately financed by Indians. An *ad hoc* Library Board of eleven, working under the Indian Ministry of Education, controls the project, which may be the model for public library development in India. Sydney, the inaugural adviser, describes the beginnings of the plan<sup>(143)</sup> and Gardner, who supervised the first year's work, discusses the problems encountered—lack of technical books in Hindi or Urdu, lack of lower-paid staff, use of visual aids for non-literates, production of easy-to-read pamphlets and children's books<sup>(144)</sup><sup>(145)</sup>.

Waknis<sup>(146)</sup> gives an account of Bombay State, where there are new libraries in Bombay and three regional library centres, twenty-two district towns and 229 taluka towns. All are based on subscriptions, to which the Government adds an equal amount, but all are for reference only. The Hyderabad Public Libraries Act, 1955, is given as an appendix to an article by Rao<sup>(147)</sup>. This envisages the creation of a State Library Council, a Department of Public Libraries, the establishment of local library authorities in Hyderabad and Secunderabad, and a network of libraries in all important places in the State. At present there are seventy-five libraries and some Government grants. Sivaraman<sup>(148)</sup> writes of legislation in Madras where the Connemara Public Library acts as State Central Library, and there is power to levy a rate on property tax. Work began in 1950, but difficulties of tax collection have held it up. In the Punjab a central library committee was set up in 1950 to co-ordinate the work of many small libraries<sup>(149)</sup>. Draft legislation has been enacted and some schemes have been projected with promise of Unesco assistance in 1955-56. Ranganathan conceives a plan for library service in Delhi State,

which has problems quite different from the rest of the country<sup>(150)</sup>, with 1,800,000 people in 600 square miles. He suggests the setting up of a social education centre to provide reading for 1,000,000 illiterates and a State central library operating through sixteen service branches and six bookmobiles. The necessity for the production of literature in Hindi is stressed.

#### MALAYA

Plumbe mentions the difficulties and modest achievements of organizing a service in Malaya<sup>(151)</sup>. Lack of suitable books in local tongues is noted and a Government-financed nation-wide service is suggested. A similar suggestion is made by Harrod<sup>(152)</sup>, who mentions the erection of a new building for the Raffles Library, Singapore, where bookstock and routine processes are being revised.

#### NEW ZEALAND

*The Census of public libraries 1954* gives detailed statistics of 138 public library authorities in New Zealand (thirty-four more than in 1949)<sup>(153)</sup>. Membership has risen to 343,882, stock is 1,915,561, and issues are over 11,000,000. The pattern of "free or subscription" is slowly changing to the former, but there are thirty-two authorities who still charge five shillings per annum and thirty-two who levy ten shillings. The "free" libraries still tend to have pay collections as well—105 have such, consisting almost entirely of fiction. There are 448 full-time members of 955 staff. The local authority contribution to income averages at 71 per cent of the total, the rest coming from subscriptions, rentals, fines and other grants. 52.13 per cent of expenditure is for salaries and 30.58 per cent for books and periodicals.

A plea for more State aid is contained in Stuart Perry's presidential address to the New Zealand L.A.<sup>(154)</sup> and this attracted a ministerial reply and much Press comment, including three editorials which are reproduced in an article by Wylie<sup>(154a)</sup>. The Standards Research Committee of the New Zealand Library Association prepared standards for discussion at its 1952 Conference, relating to functions, units of service and services undertaken<sup>(155)</sup>.

The trend from "subscription" to "free and rental" has brought greatly increased use, and the annual report of Auckland Public Library for 1952-53 shows results of the change-over. These show large increases in quality of reading as well as quantity, the percentages increase of issue of, for example, science, arts and literature being considerably larger than those of fiction. Wellington changed to "free" in 1951, and Perry describes the change-over there<sup>(156)</sup>, and Cowey shows the results of adopting a free service in Oamaru Public Library<sup>(157)</sup>.

The rental systems in common use are three—rental-feeder (where all new books are charged for), pay-duplicate (where free duplicates are available), and free and standard (in which only light reading material is charged for). These systems are the subject of a report to the N.Z.L.A.<sup>(158)</sup>. The success at Canterbury of a pay service of light fiction with a free service of other material is recorded by Velvin<sup>(159)</sup>, whilst the Book Resources Committee of the N.Z.L.A. receives a report by Bagnall<sup>(160)</sup> recommending that non-fiction in great demand should be treated as rental material.

Wylie<sup>(161)</sup> writes of the attraction to graduates of improved salaries and

more suitable positions in libraries, and says that some form of subsidy from the Government is necessary to increase salaries and to maintain this trend. The same writer comments<sup>(162)</sup> on the necessity for regional development in the future, because of the many small units of local government unable to support a library service.

#### NIGERIA

Developments are afoot in Nigeria, and Harris<sup>(163)</sup> reports a memorandum presented to the Nigerian Federal Minister for Social Services, by a deputation of Nigerian members of the West African Library Association Council, in 1955 in which the need for libraries and a national library service is argued, the lack of overall planning amongst existing services is noted, and the main requirements for development are listed.

#### SOUTH AFRICA

The Cape Provincial Library Service Ordinance, 1955, has re-enacted many of the provisions of the ordinance of 1949, including those by which the Provincial Administration may subsidize free library services in the larger urban areas of the Province, and has revived the upper limit of expenditure and subsidy. It has also enabled the progress of the Cape Town City Library Service to be maintained. This service adopted the ordinance in 1951, and its progress is reported by B. G. Hood, the City Librarian<sup>(164)</sup>. He records how eleven subscription libraries were incorporated into a unified Council Service, and opened as free municipal libraries in 1954, and how the lending section of the South Africa Library was also taken over. In 1954 the service issued 1,148,246 books to 43,940 members and spent £66,791. Thirty-six service points were in operation and 102 staff were employed. The developments in the Cape are also noted in an editorial article in *South African Libraries*<sup>(165)</sup>. T. Friis, who was appointed Library Organizer to Cape Province in 1955, formerly held a similar post in Natal and has described the existing services there<sup>(166)</sup> and the proposed free service with expenses shared by provincial and local administrations. The Province is to be divided into three library regions. Discussing future developments in Natal, the same writer says that quality rather than quantity must now be the aim, and describes<sup>(170)</sup> a programme of ten extension projects, an adult education survey, lectures on the place of the book in society, book weeks, a series on "You and your community days," family relations exhibitions, and extensive bibliographical service, including a union catalogue. The programme for 1955-56 was to include provision of audio-visual material, hospital services, the publication of a library journal and book weeks on specialized subjects.

The 1953-54 report of Johannesburg Public Library shows that since the city took over the existing subscription library, the number of readers has grown from 4,200 to 93,876, bookstocks have risen from 64,000 to 605,097 and circulation increased from 289,328 to 2,243,477. Current expenditure was £147,000 and development has been concentrated on the Central Library, as it has not been possible to establish branches in the rapidly growing suburban areas.

The problems of book provision for non-Europeans in the Union are many. Peters describes<sup>(167)</sup> how progress is hampered by lack of funds, trained

native personnel, suitable books and adequate accommodation, and by a 60 per cent illiteracy rate and undeveloped reading habits. Kennedy describes<sup>(168)</sup> services for non-Europeans in Johannesburg, where two branches of the Winifred Holtby Memorial Library were established in 1950. In 1952-53 there were 11,000 borrowers and issues were 155,000. Discussing service to Africans in the Transvaal, Barker<sup>(169)</sup> emphasizes the necessity for suitable book selection for a semi-illiterate population and shows how racial policies make it difficult to staff service points and give proper assistance to readers, whilst some indifferent local authorities prevent the provision of adequate service points.

#### WEST INDIES

Library activity in the West Indies during the period under review has largely been development and consolidation of the schemes launched during preceding years. Accounts of these schemes have appeared in the professional Press and these have been mainly historical in outline. Easton, dealing with the Eastern Caribbean Regional Library scheme, shows how centralization was largely completed by 1948 and how five subscription services (Grenada, St. Kitts-Nevis, St. Vincent, St. Lucia, and Antigua) have adopted free services with the assistance of E.C.R.L.<sup>(171)</sup> The director of the scheme describes the step-by-step operations culminating in the formation of the regional library and its extension by deposit collectors to small towns and villages<sup>(172)</sup>. The service is also described by Thompson<sup>(173)</sup>.

#### OTHER COUNTRIES

##### UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

GENERAL. Developments of library service in the United States are remarkably parallel to those in Great Britain. Three general books must be noticed. In 1954 Ernestine Rose<sup>(174)</sup> wrote a comprehensive and valuable survey of the place of the American public library in the life of the people, starting with an outline of the history and tradition of the service. Winsor edits a volume issued by the ALA Trustees section<sup>(175)</sup>, the purpose of which is to give library trustees a picture of the responsibilities and duties of their office. Bryan<sup>(176)</sup>, in a book published as part of the Public Library Inquiry, gives an exhaustive study of the librarian, his personal characteristics, his career, his education, management and welfare.

The Public Library Enquiry was referred to in detail in *The year's work in librarianship, 1950*. The following five years have proved a searching time for most American librarians, and a good deal of self-examination has been indulged in by libraries and librarians in the light of the enquiry and of the various standards suggested by the American Library Association. Carnovsky<sup>(179)</sup>, however, is doubtful of the value of quantitative measurement as in the *A.L.A. post war standards for public libraries*, and suggests that qualitative evaluation must be sought in the future. There has been much progress, and Alvarez<sup>(177)</sup> shows that of 333 large libraries 312 have increased their issues by 110 per cent between 1944 and 1952, and Brown<sup>(178)</sup> demonstrates that librarians' salaries increased by 75 per cent between 1939 and 1951.

Articles on the smaller public libraries, however, describe a much less

happy state of affairs. A study by Moran<sup>(180)</sup> and others of a survey of conditions in United States public libraries states that they are facing a major crisis and only local support and State aid can help out. Over 270,000 of New Jersey's population lack service of any kind and over half of the population receive service at a low level, says Gaver<sup>(181)</sup>; whilst out of 950 professional posts only 253 are filled by qualified staffs. Many libraries serve too small a population to be effective. Bills to aid Connecticut libraries failed in 1951 and 1953, and plans were made for a further effort in 1955. Parr<sup>(182)</sup> states that in 1952 more than half the public libraries spent less than \$1,000 a year on books. A similar problem in Minnesota is described by Watkins<sup>(183)</sup> where the legislature has not so far offered State aid at a sufficient rate. The difficulties of the small town and its need for State aid are noted by Weadock<sup>(184)</sup>. State aid may be given in the form either of direct service or direct financial assistance or grants in aid, and Kcc<sup>(185)</sup> has analysed the results of a questionnaire sent to all State extension services to determine the ways in which they are assuming responsibility for public library services. Galick<sup>(186)</sup> suggests that State extension agencies might organize and finance regional centres to facilitate interloans and encourage co-operation between groups and reciprocal agreements. Similar ideas are propounded by Rosche<sup>(187)</sup>, who points out that for economy and better service the trend is towards larger units of taxation, and says that a central library acting as book, reference and administration centre to other libraries is a possibility in Illinois, where library law makes full provision for the setting up of district libraries from which localities can vote themselves out at any time.

The inadequacy of services to readers living in metropolitan areas, particularly in satellite towns of expanding cities, has been obscured by the problems of the small town and rural area, says Mahoney<sup>(188)</sup>, and he suggests that federations of scattered independent communities is a possible remedy.

The Library Service Bill presented to Congress on various occasions since 1946 has been summarized in the *ALA Bulletin*<sup>(189)</sup>. It proposes a Federal grant of up to \$10,000,000 a year for five years to States which submit approved development plans and make matching grants. The purpose of the aid is to "stimulate States to strengthen and extend library service primarily to rural areas by use of library demonstrations, bookmobile services, advisory personnel and other methods." Although earlier Bills had been defeated, further attempts to secure its adoption were still being made, and Richards<sup>(190)</sup> outlines the official ALA testimony in support. (A note on the 1956 "Library Services Act" is included on p. 163.)

**ADULT EDUCATION ACTIVITIES.** In 1952-53 an ALA questionnaire on Adult Education in Public Libraries was circulated as part of a survey financed by a grant from the Fund for Adult Education, an independent agency established by the Ford Foundation. Helen L. Smith directed the survey and has reported on it<sup>(191)</sup>. This report is summarized by Spear<sup>(192)</sup>. Of 4,096 public libraries (of which over half were in small communities with 2,500 to 9,999 people!) it was found that "slightly less than 10 per cent of the libraries were doing 'a great deal' in helping adults and young adults to continue education in group activities." 1,057 libraries served women's study and reading clubs, 995 served parents' organizations, 834 served informal local clubs, 832

gave their services to missionary societies and church groups, 129 were working with labour unions and 137 served industrial groups. 292 public libraries sponsored regular meetings in 1952-53 under the auspices of the ALA American Heritage Project<sup>(193)</sup>. Stevenson<sup>(194)</sup> and Ulveling<sup>(195)</sup> describe the activities of the ALA in its disbursement of a \$100,000 grant for adult education projects, and mention some of the projects undertaken.

**TELEVISION AND LIBRARIES.** Smith<sup>(191)</sup> says that eighteen libraries were providing television programmes. Some of these are described in further detail by Mumford<sup>(196)</sup> on Cleveland, Ohio; by Lieberman<sup>(197)</sup>, who demonstrates the use of television by the library not only for publicity but for the production of educational programmes, and gives Seattle as an example; and by Stone<sup>(198)</sup>, who indicates types of programme and production hints at Urbana and Albuquerque. The effect of TV on the library reader is examined by Johnson<sup>(199)</sup>. He says that a general survey shows an overall reduction of library use by owners of TV sets amounting to 20.71 per cent, but that this was of a temporary nature only. The same conclusion was reached in a selective survey taken at Montclair, N.J.<sup>(200)</sup>.

**PUBLICITY.** A successful library week at Brooklyn with the object of publicizing the library is described by James<sup>(201)</sup>. Activities included class visits, discussions, broadcasts, prayers by clergy of three faiths, band music and glee-club singing. Readers' registrations were increased by 22 per cent and requests for duplicate cards by 35 per cent. An earlier article by Brown<sup>(202)</sup> describes the making of a film on the work of the Brooklyn Public Library, showing how a family's various needs are met by the library. This originated from a joint committee of library, school and community.

**CENSORSHIP.** In these five years American public libraries faced a severe testing time during the period when McCarthyism was rampant, and attempts at censorship of bookstocks were common. The library world successfully opposed most of these attempts, and reiterated its belief in and championship of intellectual freedom. In two articles written for British readers, Collison<sup>(203)</sup><sup>(204)</sup> reports on the criticisms and attacks on bookstocks and selection policies, and on the work of the ALA Committee on Intellectual Freedom and its conference held in June 1952. A plan by Burbank, California, Library Board to persuade the League of Californian Cities to approve labelling of subversive and immoral books in libraries brought a public outcry. This led to a modified plan on which, following an approach from the Californian Library Association, no action was taken<sup>(205)</sup>. Kapp<sup>(206)</sup> records an account of the unsuccessful attempt by the *Boston Post* to have pro-Communist literature withdrawn from Boston Public Library, and Halpenny<sup>(207)</sup> recounts various methods of censorship which groups attempted (unsuccessfully) to impose in Texas. The feelings and aspirations of American librarians in prosecution of their ideals are crystallized in the speeches at the second conference on Intellectual Freedom held at Whittier, California, June 20-21, 1953<sup>(208)</sup>.

**SERVICES.** The development of the public library service to small businessmen has received attention and schemes are described in Akron, Ohio, by Munn<sup>(209)</sup>; in Brooklyn by Bellamy<sup>(210)</sup>; and in Newark, N.J., by McLean<sup>(211)</sup>.

Delancy<sup>(212)</sup> outlines a novel service offered by Oklahoma City Library where the reader phones his requests to the library which in turn phones when the books are available. "The reader then collects from a window adjacent to the street and has no need to alight from his car. . . ."

Another development is the work of libraries in promoting civil defence activities in the community, and an article<sup>(213)</sup> outlines the services of Brooklyn, Detroit and Louisville Public Libraries in providing extension facilities and co-ordination of information on civil defence in general.

STAFF. In 1954 there were 10,000 staff vacancies in American libraries, says Jones<sup>(214)</sup>. She considers that salary scales, which have not kept pace with other professions, should be regularly reappraised by librarians and trustees, especially in small libraries. Writing in *Library Trends*, Munn<sup>(215)</sup> states that whilst the beginning salaries have in general risen beyond the cost-of-living index, "the salaries of experienced librarians have not risen proportionately. There is often too small a gap between the beginner and the librarian who began a dozen years ago at \$1,800." Many libraries now publish job classifications outlining the duties of each post in their establishment and the pay plans that accompany them, and the ALA recently revised the minimum library salary standards that accompany its official classification<sup>(216)</sup>.

ORGANIZATION. Faced, as are libraries the world over, with continually rising demands and continually inadequate funds, the American librarian has made full use of current ideas in scientific management and work-simplification techniques to bring economies in administration and free staffs from unproductive routines, so making them available for professional duties. A management improvement plan inaugurated by the District of Columbia public library<sup>(217)</sup> saved the equivalent of eighty-nine positions at an average of \$3,700 by administrative reorganization, improvement of existing services and development of new ones. St. John<sup>(218)</sup> describes many ways in which the cost of time, labour and materials used on operations at Brooklyn Public Library have been reduced. Goldhor<sup>(219)</sup> surveys new techniques of scientific management in public libraries by administrative policy and changes in physical layout and work operations. Nine items of work simplification of general application, and eleven of specific application to library work, are listed by Wheeler<sup>(220)</sup>.

Finally, mention must be made of the number of *Library Trends*<sup>(221)</sup> devoted to current trends in public libraries, and to conclude with a quotation from McFadden<sup>(222)</sup>: "Expansion and strengthening of [public library] service, whether begun with aid from the Federal Government or at the grass roots, constitute too strong a movement to be completely stopped. The public library is moving forward though it still has a long way to go."

## GERMANY

Developments in Western Germany have been remarkable in view of the many post-war problems that have faced the country. This progress has been confined mainly to a few districts, notably the Ruhr and North Rhine-Westphalia, and has been most marked in the building and equipping of new or resuscitated libraries. An increased demand for reading matter has been

experienced, and Mewes<sup>(225)</sup> attributes this to the reconstruction of the library services, the availability of books scarce for so long and to the influx of countless refugees from the East. Compared with 1940 the figures for bookstocks show an increase of 123·3 per cent, for readers an increase of 169·9 per cent and for issues one of 191·5 per cent in 1953. The chief obstacle to progress is, as elsewhere, finance, but the traditional separation of "popular" and "academic" libraries still proves a hindrance to co-operation. Kaatz<sup>(224)</sup> thinks that present-day problems have decreased the demand for a purely cultural service and that librarians must face the fact and achieve an amalgamation. Krieg<sup>(225)</sup> says that, since 1951, public libraries have been included in the interlending system formerly confined to the academic libraries and that, as a result, the former will have to increase their provision of basic scholarly works. Wilkens<sup>(226)</sup> considers that they should form their own regional schemes linking up with the present system at the highest level, a development which would make German libraries approximate to the British pattern of co-operation.

A conference of librarians of North Rhine-Westphalia, reported by Schmitz-Veltin<sup>(227)</sup>, issued its findings on the rationalization of urban libraries and recommended that, to achieve minimum requirements, with one staff member to every 5,000 population, an annual subsidy of DM 1·50 to 2·50 per head is needed, but Mevissen<sup>(228)</sup> has criticized these figures as inadequate.

There has been some increase in the numbers of libraries now giving open-access facilities, and a report<sup>(229)</sup> on experiences in Hamburg shows the changes in administration and planning that are needed for such a change. Of special interest is an article by Scydelmann<sup>(230)</sup> which tells of the experiences of the Winterhude Library, Hamburg, which, having changed from open to closed access during October 1946 to October 1948, has since reverted to open. In a report on recently rebuilt libraries in Hamburg, Landahl and others<sup>(231)</sup> suggest that many more libraries and books are needed and that the principles used in British public libraries will best solve the problems of administration and organization. The reconstruction of the Düsseldorf library system is described by Peters<sup>(232)</sup>. Four libraries were rebuilt in 1953, one was in hand and others were planned, including a new central library.

The mobile library is coming into favour as a suitable answer to the problem of accommodation. In Augsburg, Western Germany's third mobile service was introduced in 1953 and is described by Wirth<sup>(233)</sup>. An interesting development in the co-operative provision of libraries set up in factories in the Ruhr is outlined by Hüfner<sup>(234)</sup>—the firms provide the premises and the technical stock whilst the local public library provides the recreational literature, with sharing of the cost of staff. A similar arrangement in Dortmund is described by Bieber<sup>(235)</sup>. Two organizations set up for the co-operative use and advantage of German libraries are the Central Bureau for Public Libraries and the Central Purchasing Office. The former collates and evaluates material relating to library services in the Federal Republic collected by the German Library Commission and helps libraries to solve problems of practice and organization<sup>(236)</sup>, and the latter purchases books in quantity, binds them and sells them on favourable terms to libraries, employs 120 persons and binds over 325,000 books a year<sup>(237)</sup>.

No mention of German libraries could be complete without reference to

the American Memorial Library, built with American aid augmented by local funds, to commemorate the air lift and opened in 1954. It is a comprehensive library to serve all sections of the public, and has a general literature library, with subject and reference departments, a children's section, a music library and an auditorium seating 320. Its six storeys also house the Berlin Library School and the Berlin Regional History Department. With its open-access system it represents all that is best in up-to-date library provision and the library and its staff combine the separate German traditions of research and recreation. The projected scheme was described by Langfeldt<sup>(238)</sup>, whilst the completed service is summarized by Breitenbach<sup>(239)</sup>. Issues during eleven months of 1955 were 730,000 to 72,000 readers and the stock was 150,000 volumes<sup>(240)</sup>.

**EASTERN GERMANY.** Information on library developments in Eastern Germany is scarce, but a survey of the situation by Jensen<sup>(241)</sup> (based on material in *Der Bibliothekar*, one of the two leading library periodicals published in the German Democratic Republic) reveals that the traditional German system of closed libraries and the recording of borrowers' reading and reactions to books is still preserved. There is no Library Act and staff pay and conditions are poor. Borrowers still pay entrance fees and subscriptions, and the Chief Librarians are responsible for political purges of their stock. Some of the principles of this "book selection" are outlined by Zahn<sup>(242)</sup>, who details the sort of books which should not be retained and also describes the structure of the library authorities and their interrelationships.

#### GREECE

There were no home reading libraries in Greece prior to 1948, but in that year the Council for Libraries sponsored Kapodistriaki Library at Aegina, based on the English pattern. This is described by Hopkins and Vouteris<sup>(243)</sup>, who point out that the problems are, as ever, illiteracy and lack of funds. It is hoped that the Greek Library Association will provide trained librarians and develop a public library system.

#### ICELAND

A library act of May 1955 provides for thirty library districts, each with a central library<sup>(244)</sup>. The local authority must contribute 15 Icelandic kronur per head a year and the Government will contribute 4.50 kronur. The Minister of Education will appoint a library inspector and certain Government publications will be distributed freely to district libraries. Provision is to be made for municipal libraries in places without a district library and there are arrangements for libraries in schools, hospitals, prisons and similar institutions.

#### ITALY

Development of "popular" libraries has been slow and steady but hampered by poor finance. Apollonj reports<sup>(245)</sup> that the National Institution for Popular and School Libraries is to carry out a complete census of libraries to enable statistics to be obtained so that the Institution might function on a truly national scale. These libraries have increased from 5,471 in 1953 to over 10,000 in 1955, but only about 20,000,000 to 30,000,000 lire is available for annual grants, instead of the 1,000 million lire considered desirable<sup>(246)</sup>. A

scheme for setting up networks to co-ordinate the work of these libraries is being developed by the Ministry<sup>(247)</sup>. An unusual kind of mobile library is described by Stendardo<sup>(248)</sup>. This Italian "bibliobus" not only serves as a library but as a school for illiterates, and is furnished with books, newspapers and periodicals, arm-chairs and folding seats. It has achieved success beyond expectations and aroused great public enthusiasm.

#### NETHERLANDS

In 1954 the Minister of Education, Arts and Sciences received a report from a commission studying the provision of reading material. The recommendations of the report include the establishment of "group libraries" to which individual public libraries and others will be affiliated on a regional basis. Total library subsidies are expected to amount to at least £1,000,000 a year. A library councillor will be appointed to advise the Minister and to supervise the scheme. This development is described by Kossmann<sup>(249)</sup>.

An unusual service offered by the Maastricht Public Library is described by Van der Krogt<sup>(250)</sup>. Readers who cannot or do not want to come to the library may subscribe to different series of new books, modern Dutch novels, series of French or German novels, or of new books on history, travel, etc. They receive one book a week for 3.75 florins a quarter or pay the same sum twice yearly for a book a fortnight.

#### SCANDINAVIA

A general outline of the development and organization of Scandinavian libraries by Ander<sup>(251)</sup> includes the results of a questionnaire arranged by country and library. In addition to statistical data, this includes descriptions of the functions of the library directors operating in the departments of education and responsible for distributing Government grants, inspection of libraries, training of librarians and advisory work. McColvin, in an article<sup>(252)</sup> describing a visit to Swedish and Norwegian libraries, draws conclusions that bookstocks are of higher standard and better physical condition than in Britain.

DENMARK. In a later article McColvin gives a comprehensive account of the Danish public library system, including accounts of many of its libraries, arrangements for professional training and the system of national grant aid<sup>(253)</sup>. This aid is forthcoming as a result of the Danish Public Libraries Act of 1950, and is made to municipal, county or association-owned libraries based on a sliding scale related to local contributions which favours smaller libraries. A small sum is retained to pay the cost of undertakings in the whole field of librarianship and to help finance the compensation paid to authors for the loan of their books by public libraries. The operation of this law is also described by the head of the Library Inspectorate, Dr. Robert Hansen<sup>(254)</sup>.

SWEDEN. In 1952 extensive reforms of the local government system in Sweden have facilitated the provision of overall library coverage, which is described by Hjelmqvist<sup>(255)</sup>. In 1951 a new Bill provided for setting aside  $2\frac{1}{2}$  per cent of all State grants to libraries for the setting up of a central office for library services, including production and distribution of printed catalogue cards, periodicals, indexes, handbooks and other bibliographical material and a central binding

service<sup>(256)</sup>. This office has undertaken a standardization of technical processes, and the Swedish Library Association has published a list of professional and non-professional duties. These are described by Möhlenbrock as an attempt to combat rising costs by systematic work measurement and job analysis of present methods<sup>(257)</sup>.

**NORWAY.** The establishment of libraries by local authorities in Norway is compulsory under an Act of 1949 and State grants are additional to an annual local contribution. The Act also provides that 5 per cent of the State appropriation be paid into a fund to compensate authors for the loan of their books through public libraries. This legislation is described by Kildal<sup>(258)</sup>.

The success of the library system is shown by an impressive increase in circulation statistics: 3,200,000 in 1945-46 to 4,800,000 in 1950-51. Kildal, giving these figures in 1952, shows that State grants during the same period rose from 600,000 kroner to 2,000,000 kroner and that similar rises are apparent in school library statistics<sup>(259)</sup>. The same author, reviewing the work of the year 1954, considers that rising prices have meant that State grants are now inadequate, that the Act requires revision and that other reforms are needed<sup>(260)</sup>.

In 1951 a law was passed making the Public Library Book Central, Oslo, a co-operative with shareholdings by the State and municipalities. Libraries buying through it have their books bound, classified and prepared for circulation. This operates for books bought through State grants—local appropriations may be dealt with otherwise<sup>(261)</sup>.

**FINLAND.** Conditions in Finland are described by Kannila<sup>(262)</sup>, who points out the problems of serving a predominantly rural community. She considers that State grants are inadequate and that a new library Act would be beneficial. Although issues have increased considerably, so has the population, and the average issue has only reached the level of the slump years of the 1930s<sup>(263)</sup>. About one-tenth of the population uses libraries and Qvist<sup>(264)</sup> considers that the other nine-tenths could usefully be approached through the different social and community groups into which they gather. The Helsinki Central Library has acquired, as branches, twelve previously independent libraries, and this expansion has been assisted by building up a common bookstock from which interchangeable collections can be drawn<sup>(265)</sup>.

#### SPAIN

A national census of libraries is to be taken every ten years and other periodical statistical returns are required at more frequent intervals. Describing this, Fernandez also gives a commentary on some of the statistics of Spanish libraries in 1953-54<sup>(266)</sup>. Total issues have risen in ten years from 2,300,000 to 4,100,000, that is from 0.34 to 0.51 per head of population.

#### SWITZERLAND

In November 1951 the City Library of Lucerne (founded in 1812) and the Canton Library (founded 1832) were united under State control. The combined stock of 300,000 volumes, 2,000 MSS. and 800 incunabula make it second only to the Swiss University Library. An article by Muller<sup>(267)</sup> outlines the change-over and points out some of the problems caused by the amalgamation.

The layout of the new library, one of the finest and most modern buildings in Switzerland, is described and the facilities offered are mentioned. The building is also described in the *Building digest* (268).

#### UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS

A general survey of libraries in the Soviet Union has appeared in the *Unesco Bulletin* (269) and brief accounts are given of the work of six groups of libraries. It is stated that at the end of 1953 there were 380,000 libraries with 1,000 million volumes, including 285,000 rural libraries. Dudley (270) says that, in 1950, there were 250,000 with a stock of 500,000,000 volumes and also mentions 9,000 trade union libraries with a stock of over 50,000,000. According to Kolchina (271), there are 176 reading rooms in public libraries, with services to different types of readers, e.g., scientific workers, youth, etc. In the same article the writer states that before 1951 the Lenin Library general room staff had no contact with readers and book delivery was slow, but that after the provision of additional service points, the books are supplied in 3.7 minutes and under 2 per cent of the requests are not satisfied. The Lenin Library is also the subject of an article by Klewenski (272). After an historical introduction, a description of the present library shows it to have 15,000,000 books and periodicals, to add 600,000 volumes annually, including three copies of every Soviet book (through legal deposit). 1,700,000 persons use the reading rooms every year and lending issues are nearly 26,000 a day. As the Central Public Library of the U.S.S.R. it lends considerably to other libraries in the Union and internationally. The staff numbers 1,500.

Another large library, the Saltykov-Shchedrin governmental public library in Leningrad, is described by Golubeva (273). In 1953 its stock was 11,700,000 and nearly 6,000,000 issues were made to 90,500 readers. It has twenty-two reading rooms, attended in 1953 by 1,400,000 persons, and answered 206,000 bibliographical questions. It also lent 103,000 books to other libraries. The Public Library at Kiev was destroyed by Hitler but was reopened in 1954. The new library cost 4,500,000 roubles and has marble columns and staircases, silk blinds and costly stair carpets. It has accommodation for 350,000 books and serves as a centre for the surrounding district libraries. There are four special sections, six specialized departments and three "differential services." It has room for 900 to 1,000 readers in "two shifts a day" (274). The Gorki Public Library at Molotov specializes in foreign literature and has 32,446 books in eighteen languages, and in 1953 had 4,000 readers, principally students from middle and high schools, postgraduates, scientists, and students and teachers of the Pedagogical Institute. Its work is described by Shilova and Petz (275).

The Soviet public library is, of course, an important instrument in the political education of the citizen and it is a librarian's duty to guide readers in their political and self-educational processes and to watch their progress. A printed form for analysis of the requirements of individual readers is used at Nekrasov Public Library in Moscow and is described by Kibrik (276). All books taken by readers are listed so that their progress may be observed whilst notes are made showing how long they have used the library, if they belong to other libraries, if they attend classes on political education, if they are interested in politics and political science, their remarks, their opinions on books and their conversations with the librarians.

## REFERENCES

## GREAT BRITAIN

## General

1. Public Library statistics. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (16) 1955, 484-485.
2. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION (LONDON AND HOME COUNTIES BRANCH). Report of the Public Library System of London and the Home Counties, 1954. 1955, 3.
3. *Ibid.*, 4.

## Functions

4. [JONES, A. C.] The Sub-literature problem. *Lib. Assn.* 44 (10) 1951, 145-147.
5. SAYERS, W. C. B. Our primordial task. *Lib. World* 53 (618, 619, 630) 1951-52, 393-394, 416-418, 434-436.
6. McCOLVIN, L. R. Presidential address. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (5) 1952, 157-164.
7. NEW, P. G. The public provision of light literature. *Ibid.* 57 (4) 1955, 149-153.
8. ASHBY, R. The Public Library's function and the fiction question. *Lib. Rev.* 107 (Autumn 1953), 142-147.
9. BURCH, J. E. V. Notes towards a definition of function. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (5) 1952, 165-169.
10. ELLIOTT, C. A. The library's public. *Ibid.* 53 (7) 1951, 222-224.
11. DONNE-SMITH, B. Leave light fiction to the trade. *Bookseller* Sept. 18, 1954, 986.
12. CARTER, J. The effect of our assistance to readers. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1953, 11-16.
13. BALNAVES, J. Minute particulars. *Librarian* 43 (7) 1954, 121-126, 128-129.
14. BIRCH, J. E. V. More minute particulars. *Ibid.* 43 (11) 1954, 201-204.
15. HAUGH, W. S. Best-seller pressure and its influence on public library book selection. *Lib. World* 55 (642) 1953, 88-93; 56 (643) 1954, 110-112.
16. HAUGH, W. S. What should we provide? *Librarian* 42 (12) 1953, 229-237.
17. LYNN, R. W. Some thoughts on policy in general. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (11) 1952, 357-361.
18. STUART, A. Reading habits in three London Boroughs. *J. of Doc.* 8 (1) 1952, 33-49.
19. BOULDER, H. R. J. Who uses our libraries? a survey of coverage. *Librarian* 44 (2) 1955, 21-22.
20. MURISON, W. J. The Public Library: its origins, influence, purpose and significance as a social institution. Harrap, 1955. pp. 222.
21. SHARR, F. A. What goes on outside, some aspects of public library administration. *N.W. Poly. Sch. Lib. Occ. Papers* 6. 1955.

## Government and Legislation

22. Public Libraries (Scotland) Act, 1955 (3 & 4 Eliz. II, c. 27.)
23. DOW, ALEXANDER. The Public Libraries (Scotland) Act, 1955. *Lib. Rev.* 116 (Winter 1955), 224-226.
24. PATON, W. B. The Public Libraries (Scotland) Act, 1955. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 269-270.
25. PAYON, W. B. The new Scottish Act surveyed. *Lib. Rev.* 116 (Winter 1955), 222-224.
26. ADVISORY COUNCIL ON EDUCATION IN SCOTLAND. Libraries, Museums and Art Galleries: a report, 1951 (Cmd. 8229). H.M.S.O., pp. 145.
27. The Scottish report on libraries: a symposium. *Lib. Rev.* 99 (Autumn 1951), 166-177.
28. GREEN, F. S. An English County Librarian looks at Cmd. 8229. *Lib. World* 53 (616) 1951, 344-346.
29. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (8) 1953, 256-258.
30. Coventry Corporation Act, 1954 (2 & 3 Eliz. II).
31. *Justice of the Peace and Local Government Review.* Oct. 10, 1953.
32. London County Council (General Powers) Act, 1955.
33. McCOLVIN, L. R. Local government reorganization and public libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (8) 1955, 306-308.
34. TOMLINSON, N. Transfer of powers: Gillingham Public Libraries. *Ibid.* 54 (5) 1952, 172-173.
35. FRENCH, W. E. The birth of a library service. *Wessex Herald* 4 (3-4) 1955, 3-5.
36. HUTCHINGS, F. G. B. Brass tacks: our essential financial needs (1). *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1952, 37-41.

37. RUSSELL, C. P. Brass tacks: our essential financial needs (2). *Ibid.*, 41-47.
38. BICKERTON, L. M. To fine or not to fine? *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (6) 1952, 198-200.
39. SIMPSON, E. H. Fines ensure fair shares. *Open Access* 2 (11) 1954.
40. WHITEMAN, P. M. Fines are ineffective and illegal. *Ibid.* 2 (11) 1954.
41. BROPHY, J. Open letter. *Author* 59 (4) 1951, 99-102.
42. LEYLAND, E. [Letter in] *Trade Circular*, February 1951.
43. Correspondence. *Bookseller* June 23, July 7, August 5, 1951.
44. SNAITH, S. This famous extortion: an essay in reconstruction. *Librarian* 40 (11) 1951, 233-234, 236-239.

#### Buildings

45. Post-war library buildings. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (7) 1952, 234.
46. CARTER, G. A. Recent alterations at Warrington. *Ibid.* 53 (5) 1951, 159-160.
47. PRSCOTT, D. W. Modernization of Central Library, Shipley. *Ibid.* 53 (8) 1951, 265.
48. HARGREAVES, C. Recent reorganization of the Arnold Public Library. *Ibid.* 53 (10) 1951, 324-325.
49. STEWARD, A. V. Lowestoft Central Library. *Ibid.* 53 (11) 1951, 365-366.
50. ARTHUR, H. H. G. Reorganization at Wigan Central Library. *Ibid.* 54 (2) 1952, 54-55.
51. SCOBIE, W. Reorganization of Airdrie Public Library. *Ibid.* 54 (2) 1952, 56-57.
52. CABLE, J. H. Library reorganization at Penzance. *Outpost* (July 1952), 1-4.
53. DEAN, S. Recent developments at Peterborough. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (6) 1952, 200.
54. *Ibid.* 55 (2) 1953, 45-46.
55. HINTON, E. A. Central Lending Library, Newcastle upon Tyne. *Ibid.* 53 (7) 1951, 227-231.
56. BLACK, C. W. and KERNOHAN, J. Extension to Mitchell Library, Glasgow. *Ibid.* 55 (9) 1953, 282-283.
57. *Ibid.* 57 (6) 1955, 231.
58. SKEAT, F. (with notes by F. HOWARTH). Reorganization in a small library. *Librarian* 41 (6) 1955, 110-112, 114-117.
59. BIRD, R. G. New Central Library at Tunbridge Wells. *Kent Newsletter* 5 (3) 1953.
60. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (8) 1955, 308.
61. TOMLINSON, N. *Ibid.* 57 (9) 1955, 350.
62. LAMB, J. P. Manor Branch Library, Sheffield. *Ibid.* 55 (6) 1953, 184-186.
63. *Ibid.* 54 (5) 1952, 176.
64. BLACK, C. W. and KERNOHAN, J. King's Park District Library, Glasgow. *Ibid.* 54 (7) 1952, 231-232.
65. *Ibid.* 55 (2) 1953, 46-47.
66. *Ibid.* 55 (6) 1953, 195.
67. *Ibid.* 56 (6) 1954, 221-223.
68. *Ibid.* 57 (3) 1955, 114.
69. *Ibid.* 55 (12) 1953, 406; 56 (8) 1954, 309.
70. *Ibid.* 57 (12) 1955, 487-488.
71. The cost of a branch library. *Librarian* 43 (6) 1954, 108-109.
72. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (2) 1954, 56-57.
73. *Ibid.* 55 (4) 1953, 123.
74. *Ibid.* 56 (4) 1954, 136.

#### Organization and Methods

75. MIKARDO, I. Elements of administration. *L.A. (London and Home Counties Branch) Conf. Proc.* Oct. 1952, 52-54.
76. COYNE, G. R. An "O. & M." investigation into a library. *Ibid.*, 41-51.
77. HEADICAR, B. M. Library organization and methods. *Lib. World* 56 (659) 1955, 183-186.
78. BENCE, R. C. ed. Stock records in public libraries. *N.W. Poly. Sch. Lib. Occ. Papers* 2, December 1953.
79. JONES, E. G. Mechanization of accession records. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (6) 1954, 214-215.
80. MCCOLVIN, L. R. Westminster token charging system. *Ibid.* 56 (7) 1954, 259-261.
81. MAIDMENT, W. R. Book issue methods: a systematic report. *Ibid.* 57 (2) 1955, 53-56.
82. CORBETT, E. V. Wandsworth's experiment with photo-charging. *Ibid.* 57 (9) 1955, 355-348.
83. HAUGH, W. S. Two aspects of public library administration. *Ibid.* 57 (6) 1955, 221-222.
84. POCKLINGTON, P. D. Some thoughts on overdues. *Ibid.* 57 (3) 1955, 103-105.
85. SIMPSON, E. The reservation of books: an investigation. *Ibid.* 54 (12) 1952, 393-398.

86. REYNOLDS, J. D. Standards of library stock: with special reference to medium sized libraries: (1) The Librarian's point of view. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1954, 10-16.
87. BRODIE, P. P. Standards of library stock. (2) The library authority's point of view. *Ibid.*, 16-20.
88. HUNT, K. G. Book stock: building and maintenance. 1. Public Libraries. Bibliography and book stock. *L.A. (London and Home Counties Branch) Conf. Papers.* 1954, 5-12.
89. HINTON, E. A. A deployment of bookstock. *Librarian* 41 (4) 1952, 69-73.
90. BRYON, J. F. W. Co-operative book selection: subject librarianship. *Ibid.* 41 (7, 9) 1952, 129-135, 183-186.
91. STEVENSON, W. B. More about Penguins. *Ibid.* 44 (5) 1955, 88-89.
92. HASLAM, G. E. The British National Bibliography in a large library system. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (3) 1952, 72-76.
93. SHERCLIFF, W. H. The B.N.B. in a branch library. *N.W. Newsletter* 21 (May 1953), 1-2.
94. BUTCHER, S. J. The acquisition of books. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (8) 1952, 259-262.
95. SHARP, HENRY A. Cataloguing comes full circle. *Lib. World* 55 (647-648) 1955, 187-188, 208-210.

## Services

96. BRYON, J. F. W. Subject arrangement in a small public library. *Librarian* 44 (2) 1955, 25-28.
97. MCCLELLAN, A. W. The organization of a public library for subject specialization. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (8) 1955, 296-303.
98. LOVELL, L. G. Gramophone record provision in public libraries. *Ibid.* 56 (7) 1954, 251-259.
99. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION (LONDON AND HOME COUNTIES BRANCH). Report of the Public Library System of London and the Home Counties, 1954. 1955, 29-30.
100. BRYANT, E. T. Long playing records and the gramophone library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (3) 1951, 76-78.
101. HOWES, J. W. Long playing records. *Librarian* 41 (10) 1952, 195-196.
102. OVERTON, C. D. The gramophone record library. Grafton, 1951. pp. xii, 123.
103. ALLSOP, K. M. A mental hospital library. 1951. (*Library Association Pamphlet No. 6.*)
104. WATSON, RICHARD F. Prison libraries. 1951. (*Library Association Pamphlet No. 7.*)
105. CALLANDER, T. E. The library bindery and its administration. *N.W. Poly. Sch. Lib. Occ. Papers* 4. 1954.
106. The foreign literature problem. *Kent Newsletter* 3, 1951, 3-4.
107. STEPHENS, G. B. Archives and libraries. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1953, 50-54.
108. Selling the library service. *Asst. Lib.* 48 (5) 1955, 83-87.
109. MARSHALL, H. Some notes on the Kendal-Westmorland scheme. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (8) 1951, 250-255.
110. COTTON, G. B. Technical books: an experiment in co-operation. *Ibid.* 56 (6) 1954, 209-212.
111. ROSSITER, P. S. B. Periodicals in London. *Ibid.* 54 (4) 1952, 131-134.
112. PIKE, J. R. Temporary tickets. *Lib. Assn.* 45 (9) 1952, 136-137.

## Staff

113. Recommendations on welfare and working conditions of public library staffs (The Tigue Report), May 1953. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (7) 1953, 223-224.
114. Grading in public libraries: a review of the post-war years. *Ibid.* 55 (8) 1953, 258-261.
115. CHRISTOPHER, H. G. T. Professionals or non-professionals. *Ibid.* 53 (3) 1951, 154-155.
116. WILDEN-HART, M. The place of the junior assistant in public libraries. *Asst. Lib.* 48 (2) 1955, 17-20.
117. "MARTIN WANDESFORD." The illwind from Islington. *Bookseller* 2549 (October 1954), 1368-1370.
118. MCCLELLAN, A. W. Interchange of staffs: a small scale scheme. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (7) 1951, 226-227.

## INTERNATIONAL

119. PETERSEN, E. N. Unesco and public libraries. *Lib. Trends* 1 (4) 1953, 531-542.
120. International Public Libraries Conference in Latin America: a success. *Unesco Bull.* (6) 1952, 2-3, 17-20.
121. PENNA, C. V. The Medellin "pilot" public library for Latin America. *Bol. Asoc. Cubana.* 6 (4) 1954, 85-87.

122. HOULE, C. O. *ed.* Libraries in adult and fundamental education: the report of the Malindi seminar. (*Unesco Public Library Manuals No. 3.*) Paris, Unesco, 1951. pp. 179.
123. Development of public libraries in Latin America: a report on the São Paulo Conference. (*Unesco Public Library Manuals No. 4.*) Paris, Unesco, 1952. pp. 195.
124. Development of public libraries in Africa. (*Unesco Public Library Manuals No. 5.*) Paris, Unesco, 1954.
125. SYDNEY, E. Unesco seminar on the development of public libraries in Africa. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (3) 1954, 80-84.
126. The development of public library services. International Federation of Library Associations. Public Libraries Committee. *Libri* 4 (2) 1954, 153-170.
127. 3rd International Congress of Librarians, Brussels, 1955. *Ibid.* 6 (2) 1956.

## BRITISH COMMONWEALTH

128. SEWELL, P. H. Public library extension in the Commonwealth. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (3) 1953, 97-102.
129. FLOOD, R. A. Public libraries in the Colonies. (*L.A. Pamphlet No. 5.*) L.A., 1951.

*Australia*

130. THOMSON, M. Free municipal libraries in Australia. *Librarian* 40 (12) 1951, 272.
131. SHAW, E. S. Library development in New South Wales. *Aust. Lib. J.* 3 (2) 1954, 54-58.
132. MAKEPEACE, L. I. State Library of Tasmania. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 23 (8) 1951, 613-616.

*Canada*

133. "An English emigrant." Canada's public libraries. *Librarian* 41 (7) 1952, 137-139.
134. GREGORY, E. It can be done. *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 36 (2) 1952, 71-73.
135. PORTER, R. The new Port Arthur Public Library. *Ibid.* 35 (4) 1951, 255-257.
136. ROSSIE, M. Bookmobile service in the London (Ontario) Public Library. *Ibid.* 35 (2) 1951, 111-113.
137. REED, W. New bookmobile for St. Thomas. *Ibid.* 35 (4) 1951, 281.
138. PELTIER, R. Chatham experiments with bookmobile service. *Ibid.* 35 (4) 1951, 263.
139. Suggested standards of service for public libraries in Canada. *Ibid.* 39 (4) 1955, 233-238.
140. LEWIS, G. Library overdue and retail credit. *Can. Lib. Ass. Bull.* 9 (6) 1953, 156.

*Gold Coast (Ghana)*

141. EVANS, E. J. A. Public libraries in the Gold Coast. *W. Afr. Libs.* 1 (2) 1954, 1-34.

*India*

142. MAKIN, J. Libraries in India. *Lib. Rev.* 108 (Winter 1953), 218-221.
143. SYDNEY, E. Delhi public library pilot project. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (2) 1952, 44-51.
144. GARDNER, F. M. The Delhi public library project. *Unesco Occ. Papers in Education No. 16*, 1-26.
145. GARDNER, F. M. Passage from India. *Lib. Rev.* 106 (Summer 1953), 74-79.
146. WAKNIS, T. D. Libraries in Bombay State. *Granthalaya* 1 (12) 1955, 13-16.
147. RAO, P. S. M. Library movement in Hyderabad State. *Ibid.* 1 (12) 1955, 32-34.
148. SIVARAMAN, K. M. Library Legislation in Madras. *Ibid.* 1 (12) 1955, 135-138.
149. Library services in the Punjab. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (2-3) 1955, 33-34.
150. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Library development plan for Delhi State. *Annals of Library Science* 1 (1) 1954, 53-58.

*Malaya*

151. PLUMBE, W. J. Problems of library planning in the Federation of Malaya. *Malaya Lib. Grp. Newsl.* 1 (2) 1955, 30-33.
152. HARROD, L. M. The library situation in Malaya. *Ibid.* 1 (1) 1955, 2-9.

*New Zealand*

153. Census of Public Libraries, 1954. New Zealand. Census and Statistics Dept., 1955.
154. PERRY, STUART. Presidential address. *N.Z. Libs.* 16 (2) 1953, 17-26.
- 154a. WYLLIE, D. M. The State and public libraries. *Ibid.* 16 (3) 1953, 49-57.
155. Basic standards for New Zealand libraries. *Ibid.* 15 (6) 1952, 121-131.

156. PERRY, STUART. Wellington changes to free and rental. *Ibid.* 15 (1) 1952, 1, 7-17.  
 157. COWEY, H. B. Oamaru Public Library. *Ibid.* 17 (4) 1954, 89-92.  
 158. The rental collections and free library practice: a report of the N.Z.L.A. Fiction Committee. *N.Z. Libs.* 14 (8) 1951, 204-212.  
 159. VEIVIN, P. M. Canterbury public library in transition. *Ibid.* 16 (2) 1953, 42-43.  
 160. BAGNALL, A. G. Grading of non-fiction. *Ibid.* 16 (3) 1953, 62-64.  
 161. WYLIE, D. M. Library schools: where the graduates go. *Ibid.* 15 (9) 1952, 203-206.  
 162. WYLIE, D. M. Public libraries: 1954-64. *Ibid.* 17 (5) 1954, 105-115.

## Nigeria

163. HARRIS, J. Library proposals for Nigeria. *W.A.L.A. News* 2 (2) 1955, 38-40.

## South Africa

164. HOOD, B. G. The City Library service, Cape Town. *S. Afr. Libs.* 23 (2) 1955, 32-40.  
 165. Recent developments at the Cape. *Ibid.* 22 (4) 1955, 105-106.  
 166. FRIS, T. The provincial library service in Natal. *Ibid.* 20 (1) 1952, 2-7.  
 167. PETERS, M. A. Non-European libraries in the Union of South Africa. *Ibid.* 19 (1) 1951, 1-12.  
 168. KENNEDY, R. F. Library service for non-Europeans in Johannesburg. *Ibid.* 21 (4) 1954, 96-104.  
 169. BARKER, H. Some thoughts on non-European library service in Transvaal. *Ibid.* 22 (1) 1954, 30-34.  
 170. FRIS, T. Qualitative reading: new methods of stimulating reading in Natal. *Ibid.* 22 (4) 1955, 126-129.

## West Indies

171. EASTON, D. K. Public library service in the British territories of the Eastern Caribbean. *Unesco Bull.* 5 (12) 1951, 421-426.  
 172. HOCKEY, S. W. The Eastern Caribbean Regional Library. *Overseas Education* 24 (2) 1952, 1-8.  
 173. THOMPSON, L. S. Library development in the English-speaking West Indies. *Libri* 5 (3) 1955, 256-266.

## UNITED STATES

## General

174. ROSE, ERNESTINE. The public library in American life. New York, Columbia Univ. Press, 1954. pp. xviii, 238.  
 175. A.L.A. TRUSTEES SECTION. A handbook for library trustees; ed. by M. M. Winsor. New York, A.L.A., 1955. pp. 114.  
 176. BRYAN, ALICE I. The public librarian. New York, Columbia University Press, 1952. pp. 474.  
 177. ALVAREZ, R. S. Budgets doubled in eight years. *A.L.A. Bull.* 47 (1) 1953, 11-12.  
 178. BROWN, C. H. Serial costs in relation to other library costs and to inflation. *Serial slants* 11 (1) 1951, 20-24.  
 179. CARNOVSKY, L. Public library surveys and evaluation. *Lib. Q.* 25 (1) 1955, 23-26.  
 180. MORAN, V. L. and others. Public library study. *Lib. J.* 78 (17) 1953, 1608-1611.  
 181. GAVER, MARY V. New Jersey's problem. *Ibid.* 80 (7) 1955, 715-719.  
 182. PARR, C. M. A politician's view. *Ibid.* 79 (13) 1954, 1261-1265.  
 183. WATKINS, DANIEL R. Minnesota library activity. *Ibid.* 79 (12) 1954, 1109-1114.  
 184. WEADOCK, J. J. A trustee's point of view. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 27 (5) 1953, 383-385.  
 185. KEE, S. J. The States' responsibility for public library service. *Pub. Libs.* 6 (4) 1952, 87-90.  
 186. GALICEK, G. The small library: its importance and future. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 27 (5) 1953, 379-382.  
 187. ROSCHIE, B. Larger units of library service. *Illinois Libs.* 35 (10) 1953, 429-432.  
 188. MAHONEY, R. E. Federated libraries . . . *Lib. J.* 77 (7) 1952, 15-20.  
 189. Knowledge is power—a summary of the Library Services Bill. *A.L.A. Bull.* 46 (1) 1952, 21-24.  
 190. RICHARDS, J. S. Library Services Bill. *Lib. J.* 80 (12) 1955, 1431-1435.

## Adult Education Activities

191. SMITH, HELEN L. Adult education activities in the public libraries. New York, A.L.A., 1954. pp. 96.  
 192. SPERAR, J. B. Public library services to adults. *Lib. Trends* 3 (2) 1954, 141-147.  
 193. A.L.A. American heritage project annual report, 1952-3. New York, 1953.  
 194. STEVENSON, G. T. Adult education plans. *Lib. J.* 79 (3) 1954, 170-179.  
 195. UTEVELING, R. A. The library and adult education. *A.L.A. Bull.* 48 (4) 1954, 197-200.

*Television and Libraries*

196. MUMFORD, L. Q. Libraries in educational television. *A.L.A. Bull.* 47 (2) 1953, 58, 68-72.  
 197. LIEBERMAN, J. Reflections of an American librarian—libraries and television. *Librarian* 43 (4) 1954, 65-66.  
 198. STONE, W. Libraries on T.V. at Urbana and Albuquerque. 1. Free Channels. *Lib. J.* 79 (7) 1954, 592-597.  
 199. JOHNSON, D. W. Should we fear television? *Lib. Occ.* 18 (5) 1955, 93-94.  
 200. JOHNSON, D. W. Television set ownership and public library use. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 29 (7) 1955, 533-534.

*Publicity*

201. JAMES, HENRY, JR. Brooklyn has a big week. *Ibid.* 28 (7) 1954, 561-565.  
 202. BROWN, T. G. Picture yourself in a film. *Ibid.* 27 (1) 1952, 62-67.

*Censorship*

203. COLLISON, R. L. The fight for freedom. *Lib. Asst.* 45 (3) 1952, 35-38.  
 204. COLLISON, R. L. The fight continues. *Ibid.* 45 (9) 1952, 133-134.  
 205. SMITH, J. E. and DETCHON, E. B. It happened in Burbank. *A.L.A. Bull.* 46 (3) 1952, 85-87.  
 206. KAPP, L. J. Report from Boston. *Lib. J.* 77 (19) 1952, 1843-1847, 1887.  
 207. HALPENNY, M. Books on trial in Texas. *Ibid.* 78 (13) 1953, 1179-1184.  
 208. Freedom of book selection: proceedings of the second conference on intellectual freedom. Whittier, California, June 20-21, 1953. New York, A.L.A., 1954.

*Services*

209. MUNN, R. R. Labor and business—one service for both. *Lib. J.* 76 (13) 1951, 1087-1090.  
 210. BELLAMY, A. Small business is our business. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 26 (8) 1951, 626-627.  
 211. MCFEAN, M. P. Serving business. *Lib. J.* 77 (20) 1952, 1935-1938.  
 212. DELANEY, J. T. Auto library. *Ibid.* 79 (11) 1954, 1041-1042.  
 213. Libraries lead the way in civil defence. *A.L.A. Bull.* 45 (4) 1951, 127-130.

*Staff*

214. JONES, R. Recruiting for public libraries. *Illinois Libs.* 36 (5) 1954, 183-186.  
 215. MUNN, R. The librarian. *Lib. Trends* 3 (1) 1954, 6-12.  
 216. TIMMERMAN, H. B. Position classification and pay plans. *Ibid.* 3 (1) 1954, 67-79.

*Organization*

217. PETERSON, H. N. Management improvement program pays dividends. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 29 (9) 1955, 699-707.  
 218. ST. JOHN, F. R. Management improvement in libraries. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (2) 1953, 174-177.  
 219. GOLDFOR, H. Scientific management in public libraries. *Lib. Trends* 2 (3) 1954, 368-389.  
 220. WIEBLER, J. L. Selected references on work simplification. *News Notes of Calif. Libs.* 48 (2) 1953, 334-336.  
 221. GOLDFOR, H. ed. Current trends in public libraries. *Lib. Trends* 1 (4) 1953.  
 222. MCFADDEN, M. Objectives and functions of public libraries. *Ibid.* 1 (4) 1953, 429-436.

## FOREIGN

*Germany*

223. MEWES, B. Die Entwicklung der Volksbüchereien seit 1949. [The development of public libraries since 1949.] *Kulturarbeit* 5 (9) 1953, 176-178.  
 224. KAATZ, K. Zur Frage eines einheitlichen Büchereiwesens. [The problem of a uniform library system.] *B. u. Bild.* 3 (2) 1951, 81-88.  
 225. KRIEG, W. Die öffentliche Bücherei im auswärtigen Leihverkehr. [The public library and inter library lending.] *Mitteilungsblatt (Nordrhein-W.) N.F.* 5 (1) 1954, 4-9.  
 226. WIKENS, E. Die Bibliotheksregion: gemeinsame Aufgaben der Volksbüchereien und der wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken. [The library region: common tasks of public and academic libraries.] *Ibid. N.F.* 5 (2) 1955, 41-49.  
 227. SCHMITZ-VELTIN, DR. Rationalisierung des Städtischen Büchereiwesens. [Rationalization of urban library systems.] *Kulturarbeit* 5 (9) 1953, 161-163.

228. MEYSSSEN, W. Aufwand und Leistung des grosstädtischen Büchereiwesens. [Expenditure and services of the large municipal library systems.] *Ibid.* 6 (3) 1954, 59-60.
229. VOLPHER, L. and others. Freihanderfahrungen -freihandprobleme. [Open access, its practice and problems.] *B. u. Bild.* 3 (5) 1951, 424-429.
230. SEYDELHANN, G. Erfahrungen mit Theke und Freihand. [Experiences with open and closed access.] *Ibid.* 3 (3) 1951, 182-184.
231. LANDAHL, H. and others. Freihandbüchereien in Hamburg, 1950-52. [Open access libraries in Hamburg, 1950-52.] *Ibid.* 5 (1-2) 1953, 1-9.
232. PETERS, J. Die Entwicklung des Düsseldorf Büchereiwesens nach dem Kriege. [The development of the Düsseldorf library system since the war.] *Mitteilungsblatt (Nordrhein-W.)* 3 (2) 1953, 33-38.
233. WIRTEL, J. Autobücherei Augsburg. [Augsburg's mobile library.] *B. u. Bild.* 5 (12) 1953, 1265-1268.
234. HÜSER, F. Die kombinierte Volks- und Werksbücherei. [The combined popular and factory library.] *Kulturarbeit* 5 (7) 1953, 138-139.
235. BIEBER, H. Werkbücherei und Volksbücherei. [Public library and works library.] *B. u. Bild.* 4 (12) 1952, 1172-1176.
236. BALSER, F. Die zentrale Arbeitsstelle für das öffentliche Büchereiwesen. [The Central Bureau for Public Libraries.] *Ibid.* 4 (5-6) 1952, 650-652.
237. STEINSTRUP, B. De tyske folkebibliotekers indkøbcentral. [The German public libraries central purchasing office.] *Bogens Verden* 36 (7) 1954, 308-311.
238. LANGFELDT, J. Die geplante "American Memorial Library" ein modell zeitgemässer Büchereiarbeit. [The Projected American Memorial Library: a model of modern librarianship.] *B. u. B.* 3 (6) 1954, 437-455.
239. BREITENBACH, E. The American Memorial Library in Berlin: its aims and organization. *Libri* 4 (4) 1954, 281-292.
240. KRUTHE, R. Die Amerika-Gedenkbibliothek Berlin. [The American Memorial Library, Berlin.] *Kulturarbeit* 8 (2) 1956, 38-40.

*Eastern Germany*

241. JENSEN, E. A. Biblioteksvesenet i Ostyskland. [Library conditions in Eastern Germany.] *Bogens Verden* 36 (3) 1954, 128-131.
242. ZAHN, R. Die Aufgaben der Bibliotheken nach der II Parteikonferenz der S.E.D. [The second German Socialist Unity Party conference and the task of libraries.] *Bibliotekar'* 6 (10) 1952, 601-608.

*Greece*

243. HOPKINS, J. and VOUTERS, K. Public Libraries in Greece: an experiment. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (6) 1954, 215-216.

*Iceland*

244. DAL, E. Islands bibliotekslöy af 1955. [Iceland's library law of 1955.] *Bogens Verden* 38 (1) 1956, 1-4.

*Italy*

245. APOLONI, E. I Bibliotecari italiani a Congresso a Cagliari. [Italian librarians in conference at Cagliari.] *Parola* 36 (3-4) 1953, 82-84.
246. Il terzo Convegno dei bibliotecari degli Enti Locali e il nostro Entc. [The Third Congress of Librarians from local organizations and of the National Institution for Popular and School Libraries.] *Ibid.* 38 (5-6) 1955, 161-166.
247. DAINOTTI, V. C. Biblioteche Popolari e Rete Nazionale di Lettura. [Popular libraries and a national reading network.] *Ibid.* 37 (3-4) 1954, 73-76.
248. STENDARDO, G. Il Centro mobile di lettura. [The mobile reading centre.] *Ibid.* 36 (5-6) 1953, 164-6.

*Netherlands*

249. KOSMANN, F. Lectorvoorziening en bibliotheekwet. [Provision of reading material and library law.] *Bibliotheekleven* 40 (2) 1955, 33-37.
250. VAN DER KROGT, A. M. Die boekenschakel van Maastricht leeszaal. [The "book chain" of the Maastricht Public Library.] *Ibid.* 38 (5) 1953, 105-111.

*Scandinavia*

251. ANDER, O. F. The public libraries of Scandinavia. *Illinois Libs.* 35 (5) 1953, 191-206.
252. MCCOLVIN, L. R. Scandinavian visit. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (12) 1954, 393-399.

## Denmark

253. MCCOLVIN, L. R. Public libraries in Denmark. *Ibid.* 55 (4) 1953, 103-109.  
 254. HANSEN, R. L. The new Danish law relating to public libraries. *Libri* 1 (3) 1951, 264-266.

## Sweden

255. HJELMQVIST, B. Fifty years' state aid: public libraries in Sweden. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1954, 93-100.  
 256. HJELMQVIST, B. Biblioteksåret, 1950-51. [Public libraries in 1950-51.] *Bibliotekshbladet* 36 (7) 1951, 338-345.  
 257. MÖHLENBROCK, S. Rationalisering genom arbetsundersökning. [Rationalization through work measurement.] *Ibid.* 38 (10) 1953, 490-500.

## Norway

258. KILDAL, A. Library legislation in Norway. *Libri* 1 (3) 1951, 261-262.  
 259. KILDAL, A. Folke- og skoleboksamlingene har fremgang. [Progress in public and school libraries.] *Bok og Bib.* 19 (5) 1952, 281-292.  
 260. KILDAL, A. Forsatt fremgang for folke- og skoleboksamlinger. [Progress in public and school libraries.] *Ibid.* 21 (5) 1954, 197-212.  
 261. Folkeboksamlingenes Ekspedisjon blir Andelslag. [The Public Library Book Centre (Oslo, Norway) becomes a co-operative society.] *Ibid.* 18 (4) 1951, 149-150.

## Finland

262. KANNILA, H. Library conditions in Finland. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 36 (1) 1954, 12-14.  
 263. Kirjalainat kaupungeissa ja kaupaloissa. [Loans in towns and boroughs.] *Kirjastoletti* 47 (2) 1954, 38-40.  
 264. QVIST, M. Jokainen kirjastonhoitaja voi olla tutkija. [Every librarian a research worker.] *Ibid.* 46 (9) 1953, 202-205.  
 265. HIRN, S. Sivukirjastojen toiminnan tehostamista. [On intensifying the work of a branch library.] *Ibid.* 45 (9) 1952, 202-205.

## Spain

266. FERNANDEZ, R. DEL V. La estadística al servicio de las bibliotecas españolas. [Statistics in the service of Spanish libraries.] *Dir. Gen. Bol.* 4 (32) 1955, 12-17.

## Switzerland

267. MULLER, A. A. Die Zentralbibliothek Luzern. [Lucerne Central Library.] *Nach. der VOB* 25 (1) 1952, 8-17.  
 268. New library at Lucerne. *Building Digest* 12 (9) 1952, 295.

## Union of Socialist Soviet Republics

269. Library organisation in the Soviet Union. *Unesco Bull.* 8 (5-6) 1954, 53-55.  
 270. DUDLEY, E. Libraries in the U.S.S.R. 1953 (Unpublished essay accepted by the Library Association).  
 271. KOITCHINA, A. The organisation of the readers' service in the biggest libraries. *Bibliotekar' (U.S.S.R.)* (9) 1954, 13-20.  
 272. KIEWENSKI, M. The National Lenin Library of the U.S.S.R. *Bibliotekar' 7* (10) 1953, 708-715.  
 273. GOLUBEVA, O. 140 years of the Saltykov-Shchedrin government public library in Leningrad. *Bibliotekar' (U.S.S.R.)* (3) 1954, 23-31.  
 274. KAGAN, A. The governmental district KPSS library of Kiev. *Ibid.* (3) 1955, 31-36.  
 275. SHILOVA, K. and PETZ, G. From the experience of work in a department of foreign literature. *Ibid.* (6) 1954, 38-41.  
 276. KIBRIK, R. Methods of analysing readers' tastes. *Ibid.* (12) 1951, 25-29.

## Chapter 12

# PUBLIC LIBRARY COMMERCIAL AND TECHNICAL DEPARTMENTS

By K. J. RIDDER, A.L.A., *Librarian, Technical Library, Birmingham Public Libraries*

### INTRODUCTION

PROGRESS in the period under review has been gradual rather than spectacular. Certainly it has not been without its highlights: the outstanding achievements at Liverpool; the publication of J. P. Lamb's *Commercial and technical libraries*; the opening of new, and the reorganization of existing, commercial and technical libraries; and the development of local schemes of co-operation, usually on the Sheffield pattern. The public library's responsibilities to commerce and industry have been more widely accepted, though efforts to discharge them are yet far from impressive.

More precise ideas of the requirements of a public library service for industry and the role of the public library in the national scheme of library provision for industry are emerging. In Great Britain the Department of Scientific and Industrial Research has taken a keen interest in the development of the public library's services for commerce and industry and the rapidly developing Government departmental libraries are giving these services ready support.

The belief that the public library must take more active steps to bring its resources continually to the notice of commerce and industry has gained ground, and various methods of doing so have been suggested and tried. Future development may lead in the direction of a complete research service, as understood and provided (though in different fashion) by the John Crerar Library, Chicago, and by three State Public Libraries in Australia.

In the past the development of public commercial and technical libraries has been hindered by the lack of published information on their principles and practice. This disadvantage has been partly overcome by the publication of J. P. Lamb's *Commercial and technical libraries* (1). In his book Lamb studies their history, general principles, planning and furnishing, staffing, stock including books, patents and trade marks, organization and administration, external activities and possibilities for future development, and provides an authoritative manual where formerly only a few fugitive papers existed. The brief chapter on principles sums up admirably considerations influencing the setting up of a commercial and technical library in a large public library system. On planning and furnishing the designer of Sheffield's Central Library inevitably commands attention. The author stresses the importance of experience and personal qualities in staff, while not minimizing the value of specialized knowledge and a university degree. The chapter on bookstock

offers a number of guiding principles and describes some types of publication met with, but the treatment of so broad a subject is necessarily brief. Administrative methods—the compiling of records, basic routine, indexing procedure, etc.—are usefully described, and the techniques of publicity for these departments—book lists and bibliographies, displays, local contacts and interchange schemes—are analysed by one of their most successful practitioners. In the final chapter, which forms a fitting conclusion to an outstanding book, the future role of commercial and, more especially, technical libraries is studied.

“To present the desired information in the shortest possible time”—Richard Haxby thus describes the aim of the commercial and technical library. He devoted his section of *The reference librarian* (2) to a study of “the mechanics of librarianship”—cuttings files, indexes of trade marks and of local trades and societies, adaptation of the classification system, and other devices and techniques—by means of which these libraries achieve this end. Though based on long experience and enlivened by many acute comments, this survey includes methods of doubtful value and omits reference to such modern developments as photocopying or microfilm.

Agnes O. Hanson reviews (8) briefly the resources and facilities of the major public commercial and technical libraries in Great Britain; K. J. Rider outlines their functions in a general survey (4) of library services for industry. M. C. Pottinger comments (5) favourably on the provision of technical literature by public libraries in Scotland. Lucille Jackson makes only passing reference to public libraries in *Technical libraries: their organization and management* (6), though much of the material in this useful American book on technical libraries in industry is equally applicable to public technical libraries. Samuel Rothstein traces the development of the services for commerce and industry provided by public libraries in the first half of the present century in a survey (7) of reference services in United States libraries; a work of importance not only as a critical appraisal but also for its excellent collection of references.

## LIBRARY SERVICE FOR INDUSTRY

Service for industry, the main function of public technical and commercial libraries, is the aspect of their work which has received most attention during our period. Wartime and post-war advances in technology showed the need for a fuller service to industry, though before 1951 the urgency of the need for improvement had scarcely been expressed. In this year, however, the Library Association in a session at its Annual Conference (8) devoted to Library Service to Industry, and the Government in a report (9) on the provision of technical information services in Great Britain showed their concern at the inadequacy of such provision for industry. L. R. McColvin (10) considers that the public library should become the normal source of information for the enquirer from industry. Smaller public libraries should encourage demand for their services by providing a representative selection of more general technical material and as comprehensive a collection as possible of books and periodicals dealing with local industries. The Government report notes that “taking the country as a whole, industrial organizations make very little direct use of public libraries.” It considers that they should be encouraged to improve their services on technical matters and their holdings of technical literature, that assistance in book selection

might be given to them and that in the more important industrial centres technically trained staff might be acquired.

It is generally agreed that the first problem to be solved is to persuade industry to use the smaller public library. McColvin's view that this can only be effected by greater provision is echoed by Rider (4), who suggests that in smaller towns public libraries should provide basic material, leaving specialized material to be bought by individual firms. D. J. Urquhart (11) cites the lack of publicity for inter-loan services as well as the paucity of provision of technical material as reasons why few persons in industry use public libraries for technical literature. Public libraries should, he suggests, devote more attention to the needs of industry and should persuade firms, particularly small firms, to become corporate borrowers, encouraging them to understand the need for, and use of, technical literature.

During the period under review, public libraries have been encouraged by various means to make greater provision for industry. The Department of Scientific and Industrial Research has issued leaflets and questionnaires and has arranged exhibitions at the Library Association Conference and in towns throughout Great Britain. Dr. D. J. Urquhart, of the Intelligence Division of DSIR, has visited many libraries and spoken at many meetings of librarians. It must be admitted that response to these pressures has not been striking. Stocks of technical and commercial literature have improved, new technical and commercial departments have been opened; but the *scale* of provision, in relation to the needs of industry, has not radically changed. For this failure each of the parties concerned, the State, the profession and industry, must share responsibility. The lead given to public libraries by the State has been unnecessarily tentative and hesitant, as Lamb (1) and others have pointed out. The Department of Scientific and Industrial Research, charged with responsibility for research into technical information services, has done little beyond giving general encouragement. No real guidance has been given to public libraries on the selection of technical and commercial literature, as L. L. Ardern comments (12), though *Aslib Booklist* is of great value in this field. This is a matter to which the Library Association should direct its attention.

The question of cost is another factor which has restricted the development of commercial and technical libraries. The provision of adequate services in these two departments is costly and, except in a few places, public libraries have been unwilling or unable to incur additional expenditure on a scale commensurate with the need. That State grants should be provided towards the development of public commercial and technical libraries in view of its obvious desirability in the national interest has been advocated on numerous occasions. K. J. Rider (13) has proposed an alternative—that industry itself should provide financial support for local commercial and technical libraries, and expresses the view that in no other way could money so effectively be spent on improving the flow of information to industry. This principle has since been adopted by Liverpool Public Libraries (14) with the launching of its "Intensive Industrial Liaison Service," whereby firms subscribe 100 guineas a year to the library in return for additional services.

The requirements of a public technical library service for industry are enumerated by a special librarian, B. Agard Evans (15). These, he suggests, should include a wide range of scientific and technical periodicals; a union list

of periodicals in the area; pamphlets, especially standards, patents and Government publications; indexes and abstracts; knowledge of and willingness to use special sources of information; photocopying facilities; a local subject index; and staff with scientific qualifications.

The key position occupied by the public libraries as a local centre for information services for industry is emphasized <sup>(4)</sup> <sup>(20)</sup>. Their position in relation to local industrial organizations and to the national libraries and specialized sources of information enables them to act as natural links between these two groups of organizations, and it is now realized that the surest way to assist the dissemination of commercial and technical information is to work in close contact with each. Thus, the organization of local schemes of co-operation is now recognized as one of the most important functions of the public commercial and technical library, whilst equally important is a system by means of which enquiries can quickly be transmitted to likely sources of information farther afield, once local resources have been exhausted.

It has been suggested <sup>(1)</sup> <sup>(16)</sup> that the existing machinery for inter-library loans, modified and speeded up, could be used for dealing with technical enquiries. Those originating with small public libraries would be passed to regional reference libraries for solution or for onward transmission to the most appropriate national organization or specialized source of information. R. D. Rates <sup>(16)</sup>, describing the work of the Commercial and Technical Library Service (CICRIS) covering West London, advocates a closely integrated network of regional information centres based on public libraries. Schemes are needed for more rapid exchange of information between existing sources and the bringing together of sources of information in a co-operative effort to avoid overlapping and duplication.

### NEW LIBRARIES

Discussing the formation of a new city commercial and technical library, R. E. Grimshaw <sup>(17)</sup> underlines the importance of appointing staff with specialized knowledge and the ability to co-operate, of providing abstracts and indexes, of co-operative information and loan services and of publicity, including regional broadcasting.

Accounts of new libraries at Kingston upon Hull, Liverpool, Newcastle upon Tyne and Nottingham have appeared. The Kingston upon Hull Commercial and Technical Library, described by Jean Binns <sup>(18)</sup>, has a stock of 19,000 books, 370 periodicals, including abstracts and indexes, 350 directories, patents and trade catalogues. The subject coverage is wide, and comprehensive collections are maintained only in such subjects of local importance as paint, oils and fats, timber and marine engineering. Information and lending services are provided for local firms.

Plans for the development of technical libraries in Liverpool are outlined by G. Chandler <sup>(19)</sup>. The Technical Library, opened in October 1952, is temporarily housed in part of the Picton Reference Library. It provides open access to 30,000 volumes and many patents. Facilities include a lending service restricted to advanced workers; a postal loans service to corporate bodies; an enquiry service; and the publication of a monthly *Documents bulletin*, listing in UDC order important additions and details of the contents of periodicals.

Cards used in compiling the *Bulletin* are cumulated to form a permanent information index. A permanent Technical Library to seat 350 readers and technical library facilities in the Speke Branch Library are planned. D. Ball<sup>(20)</sup> describes in greater detail the facilities available in the library, including the method of compiling the *Documents bulletin*. More recently an interesting survey<sup>(21)</sup> of occupations of users of the Technical Library and an account<sup>(14)</sup> of the scheme of co-operation with local industry known as the LADSIRLAC (Liverpool and District Scientific and Industrial Research Library Advisory Council) Industrial Liaison Service have appeared. As already mentioned, this scheme has the unusual feature of providing a more intensive service to firms which subscribe 100 guineas annually to the library.

The Commercial and Technical Library at Newcastle upon Tyne<sup>(22)</sup> is in a room forty-four feet by twenty-seven feet, with seating for twenty-four readers, who have direct access to books and unbound periodicals. Trade catalogues are kept in vertical files and the staff maintain indexes of information. At Nottingham<sup>(23)</sup> the Commercial Library, opened in 1951, includes 200 commercial and technical periodicals, directories and patents. A Commercial and Technical Lending and Reference Library has been opened at Burton-on-Trent<sup>(24)</sup>.

#### ESTABLISHED LIBRARIES: PROGRESS AND DEVELOPMENT

The Library of Commerce and Technology at Leeds, described by E. Hargreaves<sup>(25)</sup>, devotes special attention to textiles, engineering and commercial subjects. Four hundred current periodicals are taken, and there are large collections of directories, manufacturers' catalogues, British and foreign (including German) patents, and Government publications. Many enquiries are received and great use is made of co-operation with other libraries. The Library has since been reorganized as a combined lending and reference Library of Commerce, Science and Technology, which opened in new quarters in April 1955 with a stock of 55,000 volumes<sup>(26)</sup>.

To keep up to date with new developments, firms, especially small firms without information officers, need an active information service readily available, writes James Hammond<sup>(27)</sup>. For their benefit he describes the many services which Manchester Technical and Commercial Libraries provide. The Technical Library's special facilities include indexes and abstracts, a patents guide, standards and specifications, information indexes and a photocopying service. The library contains over 88,000 volumes<sup>(28)</sup>, 5,000,000 patents, 650 technical periodicals and 10,000 trade catalogues. It co-operates with local and national special libraries and makes direct loans to local firms. The Commercial Library contains over 800 directories, codes, maps and atlases. Over 500 periodicals are available and a clippings file and a collection of trade marks are maintained. In a survey conducted by Manchester Joint Research Council<sup>(29)</sup>, fifty-eight out of 225 firms report that regular visits are made to Manchester Central Library not only to use the books and periodicals but also to consult the staff about suitable reading on any particular problem. The Library installed a Telex teleprinter in June 1955.

J. Roland Smith<sup>(30)</sup>, describing the facilities at Sheffield, refers to the

diversity of demand experienced by a public technical library, which makes it difficult to provide the subject specialization and individual methods of service possible in the special library. In Sheffield ferrous metallurgy is covered intensively and a balanced stock is maintained in other subjects. Members of the Interchange Organization receive special privileges, and in the handling of technical enquiries there is considerable mutual assistance between the Science and Technology Library and local special libraries.

Although not rate-supported public libraries, the outstanding work of the Patent Office Library and the Science Museum Library should not be forgotten. The former, notable for its unrivalled resources as a public technical reference library, recently extended its facilities for public access to its shelves. Through its Lending and Supplementary Loans Scheme and its Photocopying Service, the latter has become the country's main supplier of loans and photocopies of scientific literature. Since 1950 the Advisory Council for Scientific Policy has repeatedly advocated that the Patent Office Library and the Science Museum Library should be developed to become, respectively, the National Reference Library and the National Lending Library for Science and Technology. The first step towards the fulfilment of this plan was taken in 1956, when it was announced that the Department of Scientific and Industrial Research is to be responsible for planning and operating the National Lending Library for Science and Technology.

### COUNTY TECHNICAL LIBRARY SERVICE

H. Thompson describes<sup>(31)</sup> the methods used in providing a technical library service in Lancashire County Library. Small collections of new technical books, subject lists and lists of new books are provided at branches, the main collection being at headquarters. This includes many reference books and bibliographies, abstracts and indexes, but for periodicals reliance is placed mainly on inter-library loans. Multiple copies of many books are bought, and the whole stock, even standard reference works, is available for loan wherever required in the area. All branch staffs are trained to take and pass on enquiries; in dealing with these, the help of outside sources is enlisted when necessary.

### LOCAL CO-OPERATION

The oldest and best-known local scheme of co-operation is the Sheffield Interchange Organization, an arrangement whereby member libraries agree to make their resources available for loan to one another, the city Science and Commerce Library maintaining a union list of periodicals. The Organization is described by J. P. Lamb<sup>(32)</sup>, and a report of its annual meeting appears each year in the *L.A. Record*. In 1954-55 2,650 volumes were lent between forty members. A scheme for the Interloan of Technical Publications was inaugurated at Kingston upon Hull<sup>(33)</sup> in April 1953; twenty-three firms and institutions had joined by the end of the first year. A scheme for the interloan of scientific and technical periodicals in Birmingham<sup>(34)</sup> and district was launched in 1953. A union list of periodicals maintained in Birmingham Technical Library contains over 1,500 titles.

In West London a co-operative scheme of a different kind was set up in

1951. CICRIS<sup>(35)</sup>, the Commercial and Technical Library Service (West London) is an organization of ten public libraries and technical college libraries and a number of industrial and special libraries which have agreed to co-operate in providing a commercial and technical information service for the area, with Acton Central Library as its headquarters. Each public library maintains a general collection of technical literature and has agreed to specialize in one or more subject fields and to make its books and periodicals available to the others. An enquiry which cannot be answered by the library receiving it is quickly forwarded to the appropriate specializing library for investigation. A union list of over 2,100 technical periodicals taken in the co-operating libraries, with locations, has been published and kept up to date at headquarters; whilst other union lists, maintained for the service by other member libraries, include special reference books, dictionaries, trade directories, indexes and abstracts. A similar scheme for North London is described by A. W. McClellan<sup>(36)</sup>.

At Liverpool<sup>(37)</sup> the LADSIRLAC Industrial Liaison Service is a co-operative scheme although drawing mainly on the services of the city Technical Library (already described), to which many of the local industrial concerns belong. The Luton<sup>(37)</sup> and District Technical Information Service was formed in 1953. The list of *Technical periodicals available in the Luton area*<sup>(38)</sup> compiled by Luton Public Library includes 365 periodicals taken in seventeen libraries.

### OVERSEAS DEVELOPMENTS

**AUSTRALIA.** A Research Service is provided by the Public Libraries of New South Wales, Victoria and South Australia<sup>(39)</sup>. Through its Research Service the Public Library of South Australia undertakes literature searches and compiles bibliographies on any subject, and offers to get any item not held, either as a loan, microcopy or photocopy; it arranges for translations of foreign articles. The Library maintains a world-wide collection of trade catalogues and an index of Australian representatives of overseas firms. Every new manufacturing firm registered in the State receives details of the Library and Research Service, and lists of new scientific and technical books added, all of which may be borrowed, are sent to readers requesting them. The Public Library acts as a point of contact between the community and the resources of special and public libraries, Government departments and research institutions, including several outside Australia, and co-operates closely with these organizations; much reciprocal help is received from commerce and industry.

**CANADA.** The Business and Technical Section of Toronto Public Library<sup>(40)</sup>, established in 1947, is a unique department in Canada, with an open shelf room displaying 5,000 volumes and 300 current periodicals. To provide a service of most use to businessmen and technicians, detailed analytical cataloguing of books and the indexing of relevant Canadian periodicals are undertaken. Files of current data and collections of Government publications, trade catalogues and source material on Canadian business are maintained.

**FRANCE.** Of the twenty public libraries in Paris, only the Bibliothèque Municipale d'Art et d'Industrie has a collection of scientific and technical works of any size, writes Leon Carnovsky<sup>(41)</sup>, in a review of public libraries in the

city. Established in 1886, its purpose is to complete the technical education of workers, to improve their tastes and "to make possible the co-operation of manufacturers, tradesmen and artists through documentation and appropriate instruction." The library has some 40,000 volumes, 250,000 plates, models and designs and subscribes to seventy-five periodicals. There is a printed catalogue as well as a supplementary catalogue on cards. The library is mainly used by skilled technical workers, technical students and engineers.

SWEDEN. The Technical Department at Malmö Public Library<sup>(42)</sup> is a combined reference and lending technical library and also acts as a business information bureau. The library subscribes to 250 periodicals, some of which are available for home reading; it is supported by some local technical firms.

UNITED STATES. The John Crerar Library, Chicago<sup>(43)</sup>, a public though privately endowed institution, contains 750,000 volumes and receives 10,000 current serials. The main department is devoted to science and technology. The library is extensively used by readers. A Research Information Service was established in 1947 with the object of undertaking research for enquirers on a cost basis. A research librarian and assistants, each an expert in his own field, conduct researches into the library's resources on behalf of organizations under contract. More than 300 projects have been carried out, including the preparation of 7,500 abstracts for publication in *Nuclear Science Abstracts*. Regular projects are undertaken on behalf of various organizations. The report<sup>(44)</sup> of the Research Information Service expresses the view that an extensive collection of scientific publications is essential to top-grade library research service, and that several centres of library research are needed in the United States. Library research by correspondence is possible, but is not a complete substitute for the personal exchange of ideas between scientific and library research workers.

## COMMERCIAL LIBRARIES

Although many of the libraries already described are both commercial and technical libraries and many of the publications referred to deal with both types of library, the prominence given to the work of technical libraries during this period, especially in this country, is reflected in the literature already surveyed. In the United States public business libraries (as they are called) enjoy a reputation for service far exceeding that of commercial libraries elsewhere and receive a corresponding degree of attention in professional literature. Papers dealing solely with commercial libraries are sufficiently numerous to justify a section devoted to the work of these libraries.

A. H. Dilley<sup>(45)</sup>, putting forward the businessman's point of view, describes the type of information and publication needed in a public commercial library. Its influence might be widened by co-opting businessmen on to the library committee, by opening branches in works and by making contacts with persons in local business concerns. K. A. Mallaber<sup>(46)</sup> points out that Government departments, especially the Board of Trade, issue a great deal of information of value to businessmen. However, most of this never reaches the numerous small firms which are remote from Government offices and for whom

public libraries should provide a more efficient service. Public commercial libraries should concentrate on becoming efficient information bureaux on current business affairs, by providing annuals, trade directories and directories of foreign business countries including telephone directories, British and foreign newspapers and periodicals, trade catalogues, etc. Information files and indexes to trade marks should be maintained. The staff should have some knowledge of foreign languages and be aware of outside sources of information. An efficient service would result in greater demand and appreciation.

The Commercial Library and Library of Patents, Glasgow<sup>(47)</sup>, with Stirling's Library, has been rehoused in a new library in the Royal Exchange Building, which was opened in April 1954. The new Commercial Library seats sixty-four readers and contains 6,000 volumes, numerous maps and atlases, and 2,000 trade catalogues. Two hundred and fifty periodicals are taken. There is a subject index to trade catalogues and a manufacturers' and agents' index. The Library of Patents contains 4,000,000 patent specifications in 30,000 volumes.

Elsewhere, the commercial libraries provided by Liverpool, Birmingham, Bristol and Southampton and by the Westminster, Guildhall, Holborn and Southwark Libraries in London have maintained and expanded their services.

UNITED STATES. The development of business libraries in the United States owes much to the work and influence of John Cotton Dana, Sarah Ball, Linda Morley and Marian C. Manley. In an historical survey<sup>(48)</sup> of business libraries Miss Manley pays tribute to some of these leading figures; her own work is recorded in an account<sup>(49)</sup> of the golden jubilee of Newark's Business Library in 1954, and the work of the Library in an outstanding example<sup>(50)</sup> of library publicity. During this period business needs have developed and the dependence of business on public libraries has greatly increased, writes Miss Manley<sup>(51)</sup>. Business libraries have extended their services with the issue of book lists and pamphlets, and co-operation between public and special business libraries has grown. Edward H. Fenner, in a review<sup>(52)</sup> of the services of business libraries in the United States, compares the methods, stock and clientele of separate business branches with those of business sections of main libraries. Some libraries receive grants from business associations, but funds limit book selection, especially in the provision of directories. Dorothy Ware<sup>(53)</sup> describes the work of a public commercial library and discusses sources of directory information and statistics and methods of exploiting them. Mary P. McLean<sup>(54)</sup> describes publicity methods for a public business library, mentioning personal contacts, the circularizing of new firms, shop-window exhibits, the issue of bulletins. In Newark these methods have resulted in the receipt of grants from trade organizations to improve the library's bookstock in appropriate subjects.

*Business information: how to find and use it*<sup>(55)</sup>, by Marian C. Manley, is a first-rate guide to the organizations and publications that are valuable as sources of business information. In a chapter devoted to the work of public business libraries, the public library is described as the centre of a web of information sources which serves as the community's information contact point with library resources, through inter-library loans, State library agencies and the Library of Congress. Business library service is highly developed in Newark, Cleveland, Boston, Chicago and Indianapolis, but most public

libraries have some material and are ready to help. Use of the library by business may depend on rapidity and the accessibility of its service, but business must make its needs clearer to get an improved service. When libraries are organized for use, the user will find his own information without help. The book contains extensive bibliographies on particular subjects.

The Grosvenor Library, Buffalo, New York, was opened as a business library in September 1952. Elizabeth Dorsey records<sup>(56)</sup> the work of collecting the material, the arrangement, publicity by leaflet and lectures, and use of the library in the first fifteen months of operation. At Philadelphia a new glass-fronted Mercantile Branch<sup>(57)</sup>, opened in December 1953 in the heart of the business area, combines the functions of a business library and a general lending library.

### TECHNICAL COLLEGE LIBRARIES AND PUBLIC TECHNICAL LIBRARY SERVICES

Just before the close of our period D. J. Urquhart<sup>(58)</sup> put forward the proposal that the future public technical library service in this country should be based on technical college libraries. The present public technical library service is inadequate and public libraries are, he claims, unlikely to secure either suitable staff or financial support sufficient to develop an adequate service. By contrast technical college libraries could, he suggests, be planned for public service, could recruit scientific staff and provide a technical enquiry service.

While it is most desirable that the resources of technical college libraries should be used to improve the flow of information to industry, it is doubtful whether the best results would be obtained by entrusting the responsibility for providing a public technical library service to them. To provide a service of the required standard the entire resources of a library need to be geared to that purpose—an impossibility for a technical college library with its different function. Where well-organized public reference libraries exist, there is usually (as in CICRIS) close liaison between the public library and the technical college library, often within the framework of a local scheme of co-operation. Improvement in the resources of each library and the development of such co-operation, if necessary on a more formal basis, appear to be the most profitable methods of improving the library service for industry in such cases. Where public libraries are not equipped to provide a satisfactory service, technical colleges might assume responsibility for a public technical library service with the support of the public library, possibly by means of an arrangement similar to that in being in Hertfordshire, where a county technical library service, based on Hatfield Technical College, has been inaugurated. But unfortunately in many technical colleges adequate library services do not exist.

### CONCLUSION

The future is likely to see greater emphasis on the provision of periodicals and of borrowing facilities for industry. Public libraries already realize the need for wider publicity and more varied extension activities to secure greater use of their resources, and new methods will doubtless be tried to make industry, and in particular the small firm, aware of their facilities. The development of

local schemes of co-operation is likely to continue, and the linking together of such schemes by inter-regional systems would go far to bring about a more uniform standard of service throughout the country and to ensure a more rapid and expert loans and enquiry service in remoter areas. Far greater attention is due to be paid to the improvement of commercial libraries both in public libraries and in industry itself; it is evident that improvement in information services is as essential for commerce as for industry to the nation's well-being. As for library techniques, the adoption of more mechanical and electronic devices appears inevitable, if bibliographical control over the increasing variety of forms of record is to be maintained.

## REFERENCES

7. LAMB, J. P. Commercial and technical libraries. Allen & Unwin and L.A., 1955. pp. 375.
2. HAXBY, R. Municipal commercial and technical libraries. (*In: Stewart, J. D., ed. The reference librarian in university, municipal and specialised libraries.*) Grafton, 1951, 85-155.
3. HANSON, AGNES O. *Spec. Libs.* 46 (1) 1955, 29-38.
4. RIDER, K. J. *Engineer* 195 (3064) 1953, 252-254.
5. POTTINGER, M. C. *Aslib. Proc.* 5 (3) 1953, 155-162.
6. JACKSON, LUCILLE. Technical libraries: their organization and management. New York, S.L.A., 1951. pp. viii, 202.
7. ROTHSTEIN, S. The development of reference services through academic traditions, public library practice and special librarianship. (*ACRL Monographs, No. 14.*) Chicago, Assoc. of College and Reference Libraries, 1955. pp. ix, 124.

*Library Service for Industry*

8. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1951, 84-97.
9. Panel on Technical Information Services of the Committee on Industrial Productivity. Report on technical information services. *J. of Doc.* 7 (June 1951), 92-112.
10. MCCOLVIN, L. R. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1951, 92-96.
11. URQUHART, D. J. Public libraries and industry. DSIR, 1953. pp. 12. Also in *Manch. Rev.* 6 (Autumn 1953), 468-472 (comment, p. 466).
12. ARDFERN, L. L. *Librarian* 42 (11) 1953, 209-214.
13. RIDER, K. J. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (11) 1951, 380-381.
14. LIVERPOOL PUBLIC LIBRARIES. LADSIRLAC industrial liaison service. [1956.] pp. 7.
15. EVANS, B. AGARD. *Aslib. Proc.* 6 (3) 1954, 133-139.
16. RATES, R. D. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (1) 1953, 8-9.

*New Libraries*

17. GRIMSIAW, R. E. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1953, 27-31.
18. BINKS, JEAN. *Aslib. Proc.* 5 (1) 1953, 9-15.
19. CHANDLER, G. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (12) 1954, 480-481.
20. BELL, D. *Aslib. Proc.* 7 (2) 1955, 101-107.
21. CHANDLER, G. *Ibid.* 7 (4) 1955, 259-268.
22. HINTON, E. AUSTIN. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (2) 1952, 52-53.
23. NOTTINGHAM PUBLIC LIBRARIES. Annual report 1951-52: 1953-54.
24. BURTON-ON-TRENT PUBLIC LIBRARY. Annual report 1954-55.

*Established Libraries: Progress and Development*

25. HARGREAVES, E. *Aslib. Proc.* 3 (2) 1951, 123-130.
26. Leeds Public Libraries. Annual report 1955-56.
27. HAMMOND, J. *Manch. Rev.* 6 (Winter 1952), 347-52.
28. MANCHESTER PUBLIC LIBRARIES. Annual report 1954-55; 1955-56.
29. MANCHESTER JOINT RESEARCH COUNCIL. Industry and science: . . . a survey of firms in the Greater Manchester area . . . 1950-1953. Manchester Univ. P., 1954. pp. viii, 188.
30. SMITH, J. ROLAND. *Aslib. Proc.* 4 (3) 1952, 139-145.

*County Technical Library Service*

31. THOMPSON, H. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 57-61.

*Local Co-operation*

32. LAMB, J. P. *Aslib Proc.* 2 (1) 1950, 41-48; *Manch. Gdn.* Dec. 23, 1952; *Serial Slants* 6 (1) 1955, 6-14.  
 33. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (8) 1954, 301.  
 34. BIRMINGHAM PUBLIC LIBRARIES. Annual report 1953-54; 1954-55; 1955-56.  
 35. CICRIS. Information for industry. [Acton, Public Library, n.d.]  
 36. McCLELLAN, A. W. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Papers* 1951, 13-18.  
 37. LUTON PUBLIC LIBRARY. Annual report 1952-53; 1953-54; 1955-56.  
 38. LUTON PUBLIC LIBRARY. Technical periodicals available in the Luton area (*Tech. Bull. No.* 52), 1955.

*Overseas Developments*

39. BRIDSON, H. C. *Aust. Lib. J.* 3 (2) 1954, 46-49.  
 40. WATT, D. A. *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 39 (3) 1955, 195-198.  
 41. CARNOVSKY, L. *Lib. Q.* 21 (3) 1952, 194-200.  
 42. ROMQVIST, INGRID. *Bogens Verden*, 34 (October 1952), 305-313. (L.S.A., 2390.)  
 43. COLLISON, R. L. *Lib. World* 53 (621) 1952, 455-456.  
 44. JOHN CRERAR LIBRARY. Dissemination of information for scientific research and development with special reference to the work of Research Information Service. Chicago, 1954, pp. 28-37.

*Commercial Libraries*

45. DILLEY, A. H. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1952, 106-109.  
 46. MALLABER, K. A. *Ibid.* 1952, 109-117.  
 47. PATERSON, A. B. and KERNOHAN, J. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (8) 1954, 297-300.  
 48. MANLEY, MARIAN C. *Lib. J.* 79 (20) 1954, 2133-2138.  
 49. *Ibid.* 2138-2140.  
 50. NEWARK PUBLIC LIBRARY. A half-century of power for business, 1904-1954.  
 51. MANLEY, MARIAN C. *Lib. J.* 79 (10) 1954, 893-899.  
 52. FENNER, E. H. *Spec. Libs.* 44 (6) 1953, 222-227.  
 53. WARE, DOROTHY. *Ibid.* 43 (1) 1952, 24-26, 35.  
 54. McLEAN, MARY P. *Lib. J.* 77 (20) 1952, 1935-1938.  
 55. MANLEY, MARIAN C. Business information: how to find and use it. New York, Harper, 1955. pp. xvi, 265.  
 56. DORSEY, ELIZABETH. *Lib. J.* 79 (10) 1954, 900-903.  
 57. REICHMANN, D. A. *Ibid.* 79 (1) 1954, 45-46.

*Technical College Libraries and Public Technical Library Services*

58. URQUHART, D. J. *Aslib Proc.* 8 (1) 1956, 23-37.

## Chapter 13

# COUNTY AND RURAL LIBRARIES

By H. D. BUDGE, F.L.A., *County Librarian of Warwickshire*

THE five years with which these paragraphs are concerned commence the fourth decade of British county libraries as compared with the second century of many municipal libraries. In other parts of the world, a very few countries have rural library systems older than our own, but in many others these years have seen the birth of rural libraries. It is also true that in many countries, as in South America, much of India, China, and even parts of Australia, the task of providing for their rural areas has not even begun.

Descriptions of a number of experiments now in progress are omitted, and it is probable that many have not reached the writer. As in other walks of life, there is sometimes a tendency to withhold information until an experiment in library service has been proved a success.

### GREAT BRITAIN

Information about development in Great Britain has generally been easily available, and information has come from other papers, conferences, meetings, discussions, annual reports, County Library Notes in the *Record*, and a sifting of travellers' tales, as well as the sources noted.

The main trends of developments in the home countries might be summarized as:

- (i) Extension of mobile library services.
- (ii) Provision of additional specialized services, such as technical libraries, music and drama collections, and gramophone record collections, and of specialist officers.
- (iii) Continuing stress on provision of branch libraries both in new buildings and in adapted premises to replace inadequate branches or facilities on the village-centre basis.
- (iv) Improvement or commencement of school library services.
- (v) Some extensions of the regional principle of administration.
- (vi) Widening the range and improving the layout of library publications.

**SERVICE STATISTICS.** Throughout the period 1951-55 the County Treasurer of Buckinghamshire has continued to issue an annual return giving general statistics of county libraries in England and Wales, including expenditure, income, issues, bookstock and summary of service points. The main totals and averages show that, from 1951 to 1955, the total population served has risen from 14,989,788 to 15,447,435 in England, and from 1,368,350 to 1,381,123 in

Wales. In England, total bookstock and issues have risen from 13,695,747 and 83,369,269 to 17,739,804 and 118,930,895 respectively. The corresponding figures for Wales are 1,097,137 and 4,362,016 to 1,843,876 and 7,329,136. Gross expenditure in England rose from £2,144,475 to £3,415,837 a year, and in Wales from £139,423 to £243,884. In terms of issues per head of population, the averages for England and Wales have risen from 5·6 and 3·2 to 7·7 and 5·3 respectively; an increase of 2·1 per head in both countries. This return has changed in form during the period, but is still too brief a summary of statistics to give a true picture. Regrettably, too, its accuracy is frequently open to question. As a general guide, the return has been of use, though in comparing the results knowledge of the county systems concerned will often provide a reasonable explanation for apparent disparity.

No such figures are available for Scotland and Northern Ireland. In County Library Notes in the *Record*, brief details of estimated expenditure for each county in the four countries were given each year.

The County Libraries Section of the Library Association continued their series of statistical reports by the issue in 1952 of a *Statistical and policy survey of the County Libraries of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, 1951*. This report, edited by the present writer, was of somewhat wider scope than those previously prepared, in that it gave information on existing and proposed policy on a wide range of topics and functions of the county library service, as well as details of statistics, both of finance and of organization. Financial figures were given for the year 1950-51, with the figures for the last of the war years, 1945-46, for comparison. The estimates for the year 1951-52 were also given.

It is, of course, quite impossible to summarize the information which appeared in this report. It showed, however, great and very rapid development in the five post-war years. Again it demonstrated the continuing disparity in the various counties, and the differences between the highest and the lowest in expenditure and in effectiveness are so wide that, to anyone unacquainted with county libraries in these countries, it would be incomprehensible that such differences continue to exist.

**DEVELOPMENTS IN SERVICES.** The provision of mobile libraries has extended rapidly, and only a few counties have now decided against them. Other counties, having approved the system, are finding that financial stringency is delaying its implementation.

Derbyshire (eight mobile libraries) was the first county to complete the replacement of the smaller type of village centre by mobile services throughout the county, and this was achieved in 1953. Since that date, Nottinghamshire (five), Herefordshire (four) and Warwickshire (eight) have also completed similar reorganization. By the end of 1955, West Riding with twenty mobile branch and travelling libraries in operation, Lancashire twelve, Durham eleven, Staffordshire nine, had the greatest number of vehicles in use. Forty-three counties in England and Wales had 141 mobile libraries in use, and only fifteen counties were not using them at all.

In Middlesex it was decided that a series of large trailer-type libraries would be obtained to deal with temporary needs, by using each vehicle in a number of places until decisions regarding future branches could be put into effect. A similar vehicle is in use in the West Riding. Staffordshire has in use

smaller versions of the trailer in their three caravan libraries, each of which serves three villages for two days each. For these the prime mover is a Land Rover.

In the Lancashire Annual Report, 1951-52, it is suggested that in a large county library system the future must see the provision of new specialist services to meet the growth of more selective needs, and that ten (of which the Technical and the Music and Drama Libraries are two) will probably be required. As is said, results will not be reflected in issues, but only in this way can the library be of the fullest value to the community.

Throughout the quinquennium there has been a steady development of these specialist services, to which the national emphasis on technology in the latter part of the period has given impetus. Lancashire's Technical Library formed the basis of a paper given by the Technical Librarian at the 1955 L.A. Conference<sup>(1)</sup>. It was pointed out that the technical library reflected local needs in relation to industry and commerce. The agricultural collections of some of the more rural counties such as Herefordshire and Devon, which have now become of very great importance, are technical libraries in this respect. In Durham this has been combined with the library of the County's Agricultural Institute. Another important joint arrangement is the integration of the libraries of the technical colleges in Hertfordshire with the County Library. The Technical Library at Hatfield forms the focal library of the system with its librarian as Technical Librarian for the county, while the libraries and their officers at the colleges at Watford and Letchworth are linked with it. The County Library also acts as headquarters for the Hertfordshire Special Library Group of twenty Government and special libraries. At Heanor, Derbyshire has decided to combine the Technical College Library with a new Regional Library.

Several counties have made special features of music and drama collections. In the West Riding, the music collection has continued to grow in size and in use, and important collections have been accumulated in Nottinghamshire, Staffordshire and Hertfordshire. The first three have published catalogues of their collections in this period. Drama collections have become a feature of many county libraries. In Wales the provision of sets of plays in Welsh has been stressed in the supply of books in that language. In the North-Western Regional Library System a special scheme has been organized by which Lancashire and Cheshire have assumed responsibility for the requirements for sets of plays for the whole of the N.W.R.L.S. This is operated on an annual subscription basis for participating libraries.

In the promotion of school library services, the link with the county education committee has often acted favourably, and throughout the period steady improvements have been made. The various activities include short teacher-librarian training courses (in several counties), the selection of a specimen book library (Lancashire and others), assistance in the organization, classification and cataloguing of libraries within schools (especially in Derbyshire), and the commencement of a school library service (e.g., Essex). In Northern Ireland, following the report of a Departmental Committee, school libraries were put on a new footing. The methods of assessment of education committee grants varies throughout the country and a working formula was suggested in County Library Notes in the *Record* by B. W. Wray in September 1955.

ORGANIZATION. One county in England to put into effect complete decentralization between 1950 and 1955 was Warwickshire. The principle upon which the service was regionalized was that one mobile library was provided in each region and that one vehicle could serve on an intensive basis by fortnightly stops about 12,000 people in communities below 800 to 1,000 population in rural areas. These factors, therefore, largely dictated the formation of areas, as any number of sub-branches could be established within a region. In reorganizing a county already regionalized, Derbyshire has made adjustments demanded by the same principle. Devon has also established a number of regions. Several other counties have decentralized parts of the service in organizing mobile services.

In Northern Ireland rapid progress in reorganization has been made in Antrim with considerable increases in expenditure and in results. In 1952 Antrim began the first mobile library service to be operated in Ireland. A booklet on *Reorganization and six years after, 1947-1953*, described the methods of delegation in Sutrery. It records the circumstances which led to local committees being set up, and gives details of how the system now operates.

Teams of O. & M. consultants have probed the organization of a number of libraries, and a summary of such a team's visit to Derbyshire is given in the triennial (1953-56) report. It gives general approval to the existing organization, but criticizes mainly factors caused by the inadequate headquarters premises. Centralization of main processes of book selection is considered economical, but what may lead to over-sectionalization of headquarters is not favoured. It recommends rebinding by direct labour (the report states that it is difficult to get and retain the necessary craftsmen). The division of staff in professional and clerical is favoured.

In this country it is rare, apart from possible fires, for county libraries to be involved in any sort of disaster, but the word can well be used in referring to the East Coast floods of February 1, 1953. The counties affected were Lindsey and Holland, Essex and Kent. In Lindsey and Holland the Mablethorpe branch library lost 70 per cent of its bookstock and in the Sutton-on-Sea branch only 400 books were saved. Losses were severe at voluntary centres. Essex lost over 2,000 books through the floods at Harwich, Jaywick and Canvey Island. Kent suffered losses in the Sheppey libraries, mainly through flooded homes in Sheerness and Queensborough.

TRANSFER OF POWERS. The major rescissions were by Kent and Hampshire County Councils in respect of Gillingham and Aldershot, both on March 31, 1952. In the case of Gillingham, by the agreement signed in October 1934 between the County Council and the Borough of Gillingham, the right was "reserved by the Corporation to apply for autonomy at any time it is so desired. . . ." Aldershot's application for its own powers came at the conclusion of a long series of delays in the provision of a service by the County Council. In the final stages the County Council's efforts were frustrated by the refusal of loan sanction. Aldershot, however, soon provided premises to begin their own service when the responsibility became their own.

Other changes, in addition to the relinquishments noted under "Urban Libraries," are the surrender of powers by Ballycastle to Antrim and the amalgamation of Kirkwall with Orkney. Bersham Parish Council, having

decided not to relinquish their powers to Denbighshire, were forced to do so by a resolution passed by the villagers at a general meeting in 1955.

The sole enquiry concerning library services was limited to Scotland, the report of which was published in 1951. It dealt with public library services as a whole and was subjected to a great deal of criticism. The later Public Libraries (Scotland) Act, 1955 had little effect on county libraries, but gave power to other authorities to rescind the adoption of the Acts if they wished to join the county authority.

**ROUTINE METHODS.** In the development of procedures pertaining to county library services, a number of experiments have been made. W. B. Paton in "Economy and efficiency" (2) reviewed various changes in methods in Lanarkshire. These included abandoning accession records, provision of shelf records for centres in place of typed lists, and stock grouping to avoid checking for repetition of books in centre selections. B. W. Wray, speaking on "The control of bookstocks in the county library" (3), discussed the problem in relation to a regionalized county, referring to the Nottinghamshire system of the supply by a bookseller of consignments of new books with lists, which are considered by branch librarians, in relation to their own branch needs, at fortnightly conferences. Details of the application of a system of partially decentralized book supply are given in "Book supply in the Surrey County Library" (4). In this system, which followed the reorganization already noted, some 67 per cent of the book fund is spent directly on branch stock.

The Westminster token charging system evoked wide professional interest, mingled with many misgivings. One of the first counties to adopt the system was East Suffolk at the Felixstowe branch. Though no details of its use there have been given, its success must be assumed since it was later extended to the Stowmarket branch. A similar system has been put into use in Orkney, and adaptations of the system in several other counties.

**EXTENSION WORK AND PUBLICITY.** Methods of publicizing the service have in general followed similar patterns to those which have been used in the past. Emphasis in many counties has been on book weeks, both adult and children's, book displays, talks, local librarians' conferences, official openings, as well as publications. In rural areas the larger number of mobile libraries now in use has given publicity to an extent never before seen. In the North Riding, a county in which mobile libraries are not yet used, an exhibition van was used as a mobile display on market days in various places, and good results are reported (5).

There has been a steady increase in the printing of a variety of publications by county libraries, and many of these have reached a high standard of layout and production. A large number of counties print attractive annual reports, and most of them are effectively illustrated. The reports of Lancashire, West Riding, Nottinghamshire and Derbyshire may be instanced, but many others are in the same category.

Lists of additions to stock have been published regularly, both printed and duplicated. The design of the lists of *New books* from Lancashire, Kent, Nottinghamshire and Derbyshire (since discontinued) has been outstanding. Other publications of note have been drama catalogues (Kent, Nottinghamshire

and Warwickshire); lists of books for young readers (Devon's *Signposts*, Nottinghamshire); short subject lists (Derbyshire) and staff magazines (Middlesex *Counterblast*, Lanarkshire's *Pharos*, Durham's *The Torch* and Lancashire's *Bulletin*).

Among more ambitious publications are the music catalogues of West Riding, Staffordshire and Nottinghamshire. Both Middlesex and Nottinghamshire have produced general guides as introductions to the county library service. Durham's *Manual for new members of the County Library staff* contains a history of the library, an outline of its organization and details of facilities for study and training.

Local history has received much attention and among many lists must be noted Denbighshire's second edition in 1951 of Part 2 of the *Bibliography of the County*. The whole work is in three parts. This is a most valuable guide to local studies in the county. The Isle of Ely's *Hereward's Isle*, published in 1953, and Nottinghamshire's *Local History Collection* are also good examples of such guides.

There are also a few major publications which cannot be grouped. Staffordshire's *Scientific and technical catalogue, 1954*, has 206 pages containing 2,500 books with both subject and author indexes. In 1953 Middlesex produced a seventy-page book *Facts about fiction*, a guide to the books of 400 modern novelists, aimed at the young assistant as well as the general reader.

The County Libraries Section of the Library Association has continued to publish the new series of *Readers' guides* and twenty-one have appeared in the five years. These are *Botany, Face of Ireland, Face of Wales, Face of England, Hanoverian Britain, Stagecraft and theatre, Fishing and angling, Religion, Business world, Choice of careers (1952), Gardening, The Cinema, Radio and television, Architecture, Rural life, Geography, Photography, Local history, Technique of drawing and painting, Electrical engineering, Automobile engineering, and Choice of careers (2nd ed., 1955)*. Several more guides were in preparation at the end of 1955.

Several of the Conference papers at County Libraries Section Sessions at L.A. Conferences have been mentioned in these notes. In 1951, on the theme "Looking forward," three speakers dealt with the needs of following years. Mrs. M. G. Brown dealt with the need of improved service to the reader in rural areas, in relating book purchase to knowledge of the reader's needs and of emphasizing provision for children. Miss G. Jones stressed the need of new legislation, studied the need for improved premises for branches and the development of reference and technical services. Mr. Glyn Davies dealt with recent statistics, sizes of authorities and the restriction of progress caused by the limitation of financing services solely from the rates.

In 1952 Miss F. E. Cook in "Lampadephoria" dealt with the progress of the County Libraries Section from its formation in 1927. Mr. B. Oliph Smith in 1955 dealt with "Books in action; the County Library and the community." In an attacking assessment, he named three obstacles to progress—lack of money restrictions on building and insufficient appreciation of the need. In his view, the last five years show in statistics of use, finance and staff that county libraries have reached at least equal footing with the older-established municipal systems. Mr. K. A. Stockham gave suggestions "Towards a building policy" in 1954 and dealt with siting, design and decoration of new branch libraries.

**SPECIAL SERVICES.** One county has established its own bindery—East Suffolk. The unsewn method of binding for fiction was adopted after trial, and all the county's rebinding is done internally. The bindery aims to cope with 10,000 books a year. In Durham only a small proportion of the library's rebinding is done in their bindery and the remainder of the work is done externally.

**LOCAL CO-OPERATIVE SCHEMES.** Co-operation between library authorities has continued to develop, and arrangements made have increased the value of public library services to readers. Details collected by the Library Association<sup>(6)</sup> show that seventy-nine county libraries in Great Britain and Northern Ireland allow use of their service by visitors and that only five of these call for any deposit or fee. A large number of local arrangements between county and municipal libraries have been reported, while between neighbouring counties there appears to be little or no restriction on inter-use of facilities, both static and mobile. In 1953 the County Councils Association made a recommendation to all its members that they should ask for no financial adjustment in the use of library services in boundary areas, as the free use of such facilities was considered to be of great importance.

H. Marshall's account of the Kendal-Westmorland scheme (?) shows the development of the joint scheme from the beginning of the century. In effect, if not in government, it is similar to the Cardiganshire Joint Scheme. It shows the many advantages of such a system, but points out that even the dual scheme in Westmorland is too small to be able to afford all the facilities that should be provided.

**STAFFING QUESTIONS.** Many counties have now introduced short training courses for recently recruited staff as well as for training in special techniques. An outline of the Lancashire scheme was given at the weekend school at Ormskirk. Another interesting experiment has been the system operated between the county and city libraries of Nottingham for the interchange of members of their staffs for weeks at a time to receive training in the other library's methods.

The organization of staff guilds or associations, frequently with the holding of short weekend conferences, sometimes jointly with a neighbouring county, has also been of benefit in promoting unity in a widely dispersed organization. Staff meetings are often difficult for county systems, but it has become normal practice in most counties to hold branch librarians' meetings, or meetings of specialist officers, such as children's librarians and mobile librarians, as in Nottinghamshire.

The County Libraries Section has held three weekend schools in this period. The first was at Ormskirk, Lancashire, in September 1951, when the subjects studied were the students' section, children's work, village centres, headquarters and branch relationship, and hospital libraries. The second school was held at Trent Park, Middlesex, in September 1953. The subjects dealt with were "Urban and Suburban" (the special administrative problems of Middlesex), mobile libraries (an examination of the Derbyshire methods), and archive material. In April 1955 the venue was Hereford, and subjects covered were school library services, publicizing the service, libraries in prisons and

Borstals, and libraries in factories. At all three schools visits were arranged to local libraries, municipal, county headquarters and branch, cathedral and special.

The Section Committee has also continued the Scandinavian exchange visits, and members of British county library staffs have visited Denmark, Norway and Sweden, and have received visitors from those countries. The duration of visits has normally been one month, and three or four visits each way have been arranged each year.

**SERVICE POINTS—STATIC AND MOBILE.** For a short period in 1953 and 1954 the restrictions on capital expenditure and the granting of permission to build were lifted. During this time a number of counties proceeded with branch library plans, and in 1955 a number of new branches were completed in Lancashire, Middlesex, Nottinghamshire, Derbyshire and other counties. Many other branches were being built and due for completion early in 1956, e.g., in Glamorgan, Lancashire, Cheshire and Nottinghamshire. In all cases this allowed considerable local reorganization of services.

In a time when loan sanction for the crection of new branch libraries was given only over a short period, it was not surprising that many county libraries, while continuing the adaptation of existing premises when obtainable, concentrated their attention on service to their rural areas. The results of experiments which many counties had made up to 1950 showed the greater effectiveness in the countryside of a larger collection of books when exploited by a full-time, often trained, librarian. The number of mobile libraries in use in 1951 in Great Britain and Northern Ireland was fifty-nine (operated by twenty-three counties) and by 1955 this total had increased to 141. The trend of closing village centres was already being shown in the Statistical Report of 1951, but the process has been greatly accelerated subsequently. Counties, in fact, have shown that a mobile library may replace not more than twenty-five village centres by some 250 stops by a mobile library.

Various new, temporary and adapted branches have been put into use in the five years. That for the new town of East Kilbride (Lanarkshire) is a temporary structure of 1,100 square feet. New permanent buildings have been provided in many counties, including Toton (Nottinghamshire), Orrell (Lancashire), Caerphilly (Glamorgan), Jarrow (Durham), Blantyre (Lanarkshire) Atherstone (Warwickshire), Harrow — three branches — and Bedfont (Middlesex), Frecheville and Chaddesden (Derbyshire), Stourport (Worcestershire). Very rapid developments of branch libraries in adapted premises have taken place in many counties, and mention should be made of Ayrshire, the West Riding and East Sussex.

The development of "New Towns" (8) under the Act of 1946 has been rapid, but the provision of adequate library facilities for the rapidly increasing population has been a prolonged struggle. Not unexpectedly, all fourteen new towns are situated in areas administered by county libraries. There has been no lack of plans, but priorities of finance and labour have lain elsewhere. As a consequence previous branch accommodation has been strained to the limits, or has often become badly sited for the new growth of the town. Where reasonably good accommodation could be provided, as at East Kilbride (Lanarkshire), excellent use was made of the facilities. As some of the new towns will have a population eventually of up to 80,000, many of the county systems

will have bigger towns under their control than they previously had. A central library and sub-branches will be necessary to provide for them. At Bracknell (Berkshire), Cwmbran (Monmouthshire) and Welwyn Garden City (Hertfordshire), the library will be linked with a college of further education, and in Peterlee (Durham) and Corby (Northamptonshire) will be linked with a technical college. At Crawley (West Sussex) the new town is being developed as nine neighbourhood units, and six libraries have so far been provided.

Realizing the need for a wider dissemination of information on transport, the County Libraries Section Committee prepared, with F. A. Sharr as editor, a report on *County library transport*, which was published in the Library Association Pamphlets Series in 1952. The pamphlet deals with transport already in operation, and the practical designing, building and operating of various types of vehicles for county libraries.

Recent improvements in lighting equipment have made fluorescent lighting from a vehicle's batteries possible in mobile libraries. This has been used in Lancashire<sup>(9)</sup> and in Warwickshire, and has been found to be entirely satisfactory. A rotary converter is introduced to give a single-phase supply at 110 volts 50 cycles.

## DEVELOPMENTS IN OTHER PARTS OF THE WORLD

It is not the purpose in this section to describe the basic structure of the rural services, unless the organization has been established during the period 1951-55. The basic set-up, as far as it is possible to get a coherent description, is given in L. R. McColvin's *The chance to read: public libraries in the world today*, Phoenix House, 1956. McColvin says that he found it impossible to obtain any really useful information about many countries and that he omits "the Iron Curtain countries" (except Russia), South and Central America, Spain, China, Japan, the Philippines, Indonesia, large parts of Africa, Austria, the Balkans, the Middle East and other important areas. For the same reason, many of these countries are omitted from the notes which follow, and where they are included, the information is often of a sketchy nature.

These paragraphs are also supported by P. H. Sewell's article in the *Record* for March 1955, "Public library extension in the Commonwealth." Concerning co-operative arrangements to get greater resources, D. M. Wylie<sup>(10)</sup> is quoted:

As long as a library was regarded as a place to get a book to read, there might be something to be said for each little community endeavouring to establish its own; but, if libraries are thought of as a series of collections of books and other material in the major fields of human knowledge, and librarianship as concerned with the acquisition, distribution and use of such collections, then it is obviously something which can only be provided economically in much larger units.

Then adds Sewell:

The problem then has been not only to create new public library services, but also to find the appropriate organization to supplement or replace the small local library. The answers include the state or provincial library service, and the regional library, federated or unified, state-aided or state-controlled.

In some instances it is possible that progress is being made, but in others no development has taken place. From Eire, writers have deplored the present position, in which it is impossible to develop due to the necessary finance being withheld<sup>(11)</sup>. In China<sup>(12)</sup>, references are made to peasant lending libraries in

the form of mobile libraries which tour rural areas in summer, teaching people to read, but no other details are given. In Indonesia and other islands it is known that our Australian and New Zealand colleagues are giving real assistance to planning developments. In the Middle East, reports show that little has yet been done to provide rural services in Turkey and Iran<sup>(13)</sup>.

#### AFRICA

The various accounts of developments on the African continent show that the greatest progress has been made in the Gold Coast<sup>(14)</sup>. It is, of course, true that, at the beginning of the period, library services to the rural parts of the Gold Coast had scarcely been begun, but by five years of sustained effort an organization has been built up which gives coverage of the rural areas by facilities probably as good as any that exist in South Africa. The Gold Coast Government had passed an ordinance in 1950 to establish the Gold Coast Library Board. It was realized at an early stage that, in order to reach the whole of the territory, travelling libraries would be essential. These had to be specially built to meet the particular needs of roads, ferries and other features in the Gold Coast. The British type of vehicle with its low chassis and high sides was unsuitable, and a design based upon a high chassis, with outward-facing shelving covered by lift-up sides, and with storage space between, was used. These vehicles go out for periods of from four days to three weeks, and visit all parts once a quarter. Individuals are contacted as well as book-box collections being exchanged.

The decision to regionalize came to fruition in 1954, when the Board's first specially built library—except for children's libraries in Accra—was opened at Kumasi. This branch became responsible for all library services in Ashanti, and for distribution of book-box collections in the Northern Territories. The second regional library was opened at Sekondi in 1955, and other branches at Koforidua and Takoradi were added in the same year. The Accra Library was completed at the end of 1955 for the opening in January 1956.

A full-scale publicity drive in February 1953, which involved distribution of a booklet *An introduction to library services available*, full Press support, showing of a film, a series of radio talks, lectures and talks by prominent people to a wide variety of organizations, and the display of posters, gave great impetus to the extension programme.

In other parts of Africa, the Northern Provinces (13,000,000 population) of Nigeria<sup>(15)</sup> established a regional library service in 1952 to circulate books to eighty-four reading rooms from its central depot in Kaduna. The Central Government took over the scheme originated by the British Council and sends books to sixty-five reading rooms in the East and West Provinces (6,000,000 people each). In Uganda there has been a steady increase in the service of the East Africa Literature Bureau. This is mainly a postal service and parcels are sent post free. In Algeria<sup>(16)</sup> the National Library has extended its services by establishing twenty small libraries in the Southern Oases. In addition the library now assists other independent libraries such as in youth movement community centres.

In South Africa, Transvaal is reported<sup>(17)</sup> as having taken the lead in the provision of library services in rural areas. The Provincial Library has now built up a network of small libraries and depots covering the whole province of

over 110,000 square miles with a European population of 1,200,000. Twenty per cent membership, bookstock of two per head and issues of eight per head are reported.

In the Orange Free State and Natal the systems<sup>(18)</sup> <sup>(19)</sup> <sup>(20)</sup> (which began in 1952) are similar to that of Transvaal and coverage is nearing completion. Cape Province, pioneer of rural services, has not developed them. However, a new Library Ordinance<sup>(21)</sup> in 1955 for the establishment of a Provincial Library service is expected to commence a new era of rural development in Cape Province. Additional information on the Cape and Natal Provincial schemes appears under "Urban Libraries."

In Southern Rhodesia<sup>(22)</sup> the National Library works from, although it is not part of, Bulawayo Public Library. It supplies books of a more serious nature as laid down by the conditions of the Carnegie grant which assists it.

## AUSTRALIA

**WESTERN AUSTRALIA.** There can be no question that the greatest progress in any state in Australia in this period took place in Western Australia. According to the Executive Officer, later to become the State Librarian<sup>(23)</sup>, "Australia is about the same size as the U.S.A. and Western Australia comprises one-third of the continent." Some 650,000 people live in the state, of whom half live in Perth and its suburbs. The Library Board was established by the State Government in 1952, and its principal functions are laid down in the Library Board of Western Australia Act, 1951. In general, the scheme is a joint enterprise in which, after a local authority has established its library, the State Government will give it help to provide an efficient library service. At an early stage it was decided that state help should not be financial, but should be in kind, and that this should take the form of a well-chosen bookstock. Local authorities would be responsible for staffing and accommodation for their own libraries.

When Mr. F. A. Sharr took up his appointment in April 1953, the situation was like that of many of the first county libraries in Great Britain some thirty-five years ago—no office and no equipment. Headquarters premises were soon obtained, and staff appointed to the various sections. The Executive Officer was then able to visit a large number of authorities in this vast state in order to make a detailed scheme and to formulate the initial programme. In the year 1954-55, twelve local libraries were supplied with books (19,000 volumes) for the first time, and very quickly a long waiting list was formed of local authorities who wished to participate in the Board's services. Many of these proposed to establish libraries for the first time, and the Board's share of help was the supply of the whole initial bookstock. Without exception, the inauguration of the new services has met with unqualified success.

By the end of 1955 books had been sent to several more libraries, and by early in 1956 eighteen were being supplied and the total of books supplied by the State Library had exceeded 50,000 volumes. The development has clearly gathered such momentum that, with the essential resources of staff and stock available, progress will continue rapidly for many years to come. Plans are in hand for the provision of better headquarters accommodation in Perth, as well as for the bibliographical and reference specialization which has rapidly become vital to a library system which, in the space of less than three years, has become an essential part of living and scholarship in the state. The Acts Amendment

(Libraries) Act of 1955 amends the 1911 and 1951 Acts and creates a fully integrated state-wide service.

It will be of great interest to see how other Australian states react to Western Australia's lead.

**OTHER AUSTRALIAN STATES.** No actual development of rural libraries took place in South Australia, but a State Library Bill in November 1955 laid down the powers given to the state for the purpose. This proposed a system of grants on a £ for £ basis to existing libraries of various kinds; and the proposal gave rise to professional disappointment and criticism. The same power existed in the first Western Australia Act, though in effect it was used to enable the state to provide books. So far no such trend is noticeable in this state.

In Queensland, in spite of the publicity campaign by locomotive in 1951-52<sup>(24)</sup>, no progress has been made. This tour, lasting eight months and covering 6,500 miles, was by special train provided by the state with a book exhibit provided by the Library Board. It was designed to commemorate advances in library development, to show latest techniques and provide a pattern for future development. In 1955<sup>(25)</sup> the system remains one of continued subsidy of local subscription libraries.

In New South Wales and Victoria, rural services are assisted by £ for £ financial help by the state, and in both states regional systems by voluntary linking of councils and shires have led to developments<sup>(26)</sup> and to provision of bookmobiles.

#### BURMA, CEYLON, INDIA AND PAKISTAN

From 1951-53<sup>(27)</sup>, in a period of rapid development in Burma, the Mass Education Council has commenced village library services and put book vans into use. Much publicity has been given to the service and to creating a taste for reading. Reading rooms are being established.

In Ceylon<sup>(28)</sup>, rural provision commenced with the establishment of an experiment in Minneriya, as part of the Unesco-Government of Ceylon Fundamental Education Project. A central library was set up and a book-box system started in twenty-eight places. A large percentage of the people are literate and make good use of the service.

Much attention has been given to the requirements of rural areas in India by recent Unesco projects there. Bombay State<sup>(29)</sup> has established 6,000 village reference libraries, but no libraries for home reading are anticipated until resources of finance, allowing sufficient books, branches and bookmobiles to be obtained, are provided. It is estimated<sup>(30)</sup> that 85 per cent of the rural population (300,000,000) of India is illiterate. The problem is similar in Pakistan, but estimates of illiteracy place the figure rather lower.

#### CANADA

The fact that there are ten provinces, each of which has to pass legislation to allow local authorities to provide public libraries, is the cause of much variation in method in Canada<sup>(31)</sup>. An analysis of progress in the U.S.A. and Canada is given in G. K. Schenk's *County and regional library development*<sup>(32)</sup>.

The greater part of the progress in the provision of rural library services in Canada has taken place in 1951-55. The general principle in these mainly

sparsely-populated areas is the establishment of regional libraries to give units of sufficient resources to provide an adequate service. A regional library (in Ontario) is defined as "an association of a number of communities, rural and urban, who pool their resources to provide a public library service" (33). The success of experiments in British Columbia and in Ontario have been widely publicized, and regional arrangements are now legislated for in Saskatchewan (Library Act, 1953), Nova Scotia (1952), New Brunswick and probably now in Manitoba (33).

The Fraser Valley Regional Library, which is world famous, in British Columbia, serving a population of 116,000 in 1952 (36,000 in 1941) (34) opened its new headquarters in 1953, and continued to expand its facilities. The State Library Commission has developed a scheme in the North-Central area by an amendment to the Public Libraries Act to allow co-operation (35) between autonomous authorities. Here nine library boards with small funds have entered into an agreement to pool their resources under the Commission's direction. An advisory panel operates from the regional headquarters at Prince George, where books are purchased, processed, distributed and exchanged to the libraries, which receive annual grants from the Commission. These funds the local boards match from their own resources and continue to operate their own libraries. Due to the success of the scheme, plans are being made for similar ones in other parts.

Legislation now covers all the county library co-operatives in Ontario (36), which are financed jointly by local and state government funds. Local libraries are supplemented by exchange collections. The purpose of the "county library co-operative" in Ontario law is described as "to purchase and distribute books for circulation by its member organizations" (37). Here, as almost everywhere in the Commonwealth where progressive arrangements are being made, emphasis is on central buying of books.

The Maritime Provinces (38) have made very real progress. To this Peter Grossman's New Brunswick Library Survey, 1953 (39), was an important contribution. Regional organizations have been established and mobile libraries are in use. The Libraries Services Act (New Brunswick), 1954 (40), consolidates all provisions in force, and local authorities may now be responsible for administering regional libraries on a cost-sharing basis. Libraries become the responsibility of a director, and not of a commission under a Cabinet Minister. Similar developments are taking place in Nova Scotia and Newfoundland.

In Saskatchewan, Manitoba and Alberta there is awakening to the needs of dwellers in the wide open spaces, and plans to improve the elementary provision made in some areas are reported (41). At the end of the period some of those plans, based on strength through regionalization, were being put in practice.

#### CENTRAL AND WESTERN EUROPE

From Germany (42) information is given of service to the rural district of Rendsburg in Schleswig-Holstein, in which thirty-eight libraries had been set up in 1952, based on the town library. It would not appear to be a free service, and is still in an early stage of development.

In 1954 it was stated from Italy (43) that of 7,751 communes and 18,000 hamlets, less than 300 have municipal libraries, while other local small libraries have inadequate funds; 7,059 communes have less than 10,000 inhabitants. The

Minister responsible for schools and libraries has set up an organization for the provision of libraries.

In Spain<sup>(44)</sup> the purpose of the National Reading Service, which was brought into being by a decree of July 1952, is to bring books to the inhabitants of even the remotest parts of Spain by promoting the establishment of libraries in small towns and in the suburbs of large towns. The municipal libraries are supervised by Provincial Co-ordinating Centres for Libraries, which are responsible to their respective provincial councils. Co-ordinating centres have so far been established in thirty-two out of fifty provinces which must study local needs and propose the establishment of such libraries as are considered necessary, and the institution of bookmobiles or travelling libraries needed to bring books to all the people living in the province.

#### EASTERN EUROPE

Very scanty information is available about service in these parts. In Czechoslovakia<sup>(45)</sup> village exchange libraries and mobile libraries are now operated within the People's Library system, reaching all parts of the country. Press and radio publicity is given. In Hungary<sup>(46)</sup>, since 1952, the National Library Centre has assisted the work of thousands of small popular libraries in rural areas, and agricultural establishments and even isolated factories and institutions. Rapid development is reported<sup>(47)</sup> from Poland, and stress is laid on technical education and children's libraries. Village centres are served by a book-box system, and village clubs with reading rooms are provided. In 1954 there were 90,000 libraries with 62,000,000 books and 7,500,000 readers in Poland. In Latvia<sup>(48)</sup> in 1952 there were fifty-eight regional and 713 village libraries (1,500,000 books) as well as libraries in factories and most of the collective farms (500,000 books). Reference is made to "mobile [bicycle] libraries" in Latvia.

The main year of development in Serbia<sup>(49)</sup> was 1954, when a programme was embarked upon to improve very unsatisfactory rural provision. A library network in three categories is being formed—big-city libraries, lending libraries in smaller towns which are to assist in establishing rural libraries.

#### FINLAND

In Finland<sup>(50)</sup> 75 per cent of the people live in rural areas and steps are being taken to improve rural facilities. Even small localities have independent libraries, which receive grants from the State. The country is now divided into seven inspection areas, each with its own inspector. Local libraries are often in charge of part-time librarians and housed in schools. Much interest is being shown in improved service and premises.

#### MALAYA AND SINGAPORE

In Malaya<sup>(51)</sup> illiteracy complicates the problem of service, as well as the dual-language provision—Malay and Chinese. The USIS at Penang and the British Council at Kuala Lumpur have been active in sending boxes of books to towns and villages, as well as arranging postal services to distant subscribers. The British Council also sends books to schools. The Sir Henry Gurney Library at Malacca now sends out small collections to villages in the Settlement. In 1953-55 the Malayan Public Library Association, with funds provided by the

Asia Foundation, has provided libraries in eighty-two new villages. Each has 1,000 books, in Chinese and Malay, and the system operates from a central library in Kuala Lumpur, the Federal capital. The problem of illiteracy is less acute in the Crown Colony of Singapore, where steps are being taken to meet the great demand, especially from children.

#### NEW ZEALAND

The new trend in the well-established service to rural areas in New Zealand<sup>(52)</sup> is shown in part by the post-war change of title of the Country Library Service to National Library Service. Regional library services to provide units with improved financial resources, which would involve integrating small town and rural services, are proposed. Many of the counties<sup>(53)</sup> are too small to operate as separate units, and the divorce of urban and rural administration weakens the resources available. Co-operative book buying has been commenced in several areas and this is co-ordinated through the central office in Christchurch.

#### RUSSIA

The amount of information available in rural library service in the U.S.S.R. is insufficient to form any real judgment or to describe their methods. Mrs. Firth's account<sup>(54)</sup>, based on information given by the Society for Cultural Relations with the U.S.S.R. and the Russia Today Society, shows how little is known about the quality as against the quantity of library service in the Union. Reference is made to postal, book-box deliveries and to mobile libraries. These serve villages, workers' groups, clubs and camps. Technical books may be obtained by individuals, including "those who have raised their yield in their particular sphere." Mobile libraries have radio sets to broadcast the Moscow programmes and the staff are expected to give lectures, film shows and to read newspapers to the people. The mobile libraries go out for several days at a time; the maximum is given variously as up to twenty-two days in a month or circuits of eleven to twelve days. Village libraries and reading rooms<sup>(55)</sup> are said to be under official party direction and to act both as cultural centres for their locality and as a means of making more widely known Marxist-Leninist doctrine<sup>(56)</sup>. On the question of whether libraries are free, the brief summary of an article on a village librarian<sup>(57)</sup>, in referring to collecting subscriptions, may refer to library or to party subscriptions, for as well as being an enthusiastic librarian she is also secretary of the party organization. In another article<sup>(58)</sup> it is reported that all libraries are financed from State funds, and that mass (i.e., public) libraries exist in every region, district, town and village, as well as trade union libraries in factories and clubs and co-operative-movement libraries on collective farms. These are controlled by committees for cultural and educational institutions, and subject to general State planning. There are said to be 368,000 public libraries with 830,000,000 volumes, figures which in the mass regrettably tell us very little.

#### SCANDINAVIA

In Denmark<sup>(59)</sup>, Norway and Sweden, where, in general, the pattern of library service by integration of town and country services is praised—as well as their buildings—the period has been one of steady development and

consolidation on those lines rather than of new methods. Vehicles have come into use to a greater degree, but for the purpose of exchanging collections rather than direct service.

Library Act of 1950, for Denmark<sup>(60)</sup>, provides that, after 1960, parish libraries must be provided, at not less than the minimum standards laid down, on the demand of 10 per cent or more of the electors. This has assisted in rapid development from 1951 to 1955. Norway<sup>(61)</sup> has completed provision of its main fifteen county libraries, as planned by the State Library Office.

The weakness of Sweden's organization<sup>(62)</sup> was the multiplicity of small communes, and a great aid to progress was the local government reform of 1952, which reduced the number of rural communes from 2,400 to 904<sup>(63)</sup> by the merging of many small ones into larger units. State aid is given to only one library in each commune. With the assistance of the 1952 reform, coverage as foreseen by the 1930 Act was completed in 1953. There are twenty-five county or central librarians based on leading municipal libraries. They inspect and arrange assistance by lending collections of books and by bibliographical help.

#### UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

No account within the limits set by this book could do justice to recent developments in the U.S.A.<sup>(64)</sup> The progress is very uneven, for within the country each of the forty-eight states is responsible for the state law which promotes, or allows local authorities to provide, public libraries. In general terms the greatest progress has been made in the coastal states, both east and west. It is generally acknowledged that an outstanding system is the Los Angeles County Public Library in California<sup>(65)</sup>. This library has developed a very wide range of activities, including lectures, films, discussion groups, quizzes and broadcasting.

Reports show progress throughout the country with the trend always towards voluntary co-operation into larger, economic units and to the provision of bookmobiles for rural areas. In the Buffalo metropolitan area<sup>(66)</sup> twenty-seven widely scattered independent libraries have been made into one unit as Erie County Library. An amendment in 1953 to the 1947 Library Law in Indiana<sup>(67)</sup> allows established libraries to extend service on a county basis with provision for contracts and mergers within the county and those adjacent.

Where financial provision has been inadequate, and where only a permissive clause exists allowing less wealthy areas to co-operate by pooling their resources, librarians have often taken the initiative in bringing about better library services. The outstanding instance would appear to be in the state of Kentucky<sup>(68)</sup>, where, after intensive campaigning for books and bookmobiles, 600,000 books and the total requirement of eighty-four bookmobiles were given for the public library services. The whole fleet<sup>(69)</sup> of bookmobiles were paraded at the State Fair to culminate the campaign.

In Ohio<sup>(70)</sup> custom and law have combined to force independence on libraries, but a law does allow existing libraries to convert to county systems. None had done so up to 1955, and chief librarians have formed a group to assist co-operation in the state. Details are also given of development from 1950 to 1954 in Montgomery County Library<sup>(71)</sup>, with its bookmobiles and wide range of intensive services; of the cost of recent operation of Washington

State's eight bookmobiles (<sup>73</sup>), of the methods used in Montana (<sup>73</sup>) to stimulate use of books in rural areas, including annotated lists prepared by specialists, and publicity through Press and radio.

Rural areas in the U.S.A. have presented a double challenge to librarians; first because of the considerable extent of unserved territory, and second because of the many hundreds of very small library units. The ALA has for some years seen Federal aid as the answer to these problems and, after some twenty years of campaigning, it has achieved its objective. Therefore, although it comes just outside the period of our survey, reference must be made to the passing in June 1956 of the United States "Library Services Act (Public Law 597, Chapter 407) to promote the further development of public library services in rural areas." This authorized five annual Federal grants of \$7,500,000 in support of approved state plans for the further extension of public library services in rural areas. The Federal grants may not be applied to buildings, or to incorporated towns of over 10,000 inhabitants. There is every prospect, therefore, that the next five years will see great progress in the provision of more adequate library service to the vast rural areas in the States.

#### WEST INDIES

Progress in recent years in these islands has been largely due to the inspiration of British Council Librarians (<sup>74</sup>). British Council support, previously due to end in 1953, was extended, and steady development has continued (<sup>75</sup>). However, it is encouraging to see other agencies taking over responsibility and maintaining a worthy tradition. The Eastern Caribbean Regional Library Scheme (now the E.C.R.L. Board) has received temporary support from Colonial Development and Welfare Funds, but is now supported by the co-operating governments concerned, to give centralized services to the independent colonial government library authorities. The Jamaica Library Service is now largely the responsibility of the Government of Jamaica. The Trinidad Central Library has been entirely supported by the Trinidad Government since 1948. Rural services in the widely extended Eastern Caribbean Regional Library Scheme (<sup>76</sup>) are likely to be still further developed as static exchange centres, and not by mobile libraries, due to the physical features of the islands, coupled with vast distances and inadequate roads. Furthermore, according to Mr. Smeaton, "the average West Indian driver drives very fast and very carelessly, depending largely upon his own horn and the other fellow's brakes." The three mobile libraries in Trinidad, however, are giving a very well-used service, but static libraries are being established in the larger centres of population.

#### REFERENCES

##### *Great Britain*

1. THOMPSON, H. Technical library services in the County. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 57-61.
2. PATON, W. B. Economy and efficiency. *Ibid.* 1957, 42-49.
3. WRAY, B. W. The control of bookstocks in the county library. *Ibid.* 1953, 33-42.
4. STONE, R. T. Book supply in the Surrey County Library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 260-262.
5. NEWMAN, O. S. Market Day. *Ibid.* 53 (8) 1951, 261-262.
6. Interavailability of readers' tickets. *Ibid.* 53 (5) 1956, 180-181.
7. MARSHALL, H. Some notes on the Kendal-Westmorland Library scheme. *Ibid.* 53 (8) 1951, 250-255.

8. PAULIN, L. V. County Library service in New Towns. *County Lib. Sect. Newsletter*. November 1956.
9. BELL, M. Mobile libraries with fluorescent lighting. *Ostran Bull.* 28 (4) 1951, 121.

#### Other Countries

10. *N.Z. Libs.* 16 (3) 1953, 56.
11. FOLEY, D. Clare county library. *Ai Leabharlann* 12 (4) 1954, 131-138.
12. SASCARO, G. L'Activité des bibliothèques dans la République Populaire chinoise. *Rev. of Doc.* 12 (3) 1955, 88-90.
13. GAYER, M. V. Iranian Libraries. *Lib. J.* 78 (9) 1953, 772-776 and CARTER, E. J. Head of Unesco Libraries Division visits Turkey and Iran. *Unesco Bull.* 5 (7) 1951, 241-244.

#### Africa

14. EVANS, E. J. A. Development of Public Library services in the Gold Coast. *Lib. Assn. Pamp.* No. 14, 1955.
15. *Unesco Bull.* 6 (11-12) 1952, E.138.
16. *Ibid.* 8 (4) 1954, E.37-38.
17. KENNEDY, R. F. Public library services and education for librarianship in South Africa. *Ibid.* 9 (7) 1955.
18. SEWELL, P. H. Public library extension in the Commonwealth. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (3), 1955, 97-102.
19. FRIS, T. Provincial library service in Natal. *S. Afr. Libs.* 20 (1) 1952, 2-7.
20. FRIS, T. Qualitative services: new methods of stimulating reading in Natal. *Ibid.* 22 (4) 1955, 126-129.
21. Recent library developments at the Cape. *Ibid.* 22 (4) 1955, 105-106.
22. CUTLERTSON, M. B. Southern Rhodesia National Free Library service. *Ibid.* 20 (4) 1953, 103-108.

#### Australia

23. SHARR, F. A. Laying the foundations in Western Australia. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (9) 1954, 325-330 and Annual Reports of Library service of Western Australia 1953, 54, 55, 56.
24. HUISH, G. Libraries by locomotive. *Aust. Lib. J.* 1 (4) 1952, 88-89.
25. *Ibid.* 4 (4) 1955, 78.
26. *Ibid.* 4 (1) 1955, 36-39.

#### Burma, Ceylon, India and Pakistan

27. BA-WAN. Rural library service in Burma. *Unesco Bull.* 7 (5-6) 1953, 59-61.
28. A mobile library system in Ceylon villages. *Fund. Educ.* 5 (3) 1953, 146 and HATCH, D. S. Rural library system in Ceylon. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (1) 1956, 1-3.
29. WAKNIS, T. D. Libraries in Bombay State. *Granthalaya* 1 (12) 1955, 13-16.
30. MAKIN, J. Libraries in India. *Lib. Rev.* 108 (Winter 1953), 218-221.

#### Canada

31. Canada's Public Libraries. *Librarian* 41 (7) 1952, 137-139.
32. SCHENK, G. K. County and regional library development. New York, ALA, 1954. pp. vii, 263.
33. SEWELL, P. H. *Op. cit.*, 98.
34. LEY, R. New headquarters of Fraser Valley Regional Library. *Can. Lib. Assn. Bull.* 10 (5) 1954, 160-163.
35. MARISON, C. K. Library extension in British Columbia. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (2) 1956.
36. MCGRATH, J. M. The county library in Ontario. *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 40 (2) 1956, 90-92.
37. WILSON, L. R. Wentworth county library co-operative. *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 37 (1) 1953, 8.
38. *Can. Lib. Assn. Bull.* 10 (4) 1953, 118.
39. GROSSMAN, PETER. *Library service in New Brunswick; a report and recommendations.* New Brunswick, Department of Education, 1953.
40. *Can. Lib. Assn. Bull.* 11 (1) 1954, 18.
41. *Ibid.* 11 (4) 1955, 132-144.

#### Central and Western Europe

42. WILKENS, E. [The development of the rural library system illustrated by the example of a rural district in Schleswig-Holstein.] *Kulturarbeit* 5 (5) 1953, 98-100.
43. DAINOTTI, V. C. [Popular libraries and a national reading network.] *Parola* 37 (3-4) 1954, 73-76.
44. SINTES Y OBRADOR, F. Libraries in Spain. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (4) 1956, 73-75.

*Eastern Europe*

45. SDCOVA, S. The Czechoslovak library system. *Ibid.* 10 (7) 1956, 151-154.  
 46. *Ibid.* 10 (2) 1956.  
 47. REZNIKOV, A. [Library life in the Polish People's Republic.] *Bibliotekar'* (U.S.S.R.) (1) 1954, 36-40.  
 48. SELGIN, E. [Regional and village libraries of the Latvian Republic.] *Ibid.* (4) 1954, 12-17.  
 49. STEVIN-NOVAK, N. Public libraries in Serbia and the Serbian Library Centre. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (1) 1956, 4-5.

*Finland*

50. KANNILA, H. Library conditions in Finland. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (1) 1954, 12-16.

*Malaya and Singapore*

51. HARROD, L. M. Libraries in Malaya and Singapore. *Ibid.* 58 (9) 1956, 331-335.

*New Zealand*

52. WYLIE, D. M. Public libraries, 1954-64. *N.Z. Libs.* 17 (5) 1954, 105-115.  
 53. Co-operation between local authorities: report of the Public Library Service Committee. *Ibid.* 18 (4) 1955, 87-92.

*Russia*

54. FIRTH, J. County library system in the U.S.S.R. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (7) 1953, 216-218.  
 55. Library organization in the Soviet Union. *Unesco Bull.* 8 (5-6) 1954, 53-55.  
 56. [The position and tasks of village library work in the Soviet Union.] *Bibliotekar'* 5 (7) 1951, 383-384.  
 57. ZOLOTSEVSKAYE, A. [A progressive village librarian.] *Bibliotekar'* (U.S.S.R.) (2) 1954, 9-14.  
 58. SAXTORFF, W. [Libraries in the Soviet Union.] *Bogens Verden* 35 (4) 1953, 181-190.

*Scandinavia*

59. KIERREGAARD, P. [Decentralization in rural library operations.] *Biblioteksbladet* 37 (10) 1952, 477-481.  
 60. MCCOLVIN, L. R. Public libraries in Denmark. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (4) 1953, 103-109.  
 61. STABELL, K. [A county library in action.] *Bibliotek og Forskning Årbok* (4) 1955, 20-26.  
 62. HJELMQVIST, B. Fifty years state aid: public libraries in Sweden. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1954, 93-100.  
 63. BOWEN, E. M. E. Swedish library development since 1950. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (6) 1956, 216-219.

*U.S.A.*

64. ROSE, E. The public library in American life. New York, Columbia University Press, 1954. pp. xviii, 238.  
 65. COLLISON, R. L. W. A metropolitan county library. *Lib. World* 54 (636) 1953, 213-214.  
 66. MAHONEY, R. E. Federated libraries . . . *Lib. J.* 77 (1) 1952, 15-20.  
 67. Indiana Library Association & Indiana State Library, 1953.  
 68. BINGHAM, M. C. Kentucky bookmobiles. *Lib. J.* 78 (16) 1953, 1470-1473.  
 69. PORTER, F. J. Kentucky bookmobiles roll. *Ibid.* 80 (3) 1955, 255-261.  
 70. DINNAN, L. T. Co-operation and independence. *Ibid.* 80 (18) 1955, 2206-2207.  
 71. MORELAND, G. B. Formula for progress. *Ibid.* 79 (7) 1954, 581-586.  
 72. LITTLE, M. J. Mobile libraries. *Ibid.* 78 (3) 1953, 179-184.  
 73. HEATHCOTE, L. M. Montana's rural reading program. *Ibid.* 79 (9) 1954, 821-825.

*West Indies*

74. ADAM, SIR R. F. British Council Libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (1) 1955, 8-12.  
 75. EASTON, D. K. Public library services in the British territories of the Eastern Caribbean. *Unesco Bull.* 5 (12) 1951, 421-426.  
 76. SMEATON, J. Book vans or book centres. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (6) 1952, and Annual Reports of Eastern Caribbean Regional Library.

Section IV

Young People's Libraries

Downloaded from [www.dbraulibrary.org.in](http://www.dbraulibrary.org.in)

## Chapter 14

### SCHOOL LIBRARIES

By C. H. C. OSBORNE, M.A., *Editor, The School Librarian and School Library Review*

TWO trends in relation to school libraries, discerned in the survey for 1950<sup>(1)</sup>, have become clearer during the following five years without, however, culminating in a harvest ready to be gathered. These are the extension of school libraries to primary schools and the provision of courses of training for school librarians leading up to recognized standards of qualification.

The importance of primary school libraries has long been recognized<sup>(2)</sup>, and local education authorities are beginning to make grants for this purpose. Discussion has centred on the need for a separate library room and the potential value of classroom libraries<sup>(3)</sup>. Since it is utopian to hope that a separate room can be found in the foreseeable future for the 20,000 primary schools of England and Wales, and since the fullest use of books in primary schools may be expected in the classroom, opinion is coming round to the view that a library room is neither necessary nor the most suitable form of provision for children under eleven. A system of well-equipped classroom libraries fed from and supplemented by a central collection is now thought to be the ideal primary school library. "The argument between advocates of classroom libraries and those favouring central libraries seems to be waning. Efficient utilization of materials decrees the allocation to classrooms of those in daily use and the allocation to central depositories of those materials used irregularly."<sup>(4)</sup> The ways in which the library in the classroom can be made to serve an educational purpose have been illustrated by Mary Atkinson<sup>(5)</sup>, H. Philips and F. J. C. McInnes<sup>(6)</sup>, J. A. Cutforth<sup>(7)</sup> and E. Mellor<sup>(8)</sup>. Accounts of individual school libraries with very varied accommodation appeared in the *School Librarian* in 1952-53<sup>(9)</sup>.

Training courses and conferences on school librarianship have multiplied. The Ministry of Education's courses which restarted after the war at Westfield College, London, have since 1955 been held at different centres and more than once a year. New departures were a week's residential course at Loughborough College organized by the Leicestershire local education authority in conjunction with the School of Librarianship and H.M. Inspectors<sup>(10)</sup>, and the two-year part-time course initiated by the University of Birmingham Institute of Education in 1954<sup>(11)</sup>. The role of Institutes of Education in connection with school libraries has been described as forming "a unique link between the teaching profession, naturally jealous of its independence, and the library profession, which has its own vital contribution to make."<sup>(12)</sup> *A Memorandum on the training of secondary school librarians* for the consideration of organizers of

courses for experienced teachers<sup>(13)</sup>, drawn up by representatives of the Library Association and the School Library Association after consultation with H.M. Inspectors, makes suggestions for the content of such courses and for the allocation of time to the different topics in courses of varying length. The two associations have also set up a joint board of assessors for the award of a certificate in school librarianship; the first examination will be held in the summer of 1958<sup>(14)</sup>.

A number of surveys and reports have been published. The report of the Advisory Committee on Education in Scotland<sup>(15)</sup> is a full and imaginative statement of the case for school libraries. The Ministry of Education's pamphlet<sup>(16)</sup> in its text and illustrations gives the best picture of "what is being done in the schools that have already embodied the idea [of a school library] in some sort of practice"; throughout the emphasis is on "the problem of teaching the use and enjoyment of books." A well-documented symposium from the University of Illinois Library School<sup>(17)</sup> is devoted to the United States but contains a chapter on England and Wales by C. A. Stott. The Scottish Report was followed by a useful statistical analysis, with comments, of the replies to a questionnaire from 718 out of the 869 grant-aided secondary schools in Scotland and from twenty-three independent schools<sup>(18)</sup>; the results were rightly regarded as disturbing. In 1951 the Northern Ireland Library Advisory Council issued a short report<sup>(19)</sup>, and the Welsh Department of the Ministry of Education a pamphlet on library services and Welsh studies<sup>(20)</sup>. In England a pilot survey of secondary school libraries in three representative counties and three county boroughs was undertaken by the National Book League in collaboration with the Association of Education Committees and the School Library Association<sup>(21)</sup>. This revealed "very wide variation." Few schools had no libraries at all, but the libraries in many schools could not be regarded as adequate, and relatively few could be regarded as fully satisfactory. The report recommends that "the initial bookstock of a school library should be regarded as essential equipment to be provided within a period of not more than three years" and that education committees should make "a special grant (the amount to relate to the needs of individual schools) to those schools which already have libraries whose bookstocks are inadequate, so as to bring them up to the basic standards accepted for a new school." In addition, annual library grants should be sufficient to cover all needs. A further N.B.L. publication, *Books in your school*<sup>(22)</sup>, suggests an initial outlay of £1,500 for a grammar school, £1,000 for a secondary modern school and £750 for a primary school, and corresponding annual grants of £250, £150, "and perhaps £120 for a fairly large primary school."

Apart from the insufficient financial support that in many schools still prevents the development of adequate libraries, where libraries exist the most serious deficiency is the comparative failure to make the fullest educational use of the books. This is partly because school librarians tend to become bogged down in the routine duties of administering the library, partly because many of their colleagues have not learnt during their training to devise new methods of teaching that require the use of the library by their pupils, partly because the demands of games, school activities, homework and preparation for examinations leave the children with too little leisure for reading. As the authors of the Scottish report realized, the full use of the library implies nothing less

than "revolutionary changes in educational practice,"<sup>(23)</sup> and a revolutionary change, if it is to be lasting, necessarily takes time.

Another weakness, the lack of experience in book selection, is more quickly being overcome with the multiplication of specially-prepared book lists<sup>(24)</sup> and studies of children's literature<sup>(25)</sup> and, though here opportunities are fewer, with more facilities for teachers to see collections of books suitable for school libraries.

One new manual of school librarianship which gives exhaustive and practical help for librarians in secondary modern schools has appeared, and there are new editions of two of the older manuals<sup>(26)</sup> and three new S.L.A. Leaflets<sup>(27)</sup>.

"Up to the present time," writes Mr. Murison in 1955, "the liaison between public libraries and schools has been far too loose. As the result, neither schools nor libraries have derived the fullest benefits"<sup>(28)</sup>. One of the most remarkable features of the five years under survey is, however, the increased co-operation between public and school librarians and the virtual disappearance of the misunderstandings of each other's function which at first impeded a close working together. Since 1950 the joint standing committee of the Library Association, School Library Association and H.M. Inspectors has provided a common forum for discussion. An important area of co-operation was considered at the Llandudno Conference, where Mr. H. B. Lawson pleaded for earlier, more frequent and more effective methods of introducing children while at school to the public library<sup>(29)</sup>. Co-operation has also been discussed by the County Librarian for Perth and Kinross<sup>(30)</sup>.

Finally may be noted some miscellaneous items—the doubling of the membership and branches of the School Library Association; the incorporation from March 1954 of the *School Library Review* in the *School Librarian*; an S.L.A. memorandum on the planning and equipment of secondary school libraries<sup>(31)</sup>; an article on publishing for school libraries<sup>(32)</sup>; studies of reading ability which are relevant to the role of the school library<sup>(33)</sup>; and a comparison of the backward state of the provision of library books for children in Germany with conditions in Scandinavia and England<sup>(34)</sup>.

## REFERENCES

1. *Y.W.*, 17, 97-98, 101.

*Primary School Libraries*

2. e.g. WALKER, JAMES F. *Lib. Assn., Papers . . . at the Scarborough Conference, 1948*, 41-4. LONG, HARRIET G., *Rich the treasure: public library service to children*. Chicago, ALA, 1953. Chapter 8.
3. SCHOOL LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. *Suggestions for primary school libraries*. 1953, pp. 23. Contrast DANIEL, M. V. *The library in relation to education in the primary school*. *Sch. Lib.* 5 (6) 1951, 381-382.
4. AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF SCHOOL ADMINISTRATORS. *American school curriculum* (31st Year Book), Washington, D.C., 1953, 205. See also *Lib. Trends* 1 (3) 1953, 266-267, 302.
5. ATKINSON, MARY. *Junior school community*. Longmans, 1949, 63, 115-120.
6. PHILIPS, H. and MCINNIS, F. J. C. *Exploration in the junior school*. Univ. London Press, 1950.
7. CUTFORTH, J. A. *English in the primary school*. 2nd ed. Oxford, Blackwell, 1952. Chapters II, V.
8. MELLOP, E. *Libraries in infant schools*. *Sch. Lib.* 7 (5) 1955, 303-306.
9. *Ibid.* 6 (1) 1952, 31-33; 6 (2) 1952, 86-87; 6 (4) 1953, 248-250; 6 (5) 1953, 307-310.

*The Training of School Librarians*

10. MASON, STEWART C. The Leicestershire residential library course. *Sch. Ln.* 5 (6) 1951, 372-376.
11. SAUNDERS, W. L. Advanced training for school librarians: the Birmingham course. *Ibid.* 8 (1) 1956, 25-30.
12. SAUNDERS, W. L. and FREEMAN, C. B. The Libraries of institutes of education. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (7) 1953, 210.
13. *Ibid.* 57 (3) 1955, 110-112; also in *Sch. Ln.* 7 (4) 1955, 258-263.
14. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (7) 1956, 273-274; also in *Sch. Ln.* 8 (2) 1956, 97-101.

*Surveys and Reports*

15. SCOTTISH EDUCATION DEPARTMENT. Libraries, museums and art galleries: a Report of the Advisory Council on Education in Scotland. (Cmd. 8229.) Edinburgh, H.M.S.O., 1951. pp. 145. See also the review in *Sch. Ln.* 5 (5) 1951, 330-337.
16. MINISTRY OF EDUCATION. The school library. Pamphlet No. 21. H.M.S.O., 1952. pp. 32.
17. Current trends in school libraries, edited by Alice Lohrer. *Lib. Trends* 1 (3) 1953, 250-122.
18. SCHOOL LIBRARY ASSOCIATION IN SCOTLAND. A Report on secondary school libraries in Scotland in 1952. Edinburgh, S.L.A.S., 1953. pp. 16.
19. NORTHERN IRELAND LIBRARY ADVISORY COUNCIL. Report of School Libraries Committee. 1951. (Typescript.) pp. 19.
20. MINISTRY OF EDUCATION, WELSH DEPARTMENT. The library in Wales and Welsh studies. H.M.S.O., 1951. pp. 68.
21. NATIONAL BOOK LEAGUE. *Books*, November 1954. Reprinted in *Sch. Ln.* 7 (4) 1955, 256-257.
22. DENT, H. C. Books in your school. C.U.P. for National Book League, 1955. pp. 32.
23. SCOTTISH EDUCATION DEPARTMENT. *Op. cit.*, 33-35.

*Book Lists*

24. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. Books for young people. Group I, Under eleven. 2nd edition, 1955. pp. 103. Group II, Eleven to thirteen plus. Revised edition, 1954. pp. 127. Supplement to Group II, 1954. 1955. pp. 31.  
 NEW ZEALAND NATIONAL LIBRARY SERVICE. An annotated list of fiction for post-primary schools, compiled by the School Library Service. Wellington, N.Z., 1952. pp. 144. Supplement No. 1, 1954. (Typescript.) pp. 33. Non-fiction for primary schools, 1954. pp. 146, with typescript supplements.  
 PARROTT, PHYLIS. Books for children. National Book League, 1955. 26 pp.  
 SCHOOL LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. Citizenship, compiled by T. H. Simms. 1953. pp. 24. Farming and kindred subjects, compiled by A. Voysey. 1951. pp. 22. Medical books, compiled by F. W. Jones, in *Sch. Ln.* 6 (3) 1952, 153-169. Modern adult fiction for school and college libraries, a list of books published since 1918, compiled by Norman Culpan. 1955. pp. 56. Scripture and kindred subjects, compiled by the Institute of Christian Education. 1953. pp. 23. Sixty books on Scotland, compiled by W. R. Aitken. 1951. pp. 8. New editions of Eleven to fifteen, a basic book list of non-fiction for secondary school libraries. 1953. pp. 54, and of General reference books . . . with some suggestions for primary schools . . . and a list of books on librarianship, compiled by C. H. C. Osborne. 1954. pp. 52

*Studies of Children's Literature*

25. EYRE, FRANK. Twentieth century children's books. Longmans for the British Council, 1952. pp. 72.  
 GREEN, ROGER LANCELYN. Tellers of tales. New edition. Leicester, Edmund Ward, 1953. pp. 288.  
 MIEGS, CORNELIA and others. A critical history of children's literature. New York, Macmillan, 1953. pp. xxiv, 624.  
 SMITH, LILLIAN H. The unreluctant years. Chicago, AIA, 1953. pp. 193.

*Manuals of School Librarianship*

26. GRIMSHAW, E. The teacher librarian. Leeds, E. J. Arnold [1952]. pp. 179.  
 GARDINER, JEWEL. Administering library service in the elementary school. 2nd edition. Chicago, ALA, 1954.  
 STOTT, C. A. School libraries: a short manual. 2nd edition with revised book list and new appendix. C.U.P. for S.L.A. and N.B.L., 1955. pp. 148.

27. SCHOOL LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. C. A. Stott. Using the library in the work of the school. (Leaflet 3). 1951. pp. 8; T. H. Simms. Notes on classification for secondary modern school libraries (Leaflet 6). 1951. pp. 10; T. H. Simms. First steps in administration for school librarians (Leaflet 7). 1951. pp. 8.

*The School Library and the Public Library*

28. MURISON, W. J. The public library. *Harrap*, 1953, 124, 156-169.  
 29. LAWSON, H. B. The school library, the public library and the school leaver. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1953, 62-69; also in *Sch. Lib.* 6 (6) 1953, 367-380.  
 30. AITKEN, W. R. Co-operation between the school library and the public library. *Ibid.* 7 (3) 1954, 167-172.

*Miscellaneous*

31. SCHOOL LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. Memorandum on planning and equipment of libraries in secondary schools. 1955. pp. 8.  
 32. BROWN, VICTORIA V. Publishing for school libraries. *Sch. Lib.* 6 (1) 1952, 21-26.  
 33. MINISTRY OF EDUCATION. Reading ability: some suggestions for helping the backward. Pamphlet No. 18. H.M.S.O., 1951. pp. 52.  
 DUNCAN, JOHN. Backwardness in reading: remedies and prevention. *Harrap*, 1953. pp. 96.  
 LEWIS, M. M. Children's reading and illiteracy. School Library Association, 1954. pp. 8.  
 34. LANGFELT, J. Volksbildung als Aufgabe: Beiträge zum volks- und Schülerbücherweisen. Köln Schaffstein, 1953.

*History of School Libraries*

- MINISTRY OF EDUCATION. The school library, op. cit., 9-14.  
 STOTT, C. A. The school library movement in England and Wales. *Lib. Trends* 1 (3) 1953, 402-422.  
 ALLENBY MOORE, M. S. The schoolmaster-librarian. *Sch. Lib.* 7 (3) 1954, 162-167.

Downloaded from www.dlibra.org

## Chapter 15

### CHILDREN'S LIBRARIES

By EILEEN H. COLWELL, F.L.A., *Librarian in charge of Work with Young People, Hendon Public Libraries*

IT is encouraging to discover from reports and articles in professional journals that there is an awakening concern for the provision of a children's library service in many parts of the world. Unesco and the British Council are active in helping to establish libraries in undeveloped areas and through one agency or another some form of service for children has been begun in the Gold Coast<sup>(1)</sup>, Burma, Mexico, South America<sup>(2)</sup> and India, to mention only a few countries.

There is still a lack of libraries for children in Europe itself and provision is very unequal. The foundation of the International Youth Library<sup>(3)</sup> in Munich, with its stock of books in many languages, has made children's library work known to many outside bodies. A German Advisory Committee<sup>(4)</sup> has encouraged the setting up of libraries, but it is stated that bookstocks are still inadequate and separate rooms for children a rarity. In Poland<sup>(5)</sup> the purpose of library work with children is avowedly political, but in Scandinavia standards and aims are exemplary.

In Canada<sup>(6)</sup> the excellence of the work at Boys and Girls House, Toronto, is known the world over and library provision is improving everywhere. Less than one-third of libraries in New Zealand provide for children, but Tasmania has been greatly assisted by the state-wide system of children's libraries made possible by the Lady Clark Memorial Fund<sup>(7)</sup>. In the United States<sup>(8)</sup> the established service for children still continues to develop vigorously, especially for the pre-school child and the adolescent.

In England<sup>(9)</sup>, although it is recognized theoretically that library service for children is the foundation of our national library system, this service is far from being provided in practice. For the first time a survey<sup>(10)</sup> has been made of work with children under the auspices of the Youth Libraries Section of the Library Association, an active and progressive group of children's librarians. The survey has revealed disappointingly uneven provision and standards in many parts of the country due to inadequate funds, apathy and neglected opportunities. A perusal of annual reports, however, shows that in a considerable number of libraries new children's departments have been opened and old ones modernized and that the children's room is often the most attractive in the building. Far more increases than decreases in issues are reported.

The familiar pattern of extension work is carried out in greater or lesser degree in many countries, according to the income and staff available. In all but the smallest libraries in the United States, the child is catered for from

pre-school days<sup>(11)</sup> to adolescence and service is given to children in hospital<sup>(12)</sup> and even to delinquents<sup>(13)</sup>. Book Weeks, which tend to be spasmodic in England, are a regular feature in Canada, New Zealand and America. A film<sup>(14)</sup> has been made in New York to record the child's discovery of the world of books.

The problem of maintaining the young adult's interest in books and libraries is a universal one. In England<sup>(15)</sup> little has been done for this age group beyond the provision of a small section of books either in the adult or junior department. In Sweden<sup>(16)</sup> it is the custom for a large stock of more adult books to be shelved in the junior library, as the age limit is sixteen. American<sup>(17)</sup> librarians believe in a separate department, with a trained assistant wherever practicable, and there are many excellent rooms of this kind, typified by the Young People's Room in the Donnelly branch in New York. In all such work, activities must be linked with the interests of adolescents and tied to books<sup>(18)</sup>. It is suggested in the United States that this service is not as successful as that to children for, in spite of all that is done for them, far too many young people read little except newspapers. This comment applies equally in England and elsewhere<sup>(19)</sup>.

There is increasing emphasis, as education changes and develops, on the importance of co-operation between school and library<sup>(20)</sup>. In Canada<sup>(21)</sup> and Norway<sup>(22)</sup> the experiment has been tried of using the school as a branch of the library, premises and equipment being provided by the education authority, books and staff by the library. In our modern society both school and library have an important part to play in introducing books to the child<sup>(23)</sup>. It is the duty of the librarian to advise teachers on book selection and to encourage children to read in their leisure time, while teachers can train their pupils in the use of books and direct them to the library as a source of information and enjoyment.

The provision of trained personnel is closely related to the progress, or lack of it, in children's libraries the world over. Schemes of training are increasing in number and quality. America has long had tuition in work with children, and Holland, Scandinavia and New Zealand also organize courses. In Canada the acquisition of the Osborne collection of early children's books has been a boon to students. In England a six-week intensive course<sup>(24)</sup> has been inaugurated, designed in the main for children's librarians who take work with children as part of their final examination. The lack of recruits in this field of work may be due to its low status, its isolation or the small chance of promotion<sup>(25)</sup>.

A survey of modern children's literature in England emphasizes its mediocrity<sup>(26)</sup>, and this is probably true of most countries. In the field of fantasy and the historical story, however, the standard is high in England. C. S. Lewis<sup>(27)</sup> defends fantasy for the child; a German librarian<sup>(28)</sup> is afraid of its influence on children and maintains that books should present the problems of life to boys and girls. In Poland<sup>(29)</sup> and U.S.S.R.<sup>(30)</sup> books have political importance and are used to inculcate patriotism and other national virtues in children. Concern is felt everywhere at the harmful influence of comics on children<sup>(31)</sup>, particularly "horror" comics as described in the American book *Seduction of the innocent* by Fredric Wertham. Comic papers are ubiquitous<sup>(32)</sup> and have the advantage, in comparison with books, of being always accessible,

cheap and easily read. Although many children ought to fifteen read magazines and papers to the exclusion of books, there are few periodicals for children of a good enough standard to be bought for libraries<sup>(33)</sup> (34).

There is an increasing demand for easy books that do not require much reading skill and concentration. This is closely related to the educational problem of the retarded reader<sup>(35)</sup>. It is the responsibility of the publisher to meet this market by producing books with the required large type, attractive format and simply-expressed story, but the librarian can do much to introduce these reluctant readers to the pleasures of books<sup>(36)</sup>.

In the United States, where the influence of television is felt most strongly because of the diversity of the continuous programmes, an attempt is made to use TV for library and educational purposes<sup>(37)</sup>. Librarians are inclined to think that while looking at television reduces the time available for reading it can also encourage wider interests and become a bridge to books for the child<sup>(38)</sup>. On the whole children's reading everywhere would benefit from more parental interest, stimulus from teachers and encouragement from librarians<sup>(39)</sup> (40).

Several outstanding books on children's literature have been published in the past five years. From the United States comes *A critical history of children's literature* (41), from Canada, Lillian Smith's wise and perceptive book of criticism *The unreluctant years* (42), from New Zealand, a study of a child's developing tastes in reading, *Books before five* (43), and from England, a history of children's books from 1600-1900 by Percy Muir (44).

Awards to encourage the publication of better books for children are made in several countries, notably the Newbery (45) and Caldecott (46) in the United States and the Carnegie (47) and Greenaway (founded 1956) in England. The international award, the Hans Christian Andersen Prize, has been awarded this year (1956) for the first time, to Eleanor Farjeon for *The little bookroom*.

There is an undeniable need for the best possible library provision for children everywhere, a trained and sympathetic service to the individual child, who will become the adult reader and citizen of the world of tomorrow.

## REFERENCES

1. EVANS, EVELYN J. A. Public libraries in the Gold Coast. *W. Afr. Libs.* 1 (2), 1-34.
2. EHLINGER, EMILY W. Children's libraries in South America. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 29 (5), 370-372, 374.
3. HORTON, MARIAN. International Youth Library. *Ann. Lib. Sci.* 1 (4), 238-244.
4. KORN, ILSE. Kinderbibliotheksarbeit, zentral geleitet. *Bibliothekar* 5 (8), 424-426.
5. Ramowe wytyczne współpracy publicznych bibliotek dla z bibliotekami szkolnymi. *Bibliothekar* (Warsaw) 19 (3), 77-78.
6. LANGLEY, A. K. B. A children's librarian abroad. *N.Z. Libs.* 18 (6), 129-135.
7. BONIWELL, JOYCE. The Lady Clark Memorial Children's Library, Tasmania. *Ibid.* 15 (8), 171-176.
8. NESBITT, ELIZABETH. Children's libraries are here to stay. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 26 (3), 255-257.
9. Work with young people and school libraries. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (4), 111-114.
10. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. YOUTH LIBRARIES SECTION. Survey of public library service for children. 1954.
11. UNIECHOWSKA, S. Libraries and the pre-school child. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (11), 364-365.
12. ANDORF, VERA. Getting well with books. *Lib. J.* 78 (8), 651-655.
13. <sup>12</sup> <sup>13</sup> <sup>MA</sup> MARGARET M. Books for disturbed children. *Ibid.* 78 (18), 1809-1812.

14. BUNTING, CAROLINE KEEN. Filming young readers for globe-circling picture. *Ibid.* 76 (22), 2105-2108.
15. DOWNTON, JANE A. Operation "Teen-ager." *N.H. News.* 20 (3), 1-2.
16. BYLLND, BARBRÖ. Vuxen Skönlitteratur för 14-15-Åringar? *Biblioteksbladet* 36 (8), 386-389.
17. DALE, FRANCES. Ten years with teen-agers. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 26 (3), 251-252.
18. ROOS, JEAN C. Young people and public libraries. *Lib. Trends* 3 (2), 129-140.
19. NORRIS, MARY. Young people and their opportunities. *Universities Quarterly* 4, 343-350.
20. JAWSON, H. B. The School Library, the Public Library and the school leaver. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.*, 1953, 62-70.
21. WISE, BERNICE and others. We work together. *Lib. J.*, 76 (22), 2052-2055.
22. DEINBOLL, RIKKA. En ny form for samarbeid mellom bibliotek og skole. *Norsk årbok for bibliotek og forskning* 3, 68-72.
23. HEINRICH, GISELA. Gemeinsame Ziele und Wege von Schulbücherei und öffentlicher Bücherei. *Kulturarbeit* 6 (1), 19-20.
24. TILLET, JEFFERY L. Library work with young people: the North-Western Polytechnic Course. *Sch. Lib.* 7 (4), 263-265.
25. GREENAWAY, EMERSON. The large library. *Lib. J.* 76 (18), 1666-1672.
26. COLWELL, EILEEN H. Children's books today. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (2), 78-80.
27. LEWIS, C. S. On three ways of writing for children. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.*, 1952, 22-28.
28. LANGFELD, JOHANNES. Kind und Buch. *B. u. Bild.* 5 (9), 831-843.
29. Krajowa konferencja w sprawie bibliotek dziecięcych. *Bibliotekarz (Warsaw)* 19 (3), 79-81.
30. Towards further improvement in the guidance of children's reading. *Bibliotekarz (U.S.S.R.)* 5 (3), 1-4.
31. In Margini a un Progetto di Legge. *Parola* 35 (3-4), 85.
32. Ninety million customers. *Bull. Free Pub. Lib. Comm., Vermont.* 50 (2), 18-38.
33. Children's periodicals. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (2), 83-86.
34. LARRICK, NANCY. A survey of magazines for young readers. *Lib. J.* 76 (2), 80-81.
35. MCGILL, HILDA M. The library and the retarded reader. *Manch. Rev.* 7 (Spring), 14-15.
36. BACKROEN, CATHERINE. "Even unto the least." *Lib. J.* 77 (6), 497-500.
37. ORR, ROBERT W. Libraries and educational television. *ALA Bull.* 45 (8), 282-284.
38. RATHBUN, NORMA L. Tel-adventure time—TV brings child and book together. *Ibid.* 46 (5), 143-145.
39. BUTLER, JOAN W. Reaching and securing the co-operation of parents. *Librarian* 61 (3), 50-53.
40. LARRICK, NANCY. Let's enlist the parents. *Lib. J.* 80 (18), 2312-2313.
41. MEIGS, CORNELIA Ed. A critical history of children's literature. New York, Macmillan, 1953. pp. xxiv, 624.
42. SMITH, LILLIAN H. The reluctant years. Chicago, ALA, 1953. pp. 193.
43. WHITE, DOROTHY. Books before five. New Zealand Council for Education Research, 1954. pp. xii, 196.
44. MUIR, PERCY. English children's books: 1600-1900. Batsford, 1954. pp. 256.
45. Newbery Medal:
- |      |                    |                                   |
|------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1951 | Yates, Elizabeth.  | Amos Fortune, free man (Aladdin). |
| 1952 | Estes, Eleanor.    | Ginger Pye (Harcourt).            |
| 1953 | Clark, Ann Nolan.  | Secret of the Ages (Viking).      |
| 1954 | Krumgold, Joseph.  | And now Miguel (Crowell).         |
| 1955 | De Jong, Meindert. | The wheel on the school (Harper). |
46. Caldecott Medal:
- |      |                       |                                       |
|------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1951 | Milhous, Katherine.   | The egg tree (Scribner).              |
| 1952 | Mordvinoff, Nicholas. | Finders, keepers (Harcourt).          |
| 1953 | Ward, Lynd.           | The biggest bear (Houghton, Mifflin). |
| 1954 | Bemelmans, Ludwig.    | Madeline's rescue (Viking).           |
| 1955 | Brown, Marcia.        | Cinderella (Scribner).                |
47. Carnegie Medal:
- |      |                   |                                |
|------|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1951 | Vipont, Elfrida.  | The lark on the wing (O.U.P.). |
| 1952 | Harnett, Cynthia. | The woolpack (Methuen).        |
| 1953 | Norton, Mary.     | The borrowers (Dent).          |
| 1954 | Osmond, Edward.   | A valley grows up (O.U.P.).    |
| 1955 | Welch, Ronald.    | Knight Crusader (O.U.P.).      |

Section V  
Library Practice

Downloaded from [www.dbraulibrary.org.in](http://www.dbraulibrary.org.in)

## Chapter 16

# GENERAL LIBRARY ADMINISTRATION: SOME CURRENT TOPICS

By P. J. COX, F.L.A., *Lecturer, Loughborough School of Librarianship*

**A**PPPLICATIONS OF SCIENTIFIC MANAGEMENT TO LIBRARIES  
During this period there has been a growing pressure on librarians to have their administration processes subjected to investigation by management experts. The chief impetus for such investigations in this country has been to secure greater economy in general administration costs rather than as an aid towards the extension of services. The 1955 rate revaluations have revealed the costs of public library services as the average product of approximately a sixpenny rate, representing less than 3 per cent of the costs of all local government services. From the authorities' point of view, it is still an appreciable enough cost to warrant justification of its detailed administration processes, along with those of other local government services.

"Organization and Methods," the title widely adopted to describe the current method of scientific investigation of the efficiency of both industrial and administrative departments, has developed along with other studies in the social science field. The Organization and Methods Division of H.M. Treasury, which publishes the bi-monthly *O. & M. bulletin*, was set up after the last war to review the working of Government departments, and its services are made available, if desired, to local authorities. Coventry, in 1952-53, was the first to take advantage of its services, and much publicity was given to the recommended savings in general administration costs amounting to £50,000. Many Government departments now have their own O. & M. officers, and some local authorities have preferred to set up their own teams or have employed firms of management consultants. B. M. Headicar has expressed the view that<sup>(1)</sup> "nothing but good can come to the library and its staff if independent people, not the authority's own members, are asked to undertake the investigation." The Metropolitan Boroughs Standing Joint Committee has set up an O. & M. unit which is available to all Metropolitan Boroughs and the Westminster library authority had advice from this team when working out their token book-charging scheme. Kensington is another borough whose services were investigated by the same body.

Recommendations made by one or other of these bodies of experts in respect of libraries include: certain staff reductions or regrouping of duties; greater centralization of services; use of the *BNB* as a substitute for branch library catalogues; reduction in number of overdue notices; the abolition of certain records and simplification of sundry library routines. In Derbyshire County Library, for example, recommendations included the grouping of existing headquarters sections into larger units, a library bindery and a

fairly clear line of demarcation between professional and non-professional posts.

The O. & M. service is, of course, essentially an advisory one and, to be truly effective, needs the closest co-operation and understanding between the consultant and the staff of the department investigated. (Coyne gives an amusing illustration of this point<sup>(2)</sup>.) Some librarians have, however, felt that consultants have been insufficiently concerned with desirable library purpose and that departmental cuts in expenditure have been recommended to satisfy the concern of the authorities to secure scientific approval as a justification for cuts.

Scientific management has been, especially since the encouragement given by *The Public Library Enquiry*, 1950, more fully and widely applied in the U.S.A. An issue of *Library trends*<sup>(3)</sup> was devoted to "Scientific management in libraries," examining such procedures and concepts as time and motion studies, library surveys and standardization and including extensive bibliographies. Particularly relevant to librarians is the use of process charts<sup>(4)</sup>, which help in assessing the value of operations and in ascertaining the qualifications needed to perform them. A survey within the District of Columbia Public Library<sup>(5)</sup> without the use of management consultants resulted in an estimated annual saving of \$267,000 in administrative operations. This library benefited both from improved existing services and from its increased ability to develop new ones. The New York Public Library engaged a firm of consultants to survey the acquisition functions of both its reference and home reading departments. Action taken following the survey resulted in book acquisitions reaching the library shelves more quickly and in an improved level of accuracy in cataloguing, filing and book replacement. The same firm of consultants was invited to undertake the ALA Management Survey in 1954<sup>(6)</sup>. The recommendations, which were approved, have led to the creation of a single governing body (the Council) to replace the Council and Executive Board, with their overlapping responsibilities. A clearer distinction is being made between type of library and type of activity divisions, each of which is to have delegated authority and responsibility for ALA matters which are their exclusive concerns. The intention of these changes is to secure the fullest membership participation for all the substantive professional activities engaged in by the ALA.

**STAFF ADMINISTRATION.** It is perhaps in the field of staff administration that the techniques of scientific management can be of the most immediate advantage to the library service. They can, for example, aid librarians in their efforts to secure acceptance of appropriate grading of professional and non-professional work and, at the same time, help in the establishment of improved salary standards. The ALA Board of Personnel Administration, having published in 1948 a descriptive list of these staff gradings, published in 1951<sup>(7)</sup>, through its sub-committees, a practical step-by-step guide for librarians and authorities. First, staff work is analysed for classification purposes, showing clearly, for example, all work requiring professional judgment and background of training. Then follow assessment of the levels of responsibility, equating of routine tasks in the different library departments and a logical building up of the staff structure together with the appropriate salary scales. The guide insists on the need for the fullest staff participation in making any survey,

stressing that staff should be informed that "it is the job and not the individual which is being analysed." There are also a variety of realistic general rules. Stress, too, is laid on the need for salary schedules which provide equal promotion channels for both the administrative and subject specialist posts. "In essence the professional librarian works with the contents whilst the non-professional works with the outside of books" is a definition given by a Californian librarian<sup>(8)</sup> in a most useful article illustrating the grading of posts in libraries.

One of the portions of the report on libraries<sup>(9)</sup> by the Scottish Advisory Council on Education, to which the Scottish Library Association offered no objection, was the recommendation on staffing of public libraries. The report emphasized the need for fully-trained professional librarians in all libraries and recommended three levels of recruitment, but stated that suitable clerical and non-professional librarians should be given facilities and training for the more responsible and professional levels of work. Conditions of full employment in Britain have made it increasingly difficult for libraries to obtain junior staff. In consequence some have introduced a grade of routine clerical workers quite distinct from their "potential-professional" junior assistants, and others have found the answer in the employment of part-time staff. The latter policy makes it possible to have sufficient staff on duty in busy periods and yet not employ more junior staff than the total amount of routine work would warrant.

A growing concern has been expressed by younger librarians for better conditions in library work with more opportunity to practise in accordance with those professional standards with which they have become familiar in taking their professional examinations<sup>(10)</sup>. There is also a greater awareness of the need for more adequate "In-Service training" and for better welfare conditions. The L.A. Council published *Recommendations on welfare and working conditions of public library staffs*<sup>(11)</sup>, based on a report prepared for the AAL by Mr. F. C. Tighe. The result of a survey over 350 libraries, it stressed the need for appropriate financial compensation for awkward and irregular hours of duty, elimination or modification of "split" duties, adequate rest rooms and staff libraries and general encouragement for staff to engage in professional and educational meetings and training. The recommendations have been the basis for L.A. negotiations through the National Executive Council of NALGO in the hope of securing the National Joint Council's acceptance of improved conditions of service. Problems relating to staffing standards in the United Kingdom were comprehensively treated by Mr. W. B. Paton<sup>(12)</sup>. He deprecated any move to secure more recruits by the lowering of educational requirements and predicted that "the time will come when graduate standard will be expected of recruits to all branches of the profession, whether academic, special or public." Whilst recognizing the difficulties, he considered that division of staff into professional and non-professional categories should become the declared policy of the L.A. at the earliest possible time.

DIVISION OF LIBRARIES BY FUNCTION AND SUBJECT. Opinion has on the whole been growing that the improvement of services in larger libraries can best be achieved by a system of subject divisions, but such an arrangement brings the twin problems of cost and co-ordination. The Principal Keeper of

Printed Books at the British Museum, Mr. C. B. Oldman, in his presidential address to the L.A. Conference in 1954, having outlined the Museum's present policy, stated "if change has eventually to come it would be better in my opinion that it should take the form of 'hiving-off'—by the creation of separate subject libraries which would remain constituent parts of the one National Library." Decentralization of effort was also strongly advocated later by Mr. F. C. Francis<sup>(13)</sup>, who recommended the establishment within the Museum organization of a number of departments, "which would, in effect, be the national collection of this subject or that, and would be under the care of specialist librarian." One instance of the effort made on the part of our great research libraries, to make more accessible and known the wealth of collections, is to be seen in the now completed range of specialist reading rooms in the old Bodleian Library building. With the great relief of storage space afforded by the new building since 1946, the two upper floors surrounding the Bodley Quadrangle now provide materials for research scholars in the fields of law, theology, oriental studies, languages and history.

Recommendations have been made in the U.S.A. for consolidating university departmental libraries into larger divisional libraries representing broader subject fields and hence gaining increased faculty co-operation. Mr. A. M. McAnally, of Illinois, in surveying this problem<sup>(14)</sup>, notes the advantages, both to large dispersed universities and to strongly centralized systems, of broad subject grouping on the basis of the organization at the Illinois University. The advantages claimed are: greater co-operation within related fields; standardization of practices and policies; co-ordination of both acquisitions and disposal policies and improvement of service generally. Mr. R. O. McKenna<sup>(15)</sup> found that, apart from the faculty provisions at Liverpool and in the plans for the new Birmingham University Library, subject divisional libraries had not found much favour here because of the additional staff expense involved and because existing buildings could not easily be adapted to suit it.

Much the same arguments have been used by public librarians in this country, few of whom agree with their colleagues in the U.S.A. that the subject-divided library is the most satisfactory organization for large public libraries. It is traditional now for our large public library systems to have special departments for commerce, science and technology, music and local collections, but there remains much opposition to the merging of reference and home reading materials in one department. An article which traces the history of this development in America<sup>(16)</sup> notes that "since 1924 with the notable exception of Philadelphia virtually every major public library erected in this country has been largely or entirely a subject-departmentalized library." Libraries operating on this basis include Cleveland, Baltimore, Los Angeles, Rochester, Brooklyn, Washington (D.C.) and the new Cincinnati (1954) and Dallas (1955) libraries. The success of this system depends firstly on the convenient broad grouping of subject fields with no undue dispersal of related material which could cause inconvenience to readers and, secondly, the minimum overlapping of effort in subject specialization among staff. Baltimore's arrangement broadly separates the sciences and humanities. The Business and Economics department is flanked by the Science and Industry department and the Civics department with an easily accessible General Reference Room and separate provision of a Popular department; an arrangement that has stood the

test now of over twenty years' use. Staff economy is secured at less busy times by intercommunicating departments divided only by glazed partitions which permit shared supervision.

The argument has often been used that a very large floor area on the one level is essential to this system. This in itself, it is claimed, would make it impracticable for many large city libraries for which central sites are essential and where pressure of space necessitates a multi-floor building. The librarian of the Washington (D.C.) Public Library<sup>(17)</sup>, however, points out that new buildings with modern storey heights of ten to twelve feet enable closer proximity of two subject fields by vertical juxtaposition than if both were on the same floor but separated by fifty feet or more.

A useful survey of the subject divisional system as it is applied in the Brooklyn Public Library, from an English point of view, is given by Mr. J. L. Gardner<sup>(18)</sup>. From his experience of working in this library he adds his personal comments to the claimed advantages and disadvantages from American sources.

Mr. A. W. McClellan, Director of the Tottenham Public Libraries<sup>(19)</sup>, has expressed what may be regarded as a widely accepted viewpoint of librarians in this country against such physical division of the library. Apart from the fact that such division demands a scale of provision of materials beyond the scope of all but the largest public libraries, he considered that the arrangement would have an inhibiting effect on readers whose interests in the main are general and not specialised. (It might, of course, reasonably be argued that more systematic arrangement would lead to more satisfied use.) Mr. McClellan, however, described in detail his staffing organization of "subject librarians," designed to provide a more informed and systematic bibliographic service to readers and a subject specialized service without physical division of the library. Having divided his staff into two broad divisions, administrative and bibliographical, he described the latter as consisting of five subject groups each responsible for selection, revision and extended use of all materials within its subject field. The work of each division is co-ordinated by a senior librarian in charge. Both his staff organization and the proposed disposition of materials mark an advance towards the American practice of providing for the different levels of reader interest. The plans for his new library make provision for the following: book charging outside the library room, fiction and popular non-fiction in the first portion of the public room—which will have informal seating accommodation, an information service counter as a junction for the second portion of the public room, which will have reference and lending bookstocks merged and have seating arranged for study purposes. "As the interest of the reader becomes more specific or purposive the incentive to move towards more specialized facilities arises naturally and the risk of frustration is reduced to the minimum."

Such a plan as that of Mr. McClellan's appears worthy of close consideration. Not only does it give the fullest encouragement and opportunity for staff to exercise their professional training in meeting the more complex needs of purposive readers today, but it is a plan within the means of many of our public libraries. It is a practicable solution for many librarians who realize the great value of subject specialization but whose material resources are inadequate for full physical subject division on the American lines.

## REFERENCES

1. *Lib. World* 56 (659) 1955, 183-186.
2. COYNE, G. R. An O. and M. investigation into a library. *L.A., London and Home Counties Branch Conference Papers*, 1952, 41-51.
3. *Lib. Trends* 2 (3) 1954.
4. GOLDHOR, H. Scientific management in public libraries. *Ibid.* 368-389.
5. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 29 (9) 1955, 699-707.
6. *ALA Bull.* 49 (9) 1955.
7. ALA BOARD ON PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION. Position classification and salary administration in libraries. Chicago, ALA, 1951. pp. v, 81.
8. WIGHT, E. A. Separation of professional and non-professional work in public libraries. *Calif. Lib.* 14 (1) 1952, 29-32.
9. SCOTLAND. ADVISORY COUNCIL ON EDUCATION. Report on Libraries, Museums and Art Galleries. (Cmd. 8229.) 1951, 45-47.
10. JONES, A. C. The assistant librarian in the community. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 48-55.
11. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (7) 1953, 223-224.
12. PATON, W. B. Standards of library staff. . . *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1954, 34-44.
13. FRANCIS, F. C. Co-ordination of library services. *Ibid.* 1955, 92-100.
14. MCANALLY, A. M. Co-ordinating the departmental library system. *Lib. Q.* 22 (2), 1951, 113-119.
15. MACKENNA, R. O. The university library service. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 11-15.
16. MAZELL, R. E. The subject departmentalised public library. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (3) 1951, 255-260.
17. PETERSON, H. N. Planning a building. *Lib. J.* 78 (7) 1953, 551-557.
18. GARDNER, J. L. Some thoughts on subject departmentalization in a large public library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 254-260.
19. MCCULLAN, A. W. The organization of a public library for subject specialization. *Ibid.* 57 (8) 1955, 296-303.

## Chapter 17

### BOOK SELECTION

By R. C. BERGE, F.L.A., *Senior Lecturer, Department of Librarianship,  
North Western Polytechnic, London, N.W.5*

PROGRESS in book selection policy and methods is dependent both on the nature of a national library system and on the organization and administration of particular libraries. The following survey is, therefore, limited entirely to trends in this country with brief reference to developments elsewhere which have general interest.

#### 1. NATIONAL LIBRARY PROVISION

It has increasingly been realized that, although improvements are possible within particular libraries, the problem of library provision must be looked at from a national point of view. Hence much attention has been paid to post-war developments in library co-operation such as subject coverage schemes, provision for industry and the co-operative provision of research and foreign language material. These matters are surveyed in other chapters.

#### 2. PUBLIC LIBRARIES

Far more than in other types of libraries book provision remains a controversial matter and open to criticism.

##### 2.1. GENERAL PRINCIPLES

There is now a general tendency to assume that since there are so many imponderables and contradictory factors involved, no adequate "theories" of book selection are possible. At any rate none have emerged.

L. R. McColvin<sup>(1)</sup>, who made the best-known attempt in this country to arrive at a theory of book selection, now concludes that it was based on "a wrong conception of the purposes of a public library," a conception which should be regarded as out of date. In times of shortage librarians were faced with the absurdity of choosing "the best" from among the good. Now the first administrative requirement is a "thorough reorganization of the library system of the country" to eliminate small inadequate units. If this were done all libraries would "provide everything that is worth while: therefore we do not select. We reject." This spotting of the bad books *can* be done by one man, who must be the chief librarian; he should see *all* the books on approval. He describes methods at Westminster and stresses the importance of constant inter-branch exchange and the need to have sufficient books on the shelves.

One important factor is *demand*. There have been few attempts at reading

surveys, but A. W. McClellan<sup>(2)</sup> has made a plea for their use and has documented existing surveys. Most papers on this subject have suggested that public library stocks are bad because the books on the shelves are not really those needed by the local readers. This point is stressed by L. Kilbey<sup>(3)</sup>, J. D. Reynolds<sup>(4)</sup> and L. F. Hasker<sup>(5)</sup>. Reynolds claims that post-war readers have different requirements from those in the past; these can be met only by drastically pruning "basic stock" and concentrating on more copies of wanted books. He suggests that publishers fail here also and quotes British dependence on American publishers for certain types of material. R. F. Ashby<sup>(6)</sup> emphasizes the need to make proper provision for unexpressed demand and to watch carefully any distorting influence which may result from expressed demand. F. S. Green<sup>(7)</sup> deals with the "missing three-quarters" who do not use public libraries and suggests ways and means of attracting them.

The *staff* factor has been stressed. Thus E. Moon<sup>(8)</sup> urges that book selection will improve only when library staffs have better book knowledge. This will involve in-service training, education and will be dependent on improved techniques and the division of staff into professional and non-professional grades. Similarly J. D. Reynolds<sup>(9)</sup> claims that in the last resort "a good stock happens only in libraries where there is a librarian who takes a bookman's pride in his possessions." E. A. Savage<sup>(10)</sup> discusses the respective roles of book reviewers, critics and the "selection team" in the library. He suggests that the "datum line of quality" is felt rather than fixed by "bibliognosis." He concludes "the librarian is an authority on books; that is the end to keep in view." Clearly this is a key factor, but remedies are mainly long term. The immediate problems may well be mainly a matter of organization and methods.

## 2.2. ORGANIZATION OF BOOK PROVISION

Attention has been focused on the related problems of subject coverage and stock revision. The right books are not on the shelves. Thus F. M. Gardner<sup>(11)</sup> quotes one small subject (contract bridge) and shows how the stock may be completely inadequate. Further, "the replacement position in most public libraries today is chaotic." L. F. Hasker<sup>(12)</sup> also mentions this point and suggests methods for dealing with it under a conventional organization. Various solutions have been put forward. J. F. W. Bryon<sup>(13)</sup> outlines an approach to subject librarianship with particular reference to smaller libraries. He relies mainly on the creation of a new form of regional co-operation—to ensure adequate coverage—within particular libraries. An important development has been the appointment of stock editors (initially at Lambeth and subsequently elsewhere), whose sole responsibility is systematically to revise the stock and to co-ordinate the selection of new books. Here again a subject approach is used and book selection is properly understood *as a basic matter of organization*.

K. G. Hunt<sup>(14)</sup> commends "from personal experience . . . the employment of a panel of selectors from senior staff each concerned with a certain subject range." He stresses also the importance of regular stocktaking. In common with others he urges the desirability of raising the general level of book provision so that although research material must still be sought elsewhere, the specialist in the broad sense might expect an adequate service. He suggests that the minimum

standard at which we should aim is that of a first university degree or its equivalent. Other writers have expressed doubts about this subject-panel method and also about the weekly book selection meeting method, which an increasing number of libraries have introduced. A different approach has been developed by A. W. McClellan<sup>(15)</sup>, who describes how the organization of Tottenham library staff into subject groups provides one satisfactory answer. Book provision is made systematic by closely relating methods to detailed statistics of use and demand; this is a serious attempt at scientific organization.

### 2.3. SIZE AND TYPES OF LIBRARY

The above methods will obviously suit only certain types of library. No systematic study has been made of the types of book selection procedure appropriate to different sizes of libraries, but J. D. Reynolds<sup>(16)</sup> discusses the medium-sized library and G. Chandler<sup>(17)</sup> a large library system (Liverpool) where subject departments to some extent form the organization basis. E. A. Hinton<sup>(18)</sup> describes the reorganization at Newcastle which ensures complete fluidity of stock by using a circulating pool; this was suggested by county library practice and affects book selection in so far as books are selected for branches and departments from the pool stock. There have been similar developments elsewhere, e.g., Luton. Accounts of provision in Kent and Surrey County Libraries are given by Miss F. R. E. Davies<sup>(19)</sup> and Miss R. T. Stone<sup>(20)</sup> respectively, while B. W. Wray<sup>(21)</sup> surveys the problems of county provision generally and describes an experiment in Nottinghamshire designed "to discover the effects and the difficulties of working a systematic scheme of regional book selection."

### 2.4. DISPUTED TYPES OF PROVISION

#### (a) *Light literature*

This problem received considerable attention both here and in other countries. In general no marked change in practice is noticeable. During 1951 a number of articles in the *Library Assistant* dealt with this subject. The problem of where to draw the line, the possibility of pay collections, the distinction between light and sub-literature are some of the issues discussed. A. C. Jones<sup>(22)</sup> summarizes the controversy and restates the problem. Other contributors who wish to restrict light literature were J. E. V. Birch<sup>(23)</sup> and P. G. New<sup>(24)</sup>. The former bases his case on a properly worked out function for the public library as compared to other agencies such as subscription libraries, while P. G. New, having given the arguments for and against, concludes: (1) that crime stories, westerns and light romances should cease to be added to stock; (2) that there should be a ban on the reservation of new fiction.

For the opposite point of view, C. A. Elliott<sup>(25)</sup> stresses the democratic nature of the public library. "Public libraries are for all the people, not for the few . . . we cannot and should not discriminate." R. F. Ashby<sup>(26)</sup> takes the same view. G. Chandler<sup>(27)</sup> emphasizes the importance of modern fiction and the impossibility of excluding light fiction; "Nevertheless there is a tendency in some large public libraries to buy fewer light novels, and this trend will inevitably increase." Finally J. Carter<sup>(28)</sup> makes a plea for a different approach altogether, i.e., one based on sociological factors. He points out "that the light novel may be important for the stability of the community" and that we should

not assess the value of imaginative literature by purely literary standards. He also asks for further sociological investigation into the effects of reading.

Rental collections are separately considered by A. Dunn<sup>(29)</sup>, who surveys those which exist in this country and argues in their favour. Practice in New Zealand has been conveniently summarized<sup>(30)</sup>.

(b) "Best-seller pressure"

W. S. Haugh<sup>(31)</sup> draws attention to the pressure on public library services caused by the reservation of books boosted by publishers and reviewers: "The tail of readers' requests tends to wag the dog of selection." Experiments at Bristol had shown that book selection was being distorted by this factor and in consequence it was decided to restrict the reservation of new books. As a result the efficiency of the book reservation system improved. The general conclusions are that a "total" reservation system (1) prevented the building of a balanced stock, (2) canalized public interest on to certain books which were often trivial, (3) helped to perpetuate certain evils of commercialism in publishing. E. Simpson<sup>(32)</sup> describes an investigation at Coventry which resulted in the suspension of the service. He summarizes the reactions of other libraries to a questionnaire but does not mention implications for book selection. W. C. Berwick-Sayers<sup>(33)</sup> deals with the same theme. On the other hand T. J. Rix<sup>(34)</sup> reports the result of an investigation carried out at Manchester during the period 1954-55, which led him to conclude that "there is no evidence that the volume of reservations is out of control or that it is having a strong and undesirable influence on book selection." (At this library there were limitations on the reservation of fiction already in existence.) Elsewhere similar steps were taken.

(c) "Doubtful" literature

In this country the paternalist activities of customs officials, local magistrates and the Home Office broke out from time to time, but this and the protests which ensued are outside the scope of this chapter. Discussion also continues on the responsibilities of the librarian and his committee. E. T. Bryant<sup>(35)</sup> surveys the three types of literature, i.e., political, religious and moral, where the influence of pressure groups may affect book selection policies. He shows how a statistical survey with reference to certain titles indicated that discrimination against controversial books does occur. The *Assistant Librarian* devoted a "Special Censorship Number" to a discussion of the same problems; this included contributions on the nature of censorship by R. L. Collison<sup>(36)</sup>; on the Catholic point of view by V. P. Richards<sup>(37)</sup> and on the need for vigilance in this country by E. Dudley<sup>(38)</sup>.

In the U.S.A. the struggle for intellectual freedom is more directly related to book selection policies. The American Library Association "Library Bill of Rights" of 1948, which emphasized the library's role in defending civil liberties, was followed by the "labeling statement" of 1951 which condemned the listing of doubtful material. The ALA also held two conferences on intellectual freedom. At the first of these in 1952<sup>(39)</sup> contributors dealt with all aspects and R. L. Collison gave a British view. For the small public library J. Cushman summed up the difficulties: "The line of demarcation between acceptability and non-acceptability of books for library use is becoming less and less clear.

it is not that the principles of book selection have materially changed but rather that the irrationalities of the present period of social, economic and political upheaval are forcing different emphasis upon its application." At the second conference in 1953<sup>(40)</sup> President Eisenhower's "Letter on Intellectual Freedom" (printed as an appendix) focused national attention. The *Proceedings* contain some of the best contributions made to this problem from professional sources. W. M. Daniels dealt with the same topics in *The censorship of books*<sup>(41)</sup>, while P. Blanshard's *The right to read*<sup>(42)</sup> provides a fully documented survey of all forms of censorship in the United States. There were also numerous periodical articles, several of them pointing out the difficulties in carrying out the "Bill of Rights" in a particular library. D. Lacy<sup>(43)</sup> summarizes the situation in 1954 and mentions the attacks on libraries for stocking United Nations publications, particularly those of Unesco. R. L. Collison<sup>(44)</sup> also surveys the anti-intellectual campaign and gives references for further reading. It is reasonable to suppose that at the present time (1956) the situation has slightly eased.

### 3. SPECIAL LIBRARIES

Adequate descriptions of selection policies of types of special library or even of individual libraries are still lacking. The *Aslib Manual* contains a brief account of acquisition methods. D. J. Foskett<sup>(45)</sup> gives a useful account of book selection policies in one special library and stresses the need for provision at all levels within an industrial firm. D. V. Arnold<sup>(46)</sup> deals with such organizations as "Government departments, research associations . . . and industrial firms" and surveys problems of provision with periodicals, pamphlets, reports, etc. He suggests that special libraries may "have tended to concentrate on service to the neglect of stock."

### 4. UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

Few of the problems endemic in the public library field arise here. J. W. Scott<sup>(47)</sup> says "a very high proportion of the demands arising from the three set levels of staff, postgraduate and undergraduate students . . . are markedly direct and persistently expressed." He discusses the allocation of funds, types of material and concludes with the three cardinal points that the stock should mirror the academic work, that the librarian should co-operate well with the academic staff, and that every increase in the academic ability of the library staff will produce an equivalent improvement in the bookstock.

R. O. MacKenna<sup>(48)</sup>, in discussing the university library service, stresses that conservation is still the first responsibility of a university library. He then deals with the emphasis which must be placed on foreign material and on periodicals.

### 5. BIBLIOGRAPHICAL AIDS

The improvement of book provision in all types of library is dependent to some extent on developments in national and subject bibliography. Progress in applied bibliography or bibliographic organization are described in other chapters. The advent of the *B.N.B.* has considerably affected library book selection policies. Many libraries now use the *B.N.B.* both for selection and

ordering purposes. Its value here is summarized by A. J. Wells<sup>(49)</sup>. Developments in subject bibliography have been less satisfactory; more guides to the literature have appeared, mainly from the U.S.A., and Townsend<sup>(50)</sup> gives an account of these together with an analysis of their value. The Library Association's new venture *Special Subject Lists* is worthy of note.

The small library is particularly handicapped by its lack of bibliographical tools, but few changes are to be expected here.

## 6. SPECIAL TYPES OF MATERIAL

### 6.1. FOREIGN LITERATURE

Co-operative projects for the provision of research material (noted elsewhere) are relevant. A. J. Walford<sup>(51)</sup> remarks on "certain deficiencies in the selection of foreign-language material in both public and special libraries." He mentions the well-known lack of a British equivalent to the Farmington plan, discusses methods of overcoming these deficiencies and concludes with a plea for staff language specialization and for librarians to be "more foreign material minded. We need to think more in terms of subject material and less in terms of the language in which it is printed." E. A. Baker<sup>(52)</sup> discussed ways of reaching complete coverage of foreign material and outlines the history of co-operative schemes to date.\* "The Library Association since the Royal Society Information Conference has through its Library Research Committee evolved an outline of a plan . . . to obtain complete coverage, it now remains for libraries and librarians to strive for its fruition." R. C. C. Desmond<sup>(53)</sup> also makes a plea for better provision and for the development of a national co-operative plan.

### 6.2. PERIODICALS

Little attention seems to have been paid to this topic. D. Grenfell<sup>(54)</sup> has a brief chapter describing methods and quotes J. H. Gable's general selection rules. B. C. Vickery<sup>(55)</sup> discusses the problem of buying periodical sets and suggests methods of arriving at "an objective estimate of what sets are needed." He considers that a count of borrowing is a more reliable method than the "frequency of citation" method. K. B. Shaw<sup>(56)</sup>, dealing with selection policy, gives a "tentative list of factors which may need to be considered before acquiring second hand periodicals" and also a table showing the *tendency to change* of periodicals. A. Allardyce<sup>(57)</sup> outlines the role of the British National Book Centre in relation to periodical sets.

## REFERENCES

### *Public Libraries: General Principles*

1. MCCOLVIN, L. R. Some administrative aspects of book provision. *Librarian* 45 (2) 1956, 21-29.
2. MCCLELLAN, A. W. Reader research. I: The social survey and reading. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Proc.* 1953, 5-19.
3. KILBEY, L. Which are the good books? *Librarian* 40 (9) 1951, 203-204.
4. REYNOLDS, J. D. Standards of library stock: with special reference to medium sized libraries. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1954, 70-16.

\* Commercial and technical literature has been excluded here; also selection policies for libraries catering for special types of readers such as the blind, hospital patients, prisoners, sailors.

5. HASKER, L. F. A live stock for open shelves. *Asst. Lib.* 46 (1) 1953, 4-5; 46 (2) 1953, 18-20.
6. ASHBY, R. F. Book selection a problem in dynamics. *Librarian* 41 (6) 1952, 115-116.
7. GREEN, F. S. The missing three-quarters. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (10) 1955, 392-398.
8. MOON, E. The assistant and the bookish habit. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1954, 69-77.
9. REYNOLDS, J. D. Standards of library stock: with special reference to medium sized libraries. *Ibid.* 1954, 10-16.
10. SAVAGE, E. A. Book criticism and the selecting team. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (5) 1955, 178-183.

*Public Libraries: Organization of Book Provision*

11. GARDNER, F. M. The organization of book provision: municipal libraries. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Proc.* 1951, supplement.
12. HASKER, L. F. A live stock for open shelves. *Asst. Lib.* 46 (1) 1953, 4-5; 46 (2) 1953, 18-20.
13. BRYON, J. F. W. Subject librarianship: a practical approach. *Librarian* 41 (7) 1952, 129-135. Co-operative book selection. *Ibid.* 41 (9) 1952, 183-186.
14. HUNT, K. G. Book stock: building and maintenance. I. Public libraries. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Proc.* 1954, 5-12.
15. MCCLELLAN, A. W. New concepts of service. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (8) 1956, 299-305.

*Public Libraries: Size and Types of Library*

16. REYNOLDS, J. D. Standards of library stock: with special reference to medium sized libraries. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1954, 10-16.
17. CHANDLER, G. Large municipal libraries: present trends and future developments. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1956, 75-81.
18. HINLON, E. A. A deployment of bookstock. *Librarian* 41 (4) 1952, 69-73.
19. DAVIES, MISS F. R. E. The organisation of book provision: county libraries. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Proc.* 1951, 3-6.
20. STONE, MISS R. T. Book supply policy in the Surrey county library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 260-262.
21. WRAY, B. W. The control of bookstock in the county library. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1953, 35-42.

*Public Libraries: Disputed Types of Provision*

22. JONES, A. C. The sub-literature problem. *Lib. Assn.* 44 (8) 1951, 120-122.
23. BIRCH, J. E. V. Notes towards a definition of function. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (5) 1952, 165-169.
24. NEW, P. G. The public provision of light literature. *Ibid.* 57 (4) 1955, 149-153.
25. ELLIOTT, C. A. The library's public. *Ibid.* 53 (7) 1951, 222-224.
26. ASHBY, R. F. The public library's function and the fiction question. *Lib. Rev.* 14 (107) 1953-54, 142-147.
27. CHANDLER, G. Large municipal libraries: present trends and future developments. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1956, 75-81.
28. CARTER, J. The effect of our assistance to readers. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1953, 11-16.
29. DUNN, A. Books to let. *Librarian* 41 (6) 1952, 109-112.
30. The rental collections and free library practice: a report of the New Zealand L.A. Fiction Committee. *N.Z. Libs.* 14 (8) 1951, 204-212.
31. HAUGH, W. S. Best-seller pressure and its influence on public library book selection. *Lib. World* 55 (642) 1953, 88-93; 55 (643) 1954, 110-112.
32. SIMPSON, E. The reservation of books: an investigation. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (12) 1952, 395-398.
33. BERWICK-SAYERS, W. C. How many copies? some random thoughts. *Lib. World.* 54 (632) 1953, 130-131.
34. RIX, T. J. Reservations in Manchester. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (8) 1956, 306-309.
35. BRYANT, E. T. Book selection and censorship. *Librarian* 44 (4) 1955, 65-76.
36. COLLISON, R. L. What is censorship? *Asst. Lib.* 49 (12) 1956, 191-193.
37. RICHARDS, V. P. *Ibid.* 49 (12) 1956, 198-199.
38. DUDLEY, E. Danger to libraries. *Ibid.* 49 (12) 1956, 202-203.
39. American Library Association. Committee on Intellectual Freedom. Freedom of communication: proceedings of the first conference . . . 1952. Chicago, ALA, 1954. pp. viii, 143.
40. American Library Association. Committee on Intellectual Freedom. Freedom of book selection: proceedings of the second conference . . . 1953. Chicago, ALA, 1954. pp. ix, 132.
41. DANIELS, W. M., ed. The censorship of books. New York, H. W. Wilson, 1954. pp. 202.
42. BLANSHARD, P. The right to read. Boston, Beacon Press, [1956]. pp. 339.

43. LACY, D. Freedom and books. *Southeastern Librarian* 4 (1) 1954, 14-26.  
 44. COLLISON, R. L. The fight for freedom. *Lib. Assn.* 45 (3) 1952, 35-38.

*Special Libraries*

45. FOSKETT, D. J. and SANDARS, D. C. Library provision for all levels in an industrial firm: a case study. *N.W.P. School of Librarianship Occ. Pap.* No. 8. pp. 19.  
 46. ARNOID, D. V. Bookstock: building and maintenance. III: Special Libraries. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Proc.* 1954, 19-24.

*University Libraries*

47. SCOTT, J. W. Bookstock: building and maintenance. II: University libraries. *Ibid.* 1954, 13-18.  
 48. MACKENNA, R. O. The university library service. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 11-16.

*Bibliographical Aids*

49. WELLS, A. J. The organization of book provision: the British National Bibliography and book provision. *Lib. Assn. London and Home Counties Branch Conf. Proc.* 1951, 6-13.  
 50. TOWNSEND, A. C. Guides to scientific literature. *J. of Doc.* 11 (2) 1955, 73-78.

*Special Types of Material*

51. WALFORD, A. J. Foreign material: selection. *Lib. Assn. Ref. and Special Sec. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 23-29.  
 52. BAKER, E. A. The co-operative provision of foreign material. *Lib. Assn. Ref. and Special Sec. Conf. Proc.* 1955, 31-35.  
 53. DESMOND, R. G. C. The provision of foreign literature. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (11) 1955, 423-428.  
 54. GRENFELL, D. Periodicals and serials. *Aslib*, 1953, pp. xi, 442.  
 55. VICKERY, B. C. Periodical sets: what should you buy? *Aslib. Proc.* 5 (2) 1953, 69-74.  
 56. SHAW, K. B. Periodical acquisition policies. *Ibid.* 5 (2) 1953, 81-86.  
 57. ALLARDYCE, A. The role of the British National Book Centre. *Ibid.* 5 (2) 1953, 75-80.

Downloaded from www.jstor.org

## Chapter 18

### CATALOGUING

By MARY PIGGOTT, B.A., F.L.A., Lecturer, University of London School of Librarianship and Archives

FOR cataloguers this has been a quinquennium of reappraisal—of methods, principles and achievements—at all levels, personal, national and international. An issue of *Library Trends* (1), devoted to cataloguing and classification, and a brief historical survey of bibliographic organization by Verner Clapp and Kathrine Murra (2), provide the background for the period under review.

#### ADMINISTRATION

A survey (3), undertaken by the ALA Division of Cataloguing and Classification, on technical services in forty-eight large American libraries, shows a growing tendency towards the establishment of a Technical Services Division within a library and the closer co-ordination of the work, not only of the different technical services but also of the technical and public services—the latter by frequent consultations, exchange of staff duties, use of printed bibliographies instead of detailed cataloguing for certain sections of the stock and centralization of records. All the libraries report centralized cataloguing, though most make exceptions for certain departmental or otherwise specialized material. Lucile Morsch (4) emphasizes the importance of scientific management in cataloguing. Every step should be questioned: Is it necessary? If so, who should do it? How best should it be done?

The most extensive management study of a cataloguing department yet undertaken was made by a firm of management engineers for the New York Public Library, where not only all steps in the work were examined for efficiency and economy, but the disposition of furniture and equipment were considered as well (5).

Felix Reichmann (6) has made a useful résumé of methods used in assessing the cost of cataloguing and of the results obtained, but nearly all the work he summarizes was undertaken before 1951. He does tabulate the results of an enquiry of his own into the organization and costs of cataloguing in forty American college and university libraries covering the two years 1950-51 and 1951-52, but he concludes: "Differences in definition and administrative organization have proved so conspicuous that the tabulation of output cannot be regarded as an instrument of comparison, but only as a means of easy surveying." Time per title catalogued he finds a better standard unit than cost in money. He concludes that "a significant decrease in cataloguing costs . . . can only be achieved by a change in policy, especially with regard to subject approach."

The value of centralized processing for a number of autonomous libraries within a region varies with local conditions. Florence E. Harshé (?) reports that a regional library service centre in New York State has proved "a tremendous boon to local librarians" in very small public libraries, but other discussions<sup>(8)</sup> suggest that larger American libraries would, on balance, gain little by establishing a regional centre in preference to continued use of the national central card distribution agency of the Library of Congress. During the year 1954-55 some 10,000 libraries throughout the world purchased a total of 23,450,243 catalogue cards produced by this library! The total income from sales "represented an 87.7 per cent recovery of the sum appropriated for Card Division operations during fiscal 1955"<sup>(9)</sup>. During that year nearly 800 publishers deposited advance copies, so that cards for nearly one-third of the books received were ready for distribution by date of publication. Cards for most remaining titles were ready within four weeks of publication date. Orders for cards were generally filled within three days of receipt<sup>(10)</sup>. These figures show an increase in the number of cards and in speed of distribution in comparison with figures quoted two years previously by Alex Ladensen in a description of the work of the Division<sup>(11)</sup>.

A new printed card distribution service was begun in 1951 by the publishing house of Fides<sup>(12)</sup> in collaboration with the Association Canadienne des Bibliothécaires de Langue Française. Author entries with tracings for forty-eight recently published French books are produced each month, following the ALA Code and the latest list of subject headings used by *Biblio*. Symbols indicate suitability for various classes of readers. Cards may be bought by the complete set for the year, by a set of a single card for each title, or singly, at the librarian's choice. A new card distribution service is now available in Roumania, on compulsory subscription, for Roumanian publications. Issued by the Ministry of Culture, the cards give a brief descriptive entry, a decimal class mark and short annotation<sup>(13)</sup>. In August 1949 the Government of Upper Austria established a centralized cataloguing service in Linz. Duplicated cards, following the Prussian Instructions, are available to all participating libraries<sup>(14)</sup>. In Great Britain Harrods' admirable but limited card service had unfortunately to be discontinued at the end of 1951. The British National Bibliography, however, proposes to issue cards, photographed from *B.N.B.* entries, for all the books it catalogues from January 1956.

K. A. Lodewycks<sup>(15)</sup> proposes that a proof copy of each book should be deposited with the national library of its country of origin, where a set of catalogue cards could be prepared. The book could then be published with a main catalogue entry printed on the verso of the title page, and sold accompanied by a set of catalogue cards. Delay in cataloguing would thus be done away with and universal standardization of cataloguing would be brought nearer. A similar idea for "pre-natal cataloguing" is propounded by Dr. Ranganathan<sup>(16)</sup>.

## CO-OPERATION AND UNION CATALOGUES

Co-operation between several agencies handling reports of American Government-sponsored research has resulted in a standard format and procedure for their catalogues, so that cards from any of the agencies can be interfiled into

the others' catalogues. The card chosen has a right-hand margin to take subject headings and tracings for added author entries, while the body of the card is used for descriptive cataloguing and an abstract. This pattern was chosen because, properly laid out, the cards could easily be photographed for indexes and bibliographies. Dwight E. Gray<sup>(17)</sup> illustrates his description of them with facsimiles.

A. H. Chaplin<sup>(18)</sup> discusses the requirements of co-operative cataloguing and its value, particularly as a means of analysing serial publications in the humanities, where fewer abstracting services exist than in the sciences.

The initiative of a number of librarians in Institutes of Education in Britain has recently resulted in the circulation of a duplicated index to about forty selected British educational journals. It is in two parts: (1) an alphabetical subject index; (2) an author index. Each part gives author, title and bibliographic reference. F. R. S. Fifoot<sup>(19)</sup> describes the method of compilation. Another example of such co-operative indexing is a union catalogue of portraits of medical men being compiled by five American libraries<sup>(20)</sup>. Three large libraries have been making their own analytical indexes available to others: the Berlin Stadtbibliothek<sup>(21)</sup> has been issuing since January 1952 a catalogue of articles in about 800 periodicals, mostly in sociology and science; the Colón Library<sup>(22)</sup> publishes a monthly list of about 300 selected articles on Latin America; and the School of Oriental and African Studies in the University of London has begun publication of a duplicated annual list of periodical articles on the Far East<sup>(23)</sup>. This is in addition to the retrospective analytical catalogue being prepared there, of which the scope, form and methods of compilation are described by the librarian, J. D. Pearson<sup>(23a)</sup>.

Established union catalogues continue to increase in size, new ones to develop. A wide-ranging survey of national and regional union catalogues existing in 1950, by Franz Schmitt<sup>(24)</sup>, ends with a brief note on each of the many German union catalogues begun since 1939. A succinct account of the last year's work of the Union Catalogue Division of the Library of Congress<sup>(25)</sup> gives the contents of the United States National Union Catalogue and its supplements as approximately 13,500,000 cards and the total number of requests for locations as 18,861, of which 79 per cent were answered satisfactorily. A national centre for a union catalogue of Italian libraries was founded in Rome in 1951. It is intended to amalgamate the records of all the State libraries in Rome, and subsequently those of the National Libraries in Florence, Milan and Naples. The centre is described by its Director, Professor Scarafoni<sup>(26)</sup> (27). In France a union catalogue of foreign works acquired since January 1, 1952, is being compiled. Paul-Henri Michel<sup>(28)</sup> suggests that this might best be compiled in three chronological sequences, (1) before 1501, (2) 1501-1800, (3) 1801 onwards, and that a standard printed form might be used for the modern catalogue, avoiding superfluous bibliographical details. He would like also to separate into two sequences entries under authors' names and title-entries.

In a survey of library co-operation in Great Britain, R. F. Vollans<sup>(29)</sup> examined the National Union Catalogue and the various regional catalogues, only one of these, the London Union Catalogue, being found up to date. He concluded that such catalogues do serve a useful purpose, and recommended selection of entries reported and greater regional self-sufficiency. Further

recommendations<sup>(30)</sup> have been made to strengthen the regional catalogues and to limit the scope of the national union catalogue. The first of the four volumes of the great British Union Catalogue of Periodicals has now appeared<sup>(31)</sup>. Union catalogues are of great importance in Germany where the best use must be made of resources reduced by war damage. The Berlin Union Catalogue<sup>(32)</sup> is being compiled by teams of trained cataloguers who go out to the various contributing libraries. Students helped in compiling entries from university libraries for the union catalogue in Sachsen-Anhalt<sup>(33)</sup>. In Austria<sup>(34)</sup> proposals have been made for a selective union subject catalogue. D. T. Richnell<sup>(35)</sup> discusses certain existing subject union catalogues, from the point of view of purpose, form, method and practicability.

Two new union catalogues in a restricted subject field have been established by the (British) Institutes of Education: one of book holdings, the other of periodicals. The former is maintained on cards at the Birmingham Institute; the latter, already twice revised, has been issued to the participating libraries as a duplicated list<sup>(36)</sup>. A new union catalogue<sup>(37)</sup> has been published in Italy of the periodical holdings in philosophy, history, philology and fine arts of twenty-four libraries in Rome and two in Florence. It contains 8,771 titles and goes up to the end of 1953.

### CHOICE OF CATALOGUE

Where the tradition of the classified catalogue is strongest—in Germany and in scientific libraries<sup>(38)</sup><sup>(39)</sup>—the classified catalogue is upheld. O. C. Hilgenberg<sup>(40)</sup> advocates an international classified catalogue using the Universal Decimal Classification *à la* Brown<sup>(41)</sup>; that is, placing all applications and aspects of a subject at the UDC number for the “concrete” subject (amplified by columned numbers), and relying on a full, relative index to lead to the “one place” in the catalogue. Franz Grasberger<sup>(42)</sup>, however, argues in favour of a “*systematischer Schlagwortkatalog*,” a sort of alphabetic-classed catalogue; and Helmut Kind<sup>(43)</sup> gives the history of the alphabetical subject catalogue of the Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek of Halle, followed by a code for its compilation. The permanence of the alphabetical subject catalogue is tacitly assumed in the many American articles which suggest ways of improving it<sup>(44)</sup>.

It is by no means a complacent assumption. Carlyle J. Frarey<sup>(45)</sup> lists twenty-seven studies on the use of the catalogue which have appeared between 1931 and 1951, the most thorough of these being an investigation of the use made of the subject catalogue in the University of California Library. Le Roy Charles Merritt<sup>(46)</sup>, reporting on this survey, finds that the catalogue is consulted chiefly for books in English published during the last twenty-five years. One may wonder if it were indeed worth disturbing Hamlet's ghost for this, but O. L. Lilley<sup>(47)</sup> suggests that better-planned surveys on a larger scale could yield useful information on co-ordinating the use of card catalogues and bibliographies and on selective cataloguing. He also wonders whether a different approach might not succeed<sup>(48)</sup>. One man might examine existing writings on the subject catalogue, determine the catalogue's function and state its specific aims for public criticism. Then tentative proposals for new methods and equipment might be tried out co-operatively. From this might emerge

some rules for the subject catalogue, based on conditions not of seventy years ago but of today. The Library of Congress has set up a committee to consider what changes might be made in the Library's general catalogues<sup>(49)</sup>, and has already established a series of priorities and categories for cataloguing, to some of which simplified and limited cataloguing are to be applied<sup>(50)</sup>.

Cataloguers, too, have been surveyed in twelve public libraries in the United States and Canada<sup>(51)</sup>, and R. H. Gjelsness<sup>(52)</sup> notes that cataloguers in the United States have great freedom of movement, there being more positions open than trained librarians to fill them. Some account of the catalogues compiled in British libraries is given in a series of papers read at a vacation course of the University of London School of Librarianship and Archives<sup>(53)</sup>.

## REVISION OF CODES

The most important cataloguing activity of the last few years is undoubtedly the determined effort which is being made in many countries to revise national codes for author and title entries. The dismay which greeted the 1949 edition of the *ALA Cataloging rules* was galvanized into constructive action by the publication of Seymour Lubetzky's critique<sup>(54)</sup>, which pointed to inconsistencies and absurdities, notably in the rules' treatment of corporate authorship, and laid down certain principles and conditions on which a new code might be based. The Lubetzky report, embodying "what oft was thought but ne'er so well expressed," has been discussed throughout the United States, notably in a symposium by experts in different aspects of librarianship<sup>(55)</sup>. Certain of its proposals have been discussed in detail (generally in the *Journal of Cataloging and Classification*), for example, Elizabeth Borden's discussion of its proposals concerning serial publications<sup>(56)</sup> and Oliver Kapsner's supplementary code for Roman Catholic author and title entries<sup>(57)</sup>. Law librarians are particularly unhappy about existing rules for much of the material they handle. The Chicago Association of Law Libraries has held two workshops on law library problems, at the second of which<sup>(58)</sup> they discussed proposals put forward by a Committee of the American Association of Law Libraries for the revision of the ALA code rules dealing with laws, legislative bills, law reports and treaties and for the establishment of filing titles. The Committee's report and final recommendations<sup>(59)</sup> were adopted by the American Association of Law Libraries in 1954, with a view to securing their incorporation in any revised version of the Code. Werner B. Ellinger<sup>(60)</sup> and Seymour Lubetzky<sup>(61)</sup> have also argued about "non-author" headings. Wyllis E. Wright<sup>(62)</sup> has summarized the movement in the United States to discover the proper purpose of cataloguing and "the proper content of a code of cataloguing rules to serve that purpose."

What appears to be emerging from all these discussions is a desire for a code which shall state general rules (to which particular cases shall be subject) and which shall clarify its terminology and sharpen its definitions. It would be a simpler code than the one it replaced in that the rules would be fewer and the ordering of them more logical. Statements by the Secretary of the (British) Library Association's Sub-Committee on Cataloguing Rules Revision<sup>(63)</sup><sup>(64)</sup> show that this committee is thinking along the same lines. The British and American committees are in contact and the outline for a new code

published by the American committee (65) is entirely in sympathy with British views.

The British Museum's rules for author and title entry are also being reconsidered (66), with particular timeliness, since for the past five years the Museum and the British National Bibliography have been cataloguing the same copies of the same books under the same roof—in their different fashions. Adaptations and interpretations of the Anglo-American code used in the *B.N.B.* are explained by its editor (67).

That librarians are determined to simplify their catalogues for the reader's benefit is suggested by the action of three libraries which have recently instituted a change in cataloguing practice, anticipating the publication of new codes. M. Ruth MacDonald (68) describes the complete reorganization of cataloguing in the Armed Forces Medical Library. There corporate names appear in the form used in the piece being catalogued; serials are entered under the form of author's name and/or title in use at the time of cataloguing; hospitals, because of the "multiplicity and variant forms of popular hospital names," are entered under place. A similar change to a more direct form of entry was instituted during 1955 in the library of University College, London (69). In the Headquarters Library of the Department of Scientific and Industrial Research even the publications of foreign Government departments receive direct entry under their own names, without being preceded by the name of their country, since the recataloguing introduced by Ruth Jacobs (70).

Work on catalogue code revision in France has been summarized by Paule Salvan (71). A preliminary draft, with topics arranged in alphabetical order, was prepared by the Direction des Bibliothèques de France and circulated by l'Association française de Normalisation (72). "For the final version, it seemed desirable to give consideration to a systematic form of presentation in which an effort would be made, not to enumerate cases in too much detail, but to define the principles which should guide the librarian in his work." The most important chapters of the new code are being circulated in draft form for comment. Hitherto publications of corporate bodies have been regarded as anonymous and entered under the first word of the title, but it has now been recognized that the name of an institution or scientific society may well be the medium most useful to a reader in finding its publications. (Indeed, the Bibliothèque Nationale has been applying this new conception of authorship in its catalogues since January 1, 1952.) The draft rules for choice of headings for corporate bodies (73) (74), unhampered by any tradition of subtle distinctions between societies and institutions or of geographical headings, advocate direct entry, such as Université de Lyon, Museo civico di Genova [Gênes], though official publications are to be entered under the name of the country or other administrative area for which they are valid. In addition to the heading, all other points of descriptive cataloguing are being considered. A reconsideration of the rules for works by personal authors, anonyma and periodicals is still to be undertaken, and rules for alphabetical subject catalogues are also to be prepared.

Revision of cataloguing rules in Spain is not a matter of urgency since a code published in 1945 is in general use. A committee has been established in the hope of unifying cataloguing rules for all Spanish-speaking countries (75).

In Germany the *Preussische Instruktionen* are also under review (76). A committee appointed by the Verband der Bibliotheken des Landes Nordrhein-

Westfalen has been considering this code since 1949<sup>(77)</sup>, and has published a series of booklets<sup>(78)</sup> discussing the different sections of the code and suggesting possible revision of presentation and terminology, rules for authors' names and foronyms and for alphabetical arrangement. A similar committee<sup>(79)</sup> has also been set up in the German Democratic Republic, where a simplified code for the use of public libraries has already been issued<sup>(80)</sup>. Joris Vorstius<sup>(81)</sup> gives reasons why revision is necessary, notably to provide essential rules which were not given in the last edition, and offers his own code for the author-and-title catalogue in learned libraries. Vorstius's proposals and draft rules are compared with those of the West German committee by Hermann Fuchs<sup>(82)</sup>, who is himself convinced that the *Prussian Instructions* will long remain the rules for ordering German author and title catalogues, and has written a very full Commentary<sup>(83)</sup> designed to make the *Instructions* easier to understand and to apply. A particular problem which confronts the committee is whether to adhere to the time-honoured arrangement of titles by *Substantivum regens* or to arrange by the first word not an article. The latter would bring German practice into line with that of other countries and would also simplify cataloguing and filing, but it would entail a vast amount of recataloguing in German libraries. Robert Samulski<sup>(84)</sup> and Ludwig Sickmann<sup>(85)</sup> both examine this problem, which is open to a variety of solutions. Walter Bauhuis<sup>(86)</sup> also emphasizes the need for simplified rules and for degressive cataloguing, in view of the urgent need to build up new catalogues in Germany.

In the Soviet Union<sup>(87)</sup> standard rules for cataloguing different kinds of materials are being issued in parts, those for books, periodicals, maps and musical scores having appeared between 1949 and 1954 and those for special categories of technical literature (e.g., standard specifications) being in preparation. A second set of standard rules, based on the same principles but simpler, has already been published for smaller libraries. One of the tasks identified by the Inter-Library Cataloguing Committee which is revising the rules is "to give a precise definition of the types of literature to be entered under the various categories: (a) individual authors or compilers; (b) corporate authors; (c) form subheadings; (d) titles." (It is now being recognized generally that this task is of prime importance—"Make bright your dagger definitions.") The Ministry of Culture in the U.S.S.R.<sup>(88)</sup> has decreed that all public libraries must have alphabetical catalogues within a stipulated period, according to their resources.

In Poland the Directorate-General of Polish Libraries has recently undertaken the preparation of new cataloguing rules<sup>(89)</sup>. In Turkey descriptive cataloguing rules have been published as an issue of the Bulletin of the Association of Turkish Librarians<sup>(90)</sup>.

In Japan the post-war demand for an adequate standard code and the need for cataloguing books in Western languages and alphabets as well as in Japanese and Chinese have led to the publication of a new code for the latter, much influenced by the American codes, and to the adoption of the American codes for the former<sup>(91)</sup>.

Some of these developments have been summarized by H. R. Klieneberger<sup>(92)</sup>, who sees in "the fact that criticism of existing codes as well as conceptions of new codes are taking similar forms in all countries" a good augury for the international standardization of cataloguing rules.

## UNIFICATION OF CATALOGUING RULES

When Sigmund von Fraucndorfer<sup>(98)</sup> summarized the main differences between the Anglo-American and the German codes—in the sections concerning corporate authorship, periodicals and anonyma—he recommended acceptance of the more widely used Anglo-American principles and expressed the hope that I.F.L.A. might provide the impetus for some *rapprochement*. This hope has been realized to the extent that I.F.L.A.'s Committee on Cataloguing Principles<sup>(94)</sup> presented a resolution, adopted unanimously at the Zagreb meeting in 1954, that a working party should examine and report on the co-ordination of cataloguing principles. The working party was to include experts in the principal cataloguing codes and representatives of the principal linguistic groups. Their first task was to examine "the possibility of reaching agreement on the principles to be observed in establishing main entries for anonyma and works of corporate authorship, the latter with special reference to Government publications." The Working Party's Report<sup>(95)</sup> (96), after further meetings at the International Congress of Libraries and Documentation Centres at Brussels in 1955, announced agreement on entry under title as a mechanical sequence of words; recognition of corporate authorship, at least for certain limited classes of documents; and growing support for the use of the most specific headings available, for the avoidance of geographical or class headings and for the adoption of the most frequently used form of a name. There remain, however, large areas of disagreement over anonyma and corporate authorship. Provisional recommendations are made defining corporate authorship and anonymous publication, but questions still unresolved include the linguistic form to be adopted for headings (particularly geographical ones), whether the title page alone should guide the cataloguer and whether there should be one permanently established form of heading for an author or potentially many.

The requirements of an international cataloguing code fall into three categories, according to S. R. Ranganathan<sup>(97)</sup>. They are: (1) choice of author heading; (2) sequence of terms in the heading; (3) style of writing. He also declared that a detailed comparative study of existing codes was a necessary preliminary to the study of an international code and himself proceeded to provide such a study<sup>(98)</sup>. From comparison he goes on to recommendation—to enter corporate bodies directly under their names, periodicals under their titles unless they are "of corporate authorship and not merely of corporate sponsorship" and to follow the title page of the book in hand. He is a member of I.F.L.A.'s Working Party, and has published a further detailed study of the problems of corporate authorship<sup>(99)</sup>. Another contribution towards the solution of this particular problem is Marga Franck's<sup>(100)</sup> comparison between methods of listing serials in different bibliographies and catalogues.

There are still many linguistic difficulties in the way of international standardization, though some progress has already been made towards their elimination. For the West, a major problem is the correct rendering of Asian names, and Unesco hopes to consider this. Ranganathan<sup>(101)</sup> has summarized the various practices current in Asia, comparing them with European practice. Francis L. Kent<sup>(102)</sup> writes on the progress of transliteration. Most serious

attempts at transliteration have been directed at romanizing a non-roman script; they should represent only the spelling of the original, making no attempt to give an idea of the pronunciation also. Appended to his article is the I.S.O. (108) recommendation for the transliteration of Cyrillic characters. Two systems currently in use for transliterating Japanese also present problems (104). The acceptance of an international standard for transliteration, as well as of standards for bibliographical description, is a pre-requisite for the establishment of an international code for abbreviations, as F. L. Kent (106) points out, in describing the I.S.O.'s recent work on standardizing abbreviations (106), which differs little from the 1930 standard.

### SPECIAL MATERIALS

Attempts to avoid wasteful duplication of records and to speed up handling in preparation and reference work have led to better methods of dealing with materials which, because of their physical form, are best kept as special collections. Andrew Osborn (107) has provided an authoritative work on the treatment of serial publications in libraries, illustrated from a variety of practice. He considers the visible index to be the best physical form of serials catalogue that has yet been tried. It should be designed as a multi-purpose record and, particularly where the collection is large and clerical help is used in checking accessions, title-entry (as opposed to the name of an issuing body reduced to the nominative form) has much to recommend it. He says, "The only sound practice is for a library to describe what it has. It should be axiomatic that serial librarians catalogue what they have in hand, not what they lack. This is a principle of economy. It does not result in questionable bibliography and it does not confuse readers." He also says, "So significant for scholarship and research are card catalogues that contain a record of basic articles in periodicals, in addition to the usual entries for books, that libraries should consider seriously whether devotion to the details of descriptive cataloguing is all clear gain. Would it be better to put some of this time and effort into indexing the contents of important but unindexed serials?" Details of serial cataloguing have also been discussed by others (108-110), particularly in *Serial slants*, a new quarterly periodical devoted entirely to the collection, organization and use of serials in libraries (110).

Publications of governments and of international organizations fall for the most part into series and can often be best administered by maintaining their serial order. A. Ethelyn Markley (112), surveying the practice of several libraries, finds that treatment varies and that even large collections are sometimes integrated with the rest of the bookstock. Advice to librarians who collect the bulk of United Nations publications is not to attempt cataloguing for the greater portion of these documents (113-116).

Music is also best treated as a separate collection. Franz Grasberger (117) offers his ideal arrangement of author entries in a catalogue of printed music (based on Robert Eitner's order), and suggests (118) that libretti should have title-entry in the language of the original, with necessary extensions and cross-references, the title-catalogue being supplemented by a name-catalogue for composers, librettists and translators. He is a member of the sub-committee appointed by the Katalogausschuss des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen to consider

the cataloguing of music<sup>(119)</sup>. Manuscript music collections are likely to contain much anonymous material, as W. Dehennin<sup>(120)</sup> discovered while sorting out seventeenth- and eighteenth-century church music in Amsterdam. He found it necessary to compile a thematic catalogue, giving the first three bars of the melody, and to make up his own rules.

In A. R. Cameron's<sup>(121)</sup> experience, requests for technical reports suggest that they should be traceable by (a) subject, (b) personal author or (c) issuing body, (d) reference number in a series, (e) vague description. He notes that many unpublished reports carry index cards and suggests that printed summaries are so useful that they should be preserved in the catalogue. A standardized form of cataloguing for reports adopted by a number of American research agencies has already been mentioned (p. 196-197)<sup>(17)</sup>; and indexing techniques are dealt with on pages 207-208 and also 230-233.

Evelyn Hensel<sup>(122)</sup> notes the increase in collections of non-book materials and has summarized the methods by which libraries catalogue archives, films, phonorecords, maps and pictures. She refers to two recent descriptive cataloguing codes published by the Library of Congress for phonorecords and films<sup>(123)</sup><sup>(124)</sup>. Unesco<sup>(125)</sup> is now working out an international standard system for cataloguing films and film-strips, which would (1) describe, (2) evaluate and (3) indicate availability of the films. National centres would be essential to make and distribute such catalogue entries, for which cards are suggested. The (British) National Film Library has published the third edition of its rules<sup>(126)</sup>, which differ from the Unesco rules in entering all versions under the original title of release and, so far as possible, in the language of the original work. Bernard Chibnall<sup>(127)</sup> says this practice is essential in this library, though not in a smaller library, and very useful in compiling a union catalogue. A number of special indexes, including a UDC subject index, are also kept. Margaret Dean-Smith<sup>(128)</sup> makes comprehensive proposals for cataloguing gramophone records in a library of national scope. She recommends three parts to the catalogue: (1) title-index; (2) artist-index; (3) composer-index. In her own experience in the gramophone library of the B.B.C., main entry under title had proved most convenient, so briefer entries appear in the other indexes. The Illinois State Library<sup>(129)</sup> makes entries under author, Decimal Classification number, L.C. subject heading, composer and title, with analytical entries for all performers. Polly Tucker Jones<sup>(130)</sup> lists seventeen articles on cataloguing microfilm, from which she deduces that most libraries follow the same procedure of describing the original work according to standard cataloguing rules and appending notes on the reduced copy. The provisional rules offered by a working party set up by the Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare and reported by E. Zimmermann<sup>(131)</sup> do not seem to be materially different.

## SUBJECT CATALOGUING

With the increase in size of library collections, the great American dictionary catalogue is showing signs of strain. What can be done about it? David Judson Haykin<sup>(132)</sup>, supports, with examples drawn from Library of Congress practice, the conventional structure, with its "specific and direct" headings, though he admits certain illogicalities and confusions. E. J. Coates<sup>(133)</sup>, I suspect, is undermining it. He discerns four trends in cataloguing

since Cutter's time: (1) economics; (2) tendency to forgo specific entry for the advantage of related subject collocation or group structure in the catalogue; (3) time-lag between the appearance of a new subject and the emergence of an unequivocal name for it; (4) horror of the alphabetic-classed catalogue. In specialist libraries "the subject cataloguer is obliged to utilize a technique whereby heading and subheading in combination are made to serve the purpose of subject description and definition rather than subject naming—for in these cases there are no names." "If a fetish is not to be made of mere alphabetic sequence," says Jack C. Morris<sup>(134)</sup>, "librarians will strive . . . to bring related data or concepts into juxtapositions in the catalogue without destroying its alphabetic character, using inversion or parenthetical modifiers if necessary when simpler noun constructions are impossible. . . . As a rule of thumb, the totality of subject headings chosen for a card catalogue should be no more complex than the main headings (minus topical subdivisions) found in a modern abstract-index system such as *Chemical Abstracts*." Convenient groups for searching can be made by chronological and form division. Edge-notched cards could be coded for differentiation when too many entries for manual searching had accumulated behind any one guide-card. Haykin<sup>(135)</sup> himself admits elsewhere, when speaking of the materials other than books which the present-day librarian must catalogue, that time-honoured methods of cataloguing and classification may have to be abandoned in favour of a more pragmatic approach—the way the reader seeks for his material.

Oliver Linton Lilly<sup>(136)</sup> questions whether the librarian's conception of specificity and the reader's really coincide. Carlyle J. Frarey<sup>(137)</sup> admits that insufficient is known about users' requirements for an unchallengeable statement about the objectives of subject cataloguing to be made, though he, too, finds that "the pragmatic approach is in the ascendant," and an alphabetical quick-reference finding tool is required rather than a scholarly bibliography or a logical and systematic arrangement of fields of knowledge. Margaret Egan<sup>(138)</sup> supports this view with evidence of a shift in emphasis from abstract to concrete and highly specific terminology. She is contributing to a symposium on the subject analysis of library materials<sup>(139)</sup> sponsored by the School of Library Service at Columbia. Among the twenty papers read there, on classification and cataloguing, subject headings are dealt with generally and also specially in the Humanities, the Social Sciences and in Pure and Applied Science. Another symposium<sup>(140)</sup>, on selection and standards of subject headings for use in university, college, public, industrial relations and scientific libraries, contains a bibliography of subject headings lists made between 1938 and 1952. Four of these are for Aeronautics; yet another, for the *Air University Periodical Index*, is described by Robert K. Johnson<sup>(141)</sup>. There direct or indirect headings are chosen so far as possible according to members' usage—members refer, apparently, to the Air Force (Russia) and to the Royal Netherlands Navy.

The new subject-heading authority list for the Armed Forces Medical Library's *Current List*<sup>(142)</sup> emerged from a large-scale experiment dealing with the problems and methods, particularly machine methods, of indexing and classifying medical literature. Sanford V. Larkey<sup>(143)</sup> and Seymour I. Taine<sup>(144)</sup> describe how existing indexes were found to lack standardization, so headings from them were typed on to cards and sorted into categories where it was

easier to detect discrepancies. Headings were then transferred to punched cards and printed and were then compared with those used by other authorities. An alphabetical list was also evolved of ninety subheadings—"standard words or phrases representing concepts of frequent occurrence in bio-medical literature and therefore useful for purposes of grouping." Eugene Garfield<sup>(145)</sup> explains simply how punched cards can be used to permit frequent publication of subject-heading lists and to standardize the lists and avoid synonymous headings. An appendix gives directions for using punched cards thus.

A list of subject headings in Glass Technology has been devised by a number of librarians interested in that field<sup>(146)</sup>. Problems in choosing up-to-date subject headings in Literature are discussed by Robert A. Colby<sup>(147)</sup>; in Social Welfare by Louise Beitzell<sup>(148)</sup>; for Children's Books by Thera P. Cavender<sup>(149)</sup>. Johanna E. Allerding<sup>(150)</sup> sorts out form subheadings for the various forms of periodical bibliographies. Sidney L. Jackson<sup>(151)</sup> reports on the practice in thirty libraries of dividing broad subjects by date, either of imprint or of period of publication.

Four quotations: "The primary purpose of the subject catalogue is to show which books on a specific subject the library possesses" (Haykin, ref. 132); "Absolute specificity should be rejected unremittingly" (Morris, ref. 134); "How specific is 'specific'" (Lilley, ref. 136); "There are no degrees of specificity" (Coates, ref. 133). Is this why eyes are turning hopefully towards the classified catalogue<sup>(89)</sup> <sup>(152)</sup> <sup>(153)</sup>, the mechanical selector<sup>(154)</sup>, and the co-ordinate index<sup>(167-173)</sup>.

In the opinion of Margaret Slater and Lorna Fraser<sup>(155)</sup>, division of a dictionary catalogue is not necessarily an advantage. They prefer the newly amalgamated dictionary catalogue in Toronto University Library to the three sequences—authors, subjects, periodicals—which existed previously. They found a separate subject-file both difficult and costly to maintain.

Methods of filing have also been under review in the general attempt to make catalogues easier to consult. D. C. Allen<sup>(156)</sup> is in favour of the time-honoured arrangement of "nothing before something" and grouping of identical-word headings. He notes that existing rules for forming headings sometimes conflict with filing requirements. Harvard College Library<sup>(157)</sup> has been surveying its filing practice in a series of working parties and has now instituted various changes towards simplification and a more mechanical process of filing, with greater use of specifically created filing titles. For example, modified vowels have been spelled out in headings; numerals are now filed as if the base number were written in the language of the title, with subsequent figures occurring in ordinal sequence, e.g., [Sieben . . . 77] Sieben und siebenzig Gedichte; and works of voluminous authors contain the complete filing guide in the heading, e.g., Shakespeare. Macbeth. English. 1939. Kittredge. The New York Public Library<sup>(158)</sup> has also been studying its filing rules and has introduced a new code having more in common with the approach of people with no library background. Certainly training-time for filers has been reduced—from ten days to three or four. Ludwig Sickmann<sup>(159)</sup> reports that it was not until 1954 that any support was forthcoming for a change in the rules in the *Prussian Instructions* for the alphabetical arrangement of title-entries. There now appears to be some support for a "mechanical" as opposed to a "grammatical" order.

## INDEXING

The techniques of more detailed subject indexing provide an interesting variety. J. Edwin Holmstrom<sup>(160)</sup> and R. L. Collison<sup>(161)</sup> have each produced a general guide to indexing many different kinds of material, including individual books, and book-indexing is also the subject of a useful pamphlet by Sina Spiker<sup>(162)</sup>. Highly specialized index entries to reports are made in the Netherlands National Luchtvaartlaboratorium for the N.L.L. Card Catalogue of Aeronautical Measurements. This is an international card service, cataloguing published aerodynamic measurements on edge-punched cards. The cards are described by R. A. Fairthorne<sup>(163)</sup>, who illustrates his article with a photograph of one of the cards. It is headed with a brief title, reference number in its series and date; below come a longer descriptive title and the author's name; then follow pictorial and verbal details of the part tested, with measurements. The cards are facsimile reproductions of hand-drawn originals. The method of producing an entry is described by K. J. Staples and M. M. Shaw<sup>(164)</sup> as being a collaboration of two indexers, who first go through the manuscript independently and submit their final list of subjects to the author. The value of the catalogue to users is assessed by H. F. Vessey<sup>(165)</sup>, who says, "Success of retrieval is high and the system appears to be a promising means of fine retrieval of technical information. . . . The system allows retrieval by edge punching of subject headings and retrieval is possible by searching for the combinations of subject headings. It is essentially a fine retrieval system and is distinguished from other retrieval and library systems by the use of only one card for each report." Cyril Cleverdon<sup>(166)</sup>, however, considers that the time taken to answer a complicated question by means of information sought through this catalogue is too long.

After attempting to follow standard library practice for subject headings in the Library of Congress's Science and Technology Project much as it was followed for the Library's main collections, Mortimer Taube<sup>(167)</sup> concluded "that standard library subject-heading practice is inapplicable in principle to the specific indexing or cataloguing of scientific articles or reports." He then applied a new system of reports-indexing developed by Documentation Inc., Washington, by which no attempt was made to produce a subject heading coextensive with the subject of the report; instead a series of single terms connected with the separate ideas combined in the report's subject were entered on separate cards, each bearing the (serial) call number of the report. The cards were then filed alphabetically under the terms. The information thus scattered could be retrieved by looking for all the single terms which would make up the statement of information required, and, of these, keeping those with a common serial call number<sup>(168-171)</sup>. It is difficult to evaluate this system because it has not been applied elsewhere to a large number of items over a long period. A limited experiment with it was made by Cleverdon and R. G. Thorne<sup>(172)</sup>, and C. D. Gull<sup>(173)</sup>, reporting on an experiment within the United States Armed Services Technical Information Agency, to compare Uniterm Indexing with a conventional subject-heading catalogue, finds the new system quicker to make entries for and quicker and more efficient in retrieval, though he admits that this single, first experiment, with too many variables, cannot be accepted as proof. He adds, however, that "a number of organizations, forty or fifty at least, have adopted the new system and are using it in their daily operations."

B. C. Vickery<sup>(174)</sup> and other members of the Classification Research Group<sup>(175)</sup> insist that a classification schedule must be the basis of any system of information retrieval, whether its final form is verbal or classified. Certainly Anthony Thompson<sup>(176)</sup> based his scheme for indexing periodical articles kept by the Royal Institute of British Architects firmly on classification. Within his own universe he found that the following categories were valid: (1) Realization, i.e., the thing made; (2) Material; (3) Processes and problems encountered in turning (2) into (1); (4) Place; (5) Time; (6) Form.

The alphabetical index to the classified catalogue has itself become more logical through the application of chain-indexing principles, whereby step by step each class is indexed, proceeding from a particular entity, through superordinate classes to its universe<sup>(177)</sup><sup>(178)</sup>. The method is less successful when applied to a dictionary catalogue<sup>(179)</sup>.

### MECHANICAL METHODS OF CARD REPRODUCTION

Photography has been used as a means of reproducing catalogue entries speedily and with the use of little man-power. The University of Washington Library<sup>(180)</sup> used it to create a duplicate catalogue for part of the collection which was being transferred to a branch library by producing six copies of the relevant main entries from the central catalogue and typing in as many secondary headings as were necessary. Title pages themselves were photographed to give a microfilm catalogue in several Berlin libraries<sup>(181)</sup> and in the Evangelical Library, London<sup>(182)</sup>. No saving in cost is claimed since the materials cost more than materials for a typed-card catalogue and so discount the saving in labour.

Technical details of the Roto 30 Spezial duplicating machine, used in the University Library in Freiburg im Breisgau, are given by R. Feger<sup>(183)</sup>; methods and costs of the Roneo 300 Duplicator, used in Lindsey and Holland County Library, are given by A. C. Curtis and R. F. Smith<sup>(184)</sup>; and methods and costs of an Addressall Machine, used in Hornsey Public Libraries, are given by W. B. Stevenson<sup>(185)</sup>.

### TEACHING

The shift in emphasis from "technique" to "theory and principles" in American schools is noted without concern in a symposium on teaching cataloguing<sup>(186)</sup>, but Paul S. Dunkin<sup>(187)</sup> thinks that teaching has been too theoretical, that students should acquire "principles" in a few introductory lectures and then catalogue in as many different libraries as possible. The teacher "must read everything even remotely connected with cataloguing as soon as it appears," should spend part of every year working in a library and should also do research. (Maybe the transatlantic day has more than twenty-four hours.) It is generally thought that the basic American textbook on cataloguing is now somewhat out of date and another symposium of teachers, cataloguers and administrators<sup>(188)</sup> would like a more comprehensive work, to embrace the whole present-day syllabus. Meantime, a useful general textbook under the editorship of Maurice Tauber<sup>(189)</sup> has come from Columbia. Susan Grey Akers' *Simple library cataloguing*<sup>(190)</sup> has reached its fourth edition, C. G. Viswanathan<sup>(191)</sup> has written for his students in Benares a practical guide to making catalogues, illustrated with original examples, and Dorothy Norris<sup>(192)</sup> has prepared a primer for English students, to whom H. A. Sharp addresses a series of articles<sup>(193)</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

Print, near-print, micro-print, film, film-strip and recorded sound—they have come so near to overwhelming us that it has become vitally necessary to find the simplest effective way of organizing them for their collective and peculiar values. Critical examination of existing methods and experiment with new ones, clarification of obfuscated codes and increased co-operation have marked the cataloguer's struggle for survival over the last five years.

## REFERENCES

1. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953. (Bibliog.)
  2. CLAPP, V. W. and MURRA, K. O. The improvement of bibliographic organization. *Lib. Q.* 25 (1) 1955, 91-110.
- Administration*
3. SHAGETMAN, B. E., ed. Technical services: policy, organization and co-ordination. Report of a survey. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (2) 1955, 59-114.
  4. MOERSCH, L. M. Scientific management in cataloging. *Lib. Trends* 2 (3) 1954, 470-483. (Bibliog.)
  5. KINGERY, R. E. A management engineering look at cataloging. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (1) 1953, 52-56.
  6. REICHMANN, F. Costs of cataloguing. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953, 290-317. (Bibliog.)
  7. HARSHE, F. E. Processing procedures at the Watertown Regional Library Service Center. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (4) 1955, 217-220.
  8. *Ibid.*, 263-275.
  9. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 14 (35) 1955, 1.
  10. Annual report of the Librarian of Congress, 1955, p. 22.
  11. LADENSON, A. A study of the performance record of the Library of Congress Card Division. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 9 (2) 1953, 51-56.
  12. Service des Fiches de Catalogue. Fides, 25 cst, rue Saint-Jacques, Montreal.
  13. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 14 (32) 1955, 8.
  14. *Mitteilungen der VÖB* 4 (2) 1951, 5-6.
  15. LODIEWYCKI, K. A. The self-cataloguing book. *Aust. Lib. J.* 2 (2) 1953, 29-34.
  16. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Heading and canons: comparative study of five catalogue codes. Madras, S. Viswanathan; London, Blunt, 1955. pp. 298. (See p. 269.)
- Co-operation and Union Catalogues*
17. GRAY, D. E. The AEC, ASTIA, NACA catalog card. *Amer. Doc.* 2 (4) 1951, 219-224.
  18. CHAPLIN, A. H. Co-operative cataloguing. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (9) 1953, 275-278.
  19. FROOD, E. R. S. The Index to selected British educational periodicals. *Ibid.* 57 (10) 1955, 407-408. [The Index to select British educational periodicals, January, 1955- is issued three times a year for restricted circulation.]
  20. SZADITS, L. Medical illustrations and portraits, a brief survey of collections in America. *Eye to Eye: Bull. of the Graphic History Soc. of Am.* 3 December, 1953, 13-22.
  21. WESER, A. Der "Katalog der Zeitschriftenaufsätze" der Berliner Stadtbibliothek. *Bibliothekar* 6 (5) 1952, 283-285.
  22. KAUFMAN, H. Catalogación analítica de publicaciones periódicas. *Bol. Asoc. Crihana* 5 (4) 1953, 104-106.
  23. *The Far East and South-East Asia: a cumulated list of periodical articles*, May 1954-April 1955. London, School of Oriental and African Studies, 1955- annual.
  - 23a. PEARSON, J. D. The analytical cataloguing of periodicals in a specialized field. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (1) 1955, 1-7.
  24. SCHMIDT, F. Örtliche Gesamtkataloge. *Z. f. Bib.* 65 (7-8) 1951, 273-281; *Ibid.* (9-10) 1951, 355-383; *Ibid.* (11-12) 1951, 432-446. (Bibliog.)
  25. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 14 (31) 1955, 3.
  26. SCARAFONI, C. S. Il secondo anno dei lavori preparatori per il catalogo unico. *Atad. e Bib. d'Italia* 21 (5-6) 1953, 399-406.

27. SCARAFONI, C. S. The Union Catalogue of Italian Libraries. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (10) 1953, 214-215.
28. MICHEL, P.-H. Pour la réalisation des catalogues collectifs. *Libri* 5 (2) 1954, 162-171.
29. VOLLANS, R. F. Library co-operation in Great Britain. National Central Library, 1952. pp. xii, 139.
30. NATIONAL CENTRAL LIBRARY AND NATIONAL COMMITTEE ON REGIONAL LIBRARY CO-OPERATION. Recommendation on library co-operation, June 1954. N.C.L. 1954. pp. 7.
31. British Union-Catalogue of Periodicals: a record of the periodicals of the world, from the seventeenth century to the present day, in British libraries: ed. by James D. Stewart [and others]. Vol. 1-. Butterworths Scientific Publications, 1955-.
32. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 13 (5) 1954, 6.
33. JUNTKE, F. Zwei Jahre Zentralkatalog Sachsen-Anhalt. *Z. f. Bib.* 65 (5-6) 1951, 172-177.
34. *Mitteilungen der VÖB* 6 (2) 1953, 4-6; *Ibid.* 7 (2) 1954, 4-5.
35. RICHNBLL, D. T. Subject union catalogues. See ref. 53, pp. 76-87.
36. SAUNDERS, W. L. Bibliographical co-operation between the libraries of Institutes of Education. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (10) 1955, 405-407.
37. Catalogo delle pubblicazioni periodiche esistenti in varie biblioteche di Roma e Firenze. Città del Vaticano, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, 1955. pp. xvi, 496. (Sold by l'Indice di Arte Cristiana, Via Napoleone III, n.l., Roma.)

#### Choice of Catalogue

38. SAUVENIER-GOFFIN, E. Le catalogue par matières d'une bibliothèque universitaire. *Archives . . . de Belgique* 25 (1) 1954, 57-67.
39. FOSKETT, D. J. Catalogue and reference service. *Librarian* 41 (11) 1952, 213-218.
40. HILGENBERG, O. C. Der flächenhafte Realkatalog mit Dezimal-Klassifikation und Schlagwortregister. *Z. f. Bib.* 67 (7-8) 1953, 254-287; *Ibid.* (9-10) 1953, 342-357. (Bibliog.)
41. BROWN, J. D. Subject classification. 3rd ed. Grafton, 1939. (See Introduction, pp. 7-10.)
42. GRASBERGER, F. Systematischer Schlagwortkatalog. *Z. f. Bib.* 65 (7-8) 1951, 260-273.
43. KIND, H. Der Schlagwortkatalog der Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek Halle (Saale). Leipzig, Harrassowitz, 1953. pp. 89. (76. Beiheft zum *Z. f. Bib.*)
44. *J. of Cat. and Class., passim.*
45. TAUBER, M. F., ed. The subject analysis of library materials. Papers presented at an Institute, June 24-28, 1952. New York, Columbia Univ. School of Library Service, 1953, 147-166.
46. *Univ. of California Publications in Librarianship* 1, 1951, 1-18.
47. LILLEY, O. L. The problems of measuring catalog use. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (3) 1954, 122-131.
48. LILLEY, O. L. Evaluation of the subject catalog: criticisms and a proposal. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (2) 1954, 41-60.
49. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 10 (1) 1951, 8-9.
50. U.S. Library of Congress. Rules for descriptive cataloging . . . Supplement, 1949-51. (pp. 11-19.)
- 50a. JOLLEY, L. A note on "limited" and "simplified" cataloging in the Library of Congress. *J. of Doc.* 8 (2) 1952, 99-105.
51. SEELY, P. A. Personnel in catalog departments in public libraries: a survey. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 8 (2) 1952, 39-69.
52. GJESNESS, R. H. Catalogers then and now; availability and opportunities. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 9 (1) 1953, 12-17.
53. PIGGOTT, M., ed. Cataloging principles and practice: an inquiry. Library Association, 1954. pp. viii, 159.

#### Revision of Codes

54. LUBETZKY, S. Cataloging rules and principles: a critique of the A.L.A. rules for entry and a proposed design for their revision. Washington, L.C. Processing Dept., 1953. pp. ix, 65.
55. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 9 (3) 1953, 123-142.
56. BORDEN, E. C. Revision of cataloging rules for serial entries proposed in the Lubetzky Report. *Serial Slants* 5 (3) 1954, 95-100.
57. KAPSNER, O. L. A manual of cataloging practice for Catholic author and title entries. Washington, D.C., Catholic Univ. of America Pr., 1954. pp. ix, 107.
58. CHICAGO ASSOCIATION OF LAW LIBRARIES. Second Workshop on Law Library Problems. Proceedings . . . 1953. Issued for the Assn. by Northwestern University School of Law Library, 1954. pp. 85. Mimeographed.

59. Revision of the A.L.A. cataloging rules of entry for legal materials and related rules: report of the Committee on Cataloging of the American Association of Law Libraries, adopted . . . June 30, 1954. *Law Lib. J.* 48 (1) 1955, 3-39.
60. ELLINGER, W. B. Non-author headings. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (2) 1954, 61-73.
61. LUBETZKY, S. Non-author headings: a negative theory. [A reply to 60.] *Ibid.* 10 (3) 1954, 147-154.
62. WRIGHT, W. E. Catalogue code revision in the United States. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (7) 1955, 136-138.
63. Cataloguing Rules Subcommittee: statement on policy, procedure and decisions. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (9) 1955, 352-353.
64. Cataloguing Rules Subcommittee: Second statement. . . *Ibid.* 58 (7) 1956, 274.
65. Catalog code revision. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 12 (2) 1956, 103-107.
66. FRANCIS, F. C. (I). CHAPLIN, A. H. (II). A reconsideration of the British Museum rules for compiling the catalogues of printed books. See ref. 53, pp. 26-49.
67. WELLS, A. J. New developments in cataloguing in the *British National Bibliography*. See ref. 53, pp. 50-63.
68. MACDONALD, M. R. Cataloging at the Armed Forces Medical Library, 1945-1952. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 9 (2) 1953, 58-78.
69. TOOTH, A. E. Cataloguing rules and practice: changes at University College, London, in anticipation of a revised code. *J. of Doc.* 12 (2) 1956, 88-93.
70. JACOBS, R. Whodunnit? *Ibid.* 8 (4) 1952, 227-231.
71. SALVAN, P. Catalogue code revision in France. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (7) 1956, 135-137.
72. FRANCE. DIRECTION DES BIBLIOTHÈQUES. Code de catalogue des imprimés communs. Dictionnaire des cas. Paris, AFNOR (Pr Z45-003), 1948.
73. AFNOR. Les catalogues alphabétiques d'auteurs et d'anonymes. Collectivités-auteurs. Congrès: choix de vedettes. (E.P. no. 859. Pr Z44-060.) See also 74.
74. LUBETZKY, S. Corporate authors. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 13 (15) 1954, Appendix, pp. 3. [An English summary of 73.]
75. LA VEGA, J. LASSO DE. Revision of cataloguing rules in Spain. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (1) 1956, 9.
76. Revision of cataloguing rules in Germany. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (4) 1955, 72-73.
77. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 4 (2) 1951, 32-34.
78. Instruktionen für den alphabetischen Katalog. Entwurf, vorgelegt vom Katalogausschuss des Verbandes der Bibliotheken des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen. Köln, Greven & Bechtold, 1952-55. (Originally proposed in *Mitteilungsblatt Nordrhein-Westfalen* 1 (3) 1951, 33-47, and discussed in subsequent issues.)
79. *Z. f. Bib.* 66 (5-6) 1952, 183-187.
80. Der alphabetische Katalog in allgemeinen öffentlichen Bibliotheken. Anweisungen. Teil I: Regeln. Teil II. Beispielsammlung. Berlin, Volk und Wissen Volkseigener Verlag, 1951. (I. & II. Beiheft der Zeitschrift "Der Bibliothekar.")
81. VORSTRUP, J. Bericht über die Katalogkommission [und] Regeln für den alphabetischen Katalog an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken. *Z. f. Bib. u. Bib.* 68 (1-2) 1954, 29-63.
82. FUCHS, H. Für und wider die Preussischen Instruktionen. *Z. f. Bib. u. Bib.* 1 (3) 1954, 173-185.
83. FUCHS, H. Kommentar zu den Instruktionen für die alphabetischen Kataloge der preussischen Bibliotheken. Wiesbaden, Harrassowitz, 1955. pp. 302.
84. SAMULSKI, R. Die gegenwärtigen Probleme des alphabetischen Katalogs in Deutschland: der Stand der Neubearbeitung der Preussischen Instruktionen. *Mitteilungsblatt Nordrhein-Westfalen N.F.* 4 (3-4) 1954, 49-62.
85. SIEGMANN, L. Die Ordnung der Sachtitel im alphabetischen Katalog nach der gegebenen Wortfolge (mechanische Ordnung). Erörterung einiger Grundprinzipien. Köln, Greven Verlag, 1955. pp. 39. (*Arbeiten aus dem Bibliothekar-Lehrinstitut des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen. Heft 6.*)
86. BAUHUIS, W. Katalogreform. *Z. f. Bib. u. Bib.* 1 (3) 1954, 185-208.
87. Revision of cataloguing rules in the Soviet Union by Inter-Library Cataloguing Commission of the Ministry of Culture of the RSFSR. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (11-12) 1955, 237-240. [Short list of Russian books and articles on cataloguing, p. 240.]
88. *Bibliothekar' (U.S.S.R.)* August 1955, 39.
89. BIŃKOWSKI, W. Revision of cataloguing rules in Poland. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (10) 1955, 211-212.
90. *Türk Kütüphaneciler Derneği Bülteni* 3 (1) 1955. Ankara, pp. 142.
91. OKADA, N. Revision of cataloguing rules in Japan. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (10) 1955, 212-213.
92. KLIENEBERGER, H. R. Some current projects of catalogue-code revision. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (9) 1955, 341-344.

*Unification of Cataloguing Rules*

93. FRAUENDORFER, S. VON. Unification of cataloguing rules. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (3) 1951, 245-252. [A translation of his contribution to the Festschrift for Dr. Joseph Bick, *Die Österreichische Nationalbibliothek*, 1950, 335-347.]
94. Standardization of cataloguing rules. (I.F.L.A. Report.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (1) 1955, 24.
95. FRANCIS, F. C., and others. I.F.L.A. Working Group on the Co-ordination of Cataloguing Principles. Report on anonyma and corporate authorship. *Libri* 6 (3) 1956, 271-298.
96. International study of cataloguing rules. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (5-6) 1956, 123-127. [A summary of 95.]
97. RANGANATHAN, S. R. International catalogue code: its scope and the first step. *Abgila* 3 (4) 1953, 141-158.
98. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Heading and canons: comparative study of five catalogue codes. Madras, S. Viswanathan; London, Blunt, 1955. pp. 298.
99. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Corporate heading. *Libri* 6 (1) 1955, 1-21.
100. FRANCK, M. Some international differences in the cataloging and bibliographical listing of serial publications. *Serial Slants* 2 (2) 1951, 1-10; also *J. of Cat. and Class.* 8 (1) 1952, 6-11.
101. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Asian names. *Abgila* 3 (2) 1953, 45-54.
102. KENT, F. L. International progress in transliteration. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (5-6) 1956, 132-137.
103. I.S.O. International system for the transliteration of Cyrillic characters. I.S.O. Recommendation R.9. September 1954. [Reprinted, ref. 102, pp. 135-137.]
104. MISH, J. L. The transliteration of oriental languages in chemical literature. *J. of Chem. Educ.* 32 (3) 1955, 137-138.
105. KENT, F. L. Periodica abbreviata and international standardization. *J. of Doc.* 10 (2) 1954, 59-64.
106. I.S.O. International code for the abbreviation of titles of periodicals. I.S.O. Recommendation No. 4. 1954. [Reprinted *Unesco Bull.* 9 (1) 1955, 7-8.]

*Special Materials*

107. OSBORN, A. D. Serial publications: their place and treatment in libraries. Chicago, A.L.A., 1955. pp. xiii, 309. (Select classified bibliog.)
108. DECKERT, H. Schlagwortkatalog der Zeitschriftenaufsätze. *Z. f. Bib.* 66 (7-8) 1952, 253-259.
109. GREENHILL, D. Periodicals and serials, their treatment in special libraries. *Aslib*, 1953. pp. xiii, 200. (Bibliog.)
110. CABERN, V. A. and COOK, C. D. Organization of serials and documents. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953, 199-216. (Bibliog.)
111. *Serial Slants*, official organ of the Serials Round Table of the A.L.A. Chicago, John Crerar Library 1950-.
112. MARKLEY, A. E. Library records for government publications. Berkeley, Univ. of California Pr., 1951. pp. vii, 66.
113. CABALIERO-MARSAL, F., and others. United Nations documents in the United Nations Library: organization and servicing. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 7 (3) 1951, 65-72.
114. MOOR, C. C. and CHAMBERLIN, W. How to use United Nations documents. New York Univ. Pr., 1952. pp. iii, 26. (N.Y. Univ. Libraries Occ. Papers, 1.)
115. SANDERS, J. F. Libraries and United Nations publications. *Unesco Bull.* 8 (2-3) 1954, 31-36; *Ibid.* 8 (8-9) 1954, 102-108. (Lists guides and indexes.)
116. Catalog cards for U.N. publications. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 12 (15) 1953, 10-11.
117. GRASBERGER, F. Die Einordnung im Autorenkatalog der Musikdrucke. *Z. f. Bib.* 66 (1-2) 1952, 28-47.
118. GRASBERGER, F. Zur Bibliographie und Katalogisierung der Textbücher. *Ibid.* 66 (5-6) 1952, 206-219.
119. *Ibid.*, p. 239.
120. DEHEENIN, W. Proeve tot het opstellen van een titelbeschrijving voor oude muziekhand-schriften. *Bibliotheksgids* 30 (4) 1954, 91-100.
121. CAMERON, A. R. Accessioning and cataloguing of reports. *Aslib Proc.* 5 (4) 1953, 329-334.
122. HENSEL, E. Treatment of non-book materials. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953, 187-198.
123. U.S. LIBRARY OF CONGRESS. Descriptive Cataloging Division. Rules for descriptive cataloging in the Library of Congress: Phonorecords. Preliminary ed. Washington, The Division, 1952. pp. iv, 10.

124. U.S. LIBRARY OF CONGRESS. Motion pictures and filmstrips. 2nd preliminary ed. Washington, The Division, 1953. pp. 18.
125. The cataloguing of films and filmstrips—Unesco proposals. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (5-6) 1955, 98-107.
126. LONDON. NATIONAL FILM LIBRARY. Rules for use in the cataloguing department. 3rd rev. ed. British Film Institute, 1954. pp. vii, 40.
127. CHIBNALL, B. The National Film Library and its cataloguing rules. *J. of Doc.* 11 (2) 1955, 79-82.
128. DEAN-SMITH, M. Proposals towards the cataloguing of gramophone records in a library of national scope. *J. of Doc.* 8 (3) 1952, 141-156.
129. VAUGHAN, E. L. Cataloguing recordings in the Illinois State Library. *Illinois Libs.* 35 (2) 1953, 79-85.
130. JONES, P. T. The cataloguing of microfilm: a bibliography. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (3) 1954, 155-157.
131. ZIMMERMANN, E. Regeln für die alphabetische Titelaufnahme von Mikrofilmen. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 6 (2) 1953, 61-67.

## Subject Cataloguing

132. HAYKIN, D. J. Subject headings: a practical guide. Washington, G.P.O., 1951. pp. 140.
133. COATES, E. J. Alphabetical subject catalogues. *J. of Doc.* 9 (1) 1953, 58-63.
134. MORRIS, J. C. The duality concept in subject analysis. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (3) 1954, 117-146.
135. HAYKIN, D. J. What it takes to be a subject cataloger. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (1) 1954, 34-39.
136. LILLEY, O. L. How specific is "specific"? *Ibid.* 11 (1) 1955, 3-8.
137. FRARFY, C. J. Developments in subject cataloguing. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953, 217-235.
138. EGAN, M. Subject headings in specialized fields: needs, problems, and relationships to general subject headings. See ref. 139, pp. 83-99.
139. TAUBER, M. F., ed. The subject analysis of library materials. Papers presented at an Institute, June 21-28, 1952, under the sponsorship of the School of Library Service, Columbia University, and the ALA Division of Cataloging and Classification. New York, School of Library Service, Columbia Univ., 1953. pp. 253.
140. Symposium on subject headings. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 8 (4) 1952, 131-170.
141. JOHNSON, R. K. The new subject heading list for *The Air University Periodical Index*: an experiment. *Ibid.* 10 (1), 1954, 28-33.
142. UNITED STATES. ARMED FORCES MEDICAL LIBRARY. Current List Division. Subject heading authority list. Washington, The Library, 1954. pp. ix, 267.
143. LARKEY, S. V. The Welch Medical Library indexing project. *Bull. med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (1) 1953, 32-40.
144. TAINE, S. I. The subject heading authority list of the *Current List of Medical Literature*. *Ibid.* 41 (1) 1953, 41-43.
145. GARFIELD, E. The preparation of subject-heading lists by automatic punched-card techniques. *J. of Doc.* 10 (1) 1954, 1-16.
146. BRANTLINGER, R., and others, comps. List of subject headings for glass technology. Creighton, Pa., Pittsburgh Plate Glass Co.; Corning, N.Y. State, Corning Glass Works, 1954. pp. v, 46.
147. COLBY, R. A. Current problems in the subject analysis of literature. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (1) 1954, 19-28.
148. BEITZELL, L. Old wine in new bottles—the trend in Social Welfare headings. *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 42 (3) 1954, 332-337.
149. CAVENDER, T. P. A comparative study of subject headings for children's materials. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (1) 1955, 13-28.
150. ALLERDING, J. E. Form subdivisions for bibliographical publications. *Ibid.* 9 (1) 1953, 25-37.
151. JACKSON, S. L. Date treatment of broad subject headings in thirty major libraries: a report with comments. *Ibid.* 9 (1) 1953, 21-24.
152. TAYLOR, K. L. Subject headings vs. classified catalogs. See ref. 139, pp. 100-113.
153. DEWEY, H. Some special aspects of the classified catalogue. See ref. 139, pp. 114-129.
154. SHAW, R. R. Management, machines, and the bibliographic problems of the twentieth century, in Jesse H. Shera and Margaret E. Egan, eds. *Bibliographic organization: papers presented before the Fifteenth Annual Conference of the Graduate Library School . . . 1950.* Univ. of Chicago Pr., 1951, 200-225.
155. SLATER, M. M. and FRASER, L. D. The dictionary catalogue versus the divided catalogue: the University of Toronto Library. *Can. Lib. Assn. Bull.* 10 (6) 1954, 206-209.
156. ALLEN, D. C. A reaffirmation of the basic principles of filing. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 8 (3) 1952, 85-89.

157. OSBORN, A. D. and HASKINS, S. M. Catalog maintenance. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953, 279-289.
158. *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 30 (3) 1955, 270-271. (Sixty-page pamphlet on the filing rules may be borrowed through inter-branch loan from N.Y.P.L., Fifth Avenue and 42nd Street, New York, 18.)
159. SICKMANN, L. Die Ordnung der Sachtitel im alphabetischen Katalog nach der gegebenen Wortfolge (mechanische Ordnung). See ref. 85.

#### Indexing

160. HOLMSTROM, J. E. Facts, files and action in business and public affairs. Pt. II. Filing, indexing and circulation. Chapman and Hall, 1953. pp. xvi, 280.
161. COLLISON, R. L. Indexes and indexing: a guide to the indexing of books, and collections of books, periodicals, music, gramophone records, films and other material, with a reference section and suggestions for further reading. Benn, 1953. pp. 155.
162. SPIKER, S. Indexing your book: a practical guide for authors. Madison, Univ. of Wisconsin Pr., 1954. pp. ix, 28.
163. FAIRTHORNE, R. A. Notes on the N.L.L. Card Catalogue of Aerodynamic Measurements. *J. of Doc.* 10 (1) 1954, 11-18.
164. STAPLES, K. J. and SHAW, M. M. N.L.L. Card Catalogue of Aerodynamic Measurements: problems of an indexer. Royal Aircraft Establishment, Farnborough. *Library Memo.* No. 17. September 1954. pp. 6.
165. VESSEY, H. F. Test of N.L.L. Card Catalogue of Aerodynamic Measurements. Royal Aircraft Establishment, Farnborough. *Ibid.* No. 18. September 1954. pp. 30.
166. CLEVERDON, C. W. Some aspects of information retrieval. *Aslib Proc.* 7 (3) 1955, 153-156.
167. TAUBE, M. Specificity in subject headings and co-ordinate indexing. *Lib. Trends* 1 (2) 1952, 219-223.
168. TAUBE, M. Studies in co-ordinate indexing. Washington, D.C., Documentation Inc., 1953. pp. 110.
169. ARMED SERVICES TECHNICAL INFORMATION AGENCY. Installation manual for the Uniterm system of co-ordinate indexing. U.S. Dept. of Defense (Document Service Centre, Knott Building, Dayton 2, Ohio), 1953. pp. 25.
170. TAUBE, M., and others. Unit terms in co-ordinate indexing. *Amer. Doc.* 3 (4) 1952, 213-218.
171. TAUBE, M. and WACHTEL, I. S. The logical structure of co-ordinate indexing. *Ibid.* 4 (2) 1953, 67-68.
172. CLEVERDON, C. W. and THORNE, R. G. A brief experiment with the Uniterm system of co-ordinate indexing for the cataloguing of structural data. Royal Aircraft Establishment, Farnborough. *Library Memo.* No. 7. Jan. 1954. pp. 18.
173. GULL, C. D. Seven years of work on the organization of materials in the special library. *Am. Doc.* 7 (4) 1954, 320-329.
174. VICKERY, B. C. Systematic subject indexing. *J. of Doc.* 9 (1) 1953, 48-57.
175. The need for a faceted classification as the basis of all methods of information retrieval. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 262-268.
176. THOMPSON, A. Rules for subject headings, Periodicals Subject Index, Royal Institute of British Architects Library. *J. of Doc.* 9 (3) 1953, 169-174.
177. MILLS, J. Chain indexing and classified catalogue. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (4) 1955, 141-148.
178. DOUGHTY, D. W. Chain procedure subject indexing and featuring a classified catalogue. *Ibid.* 57 (5) 1955, 173-178.
179. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Chain procedure and dictionary catalogue. *Ann. Lib. Sci.* 7 (4) 1954, 216-221.

#### Reproduction of Entries

180. MURPHY, L. P. Card catalog photoduplicating. *Lib. J.* 77 (20) 1952, 1976-1997.
181. POLLY-BASSITTA, L. Mikrophotographie im Dienste der Katalogisierung. *Z. f. Bib.* 66 (11-12) 1952, 418-423.
182. BROOME, W. F. Making a catalogue with a camera. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (10) 1953, 316-317; *Ibid.* 56 (1) 1954, 10.
183. FEGER, R. Titeldruck mit dem Roto 30 Sp. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (5) 1952, 252-255.
184. CURTIS, A. C. and SMITH, R. F. This question of card reproduction. *Lib. World* 56 (650-651) 1954, 23-24.
185. STEVENSON, W. B. Reproduction of catalogue entries. *Librarian* 43 (11) 1954, 209-210.

## Teaching

186. Training for cataloging. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 7 (2) 1951, 27-41.
187. DUNKIN, P. S. Petty codes and pedagogues. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 7 (3) 1951, 53-57.
188. DUNKIN, P. S. The new-made Mann: a winter symposium. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (3) 1955, 133-137.
189. TAUBER, M., and others. Technical services in libraries: acquisitions, cataloging, classification, binding, photographic reproduction, and circulation operations. New York, Columbia Univ. Pr., 1954. pp. 487. (*Columbia Univ. Studies in Library Service, No. 7.*) Bibliog.
190. AKERS, S. G. Simple library cataloging. 4th ed. Chicago, ALA, 1954. pp. 250.
191. VISWANATHAN, C. G. Cataloguing theory and practice: a guide to the student of library science. Banaras Hindu Univ. Pr., 1954. pp. 252.
192. NORRIS, D. M. A primer of cataloguing. Association of Assistant Librarians, 1952. pp. 204.
193. SHARP, H. A. *Lib. World*, 55 (647) 1954, 187-88; *ibid.* (648) 1954, 208-210; *ibid.* 57 (661) 1955, 1-4; (655-658) 26-29; (664) 53-56; (666) 92-94.

Downloaded from www.dbraulibrary.org.in

## Chapter 19

### CLASSIFICATION

By J. MILLS, F.L.A., Lecturer in Cataloguing and Classification, North-Western Polytechnic, London

CLASSIFICATION is central and basic to the whole problem of bibliographic organization, and far more fundamental than it has ever been to present library practice." This sentence, from a paper by Jesse Shera, may serve as a pertinent statement of the general impression gained from a survey of the classification landscape in the past five years. The scene has been one of considerable activity and achievement, both in the practical and theoretical fields. Two major schemes (the Decimal and Colon Classifications) have appeared in new editions showing radical departures from earlier ones; both the third international edition of the UDC and the Bibliographic classification has been completed. A number of important special classifications have appeared, some showing the increasing influence of machine selection methods and (sometimes unconsciously) of the concept of facet analysis. In the theoretical field activity has been equally fruitful. Notable here are the impressive series from India on Optional Facets and Depth Classification, the intensive work on machine selection which has appeared in *American documentation* and the numerous papers from Great Britain by B. C. Vickery which have both reflected and assisted what is perhaps the most distinctive trend in the work of the five years—the growing realization that all classification and all methods of information retrieval, if they are to be truly systematic, require as a basis a conceptual analysis of the field of knowledge to be classified into categories or facets of elementary concepts. Thus the seeds first sown some twenty-five years ago by Ranganathan are now truly beginning to flower.

#### GENERAL THEORY

The theory of classification in the past five years has shifted even more decisively than before from discussion of universal schemes to the problems involved in the analysis of a limited subject field, and at the same time from a primarily bibliographical level, with the book as unit, to the "documentation level," with the elementary item of information as the fundamental unit—or, as Ranganathan puts it, from macrothought to microthought and the needs of depth classification. Ranganathan and his associates have, of course, made a very distinctive contribution to this process and their work is considered separately, under the Colon classification.

The need to regard analysis into elementary items of knowledge as a basis is stressed by Shera and Egan (<sup>1</sup>), who suggest that such analysis is vital to the new discipline of "social epistemology" which they advocate. Shera (<sup>2</sup>)

reiterates elsewhere this need to free classification from the "tyranny of the codex" (3).

The limitations of the traditional approach, in which library classification is regarded simply as an application of logical division within a framework of "consensus" and literary warrant are examined by Foskett (4) and by Vickery (5). The conclusions of the latter reflect a major theme of the five years' work—that the essential need is for a re-examination of literature to establish homogeneous categories reflecting precise characteristics (a fundamental rule of classification which has been flouted by nearly all the major classifications) and the types of relations between these categories. To this theme Vickery has made outstanding contributions. In one paper (6) he discusses the various "parts of speech" to be utilized in a classification, the categories of substantives (those he suggests have proved most fruitful in the interpretation of Ranganathan's Fundamental Categories) and relational conjunctions. The principles examined in this paper are applied in an extremely interesting "experimental modification" of the Chemistry class in the Colon classification (7). In another paper (8) he examines in illuminating parallels the inevitable utilization of classification by alphabetical indexing, by co-ordinate indexing and by mechanical selection, while pointing out that only in classification proper is the pattern or map of knowledge not concealed from the user.

A Classification Research Group was formed in London in 1952 and has done some valuable work. It has published, in a memorandum (9), a concise statement of its chief points of view. The remarks on notation, although very brief, constitute a useful summary of fundamentals rarely stated together before.

In another paper (10) Vickery gives a clear account of the structure of knowledge implicit in the writings of Ranganathan and its dynamic nature, whilst a simple but illuminating statistical analysis of 316 articles, showing how denudation, lamination and loose assemblage were dominant in 1900, 1920 and 1950 respectively, is made by Puranik (11).

A different and highly individual approach to the problem of classification is made by Farradane. Following on his original paper in 1950, he has introduced (12) four new operators, reflecting the relations found in the more abstract studies. Also, a notation is developed which uses the operator symbols for relations and code symbols for isolates. In a further paper (13) he enlarges on the theory that class recognition is not a logical process but a psychological one of perception. Although the value of Farradane's method as a complete classification method has yet to be proved (by the production of workable "maps"—i.e., schedules) it is already clear that it can be very helpful in the construction of more conventional schedules. The homogeneity of a facet may be tested by it; in a special classification, the decision as to what marginal material should be incorporated and how this should be done may be assisted by Farradane's claim that only "fixed" operators should be included; the concept of temporal or non-temporal relations is also relevant to such problems as common isolates, "seminal mnemonics" and the limitations of synthesis (since this latter implies the incorporation of "non-fixed" operators in a schedule on the score of economy).

The problem of general classifications appears to occupy rather more

attention on the Continent. Wahlin<sup>(14)</sup> emphasizes that in classifying a document it is less *for* whom than *by* whom which is decisive, since this shows the specialized knowledge behind—and, therefore *in*—the document. This reflects the general problem of how overlapping subjects are demarcated and ordered in a general scheme. Vorstius<sup>(15)</sup> shows considerable affinities to Bliss in his approach to main class order in a modern classification, stressing modulation, consensus and the Comptean principle of development. Traditional principles of classification—consistent characteristics, exhaustiveness, collocation, expansibility—are restated by Groeneveld<sup>(16)</sup> and their relevance shown to both the building and the practical application of a scheme. The principles of bibliographic classification are also considered by Bjorkbom<sup>(17)</sup>, while the particular needs of a classification for international use (such as the limitations placed on notational symbols) are discussed by De Grolier<sup>(18)</sup>. The same paper stresses the need to apportion more notation to “dynamic” subjects than to “static” ones, and the limitations on the use of synthesis (the too free “transfer” of facets or parts of facets may be unsatisfactory); an annex to it includes an interesting main class outline with both a binary notation and a conventional literal one. Another extremely interesting paper by De Grolier<sup>(19)</sup> considers the difficulties raised for both general and special classifications by the “polyvalence” (to quote Cordonnier) of modern research, so that one special subject field is formed by the interaction, as of co-ordinates, of several other special fields. De Grolier doubts the value of concordances of existing universal schemes such as advocated by Donker Duyvis<sup>(20)</sup>, since the conceptual analysis evident in them has been inadequately pursued.

Two useful surveys of the scene are also provided by De Grolier. One<sup>(21)</sup> reports developments in theory in the past fifteen years, emphasizing the work of Ranganathan and Cordonnier and the latter's ideas on notation. The other<sup>(22)</sup> surveys the whole field, although of necessity widely rather than deeply. It includes, for example, the problem of “rangement” or “classement”—i.e., the physical filing of material (this in some detail) and such devices as chronological sigils<sup>(23)</sup>. It also has a very full bibliography. Another useful survey of recent developments is given by Foskett<sup>(24)</sup>.

Something of a curiosity is an article by Richmond<sup>(25)</sup> in which the author seeks to minimize the limitations of hierarchical classification which displays only one selected system of relations. In her suggested three- and four-dimensional schemes, the factors of Time, Space and Culture are prominent, reflecting the same concern for these as determinants of knowledge as was shown by Lund and Taube in their Period Classification (1937). It seems appropriate to mention here papers by Rusk<sup>(26)</sup><sup>(27)</sup> and by Hiler<sup>(28)</sup>, also of a highly speculative character, the practical implications of which are not clearly apparent.

In a stimulating essay, Shera<sup>(29)</sup> attacks the “strait-jacket” of the hierarchical order. A pragmatic approach, he says, should recognize that a unit of knowledge may be meaningful in any number of different relationships and the problem is to provide as many conceptual frameworks as the users demand. The practical implications of this are faced frankly. Nevertheless, in the general library, and particularly in a national bibliography arranged systematically, “one transformation must be sought which will provide maximum usefulness” and this problem is faced in a very useful paper by Wells<sup>(30)</sup> which includes an

attempt to incorporate some of Farradane's ideas together with those of Ranganathan in a generalized formula for a classification structure.

In the field of notation a paper by Cordonnier<sup>(31)</sup> (first presented jointly with one by P. Didelin at a conference held in Paris in April 1945 and now reprinted with some amplification)\* is of particular interest. It presents some very original ideas—e.g., that the base of ten digits in a decimal notation is too large. Cordonnier advocates the use of letters in pronounceable syllables. Using a base of five only, the consonants are arranged in groups which are dependent, in chain, on a particular vowel (e.g., A can be divided only by B, C, D, F, G). Novel methods of condensing linear notations are possible as a result of this dependence. A solution to the notational problem of how an aggregate of elements (called a *rameau* by Cordonnier) can be further divided as a unit is also offered.

Another notable paper is a penetrating analysis by Vickery<sup>(32)</sup> of the nature and function of symbolism in notation. It shows how the tendency to change from amalgamates (as in traditional enumerative classification) to semantic aggregates reflects the growth of synthesis as a method of gaining hospitality and flexibility in classification. An important function of notation, it suggests, is to express relations in its structure—i.e., to be expressive (e.g., in UDC 51 looks like, and in fact is a subdivision of 5). But it is worth noting, as indicative of the trend of thought on notation in the period under review, that in a second article, published in 1956<sup>(33)</sup>, Vickery prefers to put more stress on the function of notation as a device for mechanically maintaining sequence.

Kluth<sup>(34)</sup> also emphasizes that a notation need not be expressive but is essentially a device for arranging, which needs to utilize other aids in leading the user to the required class—e.g., by coloured guide cards. The same emphasis is implicit in a useful paper by Wüster<sup>(35)</sup> which discusses reform of the UDC notation; he insists that all symbols used should have a universally recognized ordinal value and suggests that the signs now used could be replaced by lower-case letters.

### COLON CLASSIFICATION AND THE THEORY OF ANALYTICO-SYNTHETIC CLASSIFICATION

A fourth edition of Colon Classification<sup>(36)</sup> appeared in 1952, showing marked differences from earlier editions. Firstly, all facets are now regarded as manifesting one of the five "fundamental categories" of Personality, Matter, Energy, Space and Time, which were first bruited by Ranganathan in 1945. Each category is given a distinctive indicator digit in notation (the colon now introduces only the Energy facets). Within each category, Rounds and Levels may be distinguished; for example, the Personality facet in Agriculture (representing the very first step of division) consists of crops. These are divided successively by utility (e.g., Fodder crops), by part (e.g., Grain crops), then by individual crop. Each principle reflects the same concept of Personality—i.e., kinds of crop; hence, levels of Personality. Again, the Energy facet consists of such problems as Soil, Manure, Disease. These require further division into kinds of soil, kinds of manure, etc.—i.e., each problem has its own Personality facet. Such reappearance of Personality and other categories *after* Energy

\* I am indebted to Mr. B. C. Vickery for an (unpublished) translation, with commentary, of this paper.

facets is termed a Round. Categorization is far from complete (this edition was produced somewhat prematurely when the third edition went out of print). But the pattern of the new structure emerges clearly in many classes.

Secondly, the number of main classes has been increased by providing for "partially comprehensive" classes such as Physical Sciences, Humanities, etc. Thirdly, the Common Subdivisions and Generalia class are reorganized and an attempt begun to analyse the nature of the distinctions implied in Sayers's notion of "inner" and "outer" form.

The significance of the CC is not as yet that it is a widely used scheme (it is used by very few libraries) but that it constitutes a major focus of research in the subject. Most of the literature produced by Ranganathan and his co-workers refers directly to the CC and indeed constitutes a continual revision of it. Two major series are to be distinguished. "Optional facets" (37) in *Abgila*, and "Depth Classification" (38), which began with the separate publication of the *Annals* in 1954 and which still continues.

Among the problems constantly attacked are these: the nature of Common Subdivisions, both anterior and posterior (39) (40); the relative advantages, under different circumstances, of octave and group notation (the latter being a version of what is called "centesimal" notation in UDC) (41-43); the nature and location of Systems (e.g., Psychoanalytical school in Psychology) and Specials (e.g., Low-temperature physics in Physics) (44-47); elucidation of the fundamental categories and their appearance in Rounds and Levels (48-52), including clear Demonstrations with selected titles (53) (54); Zones in array, i.e., the ordering of the various sequences of common and special isolates found at any one level (main class level, first division level, etc.) (55-58); the concept of Prels, as newly emergent main classes formed by the developing art and science of handling knowledge and information (59) (60).

Deductive and inductive methods in classification are also discussed, whilst Vickery's experimental classification of Chemistry has already been mentioned (61). The application of the principles of depth classification to a particular subject are also demonstrated by Krishna Rao, with Agriculture, in two further papers (62) (63).

The vital problem of choice of an order of application of characteristics within a category is considered in another paper (64), in which Ranganathan advocates locating the favoured characteristic, i.e., the first to be applied, in the first octave; this results in a facet order which fails to observe the principle of decreasing extension which is so consistently maintained in Colon's main structure by the "principle of inversion." This paper also illustrates a notable feature of much of the Indian work (and one which might have certain dangers) —i.e., the use of notation to shed light on problems of order. It shows "the need for looking at the idea plane under the promptings of the unutilized elements in the notational plane." Important reviews of work done are to be found in two papers (65) (66), while two others claim that the empirical, "literary warrant" foundations of the traditional schemes is inadequate and that a more fruitful approach is to be sought through Abstract Classification (67) (68).

Particularly important as a summing-up of previous work are Ranganathan's reports to the F.I.D. Committee on General Theory of Classification. The first three reports, reprinted in *Abgila* (69-71), are particularly

comprehensive; the first one includes a defence of expressiveness in notation. The fourth <sup>(72)</sup> (based on discussion in the Committee) includes the statement that the fundamental categories are "postulated only as a help in the analysis of subjects and have "no metaphysical significance at all." The fifth report <sup>(73)</sup> is a particularly clear statement of the concepts involved and includes an account of the use of Packet Notation for the subject device.

Comprehensive statements of Ranganathan's ideas are to be found in three books. The *Philosophy of classification* <sup>(74)</sup>, clearly written (and handsomely published for a change), stresses the nature of library classification as an artificial language of ordinal numbers; it considers such key concepts as unscheduled mnemonics (on which, together with the concept of the fundamental categories, Ranganathan's hopes for "autonomy" in classification rest), the symbiosis with cataloguing and the patterns of analysis by Round and Level brought out in optional facets. *Classification and communication* <sup>(75)</sup> deals (in Part 2) with the role of classification in society generally. As the *Conspectus* states: "Most intellectual problems . . . turn out ultimately into problems of classification." Parts 1 and 3 mainly relate to the nature of classification considered in the framework of Colon. *Depth classification* <sup>(76)</sup> is an invaluable symposium. Its formidable Glossary, ranging from the bizarre Apupa to the familiar Synthesis, is noted elsewhere. Most of the papers relate to the theory of analytico-synthetic classification as developed by Ranganathan and his associates. Central to this is the concept of fundamental categories, the need for notational connecting devices which this implies and the concept of Rounds and Levels which arose from earlier work on optional facets and the search for a solution to the "debris" of colons which resulted from vacant facets in the old Colon Classification—another example of a notational problem stimulating the idea plane. Twelve practical papers analyse particular subjects with the aid of this theoretical equipment, with impressive results. Also relevant here are the useful discussions of the Library Research Circle, on the classification of Economics <sup>(77)</sup> and to the Delhi Seminar on the principle of increasing concreteness <sup>(78)</sup>.

A bibliography of Colon is provided by Chatterji <sup>(79)</sup>. Mills <sup>(80)</sup> compares its third edition with the Bibliographic Classification, and Jones <sup>(81)</sup> writes appreciatively of the later developments (such as Ranganathan's brave efforts to establish and popularize a symbolic meta-language), whilst expressing apprehension at the growing weight of notational and other complexity. This is a timely warning, for the notation, in its search for complete expressiveness, is becoming almost unusable by non-classifiers.

## GENERAL SCHEMES

**THE DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION.** The 15th edition, 1951, the "Standard edition" <sup>(82)</sup>, marked a radical departure from all previous editions; firstly, in its embracing of "broad classification," a doctrine never much favoured by Dewey himself; secondly (and this was its great virtue), it was the first honest effort to truly *revise* a scheme grown unwieldy from the steady and not particularly systematic accretions of seventy-five years. Both these innovations roused considerable controversy and within two years a 16th edition was begun; this is to embody the "best features" of the 14th and 15th

editions—and whilst its recognition of the need for detail was presumably one of the best features of the 14th, the acceptance of the need for revision was the best feature of the 15th edition.

Both the 15th and the projected 16th edition have stimulated numerous articles. A report of the discussions at an ALA convention<sup>(83)</sup> include a statement of the problems posed as seen by the editor preparing Edition 15, as well as comparisons with Edition 16. Another comparison is contributed by Osborn<sup>(84)</sup>, whilst a criticism of Edition 15 in the light of Margaret Mann's criteria is made by Eaton<sup>(85)</sup>. Moseley<sup>(86)</sup> is also critical of the reduced schedules of Edition 15 and claims that it suffers because of too much stress on its being a book classification and not a classification of knowledge, the latter feature being implicit in the notion of a subject classification. A careful account by Jacobius<sup>(87)</sup> of the improvements in the Chemistry class gives edge to the argument for retaining the relocations in Edition 16. Reviews of Edition 15 by British librarians<sup>(88-90)</sup> reflect appreciation of the valuable revision but some ruefulness at the almost complete disregard of British needs.

The two chief problems posed by Edition 15 were: firstly, the amount of detail—and it soon became clear that detail should be provided, for librarians to use or not use as they think fit; secondly, the desirability of change in a classification. Edition 15 had some thousand relocations, most of them long overdue. Many librarians, however, lulled by the false security engendered by seventy-five years' neglect of the problem of classification maintenance, were dismayed by the work involved in implementing these changes and the controversy of "integrity of numbers" versus "keeping pace with knowledge" became a major theme of the discussions which began with the preparation of the new Edition 16 (for which the Library of Congress became responsible in January 1954). It is the theme of a report by Seeley<sup>(91)</sup>, based on a questionnaire sent to 936 libraries of all kinds. The 7th abridged edition of the DC (1953)<sup>(92)</sup> retained some 55 per cent of the relocations of Edition 15, and this has been accepted as indicative of the likely relocations in Edition 16. A statement of policy and procedure by the editor of Edition 16<sup>(93)</sup> was followed by progress reports<sup>(94-96)</sup> whilst a statement<sup>(97)</sup> issued in December 1955 reaffirmed that Edition 14 was to be the basis of Edition 16. However, although much of the admirable revision achieved by Edition 15 is evidently to be consolidated by the retention of relocated numbers, apprehensions are expressed by Eaton<sup>(98)</sup> that the needs of librarians favouring close classification will again be neglected.

Interesting commentaries on the history of the DC are given by Rider<sup>(99)</sup>, who summarizes Dewey's great contributions to library classification and describes his collaboration with the Amherst College staff in the first editions, and by Hilgenberg<sup>(100)</sup>, who considers the origins of the DC, from Bacon and Leibnitz to Harris. Finally, Sayers<sup>(101)</sup> gives an appreciative outline of the development of the DC over seventy-five years.

Some of the modifications of the DC to be found on the Continent are mentioned later under the Practice of Classification.

**THE UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION.** In 1953, the third full international edition was completed by the Germans<sup>(102)</sup>. The British, less successful here, are doggedly continuing with their fourth international edition, and during the five years have published those for 678/679 and 622/623<sup>(103)</sup>,

whilst much work has been done towards a new edition of the English Abridgement (BS 1000A) and a three-language Abridgement (in English, French and German). The French began in 1951 a second printing of their 5th international edition (<sup>104</sup>) and have so far issued classes 0, 2 and 3. Work has also begun on the 6th edition, in Japanese (<sup>105</sup>), (classes 5, 60/61, 62, 66) and the 7th edition, in Spanish (class 0) (<sup>106</sup>). Abridged editions (of the whole UDC) have also been published in Japanese (1955) and Spanish (1953). The publication of PE notes in a cumulated edition (<sup>107</sup>), which began in January 1951, has been generally welcomed.

Some notational developments were announced in 1952—elimination of the plus (+) sign, reduction of the stroke (/) sign and the introduction of a new apostrophic (') sign for synthesis (<sup>108</sup>). A paper by Lloyd (<sup>109</sup>) had earlier reviewed these and other proposals. A suggested reform of the UDC notation (by replacing signs by lower-case letters) by Wüster has already been noted (<sup>110</sup>) under General Theory.

Useful surveys of these problems, of current work and of the scheme in general, are to be found in papers by Lloyd (<sup>111</sup>) (<sup>112</sup>), by Donker-Duyvis (<sup>113</sup>), by Miller (<sup>114</sup>). Harper (<sup>115</sup>) also reviews in some detail the development and nature of the scheme and its position in America.

Detailed critical analyses of various features of the UDC appear in one series of Indian articles (<sup>116</sup>), of which a good example is the analysis of class 02 by Faqir Chand (<sup>117</sup>), whilst another series (<sup>118</sup>) examines minutely, sentence by sentence, the introduction to the British edition. Theoretical analysis of parts of the UDC is found in papers by Ødegård on the Botany class (<sup>119</sup>) (this paper appearing in the first number of a new Norwegian periodical devoted primarily to the UDC) and by Krishna Rao on its treatment of periodicals (<sup>120</sup>). The ambiguities of the 38 and 65 classes are the theme of another paper (<sup>121</sup>).

A report of a conference held by the Swiss Society for Documentation (<sup>122</sup>) includes a critical view of the UDC's position in scientific documentation by Paul Scherar, a defence of its suitability for international use by L. M. Kern, and suggestions for increased notational flexibility by F. Kutter in a paper on the "differential decimal principle."

A more liberal policy of revision, designed to retain the advantages of uniformity by reducing unauthorized revisions, is urged by Kocherhaus (<sup>123</sup>), whilst Sunderlin (<sup>124</sup>) reviews the present method. An official statement of principles for revision of UDC was issued by FID in 1955 (<sup>125</sup>). Ölman (<sup>126</sup>) makes pertinent suggestions on how to reduce the multiplication of entries by permuting (widely practised with the UDC) by following a definite order of citation of the elements in a class number, such as is afforded, for example, by Ranganathan's PMEST formula.

The development of the UDC in its early days is the subject of an article by Lorphèvre (<sup>127</sup>), who also contributes an account of the life and work of the founders of the IIB (FID) and UDC (<sup>128</sup>).

Numerous articles by users on their problems and solutions testify to the continuing vitality of the scheme. Engel (<sup>129</sup>) describes its use in Sweden, where some ninety special libraries use it, and Coblin (<sup>130</sup>) its growing popularity in Norway, where a UDC group was founded in 1950. Dubuc (<sup>131</sup>) describes its progress in France; another paper deals with its position in Spain (<sup>132</sup>) and another with Swiss contributions to recent developments (<sup>133</sup>).

The application of the UDC to specific subject fields is referred to later (under Special schemes), but here may be noted a paper by Murphy<sup>(134)</sup> on its use with a vertical file, and another by Ruston<sup>(135)</sup> on its use with punched cards, stressing the resulting economics in the number of entries required. Also, such applications are the subject of a special supplement to *Nachrichten für Dokumentation*<sup>(136)</sup>.

THE BIBLIOGRAPHIC CLASSIFICATION was finished in 1953<sup>(137)</sup> with the publication of classes L-Z, thus completing a labour of nearly fifty years and one unique in the history of library classification. It is likely to be the last of the general book classifications which began with the Decimal Classification in 1876 and which consist mainly of enumerated tables of composite subjects, with synthesis as a secondary and supplementary principle. The significance of its achievement lies undoubtedly in the enormous industry and erudition which were brought to bear on the problem of mapping the intricate landscape of modern knowledge, rather than in its contributions to the technical problems of schedule building and notation, although these are considerable. Articles on the scheme include ones by Harrison<sup>(138)</sup> and by Palmer<sup>(139)</sup>, who contrasts its traditional enumerative structure with the concept of facet analysis, whilst another review of the completed scheme<sup>(140)</sup> discusses the increased provision in it for synthesis over what was originally contemplated by Bliss. Mills<sup>(141)</sup> compares the structure of the scheme with that of Colon.

Some sixty libraries, mainly in the British Commonwealth, now use the BC. Further evidence of its consolidation as a practicable rival to the older schemes is to be seen in the establishment of a regular service to subscribers prepared by the British Committee for the Bliss Classification<sup>(142)</sup>.

As a sad postscript to the above must be noted the death of Bliss in 1954, at the age of eighty-five. (The same year saw also the death of two other names notable in library classification—of Wyndham Hulme, aged ninety-five, and Herbert Putnam, aged ninety-three.) The *Library of Congress Classification* has continued its post-war programme of revising all its classes and the five-year period saw two notable new editions—those of Geography and Anthropology<sup>(143)</sup> and of Medicine<sup>(144)</sup>.

### SPECIAL SCHEMES

The inadequacies in detail and structure of the general classifications for the purposes of special collections continue to spur librarians to undertake the formidable task of producing special schemes. Many of these are expansions and adaptations of parts of some general scheme; others are quite new and so are of particular interest since they can more easily utilize the improved methods which the techniques of facet analysis, for example, have provided.

A useful review of the possibilities is made by Wells<sup>(145)</sup>, who, after indicating the inadequacies of the analysis of ideas found in the UDC, urges the co-operation of subject specialists and librarians in the development of faceted classifications. Relevant to this is a report of the SLA Committee<sup>(146)</sup>, which stresses the desirability of a prior collection and analysis of terminology in each field of interest, which might be done co-operatively and its results presented as raw material from which various retrieval systems, including conventional classifications, could be constructed. The work done by Perry and his associates

(noted here under Mechanical Selection) was in the mind of the Committee when advancing this view.

The desirability of "tailor made" schemes for particular fields is stressed by Brisch<sup>(147)</sup>. Other papers<sup>(148)</sup> describe different classifications made by Brisch for works stores, etc., for use in industrial concerns. These utilize as a basis the concept of categories of basic terms and the synthesis of compound terms; but Brisch's "chapeaux" are less homogeneous than Ranganathan's facets, although Brisch claims that co-ordination of these relatively loosely allied terms gives unambiguous compounds which, moreover, can be retrieved by unskilled staff. Uvarov<sup>(149)</sup> also stresses the inadequacy of a general scheme, like UDC, which scatters topics by aspects which a special scheme seeks to collect; he describes a system for abstracts which synthesizes compound terms by combining these from separate schedules of products, etc. The most interesting contribution in this field is that of Farradane<sup>(150)</sup> <sup>(151)</sup>, who describes a method of constructing a classification for any required field by an inductive process, based on the literature in that field, from which are drawn elementary concrete terms, called *isolates*, which are then related to each other by means of a limited number of fundamental relations, called *operators*, to form compound terms, called *analets*. Some implications of this method are noted elsewhere.

In the category of adaptations of a general scheme are the numerous applications of the UDC to special fields. One of the most prominent examples of these "excerpt schedules" is the *ABC*<sup>(152)</sup> <sup>(153)</sup>, a manual issued by the International Building Classification Committee. The use of UDC here is also considered by Mølgaard-Hansen<sup>(154)</sup>. Building is also dealt with by Schoendorff<sup>(155)</sup>, who, discussing principles rather than actual schemes, shows how building offers a problem typical in special classification in that it overlaps many other subjects. The advantages of using a universal system as a basis for special schemes is stressed by Bucqué<sup>(156)</sup> in discussing the Decasepel System for archives classification, an adaptation of the UDC devised by the firm of Sepeli. This system is also described in another paper<sup>(157)</sup>. McCloy<sup>(158)</sup> describes a system for Canadian archives which allows co-ordination with the Library of Congress scheme. Kutter<sup>(159)</sup> stresses the importance of accommodating the needs of the individual special library and describes a system for adjusting UDC in this way by leaving all even numbers blank, for use in private expansions.

A significant development is the agreement by the FID to cancel the present forestry class in UDC (634.9) and to give a provisional place to the Oxford System for forestry<sup>(160)</sup>. Based on the Flury scheme, it is a joint production of the FAO and IUFRO (International Union of Forest Research Organizations) while it is the same as UDC in notational structure (except for some auxiliaries marked — —01/ — —09) it collects numerous aspects of forestry which are scattered in the UDC, e.g., Wood industries 674.

Considerable attention has been devoted to the classification of metallurgy, much of it stimulated by the ASM/SLA scheme (1950), for use with punched cards. Reports on its use are made by Edelmann<sup>(161)</sup> and by Colinese<sup>(162)</sup>. It is compared with the recent French scheme, *Classification Alpha-Numerique* in three different articles<sup>(163-165)</sup>. The second includes a comparison with the rather similar Italian scheme of the Italian Metallurgical Association, and the third is prefatory to an account of the UDC metallurgy class. A review<sup>(166)</sup> of

papers presented at a meeting of the Metals Section of the SLA in 1952 and a paper by Hyslop<sup>(167)</sup> are also relevant here.

The classification of medicine is considered at some length in the *Proceedings* of the First International Congress of Medical Librarianship<sup>(168)</sup>. In these, Haykins (pp. 104-108) deals with the new edition of Class R—the “most thorough revision of any class”—in the Library of Congress scheme<sup>(169)</sup>. Rogers (pp. 114-118) discusses the Army Medical Library classification<sup>(170)</sup>, which closely resembles the Library of Congress scheme in its structure. Both schemes show little of the synthetic features which distinguish most modern classifications and in this sense they may be contrasted with the greatly increased provision for this (by eleven auxiliary tables) in the new edition of Barnard's classification<sup>(171)</sup>, also described, by its author (pp. 119-113), in the *Proceedings*. The new Barnard is distinguished also by its bold acceptance of the need for change in a classification and its provision of an alternative notation for those librarians who are unwilling to change. Cunningham (pp. 119-122) discusses some general problems of medical classification (a new edition of her own scheme has since been published<sup>(172)</sup>). Graf (pp. 122- ) provides a statistical picture of the use of different schemes throughout the world; this is given in greater detail elsewhere<sup>(173)</sup>. Five schemes of medical classification are compared in a symposium<sup>(174)</sup>, and in the same issue of the *MLA Bulletin* the AML Classification is compared by Dragonette with one based on Dewey<sup>(175)</sup>.

The classification of chemistry has been significant mainly for the unique notational problems posed by chemical structures (especially in organic chemistry). One writer, reviewing the considerable work being done on this problem<sup>(176)</sup>, points out that so much depends on the development of an efficient notation that the work is well justified. Frear<sup>(177)</sup> indicates the characteristics needed in such a notation, which must be adaptable to punched-card searching. Dyson considers the indexing problem<sup>(178)</sup> and surveys the possibilities of mechanical searching<sup>(179)</sup>. Dyson's own system was provisionally accepted as the basis of an international system at a meeting of the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry<sup>(180)</sup>. A warning against expecting one system of coding to perform the three functions of normal oral and written communication, systematic listing and machine selection is given by Mooers<sup>(181)</sup>. The general problem is surveyed by Wiswesser<sup>(182)</sup>, who has also produced his own system<sup>(183)</sup>, claimed to be simpler in approach than any other. The less-publicized problem of classifying the conceptual and descriptive data of chemistry (rather than structures) is acknowledged by Dyson<sup>(184)</sup>, and thoroughly examined by Vickery in the experimental faceted schedule already noted<sup>(185)</sup>.

The peculiar problems of patent classification, with its multiple approaches further complicated by the factor of “novelty,” are the theme of numerous papers, most of them looking to machines for help. The intricacies of the British Classification Key are described by Bennett<sup>(186)</sup>, while the need for a revision of the French patents classification is indicated by Pierre<sup>(187)</sup>. The need for classification as a basis for machine selecting is stressed by Batten<sup>(188)</sup> and by Weaver<sup>(189)</sup>. The Bush committee<sup>(190)</sup> recommends reclassification and the development of machine selecting; the background of this report is provided in a paper by Ball<sup>(191)</sup>, whilst the theme of machine selection is pursued by Jeffery<sup>(192)</sup>, by Bailey and Cochran<sup>(193)</sup>, by Bailey, Lanham and

Leibowitz<sup>(194)</sup>, and by Bohnert<sup>(195)</sup>, who describes the IBM "101" machine used at the U.S. Patent Office, the code of which reflects class relations in its symbols. A European Convention on the International Classification of Patents for Inventions was signed in December 1954 by fifteen countries and a working party is engaged on the development of a scheme<sup>(196)</sup>.

The difficult field of aeronautics provides a very interesting example of a detailed classification<sup>(197)</sup> developed for punched cards; it is described by Greidanus and De Kock<sup>(198)</sup> and in a typically lively paper by Fairthorne<sup>(199)</sup>. Jackson<sup>(200)</sup> poses a problem in his description of a scheme which the librarians disliked but which the engineers thought fine. Saunders<sup>(201)</sup> describes a comprehensive classification<sup>(202)</sup> somewhat after the style of the Library of Congress scheme (including extensive use of alphabetical sequences) and showing little of the consistent adherence to homogeneous categories which distinguishes a faceted classification and which is increasingly accepted as a basis of machine systems. A brief survey of six aeronautical classifications is provided by Rom<sup>(203)</sup>.

The problem of overlapping fields is particularly raised by two other subjects receiving attention in the period. In a paper which indicates clearly some of the relations between classification and machine selection, Wildhack, Stern and Smith<sup>(204)</sup> deal with the problems raised in a programme launched by the National Bureau of Standards in the field of instrumentation. In the wider field of geography, the dissatisfaction of geographers with the fragmentation which their subject suffers in the general classifications is voiced by Wise<sup>(205)</sup>, while the hopes of a universally acceptable classification of geography have been virtually abandoned by a commission set up by the International Geographical Union<sup>(206)</sup>. A final report to this commission is expected in 1956<sup>(207)</sup>.

The problem of classifying a special field is also illustrated in papers by Wildman<sup>(208)</sup> on law, by Benser and Garside<sup>(209)</sup> on folk-lore, by Dean-Smith<sup>(210)</sup> on folk music and dance (this scheme being based on the Library of Congress schedules) and a revision of Dawson's scheme<sup>(211)</sup> on rubber.

Particularly interesting is a classification by Stein<sup>(212)</sup> on communications, in which the whole schedule is so arranged that any topic may be qualified by one preceding it in the schedule. This secures strict consistency in a preferred order and an automatic placing for any given compound—two great virtues of a faceted classification. Placing its chief facet at the end, this scheme also displays the "principle of inversion," first seen in the Colon classification. The influence of the latter, with its fundamental categories, is seen also in Pendleton's draft classification on insurance<sup>(213)</sup>, interesting also for the prominent way in which literary warrant modifies the schedules.

Of more general interest is the classification of music, which is considered by Bull<sup>(214)</sup>, by Line<sup>(215)</sup>, by Bryant<sup>(216)</sup> and by Olding<sup>(217)</sup>, the latter describing a faceted structure with synthetic notation.

A new edition by Peterson of Lynn's Catholic Classification<sup>(218)</sup> is an excellent example of the more traditional approach to library classification. The schedules closely reflect the idea of "consensus" in terms of Catholic scholarship, whilst its detailed enumeration of individual writers is reminiscent of the Library of Congress scheme. Three alternative notations are provided so that the scheme can be incorporated in the Congress or Dewey classifications if

desired. It lacks, however, Lynn's "Essay towards a philosophy of classification," which distinguished the introduction to the first edition.

The classification of special materials is surveyed in a new edition of Collison<sup>(219)</sup>; the use of UDC in this field is advocated by Murphy<sup>(220)</sup>. The classification of business records is the subject of a Swedish report by Kromnow<sup>(221)</sup> and an interesting paper by Jaffar<sup>(222)</sup>. Perusse<sup>(223)</sup> describes a classification for lantern slides, whilst Wei<sup>(224)</sup> proposes international standardization in the classification of slides and motion pictures. The classification of local collections is dealt with by Philip<sup>(225)</sup>.

### THE PRACTICE OF CLASSIFICATION: PROBLEMS OF PRODUCTION, USE, ADMINISTRATION

"Effective subject approach to recorded knowledge is, in the final analysis, the *raison d'être* of bibliographic organization," state Clapp and Murra<sup>(226)</sup>, who suggest that the discussion on the relative merits of Alphabetical catalogues and classification is far from exhausted. The inevitability of classification of some degree in all methods of subject control is emphasized by Clapp<sup>(227)</sup>, while its basic function is indicated by Shera<sup>(228)</sup> and its less emphasized functions by Ranganathan<sup>(229)</sup>. The importance of recorded materials in modern science is reflected by the emergence of the "Librarian-Chemist" as a member of the research team, and the implications of this are discussed by Ranganathan and Perry<sup>(230)</sup>. Ranganathan also considers the role of the subject specialist in producing classifications<sup>(231)</sup>.

The three different levels on which a classification may be used are discussed by Palmer<sup>(232)</sup>—as a shelf arrangement, for a subject index, and as a discipline for reference service. To take the last first, the function of classification as an essential element in a librarian's equipment is the subject of papers by Foskett<sup>(233)</sup> and by Coates<sup>(234)</sup>. The latter stresses the need for the assistant to be aware of the pattern underlying a subject's structure and the value of facet analysis in recognizing the pattern.

The relations between shelf arrangement and cataloguing continue to engage attention. Roloff<sup>(235)</sup>, in a second edition of his comprehensive book on subject cataloguing (which subject in Germany generally covers classification also), rejects systematic shelf arrangement, preferring numerical arrangement by accession mark; he considers that classification exercises subject control most effectively via a classified catalogue, claiming that such a divorce from shelf order makes it easier to revise the classification. This clearly reflects the common German scepticism as to the value of open-access collections. In contrast is the tendency of American librarians to regard classification as being limited to shelf arrangement<sup>(236)</sup>. Yet another view is that reflected in the "reader interest" arrangement adopted in medium-sized collections in Detroit and other American public libraries. This view, which has something in common with that of Dr. Savage, is discussed by Orvig<sup>(237)</sup>, by Rutzen<sup>(238)</sup> and by Sommerville<sup>(239)</sup>.

The systematic catalogue on a large scale continues to be demonstrated by the *British National Bibliography*<sup>(240)</sup>. The volumes from 1951 onwards show it clear of the teething troubles of its first year and are an excellent example of how a systematic order can be clarified and the searcher assisted by careful layout, feature words and alphabetical index. The appreciable benefits to be

gained by systematic arrangement as shown by the *B.N.B.* are remarked on by Flardy<sup>(241)</sup> and in a review of the *B.N.B.* in *The Times Literary Supplement*<sup>(242)</sup>. The Editor of the *B.N.B.*, in two interesting papers, has distinguished<sup>(243)</sup><sup>(244)</sup> three notable techniques used by it: the featuring which, when a Dewey class number is not coextensive with the subject, provides verbal extensions of the notation (e.g., 791.4 [1]—Cinema); the imposition of a Ranganathan facet formula on the pattern of Dewey or at least, as far as this is practicable; the economic and systematic method of alphabetical indexing known as chain indexing. The latter method has served to emphasize the essential part which an alphabetical index plays in a classification system; it is considered in detail by Mills<sup>(245)</sup> and by Doughty<sup>(246)</sup>. Another less economical method of displaying multiple relations, i.e., by a "two-dimensional" classified catalogue employing multiple entry, is described by Hilgenberg<sup>(247)</sup>. Interesting American discussions of the classified catalogue are contributed by Taylor<sup>(248)</sup> and by Dewey<sup>(249)</sup>. Tauber<sup>(250)</sup> discusses classification in university libraries, while the adoption of a systematic catalogue in university and special libraries is advocated by Sauvenier-Goffin<sup>(251)</sup>.

The practical problems of evaluating a classification system in operation are considered by Thorne<sup>(252)</sup> and by Cleverdon<sup>(253)</sup>. While the criteria advanced for mechanical searching by Perry and his associates are also relevant here<sup>(254)</sup>, Cleverdon suggests that the need for search at more than one level is probably best met by providing different catalogues.

Related to this is the old problem of broad versus close classification, and this shows itself prominently in a long correspondence set off chiefly by the *B.N.B.*'s policy of classifying to coextensiveness where possible<sup>(255)</sup><sup>(256)</sup>. Although dealing in terms of the alphabetical subject catalogue, Lilley's paper<sup>(257)</sup> on the concept of a "specific subject" is clearly also relevant to this problem, while Reichmann<sup>(258)</sup> suggests that close classification may significantly decrease the costs of subject cataloguing.

The problem of reclassification is considered by Bentz and Cavender<sup>(259)</sup>, whilst the practical procedures involved are described by Ham<sup>(260)</sup>, who gives four useful tables of statistics and costs, and by Borchardt, Marshall and Dunn<sup>(261)</sup>. The general question of changing, revising or adapting a classification scheme is dealt with by Haykin<sup>(262)</sup>, who gives a needed reminder of the duty librarians have to keep their classification as up to date as possible.

A survey of American classification and cataloguing practice in forty-eight research and eight public libraries is included in a study by the Committee on Administration of the ALA Division of cataloguing and classification<sup>(263)</sup>. Interesting sidelights on German practice are given by Burke<sup>(264)</sup>, who states that the continuation of many of the individual classifications (in the "systematic" catalogues) found in German libraries have been suspended on the score of expense, and the advantages of a standard system are becoming more apparent.

The modification of the Decimal Classification for Polish needs is discussed by Rejsowa<sup>(265)</sup>, who says Rusinov's tables (1944), based on Dewey, are not now favoured. It is suggested that material with a non-Marxist approach should be signified by a "B" prefacing the class number—an example of what Ranganathan calls a "System" in classification. Substantial modifications of Dewey in a Polish subject bibliography, *Przewodniku Bibliograficzny*, are also

described by Bornsteinowa<sup>(266)</sup>. The bases of a classification in a system of thought is also the theme of a contribution by Feyl to the *Festschrift* to Vorstius<sup>(267)</sup>, which discusses a scheme made for the "book-chambers" of the Soviet Union and contrasts the materialist philosophy underlying it with that reflected in the classification of the German national bibliographies. Also relevant here is a description by Seehafer<sup>(268)</sup> of a new classification for the Berlin Public Libraries which reflects the needs of Marxism-Leninism. A full and very interesting account of Chinese classifications is given by Tsuen-Hsuei Tsien<sup>(269)</sup>, who traces the development of the numerous classical schemes from their first appearance in the first century B.C. to the introduction of the Western systems in this century, and the present position.

### MECHANICAL SELECTION IN INFORMATION RETRIEVAL

Perhaps the chief advantage claimed for mechanical selection over less flexible systems of information retrieval is its ability to search equally easily for whatever combination of concepts a searcher requires. By establishing classes of material (albeit temporary classes) to meet specific requests, it produces what Mooers has aptly called "demand bibliographies."

But expectations of what the new techniques might achieve were at first pitched too high, and Vickery<sup>(270)</sup> examines some of the exaggerated claims made, for example, for the Rapid Selector, by a careful consideration of *all* the operations involved in retrieval. A warning against over-optimism as to the potentialities of mechanical searching is also made, appropriately, by Shaw<sup>(271)</sup>. Shera<sup>(272)</sup> considers, *inter alia*, the impact of machine selection on traditional classification if the latter should be freed from the responsibility of subject analysis (i.e., in indexes) by the greater efficiency of the machine. A useful review of the position (but mainly of the machines) is given by Jamieson<sup>(273)</sup>.

What emerges plainly from the literature of the past five years is that mechanical selection cannot dispense with classification. Nowhere is this seen more clearly than in the wide-ranging work of Perry and his associates, which has appeared in a series on Machine Literature Searching<sup>(274)</sup>. An essential feature of the indexing system developed is the provision of codes for individual terms which make explicit the generic relation of the term, e.g., the code term for Animal might be NA, for Mammal NAMA, for Rat NAMARA. The development of such codes clearly implies a prior analysis of the meaning of the terms, and this semantic analysis has been a major task for Perry and his associates. Some 30,000 terms were collected<sup>(275)</sup> as "building blocks" and these then underwent "semantic factoring," i.e., analysis into semantic elements; for example, a chronometer might be analysed as MES MAC TIM (a *measuring machine of time*). This factoring was greatly assisted by preliminary systematizing, i.e., classification. One article<sup>(276)</sup> describes five very general classes (Processes, Machines, etc.) and five categories (Chemical, Biological, etc.) further divided by field of specialization.

Although the machine can identify specified entries, including combinations (if suitably encoded), it cannot interpret meanings or discriminate beyond the narrow limits specified. Herein lies the particular need for great precision in definition of terms and for explicit and unambiguous expression of those

characters or subject aspects to be selected. Nevertheless, the fruits of these labours on semantic analysis cannot fail to be of great value also to the future development of conventional classification schedules.

Later articles <sup>(277)</sup> <sup>(278)</sup> consider the features a machine can search for. An important distinction always drawn by Perry and his associates is that between isolates (or entities) and the relations between them. Such detectable relations are those implicit in class definition (i.e., logical product, sum and difference) and those of sequential order, although the validity in logic of the last is challenged by Taube <sup>(279)</sup>. Whilst admitting <sup>(280)</sup> that in scientific and technical literature much of the meaning is conveyed by isolates alone, Perry emphasizes that relations are also important in characterizing the subject content of documents. This view is in contrast to that of some writers, e.g., Moores.

Of interest beyond their application to mechanical selection are the criteria for evaluation considered in the eighth paper <sup>(281)</sup>, in which useful concepts such as pertinency factor, resolution factor, etc., are established.

Useful reviews of the work of Perry and his colleagues appear in *Chemical and engineering news* <sup>(282-283)</sup> and in a paper by Perry, Kent and Berry <sup>(284)</sup>.

Traditional classification is distinguished by Bohnert <sup>(285)</sup> from a "second method," by which he means those systems in which the co-ordinates interact on demand—the distinctive feature of all mechanical systems (including the manual-mechanical system of co-ordinate indexing). Seven examples of the second method are described. One of them, at the National Research Council's Chemical-Biological Co-ordination Center, bases its analysis and recording of information on two classifications—a Chemical Code and a Biological Code. To save time in scanning (standard IBM punched card equipment is used) presorted files are kept, with fairly lavish duplication of cards, one copy being filed under each aspect. This system is also described by Beard and Heumann <sup>(286)</sup>, while a rather similar system, at the National Cancer Institute, is described by Hoffman <sup>(287)</sup>. Another system making prominent use of classification, and described by Bohnert, is at the Welch Medical Library of the Johns Hopkins University, which is also dealt with by Larkey, Himwich and Field <sup>(288)</sup>, and by Larkey <sup>(289)</sup>.

Describing the system developed at the Office of Basic Instrumentation of the National Bureau of Standards, Wildhack, Stern and Smith <sup>(290)</sup> provide a good commentary on the general needs of mechanical selection and its relation to classification. The key operation of indexing, i.e., assigning class designations to each reference, is assisted by a classification using nine categories. The Peck-a-Boo system is used, with 18,000 holes on each 5 inch by 8 inch card.

A comprehensive statement of the commonest form of mechanical selection, the punched card, is given by Casey and Perry <sup>(291)</sup>. While it lacks a general statement of the fundamentals of classification for mechanical selection, several chapters are of particular interest. In Chapter 3, I. A. Breger stresses the need for coding to be preceded by regular classification. In Chapter 8, A. F. Kirkpatrick provides a good example of the circumstances in which the flexibility of punched cards offers clear advantages over a conventional classified index. In Chapter 10, W. E. Batten describes the system of "coincidence detection" which he developed independently during the war, and remarks, "... a mechanized index demands greater attention and imagination in classification than do the other index forms" (p. 172). R. H. Richen, in

Chapter 12, gives a clear account of the general principles of coding, describing a code which embodies generic relations in its structure (using UDC as a basis). In Chapter 26, N. T. Ball provides a straightforward account of some of the main features of a conventional classification scheme.

An example of a fruitful failure, emphasizing the need to study the circumstances in which a punched-card system might be advantageous, is described by Ashthorpe<sup>(292)</sup>.

The problem of coding is closely bound up with the general problem of mechanical selection, but some writers have concentrated on it. Mooers, a mathematician, argues with considerable force<sup>(293)</sup> the superiority of superimposed coding, in which the combinations of numbers for each descriptor (i.e., elementary terms) are chosen strictly at random, whereby false drops are kept to a minimum. Mooers, through the Zator Company of Boston, acts as consultant in the construction of private retrieval systems, and emphasizes always the uniqueness of the requirements of any particular system<sup>(294)</sup>. In another paper<sup>(295)</sup> he deals with the problem of coding relationships between concepts. Superimposed coding is also advocated by Soper<sup>(296)</sup>, who also describes the introduction of generic relations in the coding as the need arises. This last problem is also discussed by Perry<sup>(297)</sup> and, *inter alia*, by Bristol<sup>(298)</sup>, who also discusses the work of Saunain in coding.

An account of a particularly versatile machine is given by Garfield<sup>(299)</sup>, who describes a fluid coding system with no fixed fields for particular categories of concepts. The problem of prefixing and of duplication of entries is also discussed. The same machine was also used experimentally in the U.S. Patent Office<sup>(300)</sup>. Another machine allowing a coding system of unusual selective power is described by Tyler, Myers and Kuipers<sup>(301)</sup>. By embodying a simple degree of syntax in the code "boundary specification" is made possible, which, the makers claim, conveys additional information as to the association of symbols. But on this see also Taube's notes, mentioned above<sup>(279)</sup>.

The system of co-ordinate indexing which has achieved prominence in the past five years is a classification stripped of its preferred orders and its ability to provide a systematic order of material on shelves or in catalogues. The Uniterm system is described fully by Taube and others<sup>(302)</sup>, while its basis in terms of the class calculus of symbolic logic is presented by Taube and Wachtel<sup>(303)</sup>. In Chapter 7 of the studies, "Classification and Categorization," Wachtel points out that the inevitable linearity of classification is its great handicap from the point of view of flexible searching from multiple aspects; but he states that a systematic guide to the headings of a Uniterm co-ordinate indexing system is desirable, both to help the user choose his terms for searching and to control the analysis necessary for the index. He proposes to arrange terms in categories, though not in hierarchical order. An application of this in a mechanical system, i.e., Peek-a-Boo, is also described by Wachtel<sup>(304)</sup>. Peek-a-Boo, Selecto and other systems which rely on "coincidence detection," the combination of headings by users as required, are described in a survey by Bjorkbom<sup>(305)</sup> as "post combination systems."

The possible application of co-ordinate indexing to really large collections is the theme of another paper by Taube and others<sup>(306)</sup>. Criticizing the predetermined associations implied in classification, Taube claims that the mind

operates by free association, dissociation and reassociation and that a retrieval system should reflect this. He describes the development of an "association machine" on the Peek-a-Boo plan.

A somewhat similar approach is seen in an article by Luhn<sup>(307)</sup>, who accepts the principle of characterizing a topic by a set of identifying criteria, but claims that these should reflect broader concepts if disagreements in interpretation by indexers and searchers are to be minimized.

Discussing the implications of mechanization, Shera<sup>(308)</sup> says: "This identification and classification of the vast array of concepts that constitute what is called knowledge . . . [involves] several disciplines, among them logic, epistemology and semantics, and . . . it is the major task of librarians to see that the job gets done." A significant development of the period under review is the way in which the study of classification has tended to expand its margins and to borrow from other studies. The use of symbolic logic and the algebra of classes by Perry, Taube and others has been noted, whilst an interesting example of its use in non-library classification is found in Gregg's application of it to classification in biology in general and to "set-theory" in particular<sup>(309)</sup>.

Two other studies making themselves felt here are cybernetics (the study of automata) and, more especially, information theory. The core of classification is the operation of distinguishing classes of things by their possession of specified characteristics. The unthinking nature of the machine requires that the factors it searches and seeks to recognize and identify shall be simple and utterly unambiguous. Ultimately this reduces to the possession or non-possession of a single characteristic—a simple dichotomy. A Yes or No response is all that is required for identification. It is the fact that this binary principle coincides with the behaviour of a mechanical or electrical impulse that underlines the operations of modern information-searching machines. A unit of information, a "bit," is measured in just these terms—that information which halves the field of suspects (assuming the latter to be equally probable).

But such "numerical information is about the signals, not about what they stand for"<sup>(310)</sup>, and in this sense it is to the notational side of classification and selection rather than the ordering and semantic side that it contributes. For example, it stresses as a basic principle of coding what Fairthorne calls so picturesquely the principle of the wonderful one-horse shay—i.e., of equal loading; each information-bearing element should be used equally often.

On the relations of these studies to librarianship in general and to classification in particular, Fairthorne's articles<sup>(311)</sup> <sup>(312)</sup> are outstanding, both in originality and in wit. One paper<sup>(313)</sup> is distinguished typically by concern for the practical economics of retrieval. Describing retrieval as the translation of users' requests into a special language of "document content relevance," he emphasizes that this must have regard to the actual and probable demands.

A very clear account of that part of the communication theory developed by Shannon and Weaver which is of immediate relevance to classification is provided by Fleisher<sup>(314)</sup>. Gull<sup>(315)</sup> suggests that information theory may contribute usefully to the problem of "semantic noise" such as occurs in the translation of a user's subject request into terms of a classification schedule or a subject heading.

A useful bibliography of these developing marginal fields is included in a memorandum by Heumann<sup>(316)</sup>.

## TEXTBOOKS, BIBLIOGRAPHIES, HISTORIES

The activity of the period is reflected in a very full and useful list of current technical terms in classification compiled by Vickery<sup>(317)</sup>.

In Great Britain, new editions of three well-known textbooks have appeared, one by Phillips<sup>(318)</sup> and two by Sayers<sup>(319)</sup> <sup>(320)</sup>. But only the latter's *Introduction* has made any serious attempt to keep up with developments. An attempt to do this has been made, however, by Palmer and Wells<sup>(321)</sup> in a book significant chiefly for its acceptance of Ranganathan's five fundamental categories as being an adequate and helpful basis for subject analysis and for practical classification. The somewhat metaphysical flavour suggested (but in fact explicitly denied by Ranganathan) by the terminology of the categories was one of the factors stimulating a vigorous attack by Metcalfe<sup>(322)</sup> on what he called the "muddled metaphysics and logic" of Ranganathan, Richardson, Bliss, Bradford and others.

A new edition of Bradford's book, *Documentation*, contains a new introduction by Shera and Egan<sup>(323)</sup>, but is otherwise unchanged. New editions of the manuals by Roloff<sup>(324)</sup> and by Aguiayo<sup>(325)</sup> have also appeared.

An important new American manual, edited by Tauber<sup>(326)</sup>, has two chapters on classification; they include descriptions of the major general classification—and a number of special ones—but the theoretical and general part is very limited and treats classification mainly as a shelf-locating device.

Foskett<sup>(327)</sup> has written a condensed but amazingly comprehensive account of the classification scene, accompanied by a particularly full bibliography of 254 references. Useful bibliographies also appear in a book by Holmstrom<sup>(328)</sup> (which also gives considerable information on mechanical selection, equipment, etc., as well as on classification in general) and in articles by De Grolier<sup>(329)</sup> and by Fleumann<sup>(330)</sup>.

An interesting account of the historical background of classification is given by La Montagne<sup>(331)</sup>, whilst Vickery<sup>(332)</sup> unearths a fascinating story of how the seventeenth-century clergyman and first Secretary of the Royal Society, John Wilkins, produced a scheme "presaging current ideas in its principles, minuteness and notation."

## REFERENCES

## GENERAL THEORY

1. SHERA, J. H. and EGAN, M. E. Foundations of a theory of bibliography. *Lib. Q.* 22 (2) 1952, 125-137.
2. SHERA, J. H. Effect of machine methods on the organization of knowledge. *Amer. Doc.* 3 (1) 1952, 15-20.
3. SHERA, J. H. Classification: current functions and applications to the subject analysis of library materials (in Tauber, M. F., ed. *The subject analysis of library materials*. New York: School of Library Service, Columbia University, 1953. pp. 29-42).
4. FOSKETT, D. J. Classification and systematic arrangement. *Librarian* 41 (1) 1952, 1-6.
5. VICKERY, B. C. The inadequacy of current classifications for scientific indexing. *Rev. of Doc.* 19 (3) 1952, 87-91.
6. VICKERY, B. C. Systematic subject indexing. *J. of Doc.* 9 (1) 1953, 48-57.
7. VICKERY, B. C. Classification of chemistry (Optional facets 17). *Abgila* 3 (1) 1953, 11-24.
8. VICKERY, B. C. Developments in subject indexing. *J. of Doc.* 11 (1) 1955, 1-11.
9. The need for a faceted classification as the basis for all methods of information retrieval. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 37 (7) 1955, 262-268.

10. VICKERY, B. C. The changing structure of knowledge. *Annals of Lib. Sci.* 1 (3) 1954, 137-147.
11. PURANIK, K. D. Field of knowledge and its repercussions on classification. *Ahghila* 2 (1) 1951, 19-23.
12. FARRADANE, J. E. L. A scientific theory of classification and indexing: further considerations. *J. of Doc.* 8 (2) 1952, 73-92.
13. FARRADANE, J. E. L. The psychology of classification. *Ibid.* 11 (4) 1955, 187-207.
14. WALLIN, E. The main features of a new universal system of classification. (Paper presented at the 18th Conference of the F.L.D., 1951.) Stockholm, 1950. pp. 29.
15. VONSTIG, J. Das Ordnungsgefüge der Wissenschaften. *Z. f. B.* 68 (7-8) 1951, 252-265.
16. GROENEFELD, C. Over de grondslagen van de classificatietheorie. *Bibliothekewet* 39 (7) 1954, 222-248.
17. HJÖRRBOM, C. Principiella betraktelser över litteraturklassificering och bibliografisk systematik (in Ahlstedt, V., and others. *Biblioteksproblem*. 1952. pp. 40-64).
18. DE GROLLER, E. L'étude des problèmes de classification documentaire sur le plan international. *Rev. of Doc.* 20 (3) 1953, 105-117.
19. DE GROLLER, E. Analyse et synthèse dans les classifications et codifications documentaires (in IFLA/IFD International Association of Music Libraries. *International congress of libraries and documentation*. Vol. IIB. La Haye, M. Nijhoff, 1955. pp. 102-108).
20. DONKER DUYVIS, F. General and special classifications. IFLA/IFD/International Association of Music Libraries. *International Congress of libraries and documentation*. Vol. I. La Haye, M. Nijhoff, 1955. pp. 204-207.
21. DE GROLLER, E. État présent du problème de la classification documentaire. *A.B.C.D.* 9 (Aix-June) 1953, 237-246.
22. DE GROLLER, E. Les méthodes applicables à la recherche retrospective des documents scientifiques. Paris, Unesco, 1955 (Ref. 3205601). pp. 31.
23. REED, J. B. Chronological sigils. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (1) 1954, 26-28.
24. FORSTER, D. J. Modern trends in classification. IFLA/IFD/International Association of Music Libraries. *International congress of libraries and documentation*. La Haye, M. Nijhoff, 1955. Vol. IIB. pp. 96-102.
25. RICHMOND, P. A. Some multi-plane classification schemes. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (2) 1954, 61-71.
26. RUSK, G. Y. The resolution of cultural conflicts and a master classification. *Ahghila* 2 (1) 1951, 9-18.
27. RUSK, G. Y. Techniques for the resolution of cultural conflicts (in *Library science in India: Silver Jubilee Volume presented to the Madras Library Association*. Ed. by K. Chandrasekharan. Madras, Madras Library Association; London, G. Blunt, 1953. pp. xv, 203).
28. HELER, H. A suggestion for the co-ordination of the Dewey Decimal Classification with "levels of abstraction." *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (2) 1951, 115-118.
29. SHERA, J. H. Classification as the basis of bibliographic organization (in Shera, J. H. and Egan, M. E. eds. *Bibliographic organization*. Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1951. pp. 72-93).
30. WELLS, A. J. Classification for omnibus national bibliographies. *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (2) 1951, 91-95.
31. CORDONNIER, G. Classification, classement, rangement et sélection. C.N.O.F. (revue Mensuelle de la Comité National de l'Organisation Française) 25 (4) 1951, 3-8; *Ibid.* 25 (5-6) 1951, 19-35.
32. VICKERY, B. C. Notational symbols in classification. *J. of Doc.* 8 (1) 1952, 14-32.
33. VICKERY, B. C. Notational symbols in classification. Part 2: notation as an ordering device. *Ibid.* 12 (2) 1956, 73-87.
34. KLUTH, R. System-Notation-Leitkarten. *Z. f. Bib. u. Bib.* 2 (2) 1955, 89-111.
35. WÜSTER, E. Die sichtbare und unsichtbare Alphabetisierung der DK-Zeichen. *Rev. of Doc.* 19 (2) 1952, 39-50.

*Colon Classification and the Theory of Analytico-Synthetic Classification*

36. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Colon classification. 4th ed. Madras, Madras Library Association; London, G. Blunt, 1952. (Various paging.)
37. Optional facets in library classification, 1-21. *Ahghila* 1 (2) 1949, -3 (4) 1953.
38. Depth classification, 1-16. *Annals of Lib. Sci.* 1 (1) 1954; *Ibid.* 2 (4) 1955.
39. Optional facets (7) and (8) *Ahghila* 2 (1) 1951, 1-8; *Ibid.* 2 (6) 1952, 145-152.
40. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (3) and (5) Common Isolate. *Annals* 1 (2) 1954, 65-80; *Ibid.* 1 (3) 1954, 129-136.

41. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Optional facets. (17) Octave vs. Group notation and facet. *Abgila* 2 (8) 1952, 245-255.
42. KRISHNA RAO, D. B. Optional facets. (12) Group notation for crops. *Ibid.* 2 (8) 1952, 256-264.
43. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (12) Organization of notation in Zone 3. *Annals*, 2 (3) 1953, 65-78.
44. PARTHASARATHY, S. Optional facets. (13) System of physics and special physics. *Ibid.* 2 (8) 1952, 265-267.
45. PURANIK, K. D. Optional facets. (14) Specials in economics. *Ibid.* 2 (8) 1952, 268-272.
46. [RANGANATHAN, S. R.] Optional facets. (16) Diffuse treatment of systems and specials. *Ibid.* 3 (1) 1953, 7-10.
47. [KRISHNA RAO, D. B.] Optional facets. (18) System and special in agriculture. *Ibid.* 3 (1) 1953, 25-27.
48. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Optional facets. (11), *op. cit.*
49. [RANGANATHAN, S. R.] Optional facets. (13) W. Universe—Portion, Constituent, Organ. *Abgila* 3 (1) 1953, 1-6.
50. [RANGANATHAN, S. R.] Optional facets (19). General theory of classification. *Ibid.* 5 (3) 1953, 93-107.
51. KRISHNA RAO, D. B. Depth classification (11). Soil: is it Energy or Matter or Personality? *Annals* 2 (2) 1955, 40-42.
52. KRISHNA RAO, D. B. Depth classification. (14) Manure. *Ibid.* 2 (3) 1955, 86-88.
53. [RANGANATHAN, S. R.] Optional facets. (21) Classification of materials on foreign policy. *Abgila* 3 (4) 1953, 180-188.
54. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification (3), (4), (7) and (13). *Annals* 1 (1) 1954, 21-26; *Ibid.* 1 (2) 1954, 81-86; *Ibid.* 1 (4) 1954, 202-206; *Ibid.* 2 (3) 1955, 79-85.
55. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (8) Documentation work and abstract classification. *Ibid.* 2 (1) 1955, 1-12.
56. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (10) Zones in array. *Ibid.* 2 (2) 1955, 33-39.
57. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (12), *op. cit.*
58. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (15) Zones in array of order 2. *Annals* 2 (4) 1955, 97-108.
59. Optional facets. (19) General theory of classification (Report 3 to the F.I.D., Vienna, June 1953). *Abgila* 3 (3) 1953, 93-107.
60. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (10) Zones in array. *Annals* 2 (2) 1955, 33-39.
61. VICKERY, B. C. Optional facets. (17), *op. cit.* (Ref. 7).
62. KRISHNA RAO, D. B. Optional facets. (20) Species, variety, strain. *Abgila* 3 (4) 1953.
63. KRISHNA RAO, D. H. Depth classification. (9) Agriculture 5. Species and cultivar. *Annals* 2 (1) 1955, 12-21.
64. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (6) First octaves. *Ibid.* 1 (4) 1954, 193-206.
65. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Optional facets (9). *Abgila* 2 (7) 1952, 173-200.
66. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Optional facets (19), *op. cit.*
67. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (1) Abstract classification. *Annals* 1 (1) 1954, 1-20.
68. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Depth classification. (8), *op. cit.*
69. RANGANATHAN, S. R. General theory of classification. *Abgila* 2 (2), 1951, 25-40.
70. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Optional facets. (9), *op. cit.*
71. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Optional facets. (19), *op. cit.*
72. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Common isolates in documentation work. *Rev. of Doc.* 22 (1) 1955, 18-25.
73. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Mixed notation and zones in an array. FID (F55-37/May 24, 1955) [a separate].
74. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Philosophy of library classification. Copenhagen, E. Munksgaard, 1951. pp. 133. (Lib. research monographs, Vol. 2.)
75. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Classification and communication. Delhi, Univ. of Delhi; London, G. Blunt, 1951. pp. 291.
76. RANGANATHAN, S. R. *ed.* Depth classification. (etc.) Delhi, Indian Library Association; London, G. Blunt, 1953. pp. 444.
77. PARTHASARATHY, S. Memoirs of the Library Research Circle. *Abgila* 2 (6) 1952, 153-159.
78. Delhi seminar in library science. *Abgila* 2 (7) 1952, 217-222; *Ibid.* 2 (8) 1952, 259-267.
79. CHATTERJI, N. N. A review of the literature on Colon Classification. *Ibid.* 2 (6) 1952, 162-172.
80. MILLS, J. Bliss and Colon classifications. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (5) 1951, 146-153.
81. JONES, G. The Colon theory comes of age. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (4) 1954, 213-217.

## General Schemes

82. DEWEY, M. Decimal classification. Standard (15th) edition. New York, Forest Press Inc., Lake Placid Club, 1951.
83. New standard edition of Dewey. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 7 (3) 1951, 57-65.
84. OSBORN, A. D. Dewey—1951. *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 35 (4) 1951, 297-300.
85. EATON, T. Dewey re-examined. *Lib. J.* 77 (9) 1952, 745-751.
86. MOSELEY, M. L. Dewey decimal classification: reduced schedules in Edition 15 and criteria for Edition 16. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (1) 1954, 12-16.
87. JACOBUS, A. J. Chemistry in the 15th edition DC. *Ibid.* 7 (4) 1951, 111-116.
88. AIJKEN, W. R. The Dewey decimal classification—Standard (15th) edition. *Lib. W.* 53 (613) 1951, 299-304.
89. HARRISON, K. C. Standard DC: a student's guide. *Librarian* 40 (7) 1951, 149-151.
90. WALFORD, A. J. Dewey decimated. *Lib. Assn.* 44 (9) 1951, 140-141.
91. SELLEY, P. A. Dewey decimal classification: relocations in Edition 15 and criteria for Edition 16. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (1) 1954, 3-11.
92. DEWEY, M. Decimal classification. Abridged (7th) edition. New York, Forest Press Inc., Lake Placid Club, 1953.
93. HAYKIN, D. J. D.D.C. 16th edition edited by Library of Congress. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (2) 1954, 92-98.
94. HAYKIN, D. J. 16th edition moves forward: the editor's progress report. *Ibid.* 10 (4) 1954, 206-210.
95. HUNGERFORD, E. A classification from the ground up. *Ibid.* 10 (4) 1954, 210-217.
96. SIMONTON, W. The 16th edition and the practical classifier. *Ibid.* 10 (4) 1954, 217-222.
97. Criteria and general procedure for Decimal Classification Edition 16. Restatement, December 6, 1955. *Ibid.* 12 (2) 1956, 91-97.
98. EATON, T. Epitaph to a dead classification. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (11) 1955, 428-430.
99. RIDER, F. The story of the D.C., 1876-1951. *Lib. J.* 76 (6) 1951, 473-476.
100. HILGENBERG, O. H. C. Zur entstehung der dezimalklassifikation. *Z. f. B.* 66 (7-8) 1952, 259-264.
101. SAYERS, W. C. B. The centenary of Melvil Dewey. *Brit. Book News* (136) 1951, 749-753.
102. Dezimal-klassifikation Deutsche Gesamtausgabe. 3. internationale Ausgabe. Berlin, Deutscher Normenausschuss, 1947-1953. 10 v. (incl. Ergänzungen 1951).
103. Universal decimal classification. Complete English edition, 4th international edition. British Standards Institution, 1943-*in progress*.
104. Classification décimale universelle. Edition complète en langue française. 5 ème édition internationale. Bruxelles, Editions Mundanaeum, 1940-*in progress*.
105. [Universal decimal classification. 6th international edition, in Japanese.] Tokyo, Jap. Soc. UDC, 1951-*in progress*.
106. [Universal decimal classification. 7th international edition, in Spanish.] Madrid, Inst. Nac. de Racional, 1955-*in progress*.
107. Extensions and corrections to the UDC. A cumulative index to authorized extensions to the UDC from January 1, 1950. The Hague, F.I.D., 1951-*to date*.
108. Federation Internationale de Documentation. 19th Conference. Report of the International Committee on Universal Classification. *Rev. of Doc.* 19 (3) 1952, 66-74.
109. FLOYD, G. A. Notational principles. The Hague, F.I.D., 1952. pp. 5.
110. WÜSTER, E. Die sichtbare . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 35).
111. FLOYD, G. A. International UDC developments in 1952. *Aslib Proc.* 5 (1) 1953, 41-53.
112. FLOYD, G. A., etc. Recent UDC developments. *Ibid.* 7 (3) 1955, 127-132.
113. DONKER-DUYVIS, E. The UDC: what it is and what it is not. *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (2) 1951, 99-105.
114. MILLER, C. F. The Universal decimal classification. *N.Z. Libs.* 15 (3) 1952, 57-63.
115. HANFER, S. F. The Universal decimal classification. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (4) 1954, 195-213.
116. Critique of UDC (1)-(15). *Abgila* 2 (1) 1951 to 3 (4) 1953 and *Annals of Lib. Sci.* 1 (1) to 1 (4) 1954.
117. FAQIR CHAND. Critique of UDC (13)-(15). 02 Library economy. *Annals of Lib. Sci.* 1 (1) 1954, 27-35; *Ibid.* 1 (2) 1954, 87-93; *Ibid.* 1 (4) 1954, 207-211.
118. Dialectics of UDC. (0)-(10). *Abgila* 2 (7) 1952 to 3 (4) 1953; *Annals of Lib. Sci.* 1 (1) to 1 (4) 1954.
119. ØNDEGÅRD, K. En botaniker ser på UDK. *UDK Bull.* 1 (1) 1955, 3-19.
120. KRISHNA RAO, D. B. Comparison of CC and UDC. (1) Agricultural periodicals. *Abgila* 2 (4) 1951, 90-94.

121. Om Klassifikation par UDK—grupperna 38 och 65. *Tid. f. D.* 10 (1) 1954, 7-8.
122. Probleme der Klassifikation. *Nach. d. Vereinigung Schweizer Bib.* 30 (2) 1954, 33-54.
123. KOCHFRILAU, E. Probleme der Dezimalklassifikation und ihrer Revision. *Nouvelles ADS and ASD.* 30 (4) 1954, 103-111.
124. SUNDERLIN, A. The present system of revision of the UDC; some critical remarks (*in IFLA: IFLA/International Association of Music Libraries, International Congress of libraries and documentation.* Vol. IIb. La Haye, M. Nijhoff, 1955. pp. 113-118).
125. Federation Internationale de Documentation. Guiding principles, rules and procedure for the development and revision of documentary classifications, with special reference to the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) 2nd ed. rev. The Hague, HID, 1955. pp. [2], 28.
126. ÖLMAN, E. [Permutation of coloned UDC numbers.] *Tid. f. Dok.* 11 (1) 1955, 1-4, 10.
127. LORPHEVRE, G. Un apport des Belges au développement de la Classification Décimale Universelle. Les divisions communes. *Cahiers* 5 (1) 1951, 2-5.
128. LORPHEVRE, G. Henri La Fontaine, 1854-1943. Paul Otlet, 1868-1944. *Rev. of Doc.* 21 (3) 1954, 89-92.
129. ENGER, E. L'usage de la Classification Décimale Universelle en Suède. *Tid. f. Dok.* 7 (4) 1951, 47-48.
130. COMLIN, T. Den norske DK-klubb og dens arbeid. *Tid. f. Dok.* 9 (2) 1953, 21-23.
131. DUBUC, R. UDC in France. *FLD Information* 2 (2) 1952, 5-6.
132. Aplicación de la Clasificación Decimal Universal: trabajo del Comité Nacional Español. *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (3) 1951, 147-154.
133. Der Beitrag der Schweiz zur Neuesten Entwicklung der Internationalen Dezimalklassifikation. *Nach. d. VSB* 27 (2) 1951, 49-53.
134. MUMPHY, L. P. A vertical file classification system for a special library. *Spec. Libs.* 44 (5) 1953, 179-181.
135. RUSTON, W. R. Une application combinée des cartes perforées et de la Classification Universelle pour la bibliographie. *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (1) 1951, 31-40.
136. Appendix to *Nach. f. Dok.* 2 (Sept.) 1951.
137. BLISS, H. F. A Bibliographic Classification; extended by systematic auxiliary schedules for composite specification and notation. New York, H. W. Wilson Co., 1952. Vols. I and II. Classes 1/9, A/K. 2nd ed. in one vol. 1952. pp. xiv, 729. Vol. III, Classes L/Z. 1953. pp. x, 658. Vol. IV General Index, 1953. pp. x, 426.
138. HARRISON, K. C. The Bibliographic Classification of Bliss. *Librarian* 42 (5) 1953, 97-99.
139. PALMER, B. I. [Review of the Bibliographic Classification, vols. 3 and 4.] *J. of Doc.* 10 (1) 1952, 26-28.
140. [Review of the Bibliographic Classification.] *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (9) 1953, 298-300.
141. MITS, J. The Bliss and Colon Classifications . . . , *op. cit.* (Ref. 80).
142. The Bliss Classification Bulletin. 1 (1) 1954. New York, H. W. Wilson Co., 1954. pp. 20.
143. Library of Congress. Classification. Class G. Geography, Anthropology, Folklore, Manners and Customs, Recreations. 3rd ed. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1954. pp. 502.
144. Library of Congress. Classification. Class R. Medicine. 3rd ed. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1952. pp. xiv, 240.

#### Special Schemes

145. WELLS, A. J. How to choose a classification for your special library. *Aslib. Proc.* 3 (2) 1951, 107-122.
146. SLA Committee on Special Classifications. Special report (prepared by A. Kent). *Spec. Libs.* 45 (10) 1954, 417-420.
147. BRISCH, E. G. Maximum & minimo. *Inst. of Production Engineers J.* 33 (6) 1954, 344-351.
148. BRISCH, E. G. Subject analysis in 81 concepts. *Aslib. Proc.* 7 (3) 1955, 152-162.
149. BRISCH, E. G. Classification cuts clutter. *Machinist* 96 (21) 1952, 775-779.
149. UVAROV, F. B. Some classification and indexing problems in an industrial information bureau. *Aslib. Proc.* 4 (1) 1952, 5-12.
150. FARRADANE, J. E. L. A scientific theory of classification . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 12).
151. FARRADANE, J. E. L. The psychology of classification . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 13).
152. ABC Abridged building classification [for architects, builders and civil engineers]. Tumba, Sweden. Byggfitteratur, 1953 (F.L.D. 261). pp. 60.
153. ABC Abridged building classification [for architects, builders and civil engineers]. 2nd ed. Rotterdam, International Council for Building Research, Studies and Documentation, 1955. pp. 71.

154. MØLLGAARD-JÄNNESEN, R. On the use of the UDC in building documentation. *Rev. of Doc.* 1 (2) 1952, 27-30.
155. SCHWENDORFF, E. Classification for building documentation. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (2) 1954, 70-72.
156. BUCQUÉ, A. L'Application de la Classification Universelle aux archives communales belges. *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (1) 1951, 41-44.
157. L'application de la Classification Décimale Universelle aux archives des administrations communales belges. *Cahiers* 5 (4) 1951, 40-42.
158. MCCROY, T. R. A classification for Canadian literature. *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 36 (2) 1952, 91-92.
159. KUTNER, F. Koordinierte Klassifikation. *Nachr. d. VSB* 27 (2) 1951, 53-55.
160. Oxford system of decimal classification for forestry. Definitive English version. Oxford, Commonwealth Agricultural Bureaux, 1954. pp. 115.
161. FIDELMANS, D. L. Library use of new indexing system. *Met. Prog.* 39 (4) 1951, 526-528.
162. COLINSEF, P. E. Why B.I.S.R.A. has adopted the American Society for Metals, Special Libraries Association (ASM/SLA) Metallurgical literature classification. *Aslib Proc.* 5 (4) 1953, 348-349.
163. SCORTECCI, M. Confronto critico fra le classificazioni della Metallurgia Italiana, Francese and Americana. *La Metallurgia Italiana* 43 (3/4) 1951, 110-120.
164. Tva metallurgiska klassifikations system. *Tid. f. Dok.* 8 (4) 1952, 37-42.
165. OLIMAN, E. and SAVILLA, J. P. The Universal Decimal Classification applied to metallurgical literature. *J. of Iron & Steel Inst.* 177 (1) 1954, 183-188.
166. New horizons in literature searching (papers presented at the Metals Section of S.I.A. Philadelphia, 1952). *Amer. Doc.* 4 (1) 1953, 1-3.
167. HYSLOP, M. R. International classification for metallurgical literature. *Spec. Libs.* 13 (1) 1952, 28-29.
167. HYSLOP, M. R. International co-operation in metallurgical literature classification. *Amer. Doc.* 4 (1) 1953, 1-3.
168. Proceedings of the First International Congress of Medical Librarianship, London, 20-25 July 1953. Ed. by F. N. L. Poynter. *Libri* 3, 1954 [complete number devoted to Proceedings].
169. LIBRARY OF CONGRESS. Classification. Class R. Medicine 3rd ed., *op. cit.*
170. U.S. ARMY MEDICAL LIBRARY. Army Medical Library Classification, Washington, Govt. Printing Off., 1951. pp. 375.
171. BARNARD, C. C. A classification for medical and veterinary libraries. 2nd ed. London, H. K. Lewis, 1955. pp. viii, 279.
172. CUNNINGHAM, E. R. Classification for medical literature. 4th ed., rev. & enl. Nashville, Vanderbilt U.P., 1955. pp. xix, 364.
173. GRAS, L. Problèmes de classification medicale. *Rev. of Doc.* 22 (2) 1953, 47-78.
174. Symposium on use of main classification schemes. *Bull. M.L.A.* 41 (4) 1953, 333-360.
175. DRAGONETTE, D. B. A comparison of the Army Medical Library Classification and the Black Classification for use in a dental library. *Bull. M.L.A.* 41 (4) 1953, 388-392.
176. "Which notation?" *Chem. & Eng. News* (33) July 4, 1955, 2838-2843.
177. FREAR, D. E. H. Comprehensive coding schemes for chemical compounds (*in* Casey, R. S. and Perry, J. W. Punched-cards . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 291). Ch. 22, pp. 311-328).
178. DYSON, G. M. Studies in chemical documentation. *Chem. & Ind.* (28) July 12, 1952, 676-681.
179. DYSON, G. M. Studies in chemical documentation. Part 3. Mechanized documentation. *Chem. & Ind.* (16) Apr. 17, 1954, 440-449.
180. BERRY, M. M. and PERRY, J. W. Notational systems for structural formula. *Chem. & Eng. News* (30), Feb. 4, 1952, 407-410.
181. MOOLERS, C. N. Ciphering structural formula. The Zetapleg system. *Zetor Tech. Bull.* 54, 1951. pp. 8.
182. WISWESSER, W. J. A systematic "line formula" chemical notation. *Aslib Proc.* 5 (2) 1953, 137-147.
183. WISWESSER, W. J. A line-formula chemical notation. New York, Crowell Co., 1954. pp. 149.
184. DYSON, G. M. Advances in classification. *J. of Doc.* 11 (1) 1955, 12-18.
185. VICKERY, B. C. Classification of chemistry . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 7).
186. BENNETT, E. M. Searching classified patent specifications. *Aslib Proc.* 9 (2) 1952, 75-86.
187. PIERRE, M. A propos du changement de la classification française des marques de fabrique et de commerce. *Emballages* 22 (134) 1952, 77-78.
188. BATTEN, W. F. Specialized files for patent searching (*in* Casey, R. S. and Perry, J. W. Punched-cards . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 291). Ch. 10, pp. 169-181).
189. WEAVER, W. The Patent Office problem. *Amer. Doc.* 6 (3) 1955, 129-133.
190. Report by the Advisory Committee on applications for machines to Patent Office operators. Washington, D.C., Dept. of Commerce, 1954. pp. 76.

191. BALI, N. T. Searching patents by machine. *Amer. Doc.* 6 (2) 1955, 88-92.
192. JEFFERY, C. N. Application of punched cards to patent searching. *Inst. of Engineers J.* (Australia) 26 (6) 1954, 107-110.
193. BAILEY, M. F. and COCHRAN, S. W. Patent searching—general files (*in* Casey, R. S. and Perry, J. W. Punched cards . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 291). Ch. 25, pp. 367-377).
194. BAILEY, M. F., LANHAM, B. E. and LEIBOWITZ, J. Mechanized searching in the U.S. Patent Office. *J. Pat. Off. Soc.* 35 (August) 1953, 566-587.
195. BOHNERT, L. M. Two methods . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 285).
196. International classification for patent specifications. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (5-6) 1955, 95.
197. DE KOCK, A. C. and VAN DE VOOREN, A. I. The N.L.L. card catalogue of aerodynamic measurements. Amsterdam, National Luchtvaartlaboratorium, 1953. pp. [48] (Report F.1254).
198. GRHDANUS, J. H. and DE KOCK, A. C. Note on a card index system of bibliographical control of published results of aerodynamic measurements. *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (3) 1951, 145-148.
199. FAIRTHORNE, R. A. Notes on the NLL card catalogue of aerodynamic measurements. *J. of Doc.* 10 (1) 1954, 11-18.
200. JACKSON, E. B. The NACA [National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics] Classification system—a case history. *Aslib. Proc.* 5 (3) 1953, 215-234.
201. SAUNDERS, J. M. A new classification schedule for aeronautics. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (1) 1955, 9-12.
202. U.S. NAVAL ACADEMY, ANNAPOLIS. Library. Classification schedules BB and BK: aeronautical art and science, by James M. Saunders. Annapolis, 1953. pp. 99.
203. ROM, G. S. General decimal classification systems for aeronautical use. Amsterdam, National Luchtvaartlaboratorium, 1955. pp. 23 (Report MP.115).
204. WILDHACK, W. A., STERN, J. and SMITH, J. Documentation in instrumentation. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (4) 1954, 223-237.
205. WISE, M. J. Geography in the public library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (12) 1954, 472-476.
206. Commission on the classification of books and maps in libraries. *I.G.U. Newsletter* 6 (May) 1955, 12-14.
207. LIBAULT, A. Classification of maps and geographical publications. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (5-6) 1955. pp. 93-95.
208. WILDMAN, I. J. A study of law library classification and its problems. *ACRL Microcard Series*, no. 30, 1954. pp. vi, 78.
209. BONSER, W. and GARSIDE, K. A classification of the library of the folklore Society. *Folklore* 66 (June) 1955, 267-281.
210. DEAN-SMITH, M. A classification of folk music and dance (with relevant subjects) prepared for the Cecil Sharp Library. *J. of Doc.* 7 (4) 1951, 215-220.
211. RESEARCH ASSOCIATION OF BRITISH RUBBER MANUFACTURERS. Systematic classification of scientific, technological and commercial information on rubber [by T. R. Dawson]. Croydon, R.A.B.R.M., 1952. pp. 36 (*Information Bureau Circular no. 140*).
212. STEIN, J. W. A classification for communications materials. 1952. New York, Columbia Univ. School of Lib. Service, 1952. c. 35.
213. PENDLETON, O. W. Classification for a special library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (6) 1954, 205-208.
214. BUFL, C. Music scores at the University of Montana. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (1) 1955, 39-43.
215. LINE, M. B. A classified catalogue of musical scores: some problems. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (11) 1952, 362-364.
216. BRYANT, E. T. Piano-forte music and the Decimal Classification. *Librarian* 40 (10) 1951, 217-218.
217. OLDING, R. K. A system of classification for music and related materials. *Aust. Lib. J.* 3 (1) 1954, 13-18.
218. LYNN, J. M. An alternative classification for Catholic books [rev. by G. C. Peterson]. Washington, Catholic Univ. of America P., 1954. pp. 508.
219. COLLISON, R. L. The treatment of special material in libraries. [2nd ed.] *Aslib*, 1955. pp. ix, 104.
220. MURPHY, L. P. A vertical file classification system for a special library. *Spec. Libs.* 44 (5) 1953, 179-181.
221. KROMNOW, A. Foretagens aktivproblem. *Tid. f. Dok.* 8 (3) 1952, 25-30.
222. JAFFAR, S. M. Classification of records. Pakistani system, progressive plan. Peshawar, 1955. pp. 20.
223. PERUSSE, L. F. Classifying and cataloguing lantern slides for the architecture library. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (2) 1954, 77-83.

224. WEL, H. R. Classification of slide films and motion pictures (*in* Unesco. Libraries in adult and fundamental education. 1951. pp. 68-75).
225. PHELPS, A. J. An outline of a scheme for the classification of local collections in public and other libraries and for all material with a topographical basis. [Wrayburg.] Published by the author, 1953, pp. [viii], 54.
- The Practice of Classification*
226. CLAPP, V. W. and MURRA, K. O. The improvement of bibliographic organization. *Lib. Q.* 25 (1) 1955, 91-110.
227. CLAPP, V. W. Subject controls—nature and level of controls. *Amer. Doc.* 3 (1) 1952, 11-15.
228. SIJERA, J. H. Classification as the basis of bibliographic organization, *op. cit.* (Ref. 29).
229. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Library classification: its added uses. *Libri* 2 (1-2) 1952-53, 31-36.
230. RANGANATHAN, S. R. and PERRY, J. W. External memory and research. *J. of Doc.* 7 (1) 1951, 10-14.
231. RANGANATHAN, S. R. Library classification: relation between producer and consumer. *Libri* 2 (3) 1952, 226-232.
232. PALMER, B. I. Classification. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953-54, 236-248.
233. FOSKETT, D. J. Classification and reference service. *Librarian* 40 (7) 1951, 157-160.
234. COATES, E. J. Classification in reference service. *Annals of Lib. Sci.* 1 (3) 1954, 152-161.
235. ROLOFF, H. Lehrbuch der Sachkatalogisierung. 2. auf. Leipzig, Harrassowitz, 1954. pp. 136.
236. BAYTON, T. Classification in college and university libraries. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (2) 1955, 163-176.
237. ORVIC, M. The reader interest arrangement: an American shelving system with a future. *Libri* 5 (2) 1954-55, 223-232.
238. RUTZEN, R. Shelving for readers. *Lib. J.* 77 (6) March 15, 1955, 478-482.
239. SOMMERVILLE, C. Consider the reader: an introduction to reader interest classification. *Iowa Lib. Q.* 16 (16) 1953, 262-264.
240. British National Bibliography, Jan. 1950-. London, Whitaker.
241. HARDY, M. G. The Library of Congress Subject Catalogue: an evaluation. *Lib. Q.* 22 (1) 1952, 40-50.
242. *Times Literary Supplement*. July 4, 1952.
243. WELLS, A. J. New developments in cataloguing in the British National Bibliography (*in* Piggott, M., ed. Cataloguing principles and practice: an enquiry. London, Library Association, 1954. pp. 50-63).
244. WELLS, A. J. Our debt to India (*in* Library science in India: Silver Jubilee Volume. Ed. by K. Chandrasekharan. Madras, Madras L.A.; London, G. Blunt, 1953. pp. 57-63).
245. MILLS, J. Chain indexing and the classified catalogue. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (4) 1955, 141-148.
246. DOUGHTY, D. W. Chain procedure, subject indexing and featuring a classified catalogue. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (5) 1955, 173-178.
247. HILGENBERG, O. C. Der flächenhafte Realkatalog mit Dezimal Klassifikation und Schlagwortregister. *Z. f. B.* 67 (7/8) 1953, 254-287; *Ibid.* 67 (9/10) 1953, 342-357.
248. TAYLOR, K. L. Subject catalogs. *vs.* Classified Catalogs (*in* Tauber, M. F., ed. The subject analysis of library materials. New York, School of Library Service, Columbia University, 1953. pp. 100-113).
249. DEWEY, H. Some special aspects of the classified catalog (*in* Tauber M. F., ed. *op. cit.* pp. 114-129).
250. TAUBER, M. F. Book classification in university libraries. *Univ. of Tennessee Library lectures*, Nos. 1-3, 1953. pp. 1-15.
251. SAUVENIER-GOFFIN, E. Le Catalogue par matières d'une bibliothèque universitaire. *Archives . . . de Belgique*. 25 (1) 1954, 57-67.
252. THORNE, R. G. The efficiency of subject catalogues and the cost of information searches. *J. of Doc.* 11 (3) 1955, 130-148.
253. CLEVERDON, C. Some aspects of information retrieval. *Aslib Proc.* 7 (3), 1955, 153-156.
254. KENT, A., BERRY, M. M., JUEHNS, F. U. and PERRY, J. W. Machine literature searching. VIII. Operational criteria for designing information retrieval systems. *Amer. Doc.* 6 (2) 1955, 93-101. *Asst. Lib.* 46 (7) 1953 (Supplement: Examination comments); *Ibid.* 46 (8) 1953, 131-134; *Ibid.* 46 (10) 1953, 149.
256. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (7) 1954, 269-270; *Ibid.* 56 (10) 1954, 406; *Ibid.* 56 (12) 1954, 495-497.
257. LILEY, O. L. How specific is "specific"? *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (1), 1955, 3-8.
258. REICHMANN, F. Costs of cataloguing. *Lib. Trends* 2 (2) 1953, 290-317.

259. BENTZ, D. M. and CAVENDER, T. P. Reclassification and recataloguing. *Ibid.* 2 (2) 1953, 249-263.
260. HAM, J. G. Reclassification of the University of South Carolina library collection. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (4) 1955, 221-232.
261. BORCHARDT, D. H., MARSHALL, M. J. and DUNN, L. J. University of Tasmania library in a state of Bliss. *Austr. Lib. J.* 4 (2) 1955, 48-52.
262. HAYKIN, D. J. Book classification and the problem of change. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (2) 1955, 370-374.
263. SCHACHTMAN, B. F., ed. Technical services: policy, organization and co-ordination. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 11 (2) 1955, 61-114.
264. BURKE, R. A. German Librarianship from an American angle. *Lib. Q.* 22 (3) 1952, 180-193.
265. REJSOWA, M. O modyfikacje tablic klasyfikacji dziesiętnej. *Bibliotekarz* 18 (12) 1952, 167-169, 172.
266. BORNSTEINOWA, J. Klasyfikacja dziesiętna w Przewodniku Bibliograficzny. *Biuletyn Inst. Bib.* 3 (5) 1951, 93-146.
267. FEYI, O. Die Klassifikation für die Bibliographien der Buchkammer der Sowjetunion. (in Festschrift Joris Vorstius, zum 60. Geburtstag: Bibliothek, Bibliothekar, Bibliothekswissenschaft. Leipzig, O. Harrassowitz, 1954. pp. 50-50).
268. SEHAFFER, E. Zur neuen Bestandsystematik der Berliner allgemeinen öffentlichen Bibliotheken. *Bibliothekar* 8 (14) 1954, 417-427.
269. TSIEN-HSUIN TSIEN. A history of bibliographic classification in China. *Lib. Q.* 22 (4) 1952, 307-324.
- Mechanical Selection in Information Retrieval*
270. VICKERY, B. C. Some comments on mechanical selection. *Amer. Doc.* 2 (2) 1951, 102-107.
271. SHAW, R. R. Management, machines and the bibliographical problems of the twentieth century (in Shera, J. H. and Egan, M. E., eds. *Bibliographic organization*. Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1951. pp. 200-225).
272. SHERA, J. H. Effect of machine methods on the organization of knowledge. *Amer. Doc.* 3 (1) 1952, 15-20.
273. JAMIESON, D. R. Mechanized bibliographical aid. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (7) 1951, 216-221.
274. PERRY, J. W., and others. Machine literature searching. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (1) 1952, 18-22 (*in progress*).
275. BERRY, M. M., PERRY, J. W. and KENT, A. Machine literature searching. IV. Collection of terminology. *Ibid.* 5 (2) 1954, 95-100.
276. KENT, A., PERRY, J. W. and BERRY, M. M. Machine literature searching. V. Definition and systematization of terminology for code development. *Ibid.* 5 (3) 1954, 166-173.
277. PERRY, J. W., BERRY, M. M. and KENT, A. Machine literature searching. VI. Class definition and code construction. *Ibid.* 5 (4) 1954, 238-244.
278. LUEHRS, F. U., KENT, A., PERRY, J. W. and BERRY, M. M. Machine literature searching. VII. Machine functions and organization of semantic units. *Ibid.* 6 (1) 1955, 33-39.
279. TAUBE, M. Some notes on logical products and associations. *Ibid.* 6 (4) 1955, 239-242.
280. PERRY, J. W., KENT, A. and BERRY, M. M. Machine literature searching. IX. Operational functions of automatic equipment. *Ibid.* 6 (2) 1955, 166-174.
281. KENT, A., BERRY, M. M., LUEHRS, F. U. and PERRY, J. W. Machine literature searching. VIII. Operational criteria for designing information retrieval systems. *Ibid.* 6 (2) 1955, 93-101.
282. New tools for the resurrection of knowledge. *Chem & Eng. News.* (32) Mar. 1, 1954, 866-869, 801.
283. Machine techniques for information selection: symposium on mechanized system launches new era for literature searching. *Ibid.* (30), July 7, 1952, 2806-2810.
284. PERRY, J. W., KENT, A. and BERRY, M. M. Mechanized literature searching—a progress report. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (2) 1955, 157-163.
285. BOHNERT, L. M. Two methods of organizing technical information for search. *Amer. Doc.* 6 (3) 1955, 134-151.
286. BEARD, R. L. and HEUMANN, K. F. The Chemical-Biological Co-ordination Center: an experiment in documentation. *Science* (166), Nov. 21, 1952, 553-554.
287. HOFEMAN, E. F. Multi-dimensional classification and the transcription of cancer literature to punched-cards. *Amer. Doc.* 3 (1) 1952, 61-70.
288. LARKY, S. V., HIMWICH, W. A. and FIELD, H. G. Categorization as a basis for machine coding. Baltimore, Johns Hopkins Univ., Welch Medical Lib., 1951.
289. LARKY, S. V. The Welch Medical Library indexing project. *Bull. M.L.A.* 41 (1) 1953, 32-40.

290. WILDHACK, W. A., STERN, J. and SMITH, J. *op. cit.* (Ref. 263).
291. CASEY, R. S. and PERRY, J. W. Punched cards: their applications to science and industry. New York, Reinhold, 1951. pp. viii, 306.
292. ASHTHORPE, H. D. The punched card indexing experiment at the Library of the Atomic Energy Research Establishment, Harwell. *J. of Doc.* 4 (2) 1952, 101-104.
293. MOODS, C. N. Zatocoding applied to the mechanical organization of knowledge. *Am. Doc.* 2 (1) 1951, 26-32.
294. MOODS, C. N. Scientific information retrieval systems for machine operation—case studies in design. *Zator Tech. Bull.* No. 66. 1951. pp. 9.
295. MOODS, C. N. Information retrieval on structured content. *Ibid.* No. 102. 1953. pp. 23.
296. SOFFEL, A. K. Some observations on the use of punched cards for a personal information file. *Aslib Proc.* 7 (4) 1955, 251-258.
297. PERRY, J. W. Superimposed punching of numerical codes on hand-sorted punched cards. *Amer. Doc.* 2 (4) 1951, 205-212.
298. BRISTON, R. P. Can analysis of information be mechanized? *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 13 (2) 1952, 131-135.
299. GARFIELD, E. Preliminary report on the mechanical analysis of information by use of the 101 Statistical punched card machine. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (1) 1954, 7-12.
300. BOENERT, I. M. *op. cit.* (Ref. 285).
301. TYLER, A. W., MYERS, W. L. and KUIPERS, J. W. The application of the Kodak Microcard system to problems of documentation. *Amer. Doc.* 6 (1) 1955, 18-30.
302. TAUBE, M. and associates. Studies in co-ordinate indexing. Washington, Documentation Inc., 1953. pp. 110.
303. TAUBE, M. and WACHTEL, I. The logical structure of co-ordinate indexing. *Amer. Doc.* 4 (2) 67-68.
304. WACHTEL, I. A punched card index for nuclear data. *Ibid.* 3 (1) 1952, 56-57.
305. BJÖRNBOM, C. Nya synpunkter på ämneskatalogiseringen; post combination systems. *Tid. f. Dok.* 7 (4) 1955, 41-44.
306. TAUBE, M. and associates. Storage and retrieval of information by means of the association of ideas. *Amer. Doc.* 6 (1) 1955, 1-18.
307. LUNN, H. P. A new method of recording and searching information. *Ibid.* 4 (1) 1953, 14-16.
308. SERRA, J. H. Effect of machine methods . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 272).
309. GREGG, J. R. The language of taxonomy; an application of symbolic logic to the study of classificatory systems. New York, Columbia University Press, 1954. pp. xii, 70.
310. FAIRFORTH, R. A. Information theory and clerical systems. *J. of Doc.* 9 (2) 1953, 101-116.
311. FAIRFORTH, R. A. Automata and information. *Ibid.* 8 (3) 1952, 164-172.
312. FAIRFORTH, R. A. The theory of communication. *Aslib Proc.* 6 (4) 1954, 223-267.
313. FAIRFORTH, R. A. Essentials for document retrieval. *Spec. Libs.* 46 (8) 1955, 349-353.
314. FLEISHER, H. An introduction to the theory of information. *Lib. Q.* 25 (4) 1955, 326-332.
315. GULL, C. D. Implications for the storage and retrieval of knowledge [of recent developments in communication] *Lib. Q.* 25 (4) 1955, 333-343.
316. HEUMANN, K. F. Information theory in library and documentation activities. Library of Congress. *Information Bull.* 13 (39) 1954, 15-18.

*Textbooks, Bibliographies, Histories*

317. VICKERY, B. C. Glossary of current terminology (*in* Ranganathan, S. R. ed. *Depth Classification* (etc.). Delhi, Indian Library Association, 1953. pp. 27-46).
318. PHILLIPS, W. H. A primer of book classification. 3rd ed. rev. Association of Assistant Librarians, 1951. pp. 230. 4th ed. rev., 1955. pp. 235.
319. SAYERS, W. C. B. An introduction to library classification, theoretical, historical and practical. 9th ed. Grafton, 1954. pp. 320.
320. SAYERS, W. C. B. A manual of classification for librarians and bibliographers. 3rd ed. rev. Grafton, 1955. pp. xviii, 346.
321. PALMER, D. I. and WELLS, A. J. The fundamentals of library classification. Allen & Unwin, 1951. pp. 114. (*Practical library handbooks*, No. 12.)
322. METCALFE, J. A plea for the student against Ranganathan and others. *Librarian* 42 (10) 1953, 189-195.
323. SERRA, J. H. and Egan, M. E. Review of the present state of librarianship and documentation. (*in* Bradford, S. C. *Documentation*. 2nd ed. Crosby Lockwood, 1953. pp. 200).
324. ROLOFF, H. . . . *op. cit.* (Ref. 235).

325. AGUAYO, J. Manual practico de clasificación y catalogación de Bibliotecas. 2a ed. La Habana Jesús Montero, 1951. pp. 215.
326. TAUBER, M. F., ed. Technical services in libraries. New York, Columbia University Press, 1954. pp. xvi, 487.
327. FOSKETT, D. J. Classification (*in* Handbook of special librarianship and information work. Ed. W. Ashworth. Aslib, 1956. pp. 83-131).
328. HOLMSTROM, J. E. Facts, files and action. Part 2. Filing, indexing and circulation. Chapman and Hall, 1953. pp. xvi, 280.
329. DE GROELIER, E. . . . *op. cit.* (Rcf. 22).
330. HEUMANN, K. F. *op. cit.* (Rcf. 316).
331. LA MONTAGNE, L. E. Historical background of classification (*in* Tauber, M. F., ed. The subject analysis of library materials. New York, School of Library Service, Columbia University, 1953. pp. 16-28).
332. VICKERY, B. C. The significance of John Wilkins in the history of bibliographical classification. *Libri* 2 (4) 1952-53, 326-343.

Downloaded from www.dbraulibrary.org

## REFERENCE SERVICE

By HAROLD SMITH, F.L.A., *Kensington Public Libraries*

THROUGHOUT the period under review one of the most significant developments in librarianship has been the increasing recognition and attention accorded to the value of reference service. In Britain this recognition has been shown at the level of individual contact between staff and public (in lending or reference departments), at the regional or area level where schemes of co-operation were evolved to facilitate the better and speedier use of existing resources and a higher standard of reference and information service, and nationally where the plans for a National Reference Library of Science and Invention slowly matured.

Samuel Rothstein assesses the importance currently conceded to reference service in the United States as follows: "In an age when the value of so many library activities has been held as open to question, reference service still retains more or less unchallenged its place in the library order. Most institutions take it for granted that one of their prime causes for being is to furnish information and make specific provision for personal assistance to the reader seeking it" (p. 1) (1).

Professionally, too, the formation of the Reference and Special Libraries Section of the Library Association in November 1950, the increasing emphasis placed on assistance to readers and subject knowledge in the appropriate section of the Registration Examination and the many books and articles published, demonstrated that the necessity for reference service, at all levels, was now widely accepted. A notable achievement of the Section has been to stimulate co-operation between public and special librarians.

A current definition of reference service provided succinctly by R. E. Marston, Readers' Adviser at Luton Public Libraries (2), is "the vital link between books and borrowers" (p. 181). D. J. Foskett, ever outspoken on this subject, calls reference service "the most important role in librarianship [it] means that the librarian actively assists the reader by accepting requests and providing the answers, either from the library's own stock or by borrowing or buying an appropriate work" (3). More specifically Samuel Rothstein, giving the American viewpoint in an admirable work (4), says "the essential feature of reference work is the personal assistance given by the librarian to individual readers in pursuit of information" and that a reference service is characterized by "the existence of a specific administrative unit to furnish such assistance, comprised of personnel specifically equipped in the technique of reference work" (p. 3-4).

In development plans there have been two divergent tendencies. One, widely used and by its nature confined to lending libraries, utilizes the conventional organization supplemented by the provision of a special enquiry or readers' adviser desk with staff allocated for the purpose. The other involves

the merging of the lending and reference stocks and the subsequent division of the library into subject departments.

Cases abound in Britain of reference libraries rejuvenated or reorganized, and among those described are the Commercial and Technical Library at Newcastle upon Tyne<sup>(5)</sup> and the Reference Library at Cambridge<sup>(6)</sup>. In the latter article W. A. Munford says "I am quite certain that three of the basic essentials in building up reference services in towns of medium size are willingness to spend a larger part of the book-fund than is normally allocated to this department; a spirit of adventure in book selection; and a serious attempt at completeness in certain specified fields."

The organization of public libraries based on subject departments cogently argued for so long by Dr. Savage has, within recent years, found worthy disciples in A. W. McClellan and J. F. W. Bryon. The latter has been fortunate enough to be able to apply his theories<sup>(7)</sup>. Believing that "in a small public library exploitation is more important than conservation and since little can be provided on any one subject all of that should be brought together in one place," he has merged the lending and reference stocks of Eccles Central Library into one sequence and arranged them, together with the related periodicals, into eleven subject bays. "Service in depth" is the general name that McClellan has given to his conception of subject departments in library service, and in two articles<sup>(8)</sup> <sup>(9)</sup> he argues his case based on the belief that "If bibliographical activity is to be the dominant theme in the pattern of organization, any subdivision of work will have to follow bibliographical lines" (p. 298). The application of this policy in Tottenham Public Libraries means that, subject to the overall control of the Chief Librarian, each of the five subject groups has complete responsibility for book selection and stock revision, cataloguing and classifying, bibliographical work and readers' advisory and information service.

In the United States this method of organization has long found favour and since 1924, except for Philadelphia, every major library has been erected on this basis. Robert E. Maizell in a survey of the subject "Departmentalized public library in the U.S.A."<sup>(10)</sup> says that its advantages include "the development of staff proficiency in limited subject areas, more effective book selection, easy detection of gaps in the collection and facilitation of special services to groups." Some of the difficulties encountered are the "splitting up of a field of knowledge into separate physical and administrative units," more service points and a consequent strain on human and financial resources. Because of this the author believes that "it may be wise to introduce only such subject departments as may seem to be warranted by the needs of the community." A British view of the American system was expressed by John L. Gardner in an article dealing with a "completely departmentalized library"—the Brooklyn Central Library<sup>(11)</sup>. He is convinced that the public library can give its most valuable service to the community by such organization, once problems inherent in layout and in the division of material have been overcome.

F. A. Sharr, engaged in building a library service in Western Australia, favours a reference service based on subject departments and gives the reasons for his choice<sup>(12)</sup>. "This [method of organization] has the advantage that it permits specialization in the staff and is the main reason for its increasing popularity. The library user of today, unlike his predecessor of fifty years ago,

is often a specialist and needs the aid of a bibliographical specialist as his librarian." In addition to the Archives Section already in being, it is intended "to divide the rest of the library into three further subject departments devoted to Business, Science and Technology: Literature and the Arts: Social Sciences, Philosophy and Religion."

Although the recent tendency for librarians (e.g., L. R. McColvin<sup>(13)</sup>) has been to think in terms of State aid when considering large-scale plans for the improvement of reference services, E. Hargreaves in his address to the 1951 Library Association Conference was rather more cautious in his approach to the problem<sup>(14)</sup>. He believed that "... the only solution to the many problems which beset . . . large and small reference libraries alike is the building up of a co-ordinated system . . . within our own library . . . and with other organizations in our own district which can help our work." He advocated "regional reference councils where the common problems of service and book-selection could be discussed by those directly concerned and where positive steps might be taken to co-ordinate effort, to conserve and strengthen book resources and to prevent duplication." Further, he suggested for expensive but essential works some agreed system of purchase for reference libraries and "the preparation of union lists to indicate precisely the location of specialized material within regions." He pleaded for more co-operation and goodwill between reference libraries and librarians to exploit the known existing stocks and to plan co-operatively for the future. One development he envisaged was the establishment of regional depositories for both books and periodical files. On this last point his plea was reinforced for the London area by P. S. B. Rossiter<sup>(15)</sup>. In his review "Periodicals in London" of the *London union list of periodicals*<sup>(16)</sup> Rossiter discussed the problem of permanent sets of periodicals, the implementation of the Metropolitan Special Collections Scheme, the transfer of incomplete files of periodicals to the specializing library, an agreed policy for the coverage of periodicals in the London area, and—believing the loan of bound volumes of periodicals to be impracticable—the possibility of establishing a central photo-copying service for the production of copies of articles.

A highly successful example of voluntary co-operation between public and special libraries, and one which may well serve as the prototype for the future, is the establishment in West London of CICRIS (Co-operative Industrial and Commercial Reference and Information Service). This scheme which is described on p. 140-141, was foreshadowed by R. D. Rates in an article, "The public libraries and the need for better information services"<sup>(17)</sup> and was fully outlined in his paper "CICRIS—an experiment in regional information services," given to the 1956 Conference of the Reference and Special Libraries Section of the Library Association<sup>(18)</sup>. "It is a free, authoritative and speedy information and library service, run through the public libraries, provided by the voluntary co-operative effort of all libraries and information services of the local authorities, technical colleges, large firms and research and trade associations of the district, assisted by the libraries and information services of all Government Departments, many overseas associations and other official and semi-official bodies." The service is administered by a committee representative of the different libraries sponsoring the scheme. The resources of the area are made available mainly through the compilation of union location lists of such

material as technical periodicals, abstracts and indexes, etc., there is agreement on the retention of periodical files and each of the public libraries has agreed to specialize in the technical literature of one or more of the main industries of West London. State financial aid is neither received nor contemplated. A brief description of the scheme is contained in a pamphlet issued by the West London Productivity Committee of the British Productivity Council (19).

The Sheffield Interchange Organization (SINTO), founded 1933, went from strength to strength, and another such scheme but with more limited objectives, the Hull Scheme for Interloan of Technical Publications, was founded in 1953. Problems tackled by these organizations include the compilation of union lists of periodicals within their areas, the pressing need for an index to trade names, the disposal of periodicals to member libraries, the difficulty of borrowing university dissertations and the preparation of subject bibliographies. Sheffield continues to issue its Research Bibliographies. In addition to the public library responsible for the administration of the scheme, both of these bodies include most of the industrial libraries in the area.

In the foregoing schemes, improvement in services has been achieved mainly by co-ordinating existing resources and co-operative planning. In Liverpool, however, improvements spring mainly from an extension of the services provided by the public library itself. Dr. G. Chandler, in a brief survey, "Technical information and library services in Liverpool" (20), outlined the future of the Liverpool technical library service—the most important single feature of which would be the building of the Technical Library at a cost of £270,000—in order to overcome the lack of adequate technical information facilities on Merseyside. Increasing the scope of its service, Liverpool launched its Postal Borrowing Scheme and *Documents Bulletin*, both fully described by Douglas Ball, the Technical Documentation Officer and Librarian (21). For an annual subscription of £1 any firm, Government department, research association, etc., can borrow one item—book, periodical, monograph—at a time throughout the year. Multiple subscriptions may be taken out. The *Documents Bulletin* is a classified and annotated monthly list of all material received by the Technical Library—books, pamphlets, periodicals, society transactions—and its production is "an attempt to instigate loans through the Postal Borrowing Service by bringing to the attention of executives and production managers in the smaller firms those books and articles published month by month on topics of interest to them" (p. 106). Organizations outside Liverpool are permitted by the City Council to subscribe to both services. In October 1955, as the result of a conference on the provision of technical information services convened by the City Council, there was formed the Liverpool and District Scientific, Industrial and Research Library Advisory Council (LADSIRLAC) to facilitate joint consultation between the Technical Library and industry for the extension of such services on Merseyside (22).

R. L. Collison describes a scheme in operation at the John Crerar Library, Chicago, which, although somewhat differently organized (23), has some points of similarity, in that it attempts to give a new and more advanced type of reference service. The Library established in 1947 a Research Information Service for the use of industrial concerns. "Six assistants, each an expert in his field, are employed to carry out research into the library's materials on behalf of organizations which are willing to pay the cost of their work. . . . More than

300 research projects have already been completed: one of the first was the preparation of abstracts of approximately 7,500 articles for the U.S. Atomic Energy Commission for publication in the *Nuclear Science Abstracts*. . . . This department also does translations of technical periodicals, but limits its work to materials in the library stock."

An American scheme of co-operation which directly affects reference provision is that sponsored by a group of universities in the Chicago region and known as the Midwest Inter-Library Center (MILC). This functions in some respects as a regional reference library, for it "is the first actual experiment to exploit the possibilities of a truly regional co-operative library . . . it endeavours to consolidate deposited materials, it is intended to enrich the research resources of its region through acquiring new materials not in the libraries of its participants, and it aims to develop co-operative and inter-library service of all kinds" (24). In practice this means (1) the storage of material little used by member libraries, (2) the elimination of duplicate existing holdings, (3) the elimination of duplicate periodical files with MILC assuming responsibility for maintaining the regional set, (4) co-ordination of acquisition policies, particularly for little-used (and thus inordinately space-consuming) research materials which should nevertheless be provided somewhere in the region. Services of MILC now include provision of catalogue cards, production of photocopies, inter-library transport and direct teletype communication to member libraries. There is little doubt that the future of MILC will be watched with great interest both in the United States and in this country.

London is, as always, a special problem, and concerning reference library provision the words of Frank Pacy (25) still chide us after thirty years: "The greatest commercial city in the world is virtually unprovided with special commercial and technical libraries, such as those of Manchester, Birmingham, Liverpool. . . . A special need of London is the provision of a small number of large reference libraries of at least 100,000 volumes sited at main centres of communications." Ten years later *A survey of libraries* could remind us that "comparatively few libraries in the area [London (North of the Thames), Herts and Essex] possess reference libraries worthy of note" (p. 139) (26). Recently the Association of Metropolitan Chief Librarians has produced a plan to overcome this deficiency. Seven reference libraries have now been designated as regional reference libraries, and the authorities concerned (Battersea, Deptford, Hackney, Hammersmith, Islington, Lambeth, Woolwich, to which were later added the Guildhall and Westminster for Central London) have agreed that their libraries should be developed along these lines as and when local conditions permit (27). It is intended that they "should be general reference libraries of a type designed to serve a population numbering 400,000 to 1,000,000 people and supporting a wide range of industries and trades. Due regard should be paid to predominating local activities and to academic and commercial needs of the population served. Besides material of a purely reference character a large stock of standard books should be accumulated to be always available for immediate reference." The scheme is as yet in its infancy and judgment on it will have to wait.

Perhaps the most important organizational development within the profession was the formation of the Reference and Special Libraries Section of the Library Association at a meeting held on November 28, 1950 (28). Under a

vigorous leadership, area groups covering the country were soon formed. Annual conferences of the Section have been held since 1953 and from 1955 onwards the *Proceedings* have been printed. The Annual Lecture has been held in such centres as Manchester and Sheffield. Area groups have had successful publishing programmes, notably the South-Eastern Group with its series *Library resources in the Greater London area* of which five have now been published, the Yorkshire Group with its *Directory of Yorkshire library resources*, the Northern Group with its *Union list of scientific and technical periodicals* and the North-Western Group with *The libraries of Greater Manchester; a guide to resources and special collections*, a work which achieved editorial recognition and commendation in the *Manchester Guardian* (29).

Of the books published dealing with reference and information service and assistance to readers the following were the most noteworthy: R. L. Collison, *Library assistance to readers*, Crosby, Lockwood, 2nd ed., 1956; D. J. Foskett, *Assistance to readers in lending libraries*, Clarke, 1952; P. Hepworth, *A primer of assistance to readers*, Association of Assistant Librarians, 2nd ed., 1956; L. R. McColvin and R. L. Collison, *Reference library stock: an informal guide*, Grafton, 1952; A. D. Roberts, *Introduction to reference books*, Library Association, 3rd ed., 1956; Louis Shores, *Basic reference sources*, American Library Association, 1954; and J. D. Stewart, ed., *The reference librarian in university, municipal and specialized libraries*, Grafton, 1951. C. M. Winchell now edits the *Guide to Reference Books* and the 7th edition was published in 1951 by the American Library Association. Supplements covering the years 1950-52, 1953-55 appeared in 1954 and 1956 respectively and these were further supplemented by lists published regularly in *College and Research Libraries*.

Dr. A. J. Walford continued to edit "Reference Libraries" in *The Library Association Record*. This feature, as well as noting new reference books, bibliographies and similar items, discussed methods and enquiry techniques in a manner reminiscent of Herbert Woodbine's articles of earlier years.

We may therefore claim that there has been in the period under review an undeniable advance in both the theory and practice of reference librarianship. We are seeing the gradual emergence of new forms of organization and concepts of service. These may be briefly summarized as:

(1) A growing insistence on personal assistance to readers and an implementation of advisory and information service on a wider scale than ever before.

(2) New forms of voluntary organization, e.g., CICRIS, Hull Scheme for Interchange of Technical Publications, the "pilot" schemes of Reading and Newcastle, in which the resources of libraries, both special and public, are so linked that they can be exploited for the common good.

(3) An increasing awareness by special librarians of the value of their contribution to the national library service, especially within the framework of such schemes as SINTO, CICRIS, etc. and to the professional activities of The Library Association.

(4) An increasing appreciation of the necessity for the wider inter-availability of library stocks, outside and beyond formal schemes of co-operation, and a realization of the vital importance of periodical holdings. This has without doubt been given impetus by the publication of *The libraries of Greater London*, *The libraries of Greater Manchester*, *London union list of*

periodicals, all of which have made known, possibly for the first time, the bibliographical resources available in the area.

(5) A willingness to experiment with new types of material and new techniques. Microfilms and microcards are no strangers to libraries, but Telex, recently installed in the Manchester Central Library<sup>(30)</sup> may well revolutionize communication between some of the larger libraries. Telex is a twenty-four-hour teleprinter service which connects, in this instance, Manchester Central Library with all other subscribers in this country, in Europe and farther afield. No other library has yet followed Manchester's lead.

However, in spite of such developments, the demands and needs of a national or nationally linked service are still largely unsatisfied. Not yet are our resources so organized that the maximum use may be made of them. The next step may well be one of increased specialization made possible by regional groupings of resources and by new and more integrated forms of co-operation between libraries of all kinds. L. R. McColvin<sup>(13)</sup> advocates "a Central Advisory Council for Library Development—a council on which would be represented the various main categories of library providers—the national libraries, the Government department libraries, the libraries of scientific and industrial research, the university libraries, the public libraries. . . . I do *not* advocate a national library service which would supersede local and sectional provision and interest. I *do* advocate a rich varied pattern of library provision which is properly co-ordinated, fully co-operating and financially capable of achieving its great objective—which is that of making our nation one in which all men are able to make, and are capable of making, the fullest use of the immense heritage of knowledge and wisdom which is at present only partially and ineffectively exploited."

## REFERENCES

1. ROTHSTEIN, SAMUEL. The development of the concept of reference service in American libraries, 1950-1900. *Lib. Q.* 23 (1) 1953, 1-15.
2. MARSON, R. E. Is advisory work worth while? *Librarian* 44 (9) 1955, 181-185.
3. FOSKETT, D. J. Catalogue and reference service. *Ibid.* 47 (11) 1952, 213-218.
4. ROTHSTEIN, SAMUEL. The development of reference services through academic traditions, public library practice and special librarianship. Chicago, Association of College and Reference Libraries, 1955. pp. ix, 124. (*ARCL Monographs*, No. 14.)
5. HINTON, E. AUSTIN. Commercial and Technical Library at Newcastle upon Tyne. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (2) 1952, 52-53.
6. MUMFORD, W. A. The post-war development of one reference library. *Ibid.* 53 (10) 1951, 322-323.
7. BRAYON, J. F. W. Subject arrangement in a small public library. *Librarian* 44 (2) 1955, 25-28.
8. MCCLELLAN, A. W. Service in depth. *Lib. World* 52 (598) 1950, 183-184.
9. MCCLELLAN, A. W. The organization of a public library for subject specialization. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (8) 1955, 296-303.
10. MAIZELL, ROBERT E. The subject-departmentalized public library. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (3) 1951, 255-260.
11. GARDNER, JOHN L. Some thoughts on subject departmentalization in a large public library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 254-260.
12. THE LIBRARY BOARD OF WESTERN AUSTRALIA. 4th Annual Report of the Board, 1955-56. Perth. The Library Board of Western Australia, 1956. pp. 24.
13. MCCOLVIN, L. R. The organization of reference services. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (5) 1954, 152-159.
14. HARGREAVES, E. Reference Libraries. *Lib. Assn. Conf. P.* 1951, 54-58.
15. ROSSITER, P. S. B. Periodicals in London. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (4) 1952, 131-134.
16. THE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. LONDON AND HOME COUNTIES BRANCH. London Union List of Periodicals, 1951, ed. by K. A. Mallaber and P. M. De Paris. pp. 216.

17. RALES, R. D. 'The public libraries and the need for better information services. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (1) 1953, 8-9.
18. RALES, R. D. CICRIS—an experiment in regional information services. *L.A., Reference and Special Libraries Section Conf. Papers* 1956, 33-43.
19. F[OSKETT], D. J. CICRIS: a commercial and technical information and library service for West London. London [1956?], pp. 9.
20. CHANDLER, C. Technical information and library services in Liverpool. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (12) 1954, 480-481.
21. BALL, DOUGLAS. Public technical library service for industry, with special reference to the "Postal Borrowing Scheme" and to "Documents Bulletin". *Aslib Proc.* 7 (2) 1954, 102-107.
22. LIVERPOOL PUBLIC LIBRARIES. Proceedings of the One-Day Technical Information Conference, 27th October, 1955, leading to the formation of LADSIRLAC (Liverpool and District Scientific, Industrial and Research Library Advisory Council) . . . Liverpool, 1955. pp. 36.
23. COLLISON, R. L. The John Cregar Library. *Lib. World.* 53 (627) 1952, 455-456.
24. ESTERQUEST, RALPH T. The storage library and beyond. *Libri* 1 (3) 1954, 239-252.
25. EDUCATION, BOARD OF, PUBLIC LIBRARIES COMMITTEE. Report on Public Libraries in England and Wales. London, H.M.S.O., 1935. *Cmd.* 2868. (pp. 215-216. Reservation by Mr. Frank Pacy.)
26. THE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. A survey of libraries: reports on a survey made by the Library Association during 1936-1937. London, The Library Association, 1938. pp. viii, 719.
27. ASSOCIATION OF METROPOLITAN CHIEF LIBRARIANS. Reference Libraries—Regional Reference Libraries, 3/1, 1956, and Reference Libraries—Central London, 4/1, 1956.
28. Reference and special libraries section, *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 52 (12) 1950, 486.
29. *Manchester Guardian*. Library resources, 20th July, 1956, p. 6.
30. The Manchester Public Libraries Telex Service. *N.W. Newsl.* (35) 1955, II, 158-159.

**Section VI**

**Miscellaneous**

Downloaded from [www.dbraulibrary.org.in](http://www.dbraulibrary.org.in)

## LIBRARY CO-OPERATION

### (1) LIBRARY CO-OPERATION IN THE UNITED KINGDOM

By M. C. POTTINGER, D.S.C., F.L.A. Librarian, Scottish Central Library, Edinburgh

THE five years under review have seen considerable developments in the field of library co-operation, at home and abroad. In the United Kingdom, there has been no substantial change in the basic pattern of Regional Library Systems operating in the closest association with the National Central Library, but much thought and effort has been directed towards improving the efficiency of the machinery. It seems unlikely that any national scheme will be devised to replace the present well-tested organization whereby libraries, in a convenient geographical area, combine to exploit to the maximum their combined resources, utilizing the National Central Library primarily as a clearing house for inter-Regional co-operation and secondarily as a National Lending Library.

The most important single publication dealing with library co-operation in Great Britain was the "Vollans Report" (1), published in 1952, a report of a survey of the National Central Library and the Regional Library Bureaux carried out by Mr. R. F. Vollans at the invitation of a Joint Working Party set up by the National Central Library and the National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation. This study was an extremely thorough examination of both the policy and the mechanics of library co-operation, and it has been widely discussed throughout the country. The chapter headings in Part One may be quoted by way of illustrating the range of the Report: *Historical survey, Regional Library Systems, Inter-library loan procedure, Scope of service and reason for non-availability of books, Provision of books to adult classes, Union Catalogues, Subject Specialization, Bibliographical information, Staff, Finance*, and an Appendix devoted to a survey of inter-library loans on a selected day.

Part Two of this Report sets out Mr. Vollans' *Recommendations* based on the facts recorded in Part One. These Recommendations, far-reaching in their implications, were necessarily and naturally those of Mr. Vollans himself, and it is a measure of their value that they were substantially endorsed by the Joint Working Party which commissioned his Report. On the basis of the Vollans Report, the Joint Working Party framed its own summarized Recommendations. These were examined and discussed by every Regional Library Bureau and eventually a document emerged which carried the seal of approval by the National Central Library and the National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation on which all Regional Library Bureaux are represented. This document, *Recommendations on Library Co-operation* (2), was published in 1954, and may fairly be described as the blue-print likely to

determine for years to come the broad policy of library co-operation in Great Britain. This statement on national policy concluded that "the general structure of library co-operation and inter-lending is sound," and did not recommend any major changes in the Regions. It reaffirmed that Union Catalogues are necessary to effective inter-lending, and recommended that all Regional Union Catalogues should be brought up to date. In particular, Yorkshire, the only Regional Library System without a Union Catalogue, was urged to form one, largely on the grounds that without Yorkshire's holdings there would be a regrettable gap in the National Union Catalogue maintained in the National Central Library. Yorkshire, however, continues to pursue its independent, rugged and dogged course.

Other passages in the Recommendations refer to the desirability of libraries lending more freely from their reference departments, since the dividing line between lending and reference stocks is often an arbitrary one. Reference was also made to the need for systematizing the preservation of fiction, to improving the range and availability of periodicals within each Region, to a definition of categories of books outside the scope of inter-library lending, to minimum price limits of books in print, etc.

Perhaps the most significant recommendation of all, however, and one which has since steadily been in process of implementation was that which envisaged that the National Union Catalogue at the National Central Library should, after an agreed date, cease to record locations for currently published British books. This date was later announced as December 31, 1957. The basic purpose of this proposal was to oblige every Region to face up squarely to the need and the desirability of being self-sufficient, as far as possible, in current British publishing output. It was, in short, generally agreed that it should be possible for every Region to devise some mechanism whereby practically every currently published British book would be available from some library within the Region. The National Union Catalogue should be developed and maintained, but its scope should be restricted to foreign books and to British books published up to the end of 1957. Even with this limitation, it was realized that the compilation and completion of the National Union Catalogue would be a formidable and long-term undertaking.

An important recommendation was the following: "We consider that, as the work of the Regional Bureaux is of wider than local significance, any long-term plan for bringing these bureaux to a state of greater efficiency and maintaining them adequately should attract a grant from H.M. Treasury." This reflects the widespread view that the Bureaux are, in effect, the local agencies of the National Central Library and that they have a case, similar to the parent body, for receiving grants from H.M. Treasury if they are to maintain and expand their present services. This recommendation was allied to another which suggested the formation of a "Joint National Committee" empowered to administer Government grants over a wide field including the National Central Library and the Regional Bureaux, although the Trustees of the National Central Library have recorded their view that such a proposal would conflict with their autonomy.

Mr. J. F. W. Bryon has reviewed the Vollans Report<sup>(3)</sup>, and Mr. R. H. Hill has also discussed it, particularly with reference to its possible implementation<sup>(4)</sup>. Mr. Vollans, since his Report appeared, has developed some of his

conclusions in an article<sup>(6)</sup> which touches on the place of non-public libraries, and upon subject specialization.

While it is agreed that there may be more than one method of attaining greater self-sufficiency within each Region, one method in particular has been widely studied and has been successfully introduced into more than one Region —namely, Subject Specialization. The scheme which has perhaps inspired the sponsors of later schemes is the Metropolitan Special Collections Scheme described by Mr. K. G. Hunt at the Scarborough Conference of the Library Association in 1948<sup>(6)</sup>, and by Mr. D. Leggatt<sup>(7)</sup>. A later scheme which has aroused widespread interest and admiration was that established by the South-Eastern Regional Library System. This has been described by Mr. W. J. L. Hill<sup>(8)</sup> and its development recorded in the Annual Reports of the South Eastern Region from 1950 onwards. This extremely well-thought-out scheme has been accepted by over eighty co-operating libraries and details of the responsibilities they have undertaken were given in the pamphlet<sup>(9)</sup> published by the Region in 1952. In his Foreword to it, the Chairman of the Executive Committee, Mr. J. E. Walker says:

“The Subject Specialization Scheme has been an exciting adventure, the most important development in the Region since the Regional System itself was established. Its object was to increase the total book resources of the area, and it is estimated that during the first two years of working between three and four thousand books that would not otherwise have been bought were added to the stocks of the libraries that comprise the System. How beneficial this will be to future library users can only be imagined. Stocks on subjects not previously or adequately represented, either because of cost or absence of local demand, are now being built up. In law and medicine, to mention only two, a borrowing service previously out of reach of the smaller library, and possible to the bigger and more affluent ones only on a subscription basis, is now at the service of every interested student using any one of the participating libraries.”

The success of the South-Eastern Scheme largely induced other Regions to examine the feasibility of adopting similar schemes. A limited scheme has been adopted in Wales<sup>(10)</sup>, and a scheme with greater coverage introduced into the North-West Region<sup>(11)</sup><sup>(12)</sup>. No serious attempt has been made in other Regions to establish Subject Specialization Schemes embracing all fields of knowledge, though the East Midlands Region has developed its scheme for improving the availability of books in foreign languages, and the Northern Region introduced, in 1951, a Fiction Reserve Scheme<sup>(13)</sup>, in which the co-operating libraries undertake to collect and preserve the works of authors allotted to them. By 1955, the Reserve comprised some 6,000 items, of which more than half had been exchanged between the nineteen libraries participating, according to the responsibility assumed. The absence of comprehensive Subject Specialization Schemes in the Regions generally is largely ascribed to the fact that in these Regions there exists a much greater disparity between the size and resources of libraries within the Region, compared with conditions in the South-Eastern Region, or in London. The basic objective is, of course, greater self-sufficiency in currently published British material, a problem which is tackled in the Northern and East Midlands Regions by half-yearly or quarterly reviews of the more important books listed in the *British National Bibliography*. Co-operating libraries are then invited to purchase any desirable items for which no locations within the Region are known. An admirable pamphlet dealing with the above-mentioned schemes, and others, was written by Mr. K. G. Hunt<sup>(13)</sup> in 1955. Mr. S. P. L. Filon surveyed

achievements to date in this field in an article (14) which, *inter alia*, referred to the implications of the *Second Interim Report* (15) of the Library Association Working Party on the Co-operative Provision of Books, Periodicals and Related Material in Libraries. This Working Party set itself the task of investigating deficiencies in coverage with particular reference to books and periodicals of which the National Central Library had been unable to trace loanable copies. Its somewhat ambitious plans for adequate coverage on a national scale have, however, been made difficult of accomplishment in the light of policies pursued independently in various quarters, and perhaps as a result of insufficient liaison in matters of detail with the National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation. The need was manifest for a single co-ordinated detailed plan acceptable on a national scale, and at the close of the period under review it might have been said that the elusive plum remained in the pie partly in consequence of the multiplicity of fingers in it.

A new edition was expected of Mr. P. H. Sewell's pamphlet on the Regional Library Systems, first published in 1950 (16), and a valuable record of their origins, developments and foreseeable problems. Fuller details are of course recorded in the Annual Reports published by the Regional Library Bureaux (17). While conditions naturally vary, it is broadly true to say that most of the Regions have found themselves faced with mounting pressure of work and increasing problems of finance. In particular, the arrears of work on the various Union Catalogues, with one or two exceptions, have caused great concern, and the problem was repeatedly discussed by the National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation which, faint but pursuing, did not lose hope that financial aid would eventually be forthcoming from H.M. Treasury.

The National Central Library has continued to act as the keystone in the arch of the national system. The importance of its work was reflected in a steady increase in H.M. Treasury grant from £25,000 in 1950-51 to £34,000 in 1954-55 (18). Subscriptions from libraries over the same period rose a little from £4,536 to £5,142. The total number of books lent through the national system rose from 291,590 to 304,603. There was a welcome rise in the volume of books lent between British and foreign libraries. In 1950-51, 1,587 books were lent to foreign libraries and 584 borrowed from them. The corresponding figures in 1954-55 were (including photocopies) 2,801 and 1,346. Like the Regional Bureaux, the National Central Library found itself unable to cope with the arrears in its Union Catalogue, and its 1954-55 Annual Report discloses arrears of 409,741 entries. Substantial progress has been made with the *Union Catalogue of German War-Time Books and Periodicals* and with the *Union Catalogue of Russian Books and Periodicals*. The latter, by February 1955, had reached 61,704 books, 3,318 periodicals (titles), 93,999 periodicals (issues) and ninety-nine newspapers. The British National Book Centre continued its valuable function of re-distributing surplus books and periodicals (19). In 1953-54, a decision was taken not to admit any new participants, as a result of insufficient staff, but, in 1954-55, an increase in the rates charged to libraries made it possible to remove this restriction. In that year, a total of 139,213 items were transferred from one library to another, through the agency of the Book Centre. Contrary to the general trend, the number of books issued by the Adult Class Department showed a drop from 19,075 in 1950-51 to 15,736 in

1954-55. This doubtless reflected a growing view that the provision of books to adult classes was a responsibility of local libraries or education committees. In 1954 and 1955, discussions were held between representatives of the Library and of adult class organizations in order to find out, among other things, what the consequences would be if the Library eventually discontinued its services in this field, as envisaged in *Recommendations on Library Co-operation* (2).

An event of considerable importance was the opening in June 1952 (20), of the reconstructed portion of the Library which had been destroyed by enemy action in 1941. This had the welcome effect of enabling the whole staff, after years of functioning in separate buildings, to unite under one roof, with obvious advantages. A useful account of the work of the library, with particular reference to bibliography, was written by Mr. S. P. L. Filon in 1954 (21).

The Scottish Central Library was affected by radical physical, constitutional and financial changes during the five years under review. The whole pattern of library provision in Scotland was exhaustively examined by an Advisory Council set up by the Secretary of State for Scotland, and its Report (22) made a number of far-reaching recommendations on the future of the Scottish Central Library, most of which have taken effect. In 1952, the responsibility for the library passed from the Carnegie United Kingdom Trustees to a new body of Trustees and to an Executive Committee representative of all local authority, educational and library interests in Scotland. In 1953, the Library moved from its former home in Dunfermline to a spacious restored 17th-century building in Edinburgh, through the generosity of the Carnegie Trust. May 1955, saw the passage into law of the *Public Libraries (Scotland) Act, 1955* (23), which transformed the financial position of the Library. The effect of this Act on the Scottish Central Library was to secure obligatory contributions to it by all Scottish local authorities on an adequate scale, subject to agreement between the three local authority associations in Scotland, i.e., the associations of cities, burghs and counties. Since these associations did, in fact, reach amicable agreement, the Scottish Central Library is now unique among British agencies for promoting library co-operation in that subscriptions to it from municipal and county libraries have become compulsory by statute. This has naturally freed the library from the financial uncertainty which has so long bedevilled the planning of library co-operation in other parts of Great Britain. Mr. W. B. Paton has written an article on the general implications of this Act (24), and fuller details of the expansion in the activities of the Scottish Central Library have appeared in its Annual Reports (25). The Regional Library Bureau of Scotland dissolved itself in 1953 and all its functions were absorbed by the Scottish Central Library. The Scottish Fiction Reserve Scheme, sponsored by the Scottish Library Association, came into operation in March 1955. This scheme (26) involves the collection and preservation of the works of 650 Scottish novelists by sixty-two co-operating libraries, the authors being allotted on the basis of birthplace or other local association.

A feature of the period, which is described in greater detail in the chapters on Public Library Commercial and Technical Departments, and on Reference Service, has been an intensification of co-operation between public libraries and industrial organisations. The well-known scheme which is operated from the Science and Technology Department of Sheffield City Libraries has steadily

developed since its inception. In 1934-35, there were eighteen members and 196 loans; in 1953-54, forty members (mainly firms) and 2,757 loans<sup>(27)</sup>. A useful survey of library facilities to industry generally was written by Mr. K. J. Rider<sup>(28)</sup>, and Mr. L. L. Ardern made a plea for a more determined effort to integrate available resources of scientific and technical information in an article<sup>(29)</sup> dealing particularly with conditions in South-East Lancashire. The Liverpool Public Libraries have been prominent in this field and Mr. D. Ball has described in some detail two services open to local firms, the "Postal borrowing scheme" and the "Documents Bulletin"<sup>(30)</sup>. Dr. G. Chandler later reported on the impressive use made of these and other services offered to industry within the orbit of that city<sup>(31)</sup>.

An account of special libraries and library co-operation in South Wales and Monmouthshire was written by Mr. W. Ashworth<sup>(32)</sup>, and Mr. M. C. Pottinger discussed industrial and other sources of specialized information in Scotland<sup>(33)</sup>, laying particular stress on the rôle of the Department of Scientific and Industrial Research. The need for a "closely integrated network of regional information centres based on public libraries" was adumbrated by Mr. R. D. Rates<sup>(34)</sup>. In this article he describes the origins of what has become known as CICRIS (Co-operative Industrial and Commercial Reference and Information Services), which "are essentially information services for commerce and industry." By 1955, CICRIS, with its headquarters in Acton Central Public Library, had developed into a vigorous enterprise with fifty-eight member organizations.

The University Libraries continued discussion of common problems and objectives both on the Joint Standing Committee on Library Co-operation of the Association of University Teachers and through the medium of a more recently formed organization, SCOUNL, i.e., the Standing Conference of National and University Libraries formed in September, 1950, and comprising representatives of thirty-two libraries. The Joint Standing Committee meets annually at a one-day Conference, at which it discusses general questions of inter-university library co-operation and also special projects it has undertaken, such as the location of lendable copies of pre-1800 books, a task in which over fifty university, special and municipal libraries are involved. The dividing line between this body and SCOUNL is not a clear-cut one, as the latter, as described in Chapter 1, has also concerned itself with various aspects of co-operation, such as plans for the joint acquisition of current Russian materials, the joint storage of seldom used books, and improved arrangements for the inter-loan of theses.

A feature of the period was the appearance of a number of useful Union Catalogues of Periodicals. A warm welcome was given to the third edition of the *World List of Scientific Periodicals* and to the first volume of BUCOP, the *British Union Catalogue of Periodicals*, published in 1955, and on which work had been in progress since 1944. BUCOP describes itself as "a record of the periodicals of the world from the seventeenth century to the present day (in whatever language and on whatever subject) represented permanently in British libraries. Its main purpose is to provide information concerning the availability for consultation of any particular periodical." The appearance of the first volume of this monumental catalogue has at once had the effect of lightening immeasurably the task of locating serials in Great Britain. The

developed since its inception. In 1934-35, there were eighteen members and 196 loans; in 1953-54, forty members (mainly firms) and 2,757 loans<sup>(27)</sup>. A useful survey of library facilities to industry generally was written by Mr. K. J. Rider<sup>(28)</sup>, and Mr. L. L. Ardern made a plea for a more determined effort to integrate available resources of scientific and technical information in an article<sup>(29)</sup> dealing particularly with conditions in South-East Lancashire. The Liverpool Public Libraries have been prominent in this field and Mr. D. Ball has described in some detail two services open to local firms, the "Postal borrowing scheme" and the "Documents Bulletin"<sup>(30)</sup>. Dr. G. Chandler later reported on the impressive use made of these and other services offered to industry within the orbit of that city<sup>(31)</sup>.

An account of special libraries and library co-operation in South Wales and Monmouthshire was written by Mr. W. Ashworth<sup>(32)</sup>, and Mr. M. C. Pottinger discussed industrial and other sources of specialized information in Scotland<sup>(33)</sup>, laying particular stress on the role of the Department of Scientific and Industrial Research. The need for a "closely integrated network of regional information centres based on public libraries" was adumbrated by Mr. R. D. Rates<sup>(34)</sup>. In this article he describes the origins of what has become known as CICRIS (Co-operative Industrial and Commercial Reference and Information Services), which "are essentially information services for commerce and industry." By 1955, CICRIS, with its headquarters in Acton Central Public Library, had developed into a vigorous enterprise with fifty-eight member organizations.

The University Libraries continued discussion of common problems and objectives both on the Joint Standing Committee on Library Co-operation of the Association of University Teachers and through the medium of a more recently formed organization, SCONUL, i.e., the Standing Conference of National and University Libraries formed in September, 1950, and comprising representatives of thirty-two libraries. The Joint Standing Committee meets annually at a one-day Conference, at which it discusses general questions of inter-university library co-operation and also special projects it has undertaken, such as the location of lendable copies of pre-1800 books, a task in which over fifty university, special and municipal libraries are involved. The dividing line between this body and SCONUL is not a clear-cut one, as the latter, as described in Chapter I, has also concerned itself with various aspects of co-operation, such as plans for the joint acquisition of current Russian materials, the joint storage of seldom used books, and improved arrangements for the inter-loan of theses.

A feature of the period was the appearance of a number of useful Union Catalogues of Periodicals. A warm welcome was given to the third edition of the *World List of Scientific Periodicals* and to the first volume of BUCOP, the *British Union Catalogue of Periodicals*, published in 1955, and on which work had been in progress since 1944. BUCOP describes itself as "a record of the periodicals of the world from the seventeenth century to the present day (in whatever language and on whatever subject) represented permanently in British libraries. Its main purpose is to provide information concerning the availability for consultation of any particular periodical." The appearance of the first volume of this monumental catalogue has at once had the effect of lightening immeasurably the task of locating serials in Great Britain. The

following is a list of some of the Union Catalogues of Periodicals published in Britain between 1951 and 1955:

- WORD LIST OF SCIENTIFIC PERIODICALS PUBLISHED IN THE YEARS 1900-1950. 3rd ed. 1952.
- BRITISH UNION CATALOGUE OF PERIODICALS. Vol. I. A.-C. 1955.
- LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. LONDON AND HOME COUNTIES BRANCH. The London union list of periodicals: holdings of the municipal and county libraries of Greater London; ed. by K. A. Mallaber and Philip M. de Paris. 1951.
- LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. NORTH-WESTERN BRANCH. Periodicals currently received in the libraries of the North-West. 1952.
- GREAT BRITAIN. DEPARTMENT OF SCIENTIFIC & INDUSTRIAL RESEARCH. List of scientific and technical periodicals in D.S.I.R. libraries, 1952.
- GREAT BRITAIN. DEPARTMENT OF SCIENTIFIC AND INDUSTRIAL RESEARCH. A list of scientific periodicals in Glamorgan and Monmouthshire. 1952.
- EDINBURGH COMMITTEE FOR LIBRARY CO-OPERATION. Union list of current periodicals in Edinburgh libraries. 1953.
- DO. 2nd ed. 1955.
- LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. REFERENCE AND SPECIAL LIBRARIES SECTION (NORTHERN GROUP). Union list of scientific and technical periodicals in northern libraries. 1955.
- CAMPBELL, D. J. Union list of the periodicals in the libraries of the Postgraduate Medical School, Institute of Cancer Research, etc. 1955.

This section on library co-operation in the United Kingdom may fittingly close with a reference to an appraisal by an American librarian, Mr. R. Esterquest, who, in 1954, spent eight months in this country, studying schemes of library co-operation, and who published his account and conclusions in the following year<sup>(35)</sup>. Mr. Esterquest has many refreshing comments to make. Among these, the following is one on which British librarians might well ponder:

"To an American observer, familiar with discussions *pro* and *con* regional union catalogs on his side of the Atlantic, it seems strange that more attention was not directed toward the possibility of abandoning the several regional union catalogs in favor of a stronger national union catalog in the NCL. The argument for this change would seem to be that money now being spent within the regions solely to maintain the regional catalogs, if added to the NCL union catalog budget, would be more than enough to maintain the national catalog at a higher level of excellence than ever before. In fact, it would seem that the combined funds would be enough to bring the NCL catalog up-to-date and to improve it in every way and still carry a surplus for financing improvements in and speeding up the request-searching activity. This change would centralize the *locating* function only; it need not in any way affect the principle of regional self-sufficiency in lending, since the NCL would always request loans from within the same region from whence the request came whenever a location was to be found therein. Relieved of the catalog maintenance chore and the routine searching chore, the regional bureaus would be able to devote their energies and their remaining budgets to other recognized cooperative needs, such as the specialization scheme being developed by the South-East Bureau."

## REFERENCES

### UNITED KINGDOM

1. VOLLANS, R. F. Library co-operation in Great Britain: report of a survey of the National Central Library and the Regional Bureaux. National Central Library, 1952. pp. xii, 139.
2. Recommendations on Library Co-operation. National Central Library, 1954. pp. 7. (Reprinted in *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (7), 1954, 248-251.)
3. BRYON, J. F. W. The Vollans Report. *Librarian* 42 (2), 1953, 21-24.
4. HUNT, R. H. The Vollans Report of 1952: its origins and implications. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (7), 1954, 241-248.

5. VOLLANS, R. E. Focus on library co-operation. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (5), 1953, 152-157.
6. HUNT, K. G. London public libraries and subject specialization. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.*, 1948, 80-85.
7. LEGGATT, D. The Metropolitan Special Collections Scheme. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 51 (6), 1949, 186.
8. HILL, W. J. L. Subject Specialization in the South-Eastern Region. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 52 (7), 1950, 229-230.
9. SOUTH-EASTERN REGIONAL LIBRARY SYSTEM. Subject specialization: list of subjects arranged in order of Dewey Decimal Classification showing the Library Authority responsible for purchase . . . 1952. pp. ii, 22.
10. SHEPHERD, C. F. Subject allocation in Wales. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (10), 1953, 317-318.
11. GLENGROSS, A. Co-operative book purchase. *N.W. Newsl.* (19), 1953, 1-2.
12. BRYON, J. F. W. Subject Specialization in the North-West. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (6), 1954, 221-214.
13. HUNT, K. G. Subject Specialization and co-operative book purchase in the libraries of Great Britain. Library Association, 1955. pp. 32.
14. FILON, S. P. L. Subject Specialization in British Libraries. *Libri* 4 (3), 1954, 203-215.
15. LIBRARY ASSOCIATION. WORKING PARTY ON THE CO-OPERATIVE PROVISION OF BOOKS, PERIODICALS AND RELATED MATERIAL IN LIBRARIES. Second Interim Report. Library Association, 1953. pp. 2.
16. SEWELL, P. H. The Regional Library Systems. Library Association, 1950. pp. iv, 36. [2nd ed. 1956, pp. 71.]
17. Northern Regional Library Bureau. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. Newcastle, 1951. .  
West Midlands Regional Library Bureau. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. Birmingham, 1951. .  
Regional Libraries Scheme for Wales and Monmouthshire [Aberystwyth Bureau and Cardiff Bureau]. *Annual Report, 1951*. Aberystwyth, 1952. .  
South-Eastern Regional Library Bureau. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. 1951. .  
East Midlands Regional Library Bureau. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. Leicester, 1951. .  
North-Western Regional Library Bureau. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. Manchester, 1951. .  
Yorkshire Regional Library System. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. Sheffield, 1951. .  
South-Western Regional Library Bureau. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. Bristol, 1951. .  
London Union Catalogue Management Committee. *Annual Report, 1951*. 1952. .
18. NATIONAL CENTRAL LIBRARY. *Annual Report, 1950-51*. 1951. .
19. ALLARDYCE, A. The British National Book Centre: the first five years. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (11), 1953, 344-349.
20. HILL, R. H. The restored building of the National Central Library. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (7), 221-226.
21. FILON, S. P. L. Bibliography, Co-operation and the National Central Library. *Library Association (London and Home Counties branch). Conf. Papers 1954*, 47-56.
22. ADVISORY COUNCIL ON EDUCATION IN SCOTLAND. Libraries, museums and art galleries: a report . . . Edinburgh, H.M.S.O., 1951. pp. 145.
23. Public Libraries (Scotland) Act, 1955. H.M.S.O., 1955. pp. ii, 3.
24. PATON, W. B. The Public Libraries (Scotland) Act, 1955. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7), 1953, 269-270.
25. SCOTTISH CENTRAL LIBRARY. *Annual Report, 1952-53*. Edinburgh, 1953. .
26. AITKEN, W. R. Scottish Fiction Reserve: a list of authors included in the Scheme . . . Scottish Library Association, 1955. pp. vi, 42.
27. LAMB, J. P. The organization for the interchange of technical publications in Sheffield and district. *Serial Slans* 6 (1), 1955, 6-14.
28. RIDER, K. J. Library Service for industry. *Engineer* 195, 13th Feb., 1953, 252-254.
29. ARDERN, L. L. Information, industry and integration. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (3), 1953, 158-160.
30. BALL, D. Public technical library service for industry . . . *Aslib Proc.* 7 (2), 1955, 101-107.
31. CHANDLER, G. Liverpool Technical Library: a survey of the use made of its services. *Aslib Proc.* 7 (4), 1955, 259-268.
32. ASHWORTH, W. Special libraries and library co-operation in South Wales and Monmouthshire. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (2), 1955, 60-62.
33. POTTINGER, M. C. Scottish resources of scientific and technical literature and information and the need for more systematic organization. *Aslib Proc.* 5 (3), 1953, 155-162.
34. RATES, R. D. The public libraries and the need for better information services. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (1), 1953, 8-9.
35. ESTERQUEST, R. T. Library co-operation in the British Isles. Chicago, Association of College and Reference Libraries, 1955. pp. 24.

## (2) LIBRARY CO-OPERATION OVERSEAS: SOME NOTES

By THE EDITOR

IN the absence of a contribution on this topic, it seemed worth mentioning, however inadequately, some of the major developments in this field overseas and listing the more important sources of information. Three projects have attracted considerable interest in Britain, the "Farmington Plan" for making available in the U.S.A. foreign publications of research value; the Mid-West Inter-Library Centre, which is taking a leading role in supplementing and co-ordinating the provision of research materials in that part of America, and the library activities of the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft together with the remarkably rapid compilation of union catalogues and union lists of periodicals in Western Germany. At the same time there have been less spectacular, but none the less useful, developments in the field of inter-library loan aided by the work of new union catalogues, union lists of periodicals and the establishment of new national centres for international exchange.

Several kinds of problem emerge in library co-operation so far as inter-lending is concerned. There is the arduous and costly but technically practicable work of compiling union catalogues and union lists of periodicals of the important research libraries in a country; there are also problems of a more complex kind which are concerned with the cost and scope of an inter-lending service, particularly in relation to the provision of micro-reproductions, and the professional ethics and competence of participating libraries. Moreover, once basic stocks are known, the desirability of co-ordinating acquisition policies becomes apparent and here, unless government help is available, institutional interests may conflict with national interests.

Two methods of providing most economically the fullest possible coverage of research material have emerged, (a) the allocation of subject fields for institutional specialization either by voluntary agreement (as in the Farmington Plan) or with official direction and support (as in the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft) and (b) the provision by a group of libraries of a library centre, not merely to store and co-ordinate their runs of little-used research material, but also to purchase on their behalf publications the necessity for whose purchase by any one library is open to question (as in the Midwest Inter-Library Centre).

Finally, where, as in Western Germany, public libraries are emerging from their old role of "popular" libraries to make a significant contribution to the country's research and information service, the question of their most appropriate place in the country's inter-lending service becomes important.

During our period there was news of several countries which were still surveying their needs or were making initial plans for improving facilities for co-operation. India, in particular, has an enormous task ahead<sup>(1)</sup> while Finland relies on its main research libraries for inter-lending<sup>(2)</sup> supported by a joint catalogue of foreign acquisitions. In Canada, despite progress of a union catalogue of books in the major Canadian libraries, there is need of a directory of libraries and other union catalogues to make possible closer co-operation

between college, university and public libraries<sup>(3)</sup>. Considerable progress is reported from Italy, where, apart from the work of the Centro Bibliografico, which is largely concerned with Christian art and theology<sup>(4)</sup>, the National Centre for the Union Catalogue for Italian libraries has trained and supervised a large staff for recording the stock of the major scholarly libraries<sup>(5)</sup>. The Netherlands is able to base inter-lending on a National Union Catalogue and a union catalogue of books and periodicals on technical subjects<sup>(6)</sup>. Enschede in Holland provides an instance where local industries pay annual fees for the services given by the public library<sup>(7)</sup>. Major developments in union catalogues during our period in Germany, Great Britain, Netherlands, Switzerland, United States, Canada and France are outlined by Brummel in a most useful survey<sup>(8)</sup>, which also includes a valuable analysis of the function and organization of union catalogues.

Western Germany has attracted the wistful gaze of many librarians. There the state, through the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft, sponsors and aids schemes for the acquisition of foreign periodicals and monographs by subject specialization among university and special libraries<sup>(9)</sup><sup>(10)</sup><sup>(11)</sup>. There have also been new regulations governing inter-library lending. The new scheme includes public libraries and Western Germany is divided into six regions, each with a co-ordinating library<sup>(12)</sup><sup>(13)</sup>. At the same time the Union Catalogue of Foreign Literature (ZKA) has been published in two series, showing the acquisition between 1945-54 of books published abroad between 1939-49. These are being supplemented by monthly lists which are to be cumulated every five years<sup>(14)</sup><sup>(15)</sup>.

By far the most active of the newly established regions is that for North-Rhine Westphalia, centred at the University and State Library, Cologne<sup>(9)</sup>, (which also acts as a centre for International loans)<sup>(16)</sup>. Very substantial support was given through the Ministry of Education of the Landes Nordrhein Westfalen for the rapid compilation of a union catalogue, and now a subsidy is given to the main lending libraries to keep down the cost of the inter-lending service<sup>(17)</sup>. The very success of this system has brought its problems and the considerable borrowings by public libraries have brought the suggestion that they need their own inter-lending systems linking up with the present system at the highest level<sup>(18)</sup>. Other parts of Germany, e.g., the south-west, making less progress, feel keenly the need for a union catalogue<sup>(19)</sup><sup>(20)</sup>. Regional union catalogues are being compiled at Hamburg and Frankfurt, but the enlightened provincial government of North-Rhine Westphalia stands as a shining example.

Little need be written of the history and operation of the Farmington Plan of United States research libraries, since the *Farmington Plan handbook*<sup>(21)</sup> gives full details. This imaginative project for acquiring and recording foreign research material is now well established. Suggested improvements include a regrouping of subject responsibilities by language and a restriction of purchasing libraries to a few of the largest institutions or, indeed, to transfer responsibility to a national deposit library<sup>(22)</sup>.

The work of the Midwest Inter-Library Centre near Chicago has been well described by its director, R. T. Esterquest<sup>(23)</sup><sup>(24)</sup><sup>(25)</sup><sup>(26)</sup> and the *Midwest Inter-Library Center Newsletter* records developments. Mr. Esterquest has given figures to show that, except for material already available in micro-reproduction,

a deposit centre is one of the most economical ways of providing access to little-used research material<sup>(27)</sup>. The carefully devised acquisition policy of M.I.L.C. seems admirable, although even an over-night service will always be regarded as second-best by the user compared with "on the spot" material. The Hampshire Inter-Library Centre, founded in 1951 at Mt. Holyoke, appears to be making more modest but satisfactory progress<sup>(28)</sup> <sup>(29)</sup>.

Many general surveys of library co-operation in the States have appeared. Pride of place must be given to the speeches at the dedication of the M.I.L.C. building<sup>(30)</sup> and a symposium on inter-library loans presented in January 1952<sup>(31)</sup>. In the latter special attention is given to the cost of inter-library loan, the effect of tradition (co-operating institutions are categorized as "helpful," "liberal," "holier-than-thou," "difficult," "petty" or "stuffy,") erroneous and incomplete requests and the revised "General Inter-Library Loan Code, 1952," which is set out in full together with details of the Standard four-part Inter-Library Loan Request Form. It must be remembered that this refers primarily to inter-lending between college, university and other research libraries, since for many public libraries the state library agency is the first stage in obtaining specially requested material. The major Bibliographical Centres and Union Catalogues<sup>(32)</sup> at the Library of Congress, Denver, Seattle, Philadelphia, Cleveland and Sacramento (California) and elsewhere have continued and expanded their services, but much inter-lending is carried out by direct application, using published directories of resources, catalogues and union lists for locating purposes. Collison gives a useful survey of research library co-operation<sup>(33)</sup>.

Other noteworthy developments recorded in the U.S.A. include a teleprinter link between Racine and Milwaukee public libraries<sup>(34)</sup>, the creation of a union list of periodicals using I.B.M. punched cards<sup>(35)</sup> and the introduction of fees for outside use of a scholarly library<sup>(36)</sup>.

The exchange of publications has been facilitated by the work of Unesco and O.E.E.C. and by new or improved national centres, but the need for a revised international exchange agreement is becoming apparent. In the meantime a second edition of Unesco's invaluable *Handbook on the international exchange of publications*<sup>(37)</sup> makes available all relevant information on methods, agreements, transport and customs regulations and lists the exchange offers of international organizations and arrangements for international exchange country by country.

A survey of national and international exchange centres by A. D. Ball has appeared<sup>(38)</sup> and the same writer has given a more detailed account of the United States Book Exchange (U.S.B.E.)<sup>(39)</sup>, a non-profit making but self-supporting institution. The work of the O.E.E.C. Documents Exchange Scheme is described in an article<sup>(40)</sup> which also notes that the work of supplying general exchange information is to be transferred from Unesco to national centres. Accounts have also appeared of the Commonwealth Publications Exchange Agency, Canberra<sup>(41)</sup> and the Book Centre at Gotha. In France, the University Exchange Centre receives government help.

It will be obvious that the work described in the chapter on Bibliographical Organization vitally affects library co-operation by making possible the identification and often the location of required works. Unesco has given a valuable lead here by publishing information on the functions and administration

of a National Bibliographical Centre<sup>(42)</sup>. However, the problem remains for each country to record, co-ordinate and use most effectively its own particular array of library resources and the varied pattern of their efforts makes a fascinating study.

## REFERENCES

1. SARKAR, P. K. A scheme for co-operation among technical libraries in India. *Ind. Lib.* 6 (2) 1951, 43-47.
2. MÄJO, S. [Inter-library loans in Finland.] *Kirjastoletti* 47 (8) 1954, 174-177.
3. SPICER, E. J. Library co-operation in Canada—college and university libraries and public libraries. *Can. Lib. Assn. Occ. Papers.* (4) 1955, pp. 12.
4. DYSON, J. International library co-operation in Italy. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (12) 1953, 394-396.
5. ARCAMONE, G. I lavori del Catalogo Unico. [The work of the Union Catalogue in Italy.] *Accad. e Bib. d'Italia.* 20 (1-2) 1952, 3-7.  
Also *Ibid.* 20 (6) 1952, 334-337.  
*Ibid.* 21 (5-6) 1953, 399-406.
6. VERWEIJ, H. DE LA F. [The library friend and enemy.] *Bibliotheksleven* 37 (12) 1952, 345-359.
7. ВЪОКНОМ, С. [Co-operation between public libraries and local industries in Holland.] *Biblioteksbladet* 37 (2) 1952, 64-65.
8. BRUMMEL, I. Union catalogues: their problems and organization. Paris, Unesco, 1956. pp. 94. (*Unesco bibliographical handbooks.*)
9. JUCHHOFF, R. The present state of library co-operation in Germany. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (11) 1954, 423-427.
10. Die Zeitschriftenaktion der Forschungsgemeinschaft [Programme for the acquisition of foreign periodicals in German libraries]. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (1) 1952, 7-10.
11. BUSSE, G. VON. Co-operative acquisition. *Lib. J.* 78 (2) 1953, 85-87.
12. Leihverkehr [Inter-library lending system in western Germany]. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (2) 1952, 21-52.
13. KÖTTELWESCH, C. Probleme des Leihverkehrs der deutschen Bibliotheken. [Problems of inter-library lending in Germany.] *Z.f.B.u.B.* 1 (2) 1954, 89-101.
14. JUCHHOFF, R. Der Zentralkatalog der ausländischen Literatur (ZKA). [Union catalogue of foreign literature.] *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (5) 1952, 248-252.
15. Der Zentralkatalog der ausländischen Literatur (ZKA). *Mitteilungsblatt (Nordrhein-Westfalen)* 6 (3-4) 1956, 43-48.
16. JUCHHOFF, R. International loans between Gt. Britain and Germany. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (10) 1951, 325-326.
17. KRÜG, W. Der auswärtige Leihverkehr in Nordrhein Westfalen im Rechnungsjahr 1954-55. [Inter-library lending on North Rhine Westphalia in the year 1954-55.] *Mitteilungsblatt (Nordrhein-Westfalen)* N.F. 5 (4) 1955, 77-84.
18. WILKENS, E. Der Bibliotheksregion: gemeinsame Aufgaben der Volksbüchereien und der wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken. [The library region: common tasks of public and academic libraries.] *Ibid.* N.F. 5 (2) 1955, 41-49.  
Also *Ibid.* N.F. 5 (3) 1955, 62-66.
19. BAUHAUS, W. Leihverkehr und Zentralkatalog problem von einer Universitätsbibliothek aus gesehen. [Inter-library loans and the union catalogue problem from the point of view of a university library.] *Z.f.B.u.B.* 2 (2) 1955, 87-98.
20. REDENBACHER, F. Votum für einen süddeutsch Zentralkatalog. [Proposals for a south German union catalogue.] *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 6 (2) 1953, 41-52.
21. WILLIAMS, E. E. Farmington plan handbook. Bloomington, Indiana, Association of Research Libraries, 1953. pp. v, 170.
22. WILLIAMS, E. E. Some questions on three co-operative projects. *Lib. Trends.* 1 (1) 1952, 156-165.
23. ESTERQUEST, R. T. The storage library and beyond. *Libri* 1 (3) 1951, 239-252.
24. ESTERQUEST, R. T. Report on the Midwest Inter-Library Center. *Ibid.* 4 (2) 1954, 135-142.
25. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (9) 1954, 336-342.
26. ESTERQUEST, R. T. The Midwest Center. *Illus. Lib. J.* 76 (22) 1951, 2031-2035.
27. ESTERQUEST, R. T. Book storage and the microcard. *Ibid.* 77 (19) 1952, 1888-1890.
28. The Hampshire Inter-Library Centre. *Lib. of C. Inf. Bull.* 10 (42) 1951, 9.

29. *A.L.A. Bull.* 46 (r) 1952, 10-12.
30. COLEWELL, E. C. Inter-university co-operation; METCALF, K. D. University libraries face the future; BLEGEN, T. D. The scholar looks at inter-library co-operation; ELLESWORTH, R. E. Tasks of the immediate future. *Lib. Q.* 22 (r) 1952, 1-20.
31. HODGSON, J. G. and others. Inter-library loans: a symposium. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 13 (4) 1952, 327-349. [Followed by General Inter-Library Loan Code, 1952. pp. 350-358.]
32. SHERWOOD, J. W. and CAMPION, E. E. Union library catalogue: services, 1950. *Quo rails?* *Ibid.* 13 (2) 1952, 101-106.
33. COLLISON, R. L. W. Aspects of co-operation in university and special libraries in the United States of America. *Lib. Assn. Conf. Papers* 1953, 43-49.
34. PETHBRIDGE, A. Racmil-five years later. *Lib. J.* 79 (19) 1954, 2089-2092.
35. LEEF, H. I. and JOHNSON, G. H. Creating a union list. *Ibid.* 80 (19) 1955, 2423-2426.
36. METCALF, K. D. University libraries face the future. *Lib. Q.* 22 (1) 1952, 5-12; also, *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 8 (1) 1954, 5-13.
37. BUSSE, G. VON. Handbook on the international exchange of publications. 2nd ed. Paris, Unesco, 1956. pp. 509.
38. BALL, A. D. National and international centers for the exchange of publications; with special attention to the United States Book Exchange Inc. *Libri* 4 (3) 1954, 226-235; also JONES, A. C. Book disposal: problems and opportunities. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (8) 1952, 253-256.
39. BALL, A. D. Serial acquisition through the United States Book Exchange. *Serial Slants.* 2 (1) 1954, 7-19.
40. Development of publication exchanges. *Unesco Bull.* 8 (8-9) 1954, 86-91.
41. LYNRAVN, N. S. Australian international exchange centres. *Aust. Lib.* 2 (4) 1953, 96-100.
42. LARSEN, K. National bibliographical services: their creation and operation. Paris, Unesco, 1953. pp. x, 142. (*Unesco bibliographical handbooks.*)

## EDUCATION FOR LIBRARIANSHIP

By ROY STOKES, F.L.A., *Head, Loughborough School of Librarianship*

THESE five years, in so far as professional education was concerned in the United Kingdom, were primarily a period of consolidation. There were no new events of major importance, but such progress as had been apparent up to the end of 1950 was maintained. Since the major part of professional educational activities are controlled by the Library Association, it may serve to clarify the situation if the Association's administrative machinery is outlined. All those members of the Library Association Council who are Fellows of the Association form the Register and Examinations Executive Committee. This is the committee finally responsible for all educational matters and its decisions are not referred to or controlled by the Council of the Association. The Register and Examinations Executive Committee works mainly through two sub-committees; the Assessors Sub-Committee and the Education Sub-Committee. The former, comprising the Chairman of the Education Sub-Committee and four other members elected by the Register and Examinations Executive Committee, is charged with the responsibility for the actual conduct of the examinations; the appointment of examiners and the scrutiny and approval of examination papers. The Education Sub-Committee assumes control over general educational matters, including the syllabus. It consists primarily of members elected by the Register and Examinations Executive Committee with a few co-opted members to represent particular interests.

The area of the Association's educational work which always receives the greatest amount of publicity and comment is that concerned with syllabus revision. Compared with many of the post-war years, the five-year period under review was relatively uneventful. The most important accomplishment was undoubtedly the change in the syllabus and the status of the first examination. This has had a chequered career of late, passing from the Elementary Examination to the Entrance Examination, the latter title being that held at the beginning of 1951. Some confusion had been caused because original announcements had suggested that this was an examination for which no formal course of study was appropriate, but for which intelligent and wisely guided practical experience in a library would suffice. Even had such a situation been possible at any time, it was soon found to be failing in practice. The added disadvantage that so very few libraries appeared to have anything which remotely resembled an in-service training programme meant that new entrants to the profession were being given inadequate preparation for their career.

In September 1952 the Education Sub-Committee received a resolution from the Council of the Association of Assistant Librarians to the effect "that the Education Sub-Committee of the Library Association be asked to re-draft

the syllabus of the Entrance Examination, defining clearly the scope and limits of the syllabus, with the object of ensuring that this examination will, in future, be a more effective test of the candidate's suitability to progress to the Registration Examination." At the same meeting the Sub-Committee had before it an observation from the Schools of Librarianship Committee drawing attention to their belief that the Entrance Examination was of little or no value in respect of admission to the Library Schools. Some of the difficulty which had arisen in this direction was due to the fact that the Association's regulation that one year's full-time employment in an approved library was a pre-requisite to the sitting of this examination had been widely interpreted as meaning that the candidate was, in fact, ready to sit at the end of one year. Instead of being regarded as the minimum requirement, it was accepted as the norm.

With an inadequate examination at the end of this period, it resulted in many students presenting themselves for a course for the Registration Examination who had no real hope or chance of success. All this served to underline one basic disadvantage of the examination system. The examinations themselves were regarded as the most important feature and were a series of hurdles placed by the Association in order to debar the librarian from progress and financial improvement in his profession. Because of this, almost any device was regarded as legitimate in order to circumvent or overcome these barriers. The course which should precede the test began to assume a secondary role.

As a result of these representations the Association of Assistant Librarians and the Schools of Librarianship Committee were asked to submit definite proposals for revision. A very substantial measure of agreement was reached from the outset and the first draft was submitted in May 1954.

During all the subsequent discussions, attention was focused on three main points. Firstly, the omission of the essay. Many people felt quite keenly that a librarian's ability to express himself logically and clearly was so important that this feature should be retained. The opposing view was that, while admitting this importance, the candidate should be able to demonstrate these qualities throughout all his examination work and not simply to become literate at particular moments. It was also felt that the style of essay which had been utilized to date was essentially of the "literary" type and that this rightly belonged to general education rather than professional. Secondly, opinions varied as to whether the syllabus on reference materials should include specific book titles on which factual questions could be asked or whether it should demand an understanding of the various kinds of material. In the end the latter view prevailed in the hope that students would thereby be more encouraged to seek their own examples in those subject fields which were the nearest to their own interests. This was particularly important in view of the widening variety of libraries represented in the Association's examination lists. The third part was more controversial. Opinions differed as to the desirability of the year's preliminary experience in practical work. Conditions varied so much even in "approved" libraries that no common factor of experience could be discerned. Certain instances of hardship caused by too rigorous an enforcement of the regulation could be cited and yet any relaxation of the regulation decreased its force and value. To sweep away this provision, on the other hand, could conceivably increase the number of unsuitable candidates and, by that same count, the number of unsuccessful and frustrated juniors. When eventual

agreement was reached regarding the new syllabus, the year's qualifying period had been removed. The final form of the syllabus was designed for four papers each of one and a half hours.

(1) *Librarianship: Purpose.*

The aims and scope of the library service. The services available in all types of library. Inter-library co-operation. Professional education and qualification. Professional associations.

(2) *Librarianship: Methods.*

How libraries are governed and financed. Staffing and the division of work. The ordering and receipt, preparation, care and custody of books, periodicals and other related material. The admission and registration of readers. Circulation methods, reservation, inter-lending of material, personal service, publicity.

(3) *Library stock: Description and arrangement.*

The parts of books and periodicals. Simple bibliographical terms. The practical purposes of classification in libraries. Parts of a classification scheme. Shelf arrangement, guiding and display. The purposes of reading lists. The purposes of cataloguing. The types and forms of catalogue. The details given in catalogue entries. References. The functions of subject headings in a dictionary catalogue and of indexes to a classified catalogue. The arrangement of the catalogue, alphabetizing and filing, guide cards and labels. Centralized cataloguing and the use of the *British National Bibliography*.

(4) *Library stock: Use.*

The value and use of the more important types of reference book, e.g., encyclopaedias, year books, directories, dictionaries, indexes to periodicals, abstracts, book-trade lists, books of quotations, biographical reference works, atlases. Abbreviations used in books.

The first examination due to be held in this new examination was scheduled for June 1956.

The Registration Examination emerged from these five years quite unscathed, but probably only because far more revolutionary changes were being discussed throughout this time.

Suggestions were made by various of the sections of the Library Association for changes in the Final Examination, but, for the most part, these were also delayed until such time as other related discussions had been concluded. A certain amount of clarification of the Final syllabus took place, but there was only one amendment which might claim to be regarded as basic to the whole concept. When the post-war revised syllabus was published, it included six specialist subjects as Part 4. These were:

- (a) Palaeography and archives.
- (b) Library work with young people.
- (c) Advanced classification and cataloguing.
- (d) Historical bibliography.
- (e) Hospital library work.
- (f) Literature of Wales.

In March 1950 the Register and Examinations Executive Committee resolved that "Library work with young people" and "Hospital library work" should be removed from this part of the Final Examination as from June 1951. Both subjects were, from that time onwards, to be regarded as Specialist Certificates which could be taken by Chartered librarians but which would not count towards their Final Examination. This decision immediately gave rise to two problems. Firstly, there was a severe limitation of choice available to students in this part. Very few librarians are suitably qualified to sit for the paper in "Palaeography and archives," and even less, due to the regulation that at least two questions were to be answered in Welsh, were able to take that in the "Literature of Wales." Thus it became a question of choice between those notably different alternatives, "Advanced classification and cataloguing" and "Historical bibliography." Even the most fervid devotee of either of these subjects had to admit that there were many aspects of librarianship left uncovered. Secondly, this action left the syllabus with virtually no attention being paid to library work with youth or in hospitals. Since these are areas of library service in which this country has tended to lag behind, it seemed likely to become another example of a vicious circle.

The Youth Libraries Section submitted a series of memoranda on this subject, and, after due consideration, it was decided in March 1953 to reinstate "Work with young people" as a full part of the Final Examination. "Hospital library work" was suffered to remain outside the boundaries of grace and favour, where, at the end of this period, it still is.

During the time of these negotiations, the Youth Libraries Section sent one memorandum to the Council in January 1952 on the recruitment of staff for this work. In the following September they followed this with more specific recommendations. It was originally suggested that there should be "a six-week course at an existing Library School, planned to develop ultimately into a full-time school, in which lectures and theoretical study could be combined with practical experience in Children's Libraries of a recognized standard." The memorandum also suggested that, since the majority of children's library assistants were to be found in London and the Home Counties, it might be advisable to base the course on London. The first course to be based on these recommendations was held in the Department of Librarianship in the London North-Western Polytechnic from April 26 to June 4, 1954, with twenty-one full-time and two part-time students attending.

Within this same general field of interest, considerable advances have been made regarding the training of teacher-librarians. In the past much confusion of thought had arisen because of the apparent lack of appreciation by many professional librarians of the importance of the teacher-librarians being qualified and experienced teachers, and because of the apparent lack of appreciation by many members of the teaching profession of the importance of suitable professional training and experience. In January 1951 the Education Sub-Committee of the Library Association appointed a sub-committee "to explore the possibilities of giving a Diploma for teacher-librarians which would convey no professional status and which would be quite independent of the full professional syllabus." In the following March it was decided to investigate these possibilities in conjunction with the School Libraries Association and with the beneficent co-operation of the Ministry of Education. Over the next few

years this tripartite committee worked its way to an admirable understanding and the details of the proposed syllabus were published in the *Library Association Record*, July 4, 1956. Although this publication came outside the period of the present survey, it recorded work which was done within the five years. The agreed syllabus was designed for teachers with a minimum of three years' teaching experience and was arranged in three papers.

*Paper 1. The educational aspects of school librarianship.*

History and development of school libraries in Great Britain. Place of the library in the school, and its use as an instrument of education. Pupils' reading and its relation to their mental development. History of children's literature. Assessment of children's books. Book selection. Training of pupils in the use of books and of the school library. The teaching staff and the library.

*Paper 2. The technical aspects of school librarianship.*

Planning, equipping and furnishing the school library. Organizing routines. Processing books. Records. Care of books. Acquisition, storage and use of periodicals, pictures and cuttings. Finance. Library facilities outside the school. The public library and the national library network.

*Paper 3. Practical classification and cataloguing.*

A practical test in classifying and cataloguing books for the school library.

It was hoped that the first examinations for this new certificate would be held in Midsummer 1958.

During these years from 1951 to 1955 the Library Association was also actively engaged in negotiations with Aslib on the question of education and training for special library and information work. When the 1946 syllabus had been in force for a short time, it became obvious that it had certain disadvantages. An *ad hoc* committee was set up in November 1947 and Aslib was given representation on this syllabus revision committee. As the information officer representation became stronger in Aslib, it soon became evident that even the revisions made by the sub-committee would not long be regarded as satisfactory. The result was that the Aslib Education Committee was forced to give considerable attention to this matter and it became apparent that certain members favoured the institution of a diploma of some kind sponsored by Aslib itself. Attractive as this idea was to some members, there were others who felt that the small world of librarians, information officers and documentalists could only be harmed by excessive fragmentation. Consequently, at the Aslib Conference at Nottingham in September 1953, the meeting called unanimously for consultations between Aslib and the Library Association on this matter. The invitation to the Library Association was forwarded by Aslib in April 1954, and a joint committee, with six representatives from each side, was set up. By the end of 1955 no progress had been officially reported, although it was known that a fair measure of accord had been achieved.

Whatever the result of these discussions may be eventually, it is certain that some good will have resulted from the exchange of views. As the years have gone by, it has been possible to sense the increasing danger of bifurcation among those whose profession is concerned with the "media of communications." At its seventeenth session in Rome in September 1951, the

International Library Committee had before it a recommendation that "separate training for librarians and documentalists should be created where necessary and that mixed schools for the training of teachers of librarianship and documentation should be created." This wish for a division between these two closely related categories of worker is a sign of immaturity in professional education. The Education Sub-Committee of the Library Association reacted strongly to this proposal and considered that the divorce of librarianship and documentation was very regrettable. The delegates of the Association were accordingly asked to express the official viewpoint that documentation is, in fact, a part of librarianship.

Finally, a brief record should be made of one of the Association's educational decisions. It was decreed that, as from January 1, 1952, no further exemptions could be granted from the present examinations in respect of sectional certificates gained prior to 1933.

Throughout all the discussions on education, training and syllabus revision, constant attention had to be paid to problems of recruitment. The biggest discussion, raised on a number of occasions in the professional Press, centred around the recruitment of graduates into the profession. Many people, while believing that an increased number of graduates in each year's entry would be beneficial, feared that, until such recruitment became a firmly established policy, the best graduates would not be attracted. It was also felt by many that to recruit staff of higher educational standards and then, as so often, to thwart their intellectual potential by giving them almost exclusively routine work in libraries would be to negate the initial advantage. For these reasons a small sub-committee was set up in November 1953 to consider the wider problems of recruitment and training of library assistants. Their report was submitted in January 1954, and, while the majority of it was wholly acceptable, one section proved to be highly controversial. The sub-committee "recommended that librarians and library authorities should, as soon as possible, review their establishments with the object of differentiating between posts of a professional and non-professional character in order to ensure greater efficiency in the service and reasonable opportunities for promotion for recruits who choose the administrative rather than the professional channel of advancement." This recommendation was agreed by the Education Sub-Committee but was referred back by the Register and Examinations Executive Committee. It was reaffirmed by the Education Sub-Committee, and it was then suggested that it should be considered by a joint committee representing Education and the Membership Committee. The original recommendation was again approved, on this occasion by a joint Education, Membership and Association of Assistant Librarians Sub-Committee, but again it was disallowed by the parent body. This sad history demonstrates how sharply divided opinion was. When this division becomes normal in this country, as it must, then it will be apparent how nearly we made progress in 1954.

As early as January 1947 the Heads of the Library Schools had met for informal discussions on matters of common interest. As the next few years went by, these meetings became a regular occurrence, usually without any fixed agenda, but producing extremely useful interchange of ideas. In 1952 the position became somewhat more formalized with the setting up of the Schools of Librarianship Committee. This consists of all the full-time staff of the

full-time Library Schools and it has developed the habit of meeting twice yearly, following the June and December examinations. A third meeting, though with somewhat depleted numbers, is usually fitted in during the Library Association Conference week. The Committee is in no way a committee of the Library Association and it has no official standing, although the Association does, from time to time, refer matters for its consideration and report.

The most important step forward taken at the instigation of this body was undoubtedly the formation of the so-called Moderating Committees. As far back as 1947 the Heads of the Library Schools had urged that there should be closer liaison between the examining and the tutoring bodies for the Association's examinations. The idea was originally greeted with a certain amount of scepticism but, eventually, in 1952, the Moderating Committees came into existence. They now exist for each of the main subject areas of the syllabus and consist of representatives of the examining, assessing and tutoring (both part-time and full-time) bodies for each subject. The committees meet whenever any one of their members feels that they can usefully do so, and they have all had considerable success in resolving difficulties connected with the elucidation of the syllabus. For so long as the Library Association is an examining body, they are likely to be a part of the professional scene.

Within the Library Schools themselves there has been relatively little change during this period, apart from some increase in the number of full-time staff and a little extra-mural activity. For a short time it seemed that a certain clarification of official opinion regarding the Schools might be discerned, but nothing positive has emerged. In November 1953 the Schools Committee submitted a report on standards of provision for Schools of Librarianship. The two main points which were stressed in this report were—firstly, that the Schools should be regarded as something more than simply "institutions charged with the responsibility of teaching to a given qualification only and judged according to their success in this." The report went on to say, "It has become apparent to teachers in the Schools that progress in librarianship depends on developing an intellectual sphere of reference beyond the level of technical skills only." Secondly, the Schools Committee expressed its opinion that, for the benefit of the profession as a whole, it would be an advantage to have fewer and larger Library Schools, with better siting.

The Education Sub-Committee appointed a special sub-committee to consider this report and a meeting was held in May 1954. The two points mentioned above were approved in principle and, in addition, it was agreed that "once standards for Library Schools have been established by the Library Association it seems highly desirable that there should be some body of suitably qualified persons appointed to ensure that these standards are observed and to act in an advisory capacity towards the Schools." These recommendations were approved by the Education Sub-Committee in October 1954, but no steps have been taken to promote organizational change.

One feature of the professional scene which has now achieved a welcome regularity is the series of Easter vacation courses of the London University School of Librarianship and Archives. The papers read at several of these courses have subsequently been printed and have provided some of the best of the Association's publications during the period.

Every problem connected with the Schools of Librarianship is eventually dependent upon the purely financial consideration of the students' ability to attend. The first years of the newer Schools' growth were covered by the facilities provided under the Government's Further Education and Training awards for ex-service men and women. As these finished, some doubt existed as to the extent to which financial assistance would be forthcoming from the local education authorities throughout the country. Slow at first, these awards have gradually increased in number and in the amount of the awards, until, at the end of the period, it was only a small number of backward authorities which raised any kind of difficulty. The majority appeared ready to make grants with a commendable lack of prohibiting conditions.

In the comparatively early days of these grants, the Library Association instituted the Mitchell Memorial Fund in order to be of some additional assistance to students. An appeal had been made in order to create a memorial to Colonel J. M. Mitchell, late Secretary of the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust, and the Council of the Library Association had expressed its opinion that it should be applied to an educational purpose. Subsequently it was decided that it should be used as a loan fund. Some of the earliest of the local education authority grants to students had been so small that real hardship had resulted. Consequently, it was decided to use the Mitchell Memorial Fund to supplement grants which had been intended to meet the major expenses of a course at a Library School. It was determined that the amount of the loan would normally be £25, with a maximum of £50. Interest was to be charged at 2½ per cent and repayment was to be completed within three years. As the period under review passed, the education authority grants improved considerably and an unexpectedly small number of awards from the Mitchell Fund were made. It is clear, however, that in those cases they were of very real value.

Outside the Schools of Librarianship the most important projects in the educational field were carried on by the Association of Assistant Librarians and the nationally-established summer schools. Although an increasing number of students attended the full-time schools during this period, it still remained only a minority of those who were sitting for professional examinations. Some of the remainder relied upon part-time courses, which were held in a wide variety of institutions up and down the country, but even these were outside the realm of practicability for some students. For them above all, the Association of Assistant Librarians continued, as for many years past, to provide correspondence courses. This work, of considerable importance and gain to the profession, has only been possible because of the well-nigh unrewarded work of the organizers and tutors. The three traditional summer schools, the Birmingham, the Scottish and the Welsh, found the professional picture to be changing during this period. Because of the improving educational facilities within the profession, they were no longer so vitally important simply as short courses with an examination in mind. Their financial position, in these changing circumstances, was no longer so secure as formerly, and the Library Association extended its financial guarantee to cover them all. In March 1953 all three were designated summer schools of national status, to be organized by their respective branches and to be self-supporting, but with a maximum guarantee of £20 for each week of the course in the event of unavoidable loss.

The dearth of significant contributions to the development of professional

thought on the educational aspect of librarianship in this country has continued. No writings have appeared which add substantially to an appreciation of the educational pattern of this country during the years 1951-55.

The more settled pattern of professional education in the United States of America was also undergoing a considerable amount of critical observation during this period. To an outsider two matters seemed to be of especial importance.

Up to the beginning of the period in question, Schools of Librarianship in America had been accredited under the provisions of the Minimum Requirements for Library Schools adopted by the American Library Association in 1933. For fifteen years this had provided the basis for all the work and the considerable achievements of American library education. In 1948, however, the accreditation programme ceased and study began on the formulation of a new set of standards and the means of their implementation. The Council of the American Library Association adopted its new Standards for Accreditation\* on July 13, 1951, and in 1953 the Board of Education for Librarianship began its programme of evaluation of Library Schools based on these new standards. Good progress was being made by the end of 1955 and it had been announced that it was intended to finish this programme by June 30, 1957.

During this period of self-analysis, considerable attention was directed to a second major problem. All who are concerned or interested in education for librarianship realize that one of the problems most difficult to solve is that of the area of study which is basic to librarians of all categories and nomenclatures. With the increasing multiplicity of librarians, documentalists and so on, it has become progressively obvious that there needs to be made available a wide variety of fields of study, unless any idea of the mastery of knowledge useful to a particular situation is entirely ignored. At the same time, in order to avoid too narrow and sterile a specialization, a high standard of general education and of basic professional understanding is essential. The search for this common core to all librarianship has been a matter of some moment in the circles of library educators in the United States. To anyone who is not well versed in the rather esoteric terminology which surrounds many American writings on educational matters, the easiest approach to this problem is through *The core of education for librarianship*, edited by Lester Asheim and published by the American Library Association in 1954. This was the report of a workshop held under the auspices of the Graduate Library School of the University of Chicago in August 1953. This was one of the regular summer seminars on librarianship held each year by this Library School and which have made such valuable contributions to professional thought.

Another library school in the same state, that of the University of Illinois at Urbana, made an important contribution to our professional literature by issuing its quarterly periodical, *Library Trends*, from 1952 onwards.

During this five-year period Canada has made considerable strides in professional education, although mainly within the pattern which had been established before 1951. In 1947 the Canadian Library Association had recognized the accreditation of the Board of Education of the American Library Association for Canadian Library Schools, and those in the University of Toronto and McGill University, Montreal, had been so accredited. The

\* A. L. A. Bulletin 40, February 1952, 48-49.

changes in American thinking as evidenced in the new 1951 Standards for Accreditation have not yet, however, proved entirely suitable for the Canadian scene. This has resulted in considerable discussion on the problem at recent conferences of the Canadian Library Association, culminating in an important resolution at the Saskatoon Conference of 1955. This might be regarded as an interim statement of policy until further deliberations have clarified the situation. The most important statements in this resolution are as follows:

That until 1960, or such time as the situation demands, the Canadian Library Association accept the accreditation of the Board of Education for Librarianship of the American Library Association.

That the Canadian Library Association take up with the ALA-CLA Liaison Committee the proposal of obtaining Canadian representation on the Standards Committee of the Board of Education for Librarianship of the ALA, and on the Board itself.

That the Canadian Library Association establish a committee on library education.

That the Canadian Library Association set up a committee to prepare national standards of certification for Canada. It is understood that these standards will be goals towards which provincial associations may work in setting up provincial certification. A national standard is most important for translating and comparing provincial certification, certification diplomas received from Commonwealth countries and from nations outside the British Commonwealth.

For the rest of the world, and notably in Australia and New Zealand, there has been considerable progress both in educational thought and accomplishment. *Library Science Abstracts* throughout the whole of this period records numerous articles on a subject of which this short account can hope to do no more than to indicate the main trends.

Downloaded from www.digitallibrary.org.in

## LIBRARY BUILDINGS

By ANTHONY THOMPSON, M.A., F.L.A., *Science Museum, London*

THE purpose of this review is to present a bird's-eye view of the field in such a way that all types of enquirer will be satisfied, or at least given the necessary pointers to sources of further research. I have thought it best therefore to adopt the form of an annotated classified bibliography, arranged by types of library and by countries; as far as possible the size of the buildings is indicated in the annotation. Thus it should be possible for the enquirer to pick out fairly easily examples of buildings of the type and size he is seeking, or to find a record of buildings erected in a given country or town. This is my apology for a rather dry approach, but one which should, at least, make this contribution handy for reference. My second apology is for incompleteness; it has been impossible to include references to all the new buildings, for instance, in the United States of America, where well over a hundred buildings were built during the period (see ALA's *Planning a library building*, 1955). Nor has it been possible to read and summarize all the articles referred to in the bibliography. This would be the ideal method, and let us hope it may be possible for 1956-60.

The references were culled almost entirely from the Library of the Royal Institute of British Architects, and from *Library science abstracts*, to which my thanks are due. Some retrospective articles on buildings completed before 1951 are included because they were published within the five years 1951-55 and so were not recorded in previous volumes of the *Year's work*.

**SOME TENDENCIES AND OUTSTANDING ACHIEVEMENTS.** The general tendencies of the period have been: (1) *Economy*, to combat the rising cost of materials and especially of labour. This produced a new feature in the decision of some public library authorities to build larger buildings than needed and to let the superfluous part help to pay off the cost of the building (see *Public libraries: general*, "Libraries unchained"). Similarly, many branch public libraries are now being built on the ground floor of blocks of flats, such as the new branch at West Hampstead, London.

(2) *Modular planning*, although not a new feature, is spreading, but the best examples are still amongst university and college libraries in the United States; the reference to the central public library at Cincinnati is also a good example. The leading, and almost unique example, in Britain is the Manor Branch library at Sheffield.

(3) A third growing tendency, already widespread in the U.S.A., is the fusion of "stacks" with "reading areas"; the gradual disappearance of the word "reading room" is noticeable in the American articles. Coupled with this is a

tendency towards greater comfort, but while the arm-chair is accepted in Britain, provision for "smoking areas" and for the typewriter (as in the U.S.A.) is rare.

(4) *Subject departmentalization in public libraries* continues to spread, and is made easier and more flexible by modular plans; three articles on this subject are recorded under a sub-heading of Public Libraries below.

(5) *Interior decoration* more and more favours light pastel shades, but a real step forward is the relation of colour to light and to different uses (*see* section General: decoration, colour).

(6) *Furniture* is tending to be made in *units* (on the modular principle of standard measurements). Examples may be seen in the excellent readers' desks and closed bookcases in the newly-equipped University College Library, London (no reference in bibliog.).

(7) *Lighting* for libraries has been established on a scientific basis (*see* the Illuminating Engineering Society's pamphlet), and it but remains for architects and librarians to take notice. Shielded diffused fluorescent lighting seems now to be winning the field.

(8) *Glass partitions* are used between departments and for entrances, and may be seen probably at their best at the new public library in Lucerne, Switzerland.

(9) *Heating*, in any case in Britain, where economy rules, is predominantly by low-pressure hot-water radiators fired by coke (the most economical) or by gas or oil.

(10) *Air-conditioning* and humidity control has been installed recently in some national libraries at Edinburgh and Paris, and will be installed at Ottawa, but in lesser institutions it has been left out because of expense, even at the recent college library at Ibadan, Nigeria, in the tropics, where humidity control would seem essential.

(11) Lastly, *floors*, an important topic to librarians, from the points of view of cleaning, non-slipperiness and noise, have been subject to the usual controversy of "rubber versus economy"; it is interesting to record that at a branch at Shoreditch, London, rubber—the best but the most expensive material—was chosen.

It is difficult to "star" the best buildings of the period, and this could be unfair and unsound. But for the keen student seeking examples of completed buildings to visit, I would recommend the following, which are all in the bibliography and so can with advantage be read up beforehand:

National libraries: Edinburgh; storage blocks at Versailles.

Public libraries: In Britain—London, West Hampstead branch; Goldsmith's Row branch, Shoreditch; Coombes Croft branch, Tottenham; Plymouth central library. Manchester—Hollyhedge branch. Sheffield—Manor branch. In Germany—Gedenkbibliothek, Berlin; Erkenschwick. In Sweden—Halmstad and Gothenburg. In Switzerland: Lucerne.

University and College libraries: Saarbrücken.

Special libraries: in Britain—Canterbury Cathedral library; I.C.I. Dyestuffs Division, Blackley, Manchester. In Sweden—Community centre at Malmö.

## REFERENCES

## 1. GENERAL (including equipment)

RONCO LTD. Planning the library. 1950. pp. 95.

WHITTICK, A. Some noteworthy library buildings between the wars; illus. review of Stockholm City, Manchester City, Cambridge University, Lenin State, and Public library, Viipuri, Finland. *Parthenon* 25 (5) 1951, 90-96; *Ibid.* (5) (7) 1951, 127-132.

SCHUNK, R. J. Plan arrangement. (Relation of departments and services, etc.) *Public Libs.* 5 (2) 1951, 28-33.

ASHBURNER, E. H. An architect's letter. (Architects and librarians should co-operate more; only so can a functional building be achieved. A study of architectural and economic problems of building would help librarians.) *Lib. World* 53, 1951, 614-615, 319-320.

Biblioteka bez okien. (Library without windows; mentions plan for library at Moscow-on-Don.) *Przegląd Biblioteczny* 20 (4) 1952, 352-363; *Lib. Sci. Abstr.* 4, 1953, no. 3040.

De quelques problèmes posés par la construction et l'aménagement des bibliothèques. *L'Architecture Française* (129-30) 1952, 72-75, illustrations.

REECE, E. J. Building planning and equipment. (A review of trends in the U.S.A. since 1940: functional plans in relation to flow of readers, modular construction, free access to stacks, bringing new control problems, new materials, more care for lighting, air-conditioning and fire-protection. Concludes with procedure for drawing up a typical library plan.) *Lib. Trends* 1 (1) 1952, 136-155, bibliography.

MERCER, A. E. What about premises? *N.Z. Libs.* 16 (1) 1953, 1-6.

MACDONALD, A. S. Looking backward and forward in library planning. (Build for expansion and let spare space.) *S. Afr. Libs.* 21 (1) 1953, 3-7.

MACDONALD, A. S. Building design for library management. *Lib. Trends* 2 (3) 1954, 163-169.

Argomenti di edilizia bibliotecaria. *Bollettino dell'Istituto di Patologia del Libro.* Jan.-Jan. 1954. pp. 41, diagrams, bibliography. (See *Lib. Sci. Abs.* no. 4640.)

REMOND, P. Techniques nouvelles des bibliothèques. *Ossature Métallique* (Brussels) 19 (9) 1954, 413-417, photos.

Planning a library building; the major steps; Proc. of the Institute at St. Paul, Minnesota, 1954. ALA, 1955. pp. 80, illustrations, plans. (See review in *L.A. Rec.* June 1956, 244-245.)

WILLIAMSON, J. R. An architect speaks. (Short account of how librarian and architect should co-operate.) *Lib. Jnl.* 80 (70) 1955, 1229-1230.

Libraries; a reprint from the *Encyclopaedia Americana*. (Chapters: (1) Ancient, mediæval and Renaissance libraries. (2) Modern foreign libraries. (3) U.S. libraries. (4) U.S. Government libraries. (5) U.S. territorial (i.e. colonial) libraries. (6) Special libraries and services. (7) Canadian libraries.) 1955. pp. 92, coloured plates.

## 1(a). GENERAL: Decoration, Colour

HOWELL, A. Color in libraries. (Choice of colour in relation to different light, to arrive at colour harmony, for pleasing atmosphere and reduction of eye-strain.) *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 25 (7) 1951, 513-514, 518.

BRYAN, J. E. Building planning and the use of color in the library. (On suitable colours for different parts of the library.) *Ibid.* 28 (7) 1954, 570-573.

## 1(b). GENERAL: Furniture

Library furniture, Park Green library, Macclesfield. *Archit. and Bldg. News* 199 (4286) 1951. Suppl. 150, 182, diagrams, photos., measurements.

The Kettering counter. (Two small enclosures: issue counter and enquiry counter.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (10) 1952, 335.

Library use of modular furniture. *Lib. Jnl.* 77 (17) 1952, 1602-1603, illustrations.

Möbel für die Freihand. (Furniture for the open access library; detailed description of recent furniture in Bremen.) *Bücherei und Bildung* 6 (1-2) 1954, 14-20, illustrations.

New library study carrel. (Commercially produced, 5 ft. 6 in. high, × 2 ft. × 4 ft.) *Spec. Libs.* 46 (1) 1955, 39-40, photo.

## 1(c). GENERAL: Heating and Ventilation

New plenum heating and ventilating system installed in British Museum reading room; a brief description. *Industrial Heating Engr.* 14 (82) 1952, 247, photo of air discharge grilles.

All-electric heat-pump for all-year heating and cooling. (Description of heat-pump, working like ordinary domestic refrigerator, in use at Roanoke Public Library for two and a half years. Figures for running costs and maintenance. Cost \$65,300. *Lib. Jnl.* 79 (22) 1954, 2433-2434, illus.

See also example under National libraries: France. Paris.

## 1(d). GENERAL: Lighting

Recommended practice of library lighting, by the Committee on library lighting of the Illuminating Engineering Society. (Analysis of factors affecting reading, physical and environmental; recommended illumination values; special requirements for reading rooms, shelves, stacks, carrels.) 1950. (Reprinted from *Illuminating Engineering*.)

VERNON, K. D. C. Lighting and colour in libraries. (Introduction to the problem, with a summary of the literature.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (4) 1951, 119-125.

LEWIS, C. Low-cost stack lighting. *Lib. Jl.* 78 (1) 1953, 45-47, illus.

LOGAN, H. L. Lighting libraries. (With table of standards for various parts of libraries.) *Ibid.* 77 (22) 1952, 2125-2129, diagrams, illustrations.

PIKE, J. R. Fluorescent lighting. (Advantages and disadvantages.) *Asst. Libn.* 47 (2) 1954, 19-20.

WALKER, T. MCCALLUM. Library lighting: an introduction. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 56 (12) 1954, 462-471.

## Lighting: examples

Library lighting; new installation at Battersea Polytechnic. (Cornice lighting with thirty-six warm-white fluorescent lamps. Table lighting by screened fluorescent fittings. Supplementary lighting from 300-watt lamps in ceiling.) *Electrician*, 25 May 1951, 1759; *Electr. Rev.* 148 (3839) 1951, 1224.

## 1(e). GENERAL: Modular Planning

ELLSWORTH, R. E. Determining factors in the evaluation of the modular plan for libraries. *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (2) 1953, 125-128, 142.

MACDONALD, A. S. Modular construction. (Concludes that best measurements are probably: horizontal module 22½ or 27 ft.; vertical module: 8 or 9 ft.) *Lib. J.* 80 (21) 1955, 2728-2730.

## 1(f). GENERAL: Moving of Collections

Flyttningen av Göteborgs stadsbibliotek. (Details and costs of moving over 700,000 volumes.) *Nord. Tid. Bok och Bib.* 41 (3) 1954, 80-87, photos.

A major book move: The time study; The move. (How half a million volumes were moved in Brooklyn Public Library.) *Lib. Jl.* 80 (19) 1955, 2417-2421, illustrations.

## 1(g). GENERAL: Shelving, Storage

(Size and capacity of compact steel shelving at Illinois State Library.) *Illinois Libs.* 34 (6) 1952, 253-255, photos.

Moderner Bibliotheksbau in Oesterreich, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Stahlleichtbauweise. (Details of light steel stacks. Examples from the Austrian National Library, Vienna; University Library, Vienna; University Library, Graz.) *Biblos* 2 (2) 1953, 47-72, diagrams, photos.

Rörliga bokhyllor. (Mobile shelving.) (Describes: (1) Sneed compact storage (U.S.A.). (2) Foulkes Mobile Storage, British, 1936, used by Swedish Foreign Office to save 50 per cent space. A modern form of this is used in the Bodleian Library, called "Compactus System Ingold.") *Tidskrift f. Dok.* 9 (6) 1953, 71-75, illustrations, diagrams; *Ibid.* 10 (2) 1954, 20-21.

MERCALF, K. D. When bookstacks overflow. (Solutions for problem of ever-increasing stock: (1) Compact shelving. (2) An annex. (3) Decentralization in departmental libraries. (4) Storage of less-used books in warehouse conditions within the institution. (5) Co-operative storage elsewhere.) *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 8 (2) 1954, 204-212.

Compact storage equipment . . . (Remington Rand system, Ames Stor-Mor book units, Hamilton Compo units, Art Metal swing units—all described.) *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 15 (3) 1954, 300-308, illustrations, plans.

METCALF, K. D. The New England Deposit Library after thirteen years. (Includes details and costs of shelving methods.) *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 8 (3) 1954, 313-322.

HILL, F. J. The compact storage of books; a study of methods and equipment. *J. of Doc.* 11 (4) 1955, 202-216.

The Mid-West Inter-Library Center, Chicago. (Windowless stacks for 3,000,000 volumes. Twenty study cubicles. Microfilm and card reading rooms.) *Lib. J.* 76 (22) 1951, 2031-2035, illustrations; *Arch. Rec.* 107 (6) 1950, 143-145, plans, sections; *Arch. Rec.* 111 (4) 1952, 157-159, plans, section, photos.

#### I(h). GENERAL: Finland

Kirjasto huoneistojen kuvaopas valmistaumat. (Illusd. guide to library planning. With thirty photos of modern Finnish libraries.) *Kirjastolehti* 46 (6) 1953, 146.

#### I(i). GENERAL: U.S.A.

(Buildings in U.S.A.): Hayward, Cal., Public Library; Harmon Park, Phoenix, Arizona; Mid-West Inter-Library Center; Kalihi-Palama branch, Hawaii. *Arch. Rec.* 111 (4) 1952, 147-164, plans, photos.

ELLSWORTH, R. E. Library architecture and buildings. (Library planning in the U.S.A. in the last twenty-five years: (1) Organization into subject departments. (2) Modular plans. (3) Comfort and informality. (4) Local influences. (5) Influence of new administration procedures. (6) New building methods and materials.) *Lib. Q.* 25 (1) 1955, 66-75.

Special issue on library buildings planned or recently finished in the U.S.A. *Lib. J.* 80 (21) 1955, 2669-2755, plans, photos.

## 2. NATIONAL LIBRARIES

### Britain

London: National Central Library, rebuilt to improved plan after war damage. *Builder* 183 (5707) 1952, 15-20; *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (7) 1952, 221-216, plans, photos.

### Britain—Scotland

Edinburgh: new building of the Scottish Central Library. (In shell of old building; inside reconstructed of steel and concrete.) *Ibid.* 55 (12) 1953, 391-394 (no illustrations).

Edinburgh: National Library of Scotland. (Begun 1937-39, continued 1947- , but mainly 1951-56. Steel-frame, space for 1,500,000 volumes; air-conditioning and humidity control. Features are entrance hall floor of green Westmorland slate, sculpture on front facing George IV Bridge. Map room still to be completed.) *Builder* 151 (4875) 1936, 60, 70-71; *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 39 (1) 1937, 12-15, plans, photo of model; *Surveyor* 114, 1955, 1261-1262; *Building Industries* (Glasgow) 67 (791) 1956, 42-45, photos.

### Canada

Ottawa: project for National Library and Archives building. (Central core contains stacks and all fixed utilities, washrooms, stairs, etc., surrounded by ring of reading and working areas with direct access to stacks. Storey heights in core are 9 ft.; in perimeter are 18 ft. Core constructed of reinforced concrete frame with flat slabs; perimeter with beams and girders with clear spans of 40 ft. Air-conditioning and humidity control. Includes auditorium for 350, for lectures and concerts.) *Jnl. R. Arch. Inst. Canada* 32 (8) 1955, 303-305, photos of model, plans; *Unesco Bull. for Libs.* 10 (5/6) 1956, 104, note, photo of model.

### France

Paris: Bibliothèque Nationale, new Prints Department, with special air-conditioning installation. *Annales Inst. Tech. Bâtiment* December 1952, 1274-1285.

Versailles: Dépôt auxiliaire de la Bib. Nat. (Two new storage blocks, finished 1953.) *Construction Moderne* 70 (4) 1954, 129-133, plans, exterior photos; *Archit. and Bldg. News* 206 (14) 1954, 386 photos.

### Germany

Frankfurt-am-Main: competition for National Library. *Bauwelt* (Berlin) 44 (23) 1953, 446-447, plans, elevations.

- Munich*: Bavarian State Library. (Reconstruction of interior after war damage.) *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (4) 1952, 156-167, plans.
- Italy*  
*Naples*: project for National Library. *Architetti* 2 (11) 1951, 44-45, photos of model, sketch, plans.
- U.S.S.R.*  
*Moscow*: Zaly biblioteki imeni V.I. Lenina. (New interior decoration.) *Arkhitektura i Stroit. Moskv* 3 (4) 1954, 25-28, photos.

### 3. PUBLIC LIBRARIES

- Hindsight on the gifts of Carnegie. (Account of his gifts of library buildings, of which he gave 1,681 to the U.S.A.) *Lib. J.* 76 (21) 1951, 1966-1970, portrait.
- PURDIE, J. B. Restriction, design and extension: some reflections on library practice. (Deplores drab buildings, prohibitive notices, posters, etc.; advocates good design, lighting, bright decoration, etc.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (1) 1951, 2-8.
- PARSONAGE, J. S. Some aspects of economic public library administration. (Quality of service depends on bookstock, buildings and staff. Careful planning of buildings results in efficient service; modular planning may solve many problems.) *Librarian*, October 1951, 209-216.
- MACDONALD, A. S. Libraries unchained. (Part of new buildings could be let off for other uses to recover capital expenditure. Examples described: Toronto (Deer Park branch); Washington (Yakima Valley); Louisville (Free P.L.); Chicago (John Crerar Library); Leyton, England (Leytonstone branch); Vancouver (P.L.).) *Lib. J.* 78 (2) 1953, 77-84, illustrations, plans.
- 3(a). PUBLIC LIBRARIES: Subject Departmentalization
- GARDNER, J. L. Some thoughts on subject departmentalization in a large public library (Brooklyn, N.Y.). *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (7) 1955, 254-260, plans.
- JONES, A. C. First steps to departmentalization. (In addition to subject rooms, a "popular room" is needed; charging desk should be in entrance hall.) *Librarian* 40 (2) 1951, 21-24.
- MAIZELL, R. E. The subject-departmentalized public library. (Different types of library organization. History of departmentalization. W. F. Poole as originator of idea: first practised in Newberry Library, 1893, and Boston P.L., 1895; full development Cleveland, 1890. In all U.S. public libraries since 1924. Problems, cost of changeover. Sixteen principles from comments of fifty-three librarians.) *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (3) 1951, 255-260.

### 3(b). PUBLIC LIBRARIES: Central Libraries

- Where to build? (On location for central libraries.) *Lib. J.* 77 (22) 1952, 2099-2103.
- Africa, West*  
*Kumasi, Gold Coast*: Ashanti Regional Library. (Reference and stacks planned on 8 ft. × 24 ft. grid. Lending 1,900 sq. ft.; Reference 1,824 sq. ft.; stack 574 sq. ft. Cost £25,000.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (1) 1955, 20-21, description only.  
*Sekondi*: Regional Library, Gold Coast. (Serves town population of 50,000 and country. Lending 960 sq. ft. and 12,000 volumes. Children 676 sq. ft. and 8,000 volumes. Reference 8,000 volumes and forty-eight seats. Cost £23,000.)

### *Britain*

- London*: Projected new central library for Holborn. (Lending library on ground floor to have capacity for 100,000 volumes, for about twenty-five years' expansion. Reference on first floor in three sections: (1) Quick reference and commercial, 10,000 volumes, seventy-five readers, and stack for 25,000 volumes. (2) Local collection, 2,000 volumes. On lower ground floor are children's room, 8,000 volumes, strong-room and newspaper reading room to seat thirty-six. Administration and workrooms on second floor, and gramophone library for at least 6,000 records.) *Graya* (43) Easter 1956, 48-50, photo of model.
- Newcastle upon Tyne*: Central lending library. (Renovation.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (7) 1951, 227-231, photos.
- Newcastle upon Tyne*: New separate commercial and technical library. (Room, 44 ft. × 27 ft., on ground floor next to main entrance, reconstructed, redecorated, new furniture. Cost £1,150.) *Ibid.* 54 (2) 1952, 52-53, photo.
- Plymouth*: Central public library. (Entirely rebuilt, 1954-56, on site of bombed building, retaining only the former façade. On ground floor: children's library with 7,000 volumes and space for

library lessons; lending area of 4,500 sq. ft. for 25,000 volumes. Glass swing doors and panels. Upstairs: Reference and research room, and local collection, archives, music and drama, and lecture theatre to seat 125. Decorated in light colours, mahogany furniture with sycamore for contrast, diffused lighting, settees and soft chairs, generous counter-space and individual tables for readers in reference and research rooms. The only recent complete new central public library in Britain; a practical and imaginative building.) *Librarian* March 1956, 47-47, plans, photos.; *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (11) 1956, 427-431, int. photos.

*Wigan*: central lending library. (New layout, decoration, shelving and furniture, and fluorescent lighting. 18,000 volumes open access and 10,000 in reserve store.) *Ibid.* 54 (2) 1952, 54-55, photo.

#### Britain: Scotland

*Glasgow*: Mitchell Library extension. (Opened April 1953. Ground floor: map and accessions room, offices, periodicals store. Mezzanine: administration, photocopy, stacks, staff rooms. Floors of oak block, but granolithic in stacks. Mahogany furniture. Cost so far £100,000. Basement and four upper floors to come.) *Ibid.* 55 (9) 1953, 282-283.

*Glasgow*: Stirling's Library. (Commercial library and Library of Patents accommodated in Royal Exchange building, after structural alterations costing £47,700.) *Ibid.* 56 (8) 1954, 297-301, photos.

#### Canada

*Fraser Valley*: Regional library at Abbotsford, B.C. (New building to serve population of 116,000.) *Can. Lib. Assn. Bull.* 10 (5) 1954, 160-163, illustrations.

*Sudbury*: *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 36 (4) 1952, 215-217, photos.

#### Finland

*Lauritsala*: Public Library. *Arkkitehten* (Helsinki) (9/10) 1951, 129-136, plans, section, photos.; *Arch. and Bldg. News* 201 June 12, 1952, 686-687, plan, photos.

#### France

*Beauvais*: Bibliothèque municipale. (Opened Dec. 1956. No references available.)

*Brest*: Bibliothèque municipale. (No references available.)

*Douai*: (Rebuilt after war damage. Stack for 200,000 volumes.) *Construction Moderne* 72 (2) 1956, 49-53, plans, photos.

*Tours*: Bibliothèque municipale. (Under construction.)

#### Germany

Nye biblioteker i Tyskland. (New libraries in Germany; special mention of public library at Offenbach-am-Main, and Berlin Gedenkbibliothek.) *Bogens Verden* 35 (6) 1953, 314-318, interior photo of Offenbach.

*Berlin*: Amerika-Gedenkbibliothek. (Modular plan. Main floor has only two partitions in whole area, allowing great flexibility. All public rooms, including lending, are on ground floor, with six departments, each with two trained librarians. Total staff of 100. Book lifts at regular intervals along building, giving all departments direct access to stacks. "An American library building in Germany.") *Neue Bauwelt* 6 (47) 1951, 761; *Ibid.* (51) 1951, 866-868 (project); *Bauwelt* 46, Feb. 21, 1955, 141-149; *Baukunst u. Werkform* 8 (5) 1955, 272-280; *Arch. Rec.* 113, March 1953, 124-127, plans, elevation; *Ibid.* 117, June 1955, 163-166, plans, photos; *Bogens Verden* 37 (3) 1955, 146-151, illustrations.

*Duisburg*: Municipal library. (Opened Spring 1952; reading room for seventy-four.) *Die Neue Stadt* 5 (9) 1951, 350-357 (competition designs); *Baumelster* 50, April 1953, 248-253, plans, elevations, sections, photos.

*Hanau*, Hessen: city library. (Reconstruction after war damage. American influence introduces open access, DC, and shelving of popular and learned books together. Serves 3,600 readers, which is 10 per cent of population.) *Bücherei u. Bildung* 7 (1-2) 1955, 14-17, plan, photos.

*Oer-Erkenschvick* (near Recklinghausen): Model public library for Unesco. (Serves population of 22,000, new community existing only since 1926. New building designed as public library and community centre. Reading room of 180 sq. metres with 14,000 volumes; adult books on one side and children's on the other. Low floor of centre of reading room has comfortable chairs, and floor can be sunk to remove quickly all furniture and convert into hall or stage.) *Unesco Bull. Libs.* 9 (5-6) 1955, 104-105, photos.

#### Japan

*Yokohama*: Kanagawa municipal library. *Kenchiku Bunka* (Tokyo) 98, 1955, 1-16; *Bouw* (Rotterdam) 10, Dec. 24, 1955, 1070-1074; *Techniques et Arch.* 15 (4) 1956, 114-116, photo, plans, section.

## Sweden

**Gothenburg:** Stadsbibliotek. New building opened September 1, 1954. (About 550,000 volumes and 350,000 pamphlets. 32,320 metres of shelving. Reading room for seventy-one, and twelve research rooms seating twenty-seven.) *Bogens Verden* 36 (9) 1954, 510-513, photos.; *Libri* 5 (4) 1955, 335-339; OTTERVIK, G. and others. Libraries and archives in Sweden. Stockholm, 1954. 40-44, plan.

**Halmstad:** City library. (Serves 36,000 population. Similar plan to Fredriksberg, Denmark, with galleries. Sixteen rooms for study circles. Cost 1,400,000 Swedish crowns.) *Dansk Kunsthåndværk* (9) 1954, 138-141; *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 58 (6) 1956, 218 (no illustrations); *Bogens Verden* 35 (8) 1953, 433-435, illustrations; *Halmstad Stadsbiblioteket. Årsberättelse* . . . 1953. 1954; ROTH, N. Halmstads stadsbibliotekets nybyggnad. Lund, 1953. pp. 11.

**Umeå:** City and county library. (Opened 1954. Stacks with 6,500 metres = 21,000 feet of shelving.) *Byggnästaren* 34 (A2) 1955, 62-64, plans, photos.

**Västerås:** Stifts- och Landsbiblioteket. (Opened 1954.) Mentioned in Ottervik, *op. cit.* 1955, 83, 113.

## Switzerland

**Luzern:** New central library. (Completed 1951, in commercial quarter, with traffic on three sides. Stack for 500,000 volumes along street at back, for sound insulation. Along another side are administration offices. Reading room, with eighty seats and 10,000 volumes open access, in middle, opening on to interior garden. Main and communicating doors are of glass. Stacks have double windows in concrete grilles. Air-conditioning throughout.) *Bauwelt* (Berlin) 7 (40) 1952, 157-162, plans, section, photos; *Nach. Ver. Oester. Bib.* 28 (1) 1952, 8-17, photos, plan; *Schweizer. Bauzeitung* 70, May 31, 1952, 318-321, plates 17-20; *Building Digest* 12 (9) 1952, 295, plan, section, interior photo.

## U.S.A.

**PETERSON, H. N.** Planning a building. (Including plan for District of Columbia Public Library.) *Lib. J.* 78 (7) 1953, 551-557.

**Cincinnati** and Hamilton county. ("Limited budget made contemporary design possible"! Open plan, modular, subject departments, with two levels of stacks below main floor and two above second floor.) *Progressive Arch.* 35 December 1953, 77-83, plans, photos.

**High Point:** Public library, N. Carolina. (Capacity 50,000 volumes. 14,640 sq. ft. space. Including children's and audio-visual room, bookmobile garage, etc. Cost \$196,733.) *Lib. J.* 79 (8) 1954, 758-759, illustrations.

**Monterey, Calif.** (On awkward-shaped site. Planned for expansion.) *Progressive Arch.* 34 (4) 1953, 73-78, plan, section, photos.

**Oakland, Calif.** *Archit. and Engr.* 186 (3) 1951, 20-23, interior photos.

**Phoenix, Arizona.** ("Horizontal" building. Space for 300,000 volumes beneath public area.) *Progressive Arch.* 35, August 1954, 90-94, plans, photos.

## 3(c). PUBLIC LIBRARIES: Small and Branch Libraries

The cost of a branch library. (Detailed comparative costs of building a branch and renting shop premises to serve a population of 15,000 to 20,000.) *Librarians* 43 (6) 1954, 108-109.

## Britain.

**Birmingham:** Glebe Farm branch. (For 13,000 volumes; prefabricated concrete frame covered with precast slabs.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (12) 1952, 398.

**Bradford:** Wibsey branch. (Conversion of former Methodist hall into one-room branch. Cost £4,055.) *Ibid.* 54 (6) 1952, 201-202; *Jnl. W. Yorks. Soc. Archts.* February 1953, 6-8.

**Bristol:** Eastville branch library. (Opened December 1950. One storey, single public room 67 ft. x 30 ft., offices and store-room. For 7,000 volumes. Details of design and cost.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (4) 1951, 125-127, photo.

**South Harrow:** Middlesex County Roxeth branch. (First stage of lending department completed, to hold 15,000 volumes. Structure designed to take load of full scheme with two storeys. Lecture hall and offices.) *Architecture and Building* 29 (7) 1954, 277, plans, interior photos.

**London:** Camberwell, Grove Vale branch. (In existing shop premises, converted by Borough Engineer's Department. For 7,000 volumes. Divided by 4 ft. high island shelves into adult and junior departments.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (3) 1951, 80-81, photo.

**London:** West Hampstead branch. (On ground floor of Borough Council's flats. Lending and reference in one long spacious room. Children's library in basement with separate entrance. Glass screens ensure good daylight. Floodlit showcases facing street. Wood-block floors,

acoustic tile ceiling with flush shielded fluorescent lighting.) *Lib. Service in Hampstead*; report on . . . the public libraries, 1955/6, p. 1, plans, interior photos.

*London*: Shoreditch, Goldsmith's Row branch. (On triangular island site at junction of two main roads. Adult lending for 5,000 volumes serving 10,000 population. Children 2,000 volumes. Reserve shelving for 1,500 volumes. Rubber tile flooring. Cost £5,000 plus £1,300 for furniture and fittings.) *Archit. and Bldg. News* 199 (4291) 1951, 316-318, plans, photos; *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (4) 1951, 127-128, photo.

*London*: Tottenham: Coombes Croft branch. (On ground floor of flats. Children's and adult on either side of entrance. Cost about £13,000.) *Archit. Jnl.* 122 (3154) 1955, 184-185; *Archit. and Bldg. News* 207 (8) 1955, 247-250.

*Manchester*: Hollyhedge branch, Wythenshawe. (Level site, L-shaped plan. One large room and stackroom. Lending library 73 ft. × 28 ft. divided into adult and children's. No control barrier. Front windows to within 9 in. of floor. Flat roof of precast concrete units. Fluorescent lighting. Electric heating with cervette heaters under shelves. Cost, including fittings, £8,940.) *Builder* 183 (5711) 1952, 161-164, plan, five photos; *Archit. and Bldg. News* 202 (4365) 1952, 202-204.

*Newcastle upon Tyne*: Blakelaw branch. (To serve 7,000 population. Adult library 24 ft. × 24 ft. Junior 24 ft. × 16 ft. Cost £6,830.) *Municipal Jnl.* (3120) 1952, 2738-2739, illustrations, plans.

*Penzance*: Public library. (Internal reorganization. Reading room space reduced in favour of service departments. Children's section and staff rooms provided. Cost £220.) *Outpost*, July 1952, 1-4.

*Salford*: Lower Broughton library. ("Orlit" prefabricated. 47 ft. × 23 ft.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 54 (6) 1952, 201.

*Sheffield*: Manor branch. (Opened 1953. Modular, with 13 ft. 6 in. unit; glass doors and screens between departments. Adult lending 67 ft. × 53 ft., 20,000 volumes. Reference 1,500 volumes, 27 ft. × 27 ft. Junior library 53 ft. × 27 ft.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (6), 184-186, interior photo.

*Southampton*: Maybush branch. (Temporary building. Adult and junior with entrance between. 2,400 sq. ft.) *Ibid.* 54 (8) 1952, 268; *Municipal Jnl.* (3153) 1953, 1602, plan, photos.

*Surrey*: Chessington branch. (Temporary building, brick with concrete roof. Lending 55 ft. × 23 ft. with children's section at end. Cost £4,750, including shelving and counter. Initial stock 8,500 volumes.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (3) 1951, 81-82, photo of interior.

#### Britain: Scotland

*Airdrie*. (Reorganization of interior. Reading room divided into junior library and bookstore for 6,000 volumes. Former junior library now newspaper room. New bookcases and furniture. Cost of alterations £2,358.) *Ibid.* 54 (2) 1952, 56-57, photo.

*Glasgow*: King's Park district library. (On first floor over shops. Rented to Glasgow Libraries Committee.) *Ibid.* 54 (7) 1952, 231-232.

[Note. Annual lists of "New and reorganized library buildings," 1951-55 (mostly public library branches) are kept in the Library Association library.]

#### Canada

*Hamilton, Ontario*: Mountain branch. *Jnl. R. Archit. Inst. Canada* 29 (12) 1952, 364, plan, photos.

*Ottawa, South*. (New branch, for 17,000 volumes. Adult and children's rooms, reference to be added later. Air-conditioning.) *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 35 (2) 1951, 111-113, photos.

*Rodney*. New memorial library. (Building is 24 ft. × 35 ft.) *Ibid.* 36 (1) 1952, 37-38, photos.

*Vancouver*: Collingwood branch; and Dunbar branch. *Jnl. R. Archit. Inst. Canada*, 29 (8) 1952, 244-245, plans, photos.

*Toronto*: G. H. Locke memorial branch; and Leaside Public Library. *Ibid.* 28 (2) 1951, 26-29.

*York township, Ontario*: Main library, Mr. Dennis branch, and Jane Street branch. (Three new libraries.) *Ontario Lib. Rev.* 36 (2) 1952, 71-73, photo, plan.

#### Germany

*Gladbeck, Westphalia*. *Baumeister* 51, September 1954, 569-573, plans, photos and plates 78-80.

#### South Africa

*Johannesburg*: Branch library buildings at Rhodes Park and Brixton. (Single-storey buildings with ample office and staff rooms. About 6,000 volumes per branch. Costs about £8,000 and £7,000 respectively.) *S. Afr. Libs.* 21 (1) 1953, 12-14, photo, plan.

#### Sweden

HJELMQVIST, B. *comp.* Swedish public libraries in pictures. (r. Country and small town libraries. Plans, photos, statistics of population and stock, but no dates of buildings.) Lund, Bibliotekstjänst, 1956.

## U.S.A.

Public libraries: Building types study no. 193. (1) The problem analysed. (2) Six recent buildings: Grosse Pointe P.L., *Detroit*; *Hawaii* county library; Public library, *Aurora*, Colo.; Public library, *Stockton*, Calif.; Public library, *Wilmette*, Illinois; *Bishop*, Calif., Inyo county branch. *Arch. Rec.* 112, December 1952, 149-173, plans, sections, photos; *Building Digest* 13 (2) 1953, 58-59, summary only; *Lib. Jnl.* 77 (22) 1952, 2089-2099. "The problem analysed" only.

Changing patterns in library branches. (Details and descriptions of Denver; New Orleans; Los Angeles; Gary (Ind.); Wayne County, Omaha; New York; Bradley University; Humboldt County; Lancaster.) *Ibid.* 79 (22) 1954, 2392-2414, plans, photos.

*Atlanta, Georgia*: Branch. (For 11,000 volumes; air-conditioned.) *Arch. Forum* 95 (1) 1951, 140-141, plan, photos; *Arch. and Bldg. News* 202 (4381) 1952, 676-677, photos.

*Baltimore, Md.* Building for the future, by R. E. Williams. (Three new branches.) *Lib. Jnl.* 77 (22) 1952, 2103-2108, photos.

*Bishop, Calif.*: Inyo county branch. (Opened 1953. All books on open shelves; no stacks. Cost \$93,860, including equipment.) *Arch. Rec.* 112 December 1952, 170-172, plan, photos of model, sketches; *Ibid.* 116 October 1954, 158-160, plan, photos.

*Denver*: F. R. Ross memorial branch. (Cost, excluding furniture, \$75,000.) *Progressive Arch.* 34 October 1953, 120-123, plan, photos.

*Detroit*: Useful notes about a Detroit library branch. (Master plan for branches serving one-mile radius. One-storey functional buildings with minimum of interior walls.) *Publ. Libs.* 5 (2) 1951, 41-44, 50, photo, plan.

*Hibbing, Minnesota*. ("Perhaps the outstanding small library opened in the U.S.A. in 1953.") *Minnesota Libs.* 17 (9) 1954, 279-281.

*Manhasset, New York*. (Open shelves for 35,000 volumes. Adult and children's departments separated by sound-proof plate-glass screens. "Butterfly" roof, centre lower than sides, allowing higher outside walls and windows.) *Arch. Rec.* 115 January 1954, 158-159, plan, photos; *Lib. Jnl.* 77 (22) 1952, 2130-2132, plan, photos.

*San Francisco*: Marina branch. (One large public room, divided by bookcases only; browsing is part of this; reading terrace.) *Arch. Rec.* 118 (3) 1955, 171-173, plan, photos.

*San Francisco*: Parkside branch. ("Library with a clubhouse look," with lounge-like browsing room and reading terrace.) *Arch. Rec.* 115 January 1954, 160, plan, photos.

*Wilmette, Illinois*. (For population 18,000; adult and junior.) *Wilson Lib. Bull.* 26 (8) 1952, 631-633, 635, photos; *Arch. Rec.* 112, December 1952, 168-169, plan, photos.

## 4. UNIVERSITY AND COLLEGE LIBRARIES

*Africa, West. Nigeria*

*Ibadan*: University College. (Four floors of cross-ventilated bookstack over ground floor with reference library and workrooms. Air-conditioning intended, but maintenance too costly. Electric heating to dry the air in wet season. Fly-wire covers entire face.) *Arch. Design* 25 May 1955, 160-162, plans, section, photos.

*Australia*

*Melbourne* University: report on building plans. (Plans for a T-shaped building on area of 18,000 sq. ft. For 1,000 readers and 200,000 books, with allowance for horizontal extensions and three more floors, for a further 1,000 readers and 400,000 volumes.) *Aust. Lib. Jnl.* 4 (2) 1955, 57-62. (See L.S.A. 4997.)

*Austria*

*Vienna*: Universitätsbibliothek; new building plans. (Large bookstack for future expansion.) *Biblos* 2 (3-4) 1953, 103-114, plan, section, photo of model.

*Belgium*

*Louvain*: Catholic University, central library. (Reconstruction after war damage.) *Ossature Métallique* 16 (7-8) 1951, 373-378; and English text *Ibid.* 17 (1) 1952, 17-22.

*Britain*

*Birmingham*: University library buildings, university library planning. (Description of "Orlit" huts. Plan for new permanent building.) *Aslib Proc.* 3 (2) 1951, 59-62, photo, plan.

*Glasgow*: University Library reading room. (Completed 1939, but awarded in 1950 R.I.B.A. bronze medal for best building erected in Scotland in period 1936-49.) *Jnl. R.I.B.A.* 57 (10) 1950, 390-391, plans photos; *Archis. Jnl.* 111 (2888) 1950, 736, exterior photo; *Arch. and Bldg. News* 197 (4252) 1950, 616, exterior photo.

*Henley-on-Thames*: Administrative Staff College. (Conversion of stables into library, at Greenlands. For 8,000 volumes and expansion up to 11,000.) *Ibid.* 199, March 9, 1951, 286-288, plan, photos.

*Leeds*: Brotherton Library. (Mezzanine floor added to circular library of 159 ft. diameter, with radiating bookstacks.) *Architecture and Bldg.* 30, July 1955, 275-277, plans, section, interior photos.

*London*: Queen Elizabeth College, Campden Hill. (Library block rebuilt after war damage, with revisions. Library on second floor for 10,000 volumes. Bays, with walnut panelling and furniture.) *Builder* 186 (5787) 1954, 119-124, plan, photos.

*Oxford*: Wadham College. (New building, including library.) *Building* 28, October 1953, 368-374, plan, photos.

*Sheffield*: Project for University Library. (Four-tier basement stack for 850,000 volumes. In general reading room 150,000. In the three reading rooms 300 readers.) *Archit. Rev.* 117, January 1955, 44-45.

#### Canada

*Carleton College* library. (32,000 volumes in stacks and 8,000 open access. Floors rubber or linoleum according to needs. Lighting fluorescent or filament according to needs of different rooms.) *Can. Lib. Assn. Bull.* 8 (5) 1952, 130-135, interior photos, bibliography.

*Hamilton, Ontario*: Mills Memorial Library, McMaster University. (Modular with module of 18 ft. x 22 ft.) *Jnl. R. Arch. Inst. Canada* 29 (8) 1952, 246-248, plans, exterior photo.

*Montreal*: McGill University. (New library.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (8) 1955, 30-34, photos.

#### France

Les problèmes de locaux et d'équipement mobilier dans les bibliothèques universitaires françaises. (Reports new buildings begun at Caen, Aix and Marseilles.) *Cahiers des Bibs. Fr.* (1) 1953, 49-70. References not traced:

*Aix-en-Provence*. (New building—excellent design.)

*Besançon*. (Important extensions.)

*Caen*. (New building, completed in 1956.)

*Clermont-Ferrand*. (New building, completed 1955.)

*Lille*. (New medical library.)

*Marseilles*. (Science library and Medical library.)

*Strasbourg*. (Rebuilding in progress.)

#### Germany

*Berlin*: Free University library. (Cost \$1,125,000, given by Ford Foundation.) *Arch. Rec.* 113, March 1953, 128-133, plans, photos of model; *Lib. J.* 79 (22) 1954, 2355-2359, plans, photos of building.

*Berlin*: Technische Universität. (For 200,000 volumes and eighty readers.) *Bauwelt* 45 (15) 1954, 283-288, plans, sections, interior photos; *Bauen u. Wohnen* 9 (9) 1954, 477-480, plans, interior photos.

*Hamburg*: Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek: Umbau des Gebäudes. (Conversion of a school building.) *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 5 (4) 1952, 168-179, illustrations, plans.

*Hanover*: Technische Hochschule. (Rebuilding of library after war damage.) *Ibid.* 5 (5) 1952, 242-248, plan.

#### Japan

*Tokyo*: Keio Gijuku library. (Collection now 100,000 Western books and 250,000 Japanese.)

#### Mexico

*Mexico City*: University library. (Open plan. Concrete windowless block, covered with mosaic, murals and relief sculpture.) *Archit. Rev.* 114 (5) 1953, 314, plan, exterior photo; *Archit. Forum* 97, September 1952, 116-117, exterior photos.

#### Saar

*Saarbrücken*: University library. (Opened in early 1953. Capacity now 750,000 volumes, will hold 1,000,000. Eleven-storey stack-tower, reading room for 250.) *Architektur u. Wohnform* 61 (2) 1952/3, 55-57 (competition); *Ibid.* 63 (6) 1955, 236-243, plan, section, photos; *Bauen u. Wohnen* 10 (11) 1955, 613-616, plan, section, photos.

#### Switzerland

*Zurich*: Federal Technical High School. (Reconstruction of library, 1948-51. Holds over 250,000 volumes and over 1,000,000 patents.) *Schweizer. Bauzeitung* 70, April 5, 1952, 199-202, plans, photos.

## U.S.A.

- MULLER, R. H. Future library building trends among colleges and universities. (Tables for locating institutions of similar size, giving details of 103 building plans.) *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 12 (1) 1951, 33-36.
- University library buildings in the U.S., 1890-1939. (Review of thirty-eight buildings at twenty-seven universities. 1890-1910: Transitional period, separation of books and readers, plans of L, T, I or U shape; T-plan found to offer greatest scope for expansion. 1911-39: Modern period, compact plans, stacks at rear or as core of building. In 1930s a few tower stacks appeared.) *Ibid.* 14 (2) 1953, 149-157, 166.
- ASSOCIATION OF COLLEGE AND REFERENCE LIBRARIES. Building plans Institute, 2nd, 1953. (Eight buildings considered: Saskatchewan; Rutgers; Princeton Theological Seminary; Maryland; Omaha; St. John's, Newfoundland; Brooklyn College; Oklahoma. Also seventeen-page bibliography of buildings 1945-53.) (*ACRL Monographs*, 10.) pp. 102.
- ASSOCIATION OF COLLEGE AND REFERENCE LIBRARIES. Building plans Institute, 3rd, 1954. (Seven buildings considered: Pennsylvania; Brooklyn College; Depauw; Canisius College; Antioch College; Wisconsin College; Ottawa.) (*ACRL Monographs*, 11.) pp. 112.
- ADAMS, CH. M. The college library building. (Current trends: flexibility, modular construction, shelf areas open and adjoining reading areas, subject divisions, more provision for teaching in the library, and for audio-visual media.) *Lib. Q.* 24 (4) 1954, 336-347.
- Albany: High School. (Ground area of 3,942 sq. ft. gives room for 150 readers and 11,200 volumes for student body of 1,240.) *Lib. J.* 80 (10) 1953, 1227-1229, plan, photos.
- Arkansas: University, Fayetteville: Fine Arts Center library. *Progr. Arch.* 33, September 1952, 126-127, interior photos, systematic data.
- Atlanta, Georgia: Georgia Inst. of Technology library. (Capacity for 450,000 volumes. Present collection 150,000. 800 seats. Seventeen locked carrels, 170 individual study tables. Self-service from open stacks in reading areas. Air-conditioning, acoustical treatment. Seating so comfortable that evening hours had to be extended. Cost, including furniture, \$2,000,000.) *Arch. Forum* 102 (3) 1955, 126-129, plans, section, photos.
- Bradley University, Peoria, Ill. (Main study area is large, open-planned room with readers' tables and open bookstacks. Modular plan. Reading rooms on north side overlooking terrace.) *Progr. Arch.* 35, August 1954, 95-97, plans, photos.
- University of California: Santa Barbara College. (Open modular plan, with subject reading areas, and sliding doors to outdoor reading areas. Cost just over \$1,000,000.) *Lib. J.* 79 (12) 1954, 2365-2370, plans, photos.
- Carbondale, Illinois: Southern Illinois University. (Modular plan for 350,000 volumes and to serve 1,200 readers.) *Ibid.* 77 (22) 1952, 2143-2146, illustrations, plans.
- Detroit: Wayne University libraries. (Erected 1950-53. General library and science library. Four subject divisions: (1) Humanities; (2) Science and engineering; (3) Social studies; (4) Education. Open access collection in each subject department. Total capacity of the two buildings: 800,000 volumes and 2,200 readers.) *Coll. and Res. Libs.* 14 (2) 1953, 143-146, illustrations, plans; *Progr. Arch.* 36, June 1955, 94-99, plans, photos.
- Greenville College Memorial library. (New modular building with no structural partitions. Two storeys with flat roof.) *Illinois Libs.* 31 (1) 1951, 3-6, photos.
- Iowa State University. (Modular plan. First unit for 1,500 readers and 400,000 volumes. Three storeys. Freshmen's library with 10,000 selected books, on main floor. Advanced students and faculty have 70,000 open-access books on second floor. Cost of first unit \$1,800,000 — \$1.30 per cubic foot.) *Amer. School and Univ.* 1951/2, 339-342, plans, photos.
- Langston University. (Completed 1949. Modular. Second and third floors divided only by bookstacks.) *Lib. J.* 76 (1) 1951, 63-64, photos.
- Lawton, Oklahoma: College library. *Progr. Arch.* 32 (2) 1951, 53-57, plan, section, photos.
- Seattle: University of Washington Health Sciences Library. (Electric eye to count visitors, "botanical garden," electric door-locks operated from a distance, sound-proof study rooms, television stations to enable students to watch operations in nearby hospital; underground windowless bookstore for future expansion, where air is cleaned electrostatically.) *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 41 (1) 1953, 24-29, illustrations.
- St. Cloud, Minnesota: State Teachers College. (Modular, three-storey, module of 22½ ft.; capacity 135,000, over 500 readers.) *Minnesota Libs.* 17 (2) 1952, 45-48.

*West Indies: Jamaica*

The library of the University College of the West Indies. (Opened 1948. Capacity 45,000 volumes. 200 readers. 40,000 books open access. Cost £42,000.) *West Indian Medical Jnl.* 2 (1) 1953; *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (9) 1953, 278-281, interior photo.

## 5. SPECIAL LIBRARIES

HERNER, S. The physical planning of special libraries. (As funds of most special libraries are limited, librarians must improvise. Includes floor plans of Applied Physics Library, Johns Hopkins University, and Engineering reading room, New York University. Discussion of shelving, equipment, furniture, floors, lighting.) *Special Libs.* 42 (1) 1951, 5-12, plans, bibliography.

## 5(a). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Archives

The building of libraries and archives; with special reference to the Archives Building on the Brauhausberg, Potsdam. (In German.) *Neue Bauwelt* 6 (32) 1951, 519-526.

## 5(b). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Art and Architecture

Harvard University department of architecture library. *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 6 (2) 1952, 263-269.

Washington: Library of the American Institute of Architects. (Coach-house in the Octagon converted into a library.) *Jnl. Amer. Inst. Archts.* 21 (3) 1954, 117-125, plan, photos.

See also: University and College libraries. U.S.A. *Arkansas* (above).

## 5(c). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: For the Blind

Seattle: S. J. Henry memorial library, incorporating Central Library for the Blind (for three N.W. states and Alaska) and branch of the public library. *Progr. Arch.* 38 (2) 1956, 122-125, plans, photos, notes.

## 5(d). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Children's and School

REMINGTON RAND, INC. Planning the school library, New York, Remington Rand, 1955. pp. 23, illustrations, plans.

*Britain*

Canterbury: Simon Langton school. *Builder* 180, March 16, 1951, 384, photo of interior.

Islington: Lewis Carroll library for children. (One room of area 1,027 sq. ft., and workroom. 6,000 books. Cost £4,400, and furniture £800.) *Municipal Jnl.* (3156) 1953, 1735-1737, plan, photo.

Liverpool: Assembly hall and library . . . *Archit. and Bldg. News* 209 (10) 1956, 228-231, plans, section, interior photo.

Uppingham School. *Building* 26, March 1951, 88-95; *Country Life* 109, May 25, 1951, 1642-1644.

Wallasey: Central children's library. (Structural alterations, including conversion of old doorways into display cases. Cost £2,800.) *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 53 (6) 1951, 197, photo.

*France*

De quelques problèmes posés par la construction et l'aménagement des bibliothèques (scolaires). *Architecture Française* 13 (129-30) 1952, 72-75, photos.

*Japan*

Hiroshima. (Children's library with circular plan. "Framework conceived like that of a tree.") *Aujourd'hui Art et Arch.* (1) 1955, 38-39, plan, section, photos.

*Sweden*

Malmö: Community centre, including library with children's section. *Archts.' Jnl.* 113, April 5, 1951, 424-429.

*U.S.A.*

Planning school library quarters, by the Sub-Committee on library service to schools of the American Library Association. Chicago, 1950.

Fitchburg, Mass.: Youth library. *Progr. Arch.* 33, September 1952, 121-123, systematic data, interior photos; *Arch. Forum* 95 (1) 1951, 134-139, plan, diagrams, photos; *Building* 26, November, 1951, 437-439.

Seattle: Helen Bush school library. *Progr. Arch.* 33, September 1952, 124-125, systematic data, interior photos.

## 5(e). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Commerce, Economics, Sociology

*Britain*

London: National Institute of Economic and Social Research. *Archit. and Bldg. News* 201, April 17, 1952, 458-459; *Archts.' Jnl.* 115, April 17, 1952, 483.

*London*: Institute of Bankers, Lombard Street. *Wood* 16, October 1951, 396-397; *Ibid.* 17, January 1952, 4-7.

*Liverpool*: College of Commerce, extension, including library. *Archit. and Bldg. News* 204 (18) 1953, 504-507, plan, interior photos.

#### U.S.A.

*Philadelphia*: Mercantile Library (branch of City libraries. Long narrow site, 163 ft. × 35 ft. 40,000 volumes. Show window at front, floor to ceiling window at back, looking on to garden). *Arch. Forum* 101, August 1954, 112-115, plans, section, photos.

#### 5(f). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Film and Microfilm

*London*: British Museum microfilm annexe, Colindale. *Builder* 180 (5640) 1951, 416-417, plan photos.

#### 5(g). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Medical

##### Britain

*London*: Royal Society of Medicine. (Extensions, addition of new Wellcome Research Library.) *Builder* 185 (5781) 1953, 875-877, plan, elevation, photos; *National Builder*, August 1953, 12-14.

*London*: Mill Hill: Medical Research Council library, National Institute of Medical Research. *Archit. and Bldg. News* 197, May 12, 1950, 499-502; *Archts' Jnl.* 111, May 11, 1950; *Builder* 178, May 19, 1950, 673-677; *Building* 25, July 1950, 259-265; *Aslib Proc.* May 1951, 71-75.

##### South Africa

*Cape Town*: New medical library building, University of Cape Town. (Stock of 33,000 volumes. About 500 current periodicals. Main reading room 76 ft. × 32 ft. on first floor on south (shaded) side, has two levels of stacks, 100 readers. Second floor reading room has one level of stacks, eighty readers. Microfilm reading room also for typing or dictating. Air-conditioning for heating or cooling. Capacity 80,000 volumes, 220 readers. Cost nearly £90,000.) *S. Afr. Libs.* 21 (3) 1954, 73-76; *S. Afr. Archit. Rev.* 40, January 1955, 22-28, plans, elevations, photos.

#### U.S.A.

Basic elements in planning new building for Armed Forces Medical Library. (Elements are: (1) Mission—i.e. aim; (2) Organization of staff; (3) Workflow charts; (4) Space criteria; (5) Physical contact relationships; (6) Special features.) *Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.* 42 (4) 1954, 454-457 (see L.S.A. 4643).

*Oklahoma* University school of Medicine library. *Ibid.* 41 (3) 1953, 238-243, figures.

#### 5(h). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Military

The planning of libraries for military establishments. (Problems of providing for security-classified and "unclassified" documents. More economical to combine them in one library. Figures for costs.) *Science* 114, July 20, 1951, 57-59, plan.

#### 5(i). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Religion and Theology

##### Britain

*Canterbury*: Cathedral library rebuilt after war damage. (Rebuilt in traditional style on same site as old library. All relics of the past incorporated, including the four Lanfranc windows and piers of the undercroft, but a new library created.) *Builder* 188 (5839) 1955, 66-70, plans, photos.

##### Switzerland

*St. Gallen*: Stiftsgebäude renovated and altered, including library. *Schweizer. Bauzeitung* 73 (25) 1955, 380-384, and plate 27.

#### 5(j). SPECIAL LIBRARIES: Scientific and Technical

##### Britain

REED, J. B. Planning a library plant . . . with plans and diagrams of British Coal Utilization Research Association Library. *Aslib Proc.* 3 (2) 1951, 63-68, plans.

*Manchester*: The libraries of the Dyestuffs Division of I.C.L., Blackley, Manchester. 1955. pp. 15; *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (10) 1955, 402-405.

*Oxford*: Imperial Forestry Institute. *Builder* 180, Jan 12, 1951, 58, photos.

##### Sweden

*Stockholm*: K. Skogshögskolan (Royal Institute of Forestry). *Byggmästaren* 34 (A2) 1955, 58-61, plans, photos; *Nord. Tid. Bok- och Bib.* 42 (2) 1955, 40-46, plans, photos.

## Chapter 24

### CONTEMPORARY BOOK PRODUCTION

By J. D. REYNOLDS, F.L.A., Borough Librarian of Finchley

THERE can be few manufactured articles whose outward shape has changed so little during the centuries as has that of books. There is not much likelihood, therefore, of any dramatic trend or development being discerned in any mere five-year period, and to the uninitiated the books of 1955 are not any different from those of 1951. The outward appearance of the finished article, however, depends on the skilful handling of many different, complicated machines and technical processes, by highly trained operatives working independently of each other. During the five years under survey truly dramatic changes have been taking place in some of these processes, with photography overstepping its long-accepted place in illustration, and trespassing into the field of composition, with chemical science opening new fields in colour reproduction, and the new adhesives claiming the attention of binders.

In July 1955 there was held the tenth International Printing Machinery and Allied Trades Exhibition in London. To mark the occasion *The Times* (1) and the *Financial Times* (2) both published printing supplements. These provide remarkably fine surveys of the whole field of recent progress and development in book production techniques, and they are recommended heartily to any whose interest in the subject is general. Similarly, the five catalogues of the National Book League's (3) annual exhibitions of British book design (that of 1955 was an international exhibition) should be known to all who take even the slightest interest in book production. The forewords written by the selectors constitute in themselves sound guides both to general trends and particular characteristics. The books chosen are, in the main, easily available from libraries, and can be studied with profit alongside the detailed technical data set out in the catalogues, whilst the indexes to each catalogue setting out publishers, printers, illustrators, binders, types used, and in 1954, for the first time, designers as well as authors and titles are of enormous bibliographical value to any who wish to take note of trends.

### BOOK DESIGN

The emergence of book designing as a special job, and the presence in publishing houses of such designers, is one of the trends best worthy of notice. They have taken over in commercial printing where the owner of the private press left off, and it is largely due to their work that commercial printing in Britain today is so good. Ellic Howe has commented on this phenomenon in an article entitled "The emergence of the specialist (4)."

This newly aroused interest has provoked a crop of books and articles on book production in general. They range from the wide survey of processes

described by Seán Jennett<sup>(5)</sup> in his *The making of books* to the third "Studio"<sup>(6)</sup> *Art of the book*, edited by Charles Ede, and include Bruce Rogers' (7) *Pi*, which is a hodge-podge of his letters, papers and addresses. The rise of good-quality trade editions is discussed in an article by Harry Carter entitled "Books for exhibitions"<sup>(8)</sup>, and the high production standard of Penguin books and their many imitators is discussed by James Lackington in an article on "Paper backs"<sup>(9)</sup>. An excellent survey, recording many factual references, names of designers, types and processes used, is provided by Lynton Lamb in his history of Penguin books, "Style and mass production"<sup>(10)</sup>. A spirited defence of the modern book is undertaken by Alan Pryce-Jones in his article on "The visual impact of books"<sup>(11)</sup>, whilst a survey of the best-looking books since 1900 is provided by Charles Rosner, entitled "The art of the book"<sup>(12)</sup>.

Ruari McLean's pamphlet on *Modern book design*<sup>(13)</sup> was published by Longmans for the British Council. It is a brilliant short survey in which the influence of the private press movement is traced to its conclusion in the commercial books of today. Another inexpensive treasure is the Penguin edition of Oliver Simon's *Introduction to typography*<sup>(14)</sup>. John C. Tarr's pamphlet *Design in typography*<sup>(15)</sup> is an excellent short statement of the basic principles of typographic good manners, and a new edition of Stanley Morison's by now classic statement on "The first principles of typography" came out as No. 1 in a series of *Authors' and Printers' Guides*<sup>(16)</sup>, from the Cambridge University Press. The work of the designer of books is considered by H. P. Schmolter in an article "Book design today"<sup>(17)</sup>.

## TYPOGRAPHY

Practical evidence of the way in which the new approach to layout has become effective is to be seen in "Typographic transformations"<sup>(18)</sup>, a special number of the *Monotype recorder*. A series of specimens showing the original style alongside its new version in books, periodicals and general printing does the trick. There was a fourth edition of Vincent Steer's *Printing design and lay-out*<sup>(19)</sup> in 1951 and a seventh edition of Vol. 2 of John Southward's *Modern printing*<sup>(20)</sup>, revised by A. P. Pritchard, in 1954. J. R. Biggs followed his two earlier books—one on type design, the other on illustration—with a new one on book design in general entitled *The use of type*<sup>(21)</sup>, and there was a full-scale study of the work of Jan van Krimpen<sup>(22)</sup> by John Dreyfus.

The relationship between author and printer is discussed by Brooke Crutchley in an article on "Typography and authorship"<sup>(23)</sup>. It refers especially to Cambridge Press practice, and that press's *Authors' and Printers' Guides Series* is used for pointing the moral. The importance of visual form is underlined in an article by Richard Guyatt—"The marriage of content and form"<sup>(24)</sup>, and Francis Meynell, concerned with the same topic, approaches it from the analytical point of view in his article "How to look at a book"<sup>(25)</sup>, setting up standards by which to judge.

The subject of "type behaviour" in relation to paper and press work is discussed by Mrs. Beatrice Warde in "Typography means more than lay-out"<sup>(26)</sup>. The great contribution to good printing by Monotype is surveyed, with many dates, names of designers and origins of the types, in a *Printing review* article entitled "Fifty years of British Monotype type faces"<sup>(27)</sup>.

Rene Ponot has a useful comment on "Tendencies of contemporary typographic design" <sup>(28)</sup> and Charles Rosner has "A review of Swiss design and printing" <sup>(29)</sup>.

There is a note on "Training in typographic design" <sup>(30)</sup> by Charles Pickering in *Penrose annual*, 1954. Sean Jennett reviews the "Fourth International exhibition of book design" <sup>(31)</sup>, and it is interesting to link this with the N.B.L. catalogue of the exhibition in an article by John Moron entitled "British best?" <sup>(32)</sup>. A general book on *Graphic design* <sup>(33)</sup>, by John Lewis and John Brinkley, has special reference to lettering, typography and illustration.

A most valuable work of reference is W. Turner Berry and A. F. Johnson's *Encyclopaedia of type-faces* <sup>(34)</sup>, and with it should be linked Part I, Appendix A, of the *Encyclopaedia Typographica* <sup>(35)</sup>, edited by Alfred Bastien. There was a short appraisal of "Lettering and type design today" <sup>(36)</sup> in *Printing review*, and a good survey of "German type foundries and German type design" <sup>(37)</sup> in *Penrose*, by J. Shand. Type specimen books were published by Balding and Mansell Ltd. <sup>(38)</sup>, Linotype and Machinery Ltd. <sup>(39)</sup>, W. S. Cowell Ltd. <sup>(40)</sup> and Tillotson's (Bolton) Ltd. <sup>(41)</sup>. Reviews of new type faces included "Eric Gill's Pilgrim (née Bunyan) type," by Robert Harling, two on Jan Van Krimpen's "Spectrum" by John Dreyfus <sup>(42)</sup> and Will Carter <sup>(43)</sup>, and one on "Linotype Jubilee" <sup>(45)</sup> by Allan Hutt, and a survey of "New types from Klingsfor and Bauer" <sup>(46)</sup>, by John Dreyfus. *Print in Britain* <sup>(47)</sup>, an attractive new monthly which began in 1953, besides dealing with all aspects of printing, includes an analysis of a selected type face, complete with specimen alphabets each month, and the Monotype Corporation began the steady replacement of its earlier "Specimen sheets" <sup>(48)</sup> with a majestic new series on large cards. Geoffrey Dowding attacks printers for lack of uniformity in presenting their specimen sheets in "Printers' and foundries' type specimens" <sup>(49)</sup>, and pleads for uniform designation in "Type faces: a plea for rational terminology" <sup>(50)</sup>.

## PRINTING

A large work, edited by Marshall Lee, *Books for our time* <sup>(51)</sup>, was imported from America by the Oxford Press. It is concerned with the physical well-being of modern book production, and the aptitude of books for the jobs they have to do. Printing as a career is taken care of by a series of beautifully-produced pamphlets in the Central Youth Employment Executive's "Choice of a career series" <sup>(52)</sup>. They were printed at the Curwen Press for H.M.S.O., and there is one each on printing; composing room crafts; machine room workers; photo-mechanical processes; bookbinding and printers' warehouse work. They deal with technical processes on just the right level for non-technical students of bibliography, and are well illustrated. E. W. Worthington has a technical article on "Rubber printing plates" <sup>(53)</sup>. Their use has recently been extended to bookwork and particularly in the production of novels in large editions. The growing use of lithography in book production is dealt with in two papers in "Lithography: a versatile process" <sup>(54)</sup>, by N. Montagu, and "Litho machinery: a survey of modern processes" <sup>(55)</sup>, by David Hopewell. The word "ferromagnetography" has been applied to designate the process of magnetic printing. The word printing is here meant to include typesetting, plate making, inking and transfer of an "image." This subject is dealt with by

J. P. Hanna<sup>(56)</sup> in a *Penrose* article. From these rarefied realms, it is a relief for the layman to turn to John Ryder's utterly captivating book *Printing for pleasure*<sup>(57)</sup>. From it we learn that most exciting work can be got from simple and inexpensive machines at home. The engaging style is calculated to send all but his most unimaginative readers off to begin printing for themselves.

The bulk of one issue of *Printing review*<sup>(58)</sup> was given over to articles on the printing of maps and the making of the new Oxford Atlas was described in detail. L. G. Luker presented a non-technical paper of absorbing interest concerned with the scientific problems involved in book production entitled "The limitations of science in printing"<sup>(59)</sup>.

## NEW PROCESSES

"If one facet of development should be singled out for special mention, it is the unflagging efforts of those concerned with the progress of photographic type composition with which must be linked several alternative approaches, for example, the Orotyp and typewriter type composition. The next half-century may see many changes in practice, so that the future is full of interest."

So wrote R. B. Fishenden in his editorial review to the *Penrose annual*<sup>(60)</sup> of 1951, and so ably does he deal with these developments in each successive volume of the *Penrose annual* that, at the expense of doing an injustice to the many individual contributors involved, no detailed analysis is being attempted here. A general reminder, or exhortation, is being substituted—if you want to know what the latest is in teletypesetting, in Fotosetting, in telewriter composition, in the Higoment-Moyroud system, in Fairchild Lithotype, etc., etc., etc., go to *Penrose*. From other sources comes news of "Monophoto reaching working trials stage"<sup>(61)</sup> and "The Monophoto machine"<sup>(62)</sup>, both by E. Silcock, and an unsigned article "Monophoto developments"<sup>(63)</sup>.

Two other unsigned articles tell of "Photo typesetting by the Lino-film"<sup>(64)</sup> and "How the Fotosetter works"<sup>(65)</sup>. H. N. King has described "The Intertype fotosetter"<sup>(65a)</sup>, and unsigned articles deal with "The Westover Rotofoto machine"<sup>(66)</sup>, "Hadego drill"<sup>(67)</sup> and "Composition for offset lithography"<sup>(68)</sup>. There was a description of the phototronic typewriter by C. D. Gull entitled "Venturing ahead in printing"<sup>(69)</sup>.

## PAPER

Of special interest to library students is a good short article by R. G. Macdonald on "Paper"<sup>(70)</sup>. It has a short history of the industry, gives key dates of the stages of development, describes modern processes in some detail and concerns itself with the right choice of paper. The Bowater Paper Corporation Ltd. began in 1950 to publish a most unusual house journal, *The Bowater papers*<sup>(71)</sup>. To date, three have been issued, lavish in production, packed with interest to all who use paper, and incidentally of value to those library students who are blessed with the broad subject approach to their training. There is a useful article on "Present day printing processes and paper"<sup>(72)</sup>, by F. B. Meech. A good deal of paper is still made by hand, and although the basic processes remain unchanged, in the course of the centuries improvements have been introduced. J. B. Green's book *Paper making by hand in 1953*<sup>(73)</sup> surveys the technicalities non-technically.

## ILLUSTRATION

Though dated 1950, John R. Biggs' *Illustration and reproduction* (72) did not appear until April 1951, and so qualifies for a mention here. It is recommended to all who have any general or particular interest in the subject. The difficult technical processes are described in a language laymen can understand, and there is a profusion of examples. David Bland's *The illustration of books* (73) is also highly to be recommended, and it is much cheaper to buy and own than Biggs. David Bland also did an excellent article on "Some famous books illustrated by lithography" (76). A book of deep interest to students of historical bibliography is Philip Hofer's *Baroque book illustration* (77). There are two useful articles in *The Studio* by Lynton Lamb on "The way of the book illustrator in Britain" (78). Looking round the illustrated books of today, one may be trapped into expecting an autobiography, but in fact it is not so immodest. Henry C. Pitz's "American book illustration today" (79) deals with the diversity and vitality of contemporary book illustration. The *Penrose annuals* (80) are profuse in articles on the latest technical developments, and here again they are not being listed but noted generally, with a reminder that nobody who wants to know can afford to miss going first to this source. The Fairchild engraving process is described in the *British printer* in an article entitled "New style half tones" (80). There is a long article by J. B. Hartnett (81) on "Xerography," an electromechanical process, in *Print*, and the "Klischograph" (82), another automatic engraving device, is dealt with in *Paper and print* as well as in *Penrose*. A useful short survey of recent developments in colour printing processes entitled "Colour without pain!" (83) is published in *Bookbinding and book production*. A critical list of publishers' series with colour reproductions which have appeared since 1945 appears in a *British book news* article entitled "Art books and colour reproduction" (84). It is by J. P. Harthorn.

The various office photo-engraving units are available through the duplicator firms for the embellishing of library publications, and two of them, the Fairchild Scan-a-graver and the Clichograph, are described by T. Wiltshire in an article "Electronic engraving" (85). The difficult-to-describe photo-gravure process is simply explained on L.A. Registration level by G. C. Wensley in "An outline of photogravure" (86).

That most important aspect of book production—the jacket—has escaped any great amount of critical attention, until the arrival in 1954 of Charles Rosner's *The growth of the book jacket* (87).

## BINDING

The growing interest of publishers in the unsewn method of putting a book together has caused librarians a good deal of alarm and expense during the five years. All have had their experiences of books which fell to pieces through no fault of their readers, and alarm has given way to despondency as publishers known to be proud of the way their books look have been discovered in the use of this most lamentable device. As to coverings, the use of imitation leathers and cloths, as well as the use of synthetic covers unabashed, has grown rapidly, but is not so much a source of concern, as many of these products have the great merit of lasting well and looking good until the end. Lettering has not

improved, and the use of impermanent coloured transfers has brought confusion to the shelves. The subject generally is discussed by P. B. G. Upton in his "The breakdown of publishers' bindings" <sup>(88)</sup>, based on an observation in a metropolitan public library, and J. V. C. Grey offers his opinions on "Why contemporary bookbinding is so poor" <sup>(89)</sup>. Improvements in edition binding are discussed by Lionel Darley in his "Modern developments in book-binding" <sup>(90)</sup>, whilst Ian Parsons' "Design in publishers' bindings" <sup>(91)</sup> surveys the developments by which "our books have lately grown warmer, cosier, and more diversified." He instances such series as Zodiac's and *The Novel Library*, and the editions of the Folio Society. Two anonymous articles in *Bookbinding and book production* deal with library binding methods, "Library binding ain't what it used to be!" <sup>(92)</sup>, and the imitation leathers, "Test-rube 'leathers' for book-binding and how they grew" <sup>(93)</sup>. W. H. Baatz has an article on "Public library binderies" <sup>(94)</sup> and B. C. Middleton on "Notes on the art of covering with leather" <sup>(95)</sup>. Information about the work of individual binderies is not easily found, and John Mason's article on "The future of fine bindings" <sup>(96)</sup>, which discusses their work by name, will be of use to students.

### PRIVATE PRESSES

The student of bibliography has always been at a loss to find any easily available information about the private presses. The best one, G. S. Tomkinson's "Select bibliography of the principal modern presses . . .", is scarce and long out of print, and Ruari McLean's pamphlet <sup>(13)</sup>, mentioned earlier, is not really the survey we want. The gap is now filled with a short pamphlet published by the A.A.L. by Gilbert Turner on *The private press* <sup>(97)</sup>. It gives an adequate survey of the important ones, and it will be of lasting value to students. Christopher Sandford has commented on the later work of the few survivors of the great era in a *Penrose* article "Press book production, 1945-52" <sup>(98)</sup>.

A select short working list of books on "Printing" <sup>(99)</sup> was published by Kent County Library in 1951.

### REFERENCES

#### GENERAL

1. *The Times, newspaper*. Printing: a supplement on the occasion of the tenth International Printing Machinery and Allied Trades Exhibition, July 1955.
2. *The Financial Times, newspaper*. The printing industry: a Financial Times Survey, July 4, 1955.
3. NATIONAL BOOK LEAGUE. Annual exhibitions of British book design [Catalogues] 1951-54.

#### BOOK DESIGN

4. HOWE, E. The emergence of the specialist. *Paper and Print*, 26 (4) 1953, 420-424.
5. JENNETT, S. The making of books. Faber, 1951. pp. 474.
6. EDE, C. ed. The art of the book: some record of the work carried out in Europe and the U.S.A., 1939-1950. *Studio*, 1951. pp. 214.
7. ROGERS, A. B. Pi: a hodge-podge of letters, papers and addresses written during the last sixty years by Bruce Rogers. Sylvan Press, 1953.
8. CARTER, H. Book for exhibitions. *Penrose Annual*, 1951, 13-16.
9. LACKINGTON, J. Paper backs. *Books to come*, II, 80, September 1951, 9-11.
10. LAMB, LYNTON. Penguin books—style and mass production. *Penrose Annual* 1952, 39-42.
11. PRYCE-JONES, ALAN. The visual impact of books. *Ibid.*, 1952, 15-18.
12. ROSNER, C. The art of the book. *Print. Rev.* 18 (61) 1953, 3-17.

13. MCLEAN, R. Modern book design. Published for the British Council by Longmans Gr 1951. pp. 48.
  14. SIMON, O. Introduction to typography. Penguin Books and Faber & Faber, 1953. pp. 117.
  15. TARR, J. C. Design in typography. Phoenix House, 1951. pp. 32.
  16. Cambridge University Press. Cambridge Authors' and Printers' Guides, 1951-1952. No. 1: First principles of typography, by Stanley Morison. No. 2: Preparation of manuscripts and correction of proofs. No. 3: Making an index, by G. V. Carcy. No. 4: Notes and references, by P. G. Burbidge. No. 5: Copyright, by R. Ewart.
  17. SCHMOLLER, H. P. Book design to-day. *Print. Rev.* 16 (55) 1951, 33-37.
- TYPOGRAPHY
18. MONOTYPE CORPORATION LTD. 'Typographic transformations as exemplified in a "before and after" collection of recent books, periodicals and general printing. *The Monotype Recorder* (Special number), 39 (4), 1952.
  19. SIBER, VINCENT. Printing design and layout, 4th ed., Virtue, 1951. pp. 472.
  20. SOUTHWARD, JOHN. Modern printing: the practice and principles of typography and the auxiliary arts. Vol. 2, edited by A. P. Pritchard. 7th ed. De Montfort Press, pp. 580.
  21. BIGGS, JOHN REGINALD. The use of type: the practice of typography. Blandford Press, 1954. pp. 220.
  22. DREYFUS, JOHN. The work of Jan van Krimpen. Sylvan Press, 1952. pp. 160.
  23. CRUTCHLEY, BROOKE. Typography and authorship. *Penrose Annual*, 1953, 28-30.
  24. GUYATT, RICHARD. The marriage of content and form. *Ibid.* 1955, 17-20.
  25. MEYNELL, FRANCIS. How to look at a book. *Print. Rev.* 16 (56) 1951, 29-30.
  26. WARDE, BEATRICE. Typography means more than layout. *Bowater Papers* (3) 1954, 42-46.
  27. Fifty years of British Monotype type faces. *Print. Rev.* 16 (58) 1952, 21-28.
  28. PONGOT, RENE. Tendencies of contemporary typographic design. *Ibid.* 19 (70) 1955, 33-40.
  29. ROSNER, C. A review of Swiss design and printing. *Ibid.* 19 (69) 1955, 9-27.
  30. PICKERING, C. L. Training in typographic design. *Penrose Annual*, 1954, 64-69.
  31. JENNETT, S. The 4th International exhibition of book design. *Print. Rev.* 18 (64) 1953-54, 22-25.
  32. MORON, J. British best? *Paper and Print*, 20 (4) 1953, 398-404.
  33. LEWIS, J. and BRINKLEY, J. Graphic design with special reference to lettering, typography and illustration. Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1955. pp. 198.
  34. BERRY, W. T. and A. F. JOHNSON. Encyclopaedia of type-faces. Blandford Press, 1953. pp. 335.
  35. BASTIEN, ALFRED *ed.* Encyclopaedia typographica. Part I. Appendix A. Classification and plan. West Drayton, Mddx., Typo. Centre, 1951. pp. 72.
  36. Lettering and type design today. *Print. Rev.* 18 (65) 1954, 3.
  37. SHAND, J. German type founders and German type design. *Penrose Annual*, 1952, 31-33.
  38. BALDING AND MANSSELL LTD. Type: principles and application; the house style of Balding and Mansell, printed . . . B. & M., 1953. pp. 80.
  39. Linotype and Machinery Ltd. Specimens of faces: linotype: matrix information. 1953.
  40. COWELL, W. S., LTD. A book of type faces. 1955. pp. 74.
  41. TILLOTSON'S (BOLTON) LTD. Type specimen book. Tillotsons, 1953. pp. 134.
  42. HARLING, ROBERT. Eric Gill's Pilgrim (*née* Bunyan) type. *Penrose Annual*, 1953, 53-54.
  43. DREYFUS, JOHN. Spectrum: designed by Jan van Krimpen. *Ibid.* 1954, 47-49.
  44. CARTER, WILL. Monotype Spectrum. *Ibid.* 1955, 54-55.
  45. HUTT, A. A new face for newspaper text (Linotype Jubilee). *Ibid.*, 1955, 56-57.
  46. DREYFUS, J. New types from Klingsfor and Bauer. *Ibid.*, 1955, 51-53.
  47. *Print in Britain 1953—Monthly, in progress.*
  48. Monotype Specimen Cards. Available to subscribers from Monotype House, Fetter Lane.
  49. DOWDING, G. Printers' and founders' type specimens. *Typographica*, No. 6 (1952), 8-16.
  50. DOWDING, G. Type faces: a plea for a rational terminology. *Typographica* No. 4 (1951).
- PRINTING
51. LEE, MARSHALL *ed.* Books for our time. N.Y. (London) Oxford U.P., 1951. pp. 128.
  52. CENTRAL YOUTH EMPLOYMENT EXECUTIVE. Choice of Careers (*new series*) 1953. No. 45: Printing. No. 46: Printing: composing room crafts. No. 47: Printing: machine room workers. No. 48: Printing: photo-mechanical processes. No. 49: Bookbinding and printers' warehouse work.
  53. WORTHINGTON, E. W. Rubber printing plates: a medium for fast quantity production. *Brit. Pr. May/June 1951*, 41-44.
  54. MONTAGU, N. Lithography, a versatile process. *Print. Rev.* 18 (64) 1953-54.
  55. HOPEWELL, D. Litho machinery, a survey of modern processes. *Ibid.* pp. 12-15.

56. HANNA, J. P. Ferromagnetography. *Penrose Annual*, 1954, 96-98.  
 57. RYDER, J. S. Printing for pleasure. Phoenix House, 1955. pp. 142.  
 58. *Printing Review*, Vol. 16 (57) 1951/52. The bulk of the issue given over to articles on the production and printing of maps and the production of atlases. Special mention of the then newly published Oxford Atlas.  
 59. LUKER, L. G. The limitations of science in printing. *Print. Rev.* 19 (69) 1955, 7-8.

## NEW PROCESSES

60. FISHERDEN, R. B. *ed.* The Penrose Annual, 1951-55, Lund Humphreys.  
 61. SILCOCK, E. Monophoto reaching working trials stage. *Print. Rev.* (65) Spring 1954, 40-42.  
 62. SILCOCK, E. The Monophoto machine. *Penrose Annual*, 1954, 104-105.  
 63. Monophoto developments. *Paper and Print*, 27 (i) 1954, 51-52.  
 64. Photo typesetting by the Linofilm. *Print. Rev.* 18 (66) 1954, 41-43.  
 65. How Fotosetter works. *Printing Equipment Engineer* 83 (4) 1953, 56-60.  
 65a. KING, H. N. The Intertype fotosetter. *Mod. Lith. Off. Pr.* 47 (4) 1951, 68-69.  
 66. The Westover Rotofoto machine. *Scott Typog. J.*, February 1951, 30-31.  
 67. "Hadege" drill. *Mod. Lith. Off. Pr.* 47 (2) 1951, 27-29.  
 68. Composition for offset lithography. *Nat. Lithog.* 57 (11) 1950, 33-36.  
 69. Composition for offset lithography. *Second series. Ibid.* 59 (12) 1952, 32-35.  
 69. GULL, C. D. Venturing ahead in printing. *Lib. of C. Inf. Bull.* 10 (6) 1951, 20-21.

## PAPER

70. MACDONALD, R. G. Paper. *Print* 8 (1) 1953, 29-34.  
 71. THE BOWATER CORPORATION LTD. The Bowater papers, nos. 1-3. 1950- .  
 72. MEECH, F. B. Present day printing processes and paper. British Paper and Board Makers' Assoc. Proceedings of the Technical Section, 32, Feb., 1951, 11-34.  
 73. GREEN, J. BARCHAM. Paper making by hand in 1953. S. C. Phillips and Co. pp. 16.

## ILLUSTRATION

74. BIGGS, J. R. Illustration and reproduction. Blandford Press, 1950 (April 1951). pp. 240.  
 75. BLAND, D. The illustration of books. Faber, 1951. pp. 160.  
 76. BLAND, D. Some famous books illustrated by lithography. *Print. Rev.* 18 (64) 1953-54, 8-10.  
 77. HOFER, P. Baroque book illustration. Harvard U.P., O.U.P., 1951. pp. 45.  
 78. LAMB, L. The way of the book illustrator in Britain. *Studio*, 142 (701) 1951, 34-41, 64.  
 79. FITZ, H. C. American book illustration today. *Studio* 147 (696) 1951, 72-79.  
 80. New style half-tones. *Brit. Pr. March-April 1951*, 22-23, 26.  
 81. HARTNETT, J. B. Xerography. *Print* 7 (5) 1952, 9-15.  
 82. The Klischograph. *Paper and Print* 27 (1) 1954, 82.  
 83. Colour without pain! *Ebk. and Bk. Prod.* February 1951, 59-61.  
 84. HARTON, J. P. Art books and colour reproduction. *British Book News* (183) 1955, 1339-1344.  
 85. WILSHIRE, T. Electronic engraving. *Print. Rev.* 18 (66) 1954, 14-17.  
 86. WENSLEY, G. C. An outline of photogravure. *Ibid.* 19 (68) 1955, 19-25.  
 87. ROSNER, C. The growth of the book jacket. Sylvan Press, 1954. pp. 74.

## BINDING

88. UPTON, P. B. G. The breakdown of publishers' bindings. *Penrose Annual*, 1953, 133-134.  
 89. GREY, J. V. C. Why contemporary bookbinding is so poor. *Bookseller* (2601) 1955, 1360-1362.  
 90. DARLEY, I. Modern developments in bookbinding. *Print. Rev.* 18 (61) 1953, 34-36.  
 91. PARSONS, I. Design in publishers' bindings. *Penrose Annual*, 1951, 48-50.  
 92. Library binding ain't what it used to be! *Bookbinding and Book Production* 55 (5) 1952, 35-40.  
 93. Test-tube "leathers" for book-binding and how they grew. *Ibid.* 56 (3) 1953, 42, 43; *Ibid.* 56 (4) 1953, 39-40.  
 94. BAATZ, W. H. Public library binderies: their duties and supervision. *Ibid.* 55 (5) 1952, 53.  
 95. MIDDLETON, B. C. Notes on the art of covering with leather. *Paper and Print* 25 (3) 1952, 316-321; *Ibid.* 25 (4) 1952, 430-435.  
 96. MASON, J. The future of fine bindings. *Print. Rev.* 16 (58) 1952, 12-15.

## PRIVATE PRESSES

97. TURNER, G. The private press. 1954. A.A.L. (Midland Division). pp. 24.  
 98. SANDFORD, C. Press book production, 1945-52. *Penrose Annual*, 1953, 31-34.  
 99. KENT COUNTY LIBRARY. A select list of books on printing, 1951. pp. 16.

## HISTORICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

By L. R. WILLISON, M.A., A.L.A., *Department of Printed Books, The British Museum*

PERHAPS the most conspicuous, and certainly the most controversial single feature of the period under review has been the further definition of the "new orthodoxy" implicit in Professor Fredson Bowers's attempt to systematize the contiguous discipline of descriptive bibliography in his *Principles of bibliographical description* (1949). It has been pre-eminently conspicuous, because the new doctrine aims at extending this systematization to the subject and the method common to all the conventional departments of historical-bibliography—incunabula, the editorial problem in Shakespeare, binding, and so on—regardless of their apparently semi-autonomous status. It has been pre-eminently controversial, because a *Gleichschaltung* so catholic in ambition has seemed to many bibliographers to threaten the traditional skills and satisfactions which have hitherto sustained the study.

## I. THE DOCTRINE

1.1. The general subject of our study may be summarily defined as the physical characteristics of printed books considered in their historical aspect, or, more precisely and academically, mass-produced texts as technical, commercial and cultural-political artefacts which have realized and (so to speak) substantiated in history the *intention* of authors and publishers to control opinion, to advance learning, to make money or to express sensibility. Historical bibliography, in short, is the study of books as *direct* evidence of almost all those various movements towards literacy and self-determination which have constituted the general history of Europe since the Renaissance.\*

1.2. Now among other things, Bowers's prophylaxis against wasteful naivety in bibliographical description required the denial of the historical assumption (hitherto implicit in most work other than that of editors of the Pollard-Greg-McKerrow school on early dramatic texts) that the realizing of a publisher's intention in any particular copy of a book was normally immediate and self-evident. On the contrary, it was normally *mediated*, or transformed, through substantial variations from the original intention in the course of printing and publishing. Indeed it is precisely such variations which, because of the normality of their occurrence, embody the general historical evidence that it is the whole *raison d'être* of bibliography to present. Hence, to quote from the most recent discussion of bibliographical method (David Foxon: *The technique of bibliography* (1)), a fundamental distinction is now made between the *ideal copy*

\* A classic example of this is A. W. Pollard's rarely quoted introduction to Part III (Germany) of the *Catalogue of books printed in the XVth century now in the British Museum* (1913).

of a book, which "represents the book as the publisher intended it to be put on sale," and any particular *extant copy* of the same book, which must always be presumed to differ not only from the ideal copy, but even from other extant copies, on account of variants which "chance, negligence, or the publisher's afterthoughts may have produced" (for example, the random binding-up of corrected and uncorrected sheets found, say, in seventeenth-century dramatic texts (chance); the decision to enlarge the issue while printing-off, and the consequent re-setting of the earlier formes found, say, in eighteenth-century ephemera (publisher's afterthoughts); the frequent transatlantic pirating of major nineteenth-century novelists (original publisher's negligence)). Further, these variations or eccentricities in particular copies are direct expressions, and the *only* direct expressions, of the crucial fact that with any piece of publishing enterprise the typographical, commercial and cultural-political factors determining that enterprise are not only independent, but even contradictory in their operation. (Thus issues of eighteenth-century ephemera were often enlarged during printing-off because their characteristically volatile market no longer permitted the final decision as to the size of the run before printing, which was essential for the optimum working of the small-sheet hand press with a limited supply of type. Transatlantic piracies of major nineteenth-century novelists were frequent because the cultural-political conservatism which in the context of Anglo-American mass democracy gave "mandarin" publishers the exclusive confidence of those novelists, at the same time inhibited such publishers from developing the cheap-price and mass-distribution policy necessary to reach the mass market.) Finally, it is these contradictions and the story of their working out that give the history of printing and publishing its consubstantiality with a general European history that is now seen to consist of similar contradictions between social, economic, political intention and action (e.g., the work of Professor Herbert Butterfield and his school).

1.3. It follows that the differently varying extant copies of a book are only intelligible as a whole to the bibliographer—and therefore only yield their general historical evidence—in the light of the intended ideal copy, i.e., in the light of that from which they have all varied. On the other hand, since it is only the variant copies which are in fact extant, the ideal copy is "strictly speaking, only an abstraction" (to adapt a phrase of Dr. Charlton Hinman's (?)). A new sophistication in bibliographical method, therefore, results from the facts that the ideal copy has to be speculatively "reconstructed" or "visualized" from a minute—if necessary, line-by-line—collation of the largest possible number of extant copies; that such induction has to be controlled by a "collateral" printing history of the book which alone, at this stage, can give a coherent account of the origins of the variants; and that the coherence of this account in turn derives from its being expressed in terms of the state reached in the working out of the typographical and other factors, as this state is embodied in the general "facts of printing house practice," conventions of authorship and publishing and so on of the period of the book concerned (F. Bowers: "Bibliography, pure bibliography and literary studies" (?); D. Foxon: "The printing of *Lyrical Ballads* 1798" (?)).

1.4. Hence a basic presupposition of the method is that such states or phases of general printing history are *always* relevant to the printing history of any specific book; or—to quote Foxon's *Technique* (1) again—that printing is "at

once efficient and intensely conservative. . . . Since there was a traditional method of doing everything, we should never put forward an argument which assumes an abnormal method of work without producing good evidence for that method having been followed and a reason why the usual method was rejected." In other words the constituent factors of the history of printing, though mutually independent and contradictory, are both constant in number and are each assumed to have retained a recognizably stable identity, from Gutenberg to the present day. The history of printing is a matter of *plus ça change, plus c'est la même chose*; and it is this stability of its substance from the point of view of the historian which distinguishes it from the impalpability of general history (where the factors are far less quantifiable and far more numerous), and which gives a piece of bibliographical research that is fully conscious of these epistemological advantages, a characteristic power and importance. For the impalpability of general history is reflected in the impalpability of the general historian's interpretative scheme: an account of a general historical situation can be upset by a subsequent change in that scheme as a result of the isolation of further factors or the revaluation of ones already known (see, for example, the series of "historical revisions" in the journal of the Historical Association). On the other hand, as Greg saw long ago, the stability of printing history is reflected in the stability of the bibliographer's interpretative scheme. An account of a printing situation can only be refined, not upset, either by the discovery of further variant copies or by the increasingly precise definition of the factors, first in their several identities and then in the actual phases of the working out of their contradictions. It is the progress of refinement in this manner that forms the subject-matter of sections 3, 4 and 5.

## 2. THE CONTROVERSY

2.1. This generalizing of the Greg-McKerrow practice, then, results in what we may term a dialectical synthesis of analytic and historical method; and it is the time, the photo-mechanical aids, and (above all) the highly specialized observational and historiographical skills essential for this which form the basis for the controversial claim that "bibliography . . . is . . . an end in itself and not a means to an end, it is an independent discipline of scholarship" (F. Bowers: "Purposes of bibliographical description, with some remarks on methods" (5)).\* Of the many rebuttals of this claim perhaps the most serious has been that advanced by Dr. (now Sir) Geoffrey Keynes in his Presidential Address to the Bibliographical Society in 1953 (6). Keynes suggested that such systematizing of subject and method served only the academic—specifically, only the literary-editorial—interest in bibliography which originally conceived it; that it conflicts with the other, more humane and amateur interests of bibliophiles, librarians and (we would add) historically minded printers and publishers who after all constitute the bulk of the labour force and who, if the new doctrine were to become established, might be tempted to withdraw their labour on account of their apparent lack of skill and satisfaction. The question is still an open one. Nevertheless the subject-field of bibliography is all of a piece, however

\* "I shall have seen an average of twenty to thirty copies of many editions. . . . I possess and travel with a complete microfilm of every edition of the plays with which I am concerned, these films serving as a series of control copies. . . . I utilize . . . a portable projector."

interpreted. The literary-editorial interest can only be a limiting case of an essentially unified study. It is therefore worth while at this point rehearsing some of the period's outstanding work as evidence that more adventurous pursuit of these other interests may be leading to their piecemeal, undoctinaire convergence on the same doctrine. (Whether this tendency is a real one will be a major topic for the next five years' survey.)

2.2. Thus in contrast to the admittedly negative interest in printing and publishing eccentricities as an element garbling authors' texts in their transmission to their modern editors, stands the essentially humane concern of literary historians and critics such as Mr. H. S. Bennett (*English books and readers, 1475-1557* (?) ) and Professor Richard D. Allick (*English publishing and the mass audience in 1852* (6) ), who see in the contradiction between the commercial and cultural-political factors evidence of what one might call the literary substratum from which the major writers of a period emerged, and without a consideration of which their superior status is not fully demonstrable. In the hitherto little-worked field of music bibliography, the pioneer studies of Berlioz and the Parisian music publishers by Mr. Cecil Hopkinson (9) (10) have shown how knowledge of "all the changes and insertions made for various performances" is essential for a "complete and historically accurate score" of *Les Troyens* (see the reviews by Mr. A. Hyatt King in *The Library*).

Turning to the characteristic post-war concern with the detailed history of science, Mr. V. A. Eyles has pointed out how bibliographical evidence of number and size of editions, etc., reveals the reactionary effect of sub-standard best-sellers on the development of semi-vernacular sciences such as geology ("Bibliography and the history of science" (11)). In contrast to such comparatively virgin academic fields, Mr. Stanley Morison has demonstrated the necessity of the "accurate listing and characterizing of newspapers, naming the principal writers in them, noting their technical production and distribution, also the nature and volume of their advertising," for the traditional but (in England at least) curiously innocent historical study of politics and diplomacy ("The bibliography of newspapers and the writing of history" (12)).

2.3. Among commercial printers and publishers, with their customary addiction to what he calls "those fat, sumptuous, and sometimes tendentious souvenirs" (*op. cit.*), Morison's recent work as official typographical adviser and historian to *The Times* (*Printing The Times since 1785, etc.* (13)) is remarkable for its academically responsible use of business archives to present the contradictions in typographical, commercial and editorial policy through which the company was in point of fact historically effective. Another example of this impersonal use of trade archives, made possible by the growing institutionalization of the enterprise concerned, has been the employment of an academic economic historian, Dr. A. E. Musson, to write the official history of the Typographical Association (14). (In a wider connection one might note the history of Unilever by Mr. Charles Wilson, and of Reuters by Mr. Graham Storey.)

2.4. In bibliophily, a cognate change from sentiment to sophistication is reflected in the systematic collecting of subjects and authors of hitherto marginal, "off-centre" status—for example, Colonel J. R. Abbey's coloured-plate topographical books (15) (16). Mr. Michael Sadleir's nineteenth-century popular fiction (17) and, perhaps most conspicuous of all, Mr. Wilmarth Lewis's

Walpoliana<sup>(18)</sup>. The change is a cognate one since it is likewise associated with novel economic and academic arrangements typical of the managerial, welfare state: the advantages of investment in fixed cultural objects in a continuously inflationary situation, and the related possibility of relief from supertax through educational endowments. These pressures are tending to discipline the collector's passion for curiosities, and his flair for perceiving and assembling the scattered *minutiae* of their variant states,\* to the task—characteristic of modern academic professionalism—of objectifying a traditional literary or historical dogma on the basis of his collection, the collection being finally given (Lewis) or sold (Sadleir) as a unit to some research library. (A brief symposium on this post-Huntington/Folger trend now dominant in the United States is *Book-collecting and scholarship*<sup>(19)</sup>.)

2.5. Finally, then, as an intimation of the *Alexandrian* tendency of this convergence of bibliographical interests, one should note Dr. Claus Nissen's pioneering attempt at formulating the history and aesthetic of the hybrid subject of natural-history book-illustration<sup>(20)</sup> <sup>(21)</sup> on the basis of the cross-disciplinary insights thrown up in the course of compiling its bibliography. This began as a librarian's conventional reference chore, but is demonstrating, as a result of Dr. Nissen's pertinacity and intellectual enterprise, the opportunities to advance this sort of learning that lie in the librarian's increasingly privileged access to the heart of the matter.

### 3. PRINTING HISTORIES OF SPECIFIC BOOKS

3.1. Particularly notable have been the history of the printing of Dr. Johnson's *Journey* (1775) by Dr. William B. Todd<sup>(22)</sup>, Mr. Foxon's above-mentioned work on the *Lyrical Ballads*<sup>(4)</sup>, and—perhaps most significant of all—Sir Irvine Masson's analysis of *The Mainz Psalters and Canon Missae, 1457-1459*<sup>(23)</sup>, and the collating by Dr. Hinman of the seventy-nine Folger Library copies of the Shakespeare First Folio which it is now expected will be finished by the end of 1957.† This last is of outstanding importance, in the first place because the photo-mechanical collating machine<sup>(24)</sup>, developed by Dr. Hinman to speed up his huge task and minimize inevitable human error, is coming to be regarded as a standard item of equipment for any national, "first-order," literary or historical research library (five such machines were in existence at the end of our period, the only one outside the United States was acquired by the British Museum in 1955). In the second place, the prospect of a definitive printing house history of the First Folio which will provide the "logical basis in bibliographical . . . fact" essential for a definitive edition of Shakespeare (see F. Bowers: *On editing Shakespeare*<sup>(25)</sup>), is being felt as something of a general climax, and vindication, of half a century of literary-editorial interest in bibliography.

3.2. Sir Irvine Masson's work on the Mainz Psalters and Missals, on the other hand, is significant for his success in developing subtle analytic techniques (measurement of pinholes, etc.) not only to isolate, but also to account for the variant copies of books from the crucial formative period for which in the nature of the case (printing being conceived as a "mystery") there can be no

\* See, for example, Mr. Lewis's account of the extraordinary "saga of the Theatre Geo. 3."

† *Studies in Bib.* 9, 1957, 4.

collateral documentary evidence. In particular, he is able to show the origins of the variants of the 1457 Psalter in a commercial decision (by Fust?) to increase the issue designed for the as yet unexploited market outside Mainz, and in a similarly experimental introduction (by Gutenberg?) of an aesthetically superior but uneconomic type-found subsequently discarded by Fust, and as a result has opened the way for the incontrovertible *demonstration* of the inevitable conflict between the inventor's exclusive concern with the typographical problems of the mass-production of texts, and the equally exclusive concern of his financial backers with the commercial ones, which in the absence of direct documentation could hitherto only be argued as the crux of the invention of printing. It is therefore particularly important to note the contrast between the eager welcome given to Masson's methods and conclusions,\* and the controversy aroused by Dr. R. Blum's more conventional attempt, in *Der Prozess Fust gegen Gutenberg* (28), to substantiate the same general view of the conflict on the basis of the essentially incidental, and therefore essentially ambiguous, legal documents (see, for example, the review by Dr. Curt Bühler in the *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of America* (28) and the articles in the 1956 *Gutenberg Jahrbuch*). Masson's work, in short, is a splendid example of the power of the approach to the history of printing through eccentricities in specific books which reveal the operation of its constituent factors. It leads naturally to a review of the more important work on those factors.

#### 4. THE FACTORS IN THE GENERAL HISTORY OF PRINTING AND PUBLISHING

##### 4.1. *The Typographical Factor*

4.1.1. Past attempts to see the design and manufacture of books in a single historical perspective have usually collapsed into disconnected appreciations of individual "fine books," or disconnected extrapolations from contemporary printers' manuals (even McKerrow did not entirely escape this); and this has been largely due to the lack of a unifying concept for the essential interdependence of taste and technique in actual printing situations, which possess commercial and cultural-political, as well as a typographical, dimensions. Recent work on the typographical factor has shown an encouraging tendency to converge on what the most characteristic study of the period (Friedrich Schmidt-Künsemüller: *Die Erfindung des Buchdrucks als technisches Phänomen* (29)) terms its *eclectic* ("kombinatorisch") nature.

4.1.2. Dr. Schmidt-Künsemüller shows that eclecticism was not only the essence of the problems of precision-engineering faced by Gutenberg in the mass production of articles so absolutely conventionalized in their physique as books (the derivation from existing technologies, and then the marrying-up, of adjustable hand-mould, type-alloy, press, ink). He shows that it was the excessive degree of experiment and abstraction needed by Gutenberg to marry up such technologically discrete elements into an aesthetically satisfying whole, which conflicted with Fust's concern with the commercial factor of cost; and that since mass production is nothing if not a commercial enterprise, the

\* See the *obiter dicta* of the British Museum's incunabulist Mr. G. D. Painter, that "it will now be necessary to re-examine all 'Gutenberg' printing in the light of the Psalter" (26); and Dr. Victor Scholderer's use of some of Masson's evidence in his article questioning the recently revived claim for priority of the *Missale speciale Constantiense* over the forty-two-line Bible (27).

idea of achieving a pure working-out of the typographical factor on its own terms met its inevitable contradiction in Gutenberg's enforced sell-out to his backer. Dr. Armin Renker's essay on *Die Erfindung der Papiermaschine*<sup>(30)</sup>, written in the light of Schmidt-Künsemüller's book, reveals the persistence of this technical eclecticism in Frédéric Robert's combination of fine-gauge wire with the principle of the endless web developed in eighteenth-century cotton manufacture, and in his similar enforced sell-out to an impatient sponsor (Didot). Likewise the first part of M. Lucien Neipp's useful summary of the engineering history of modern printing presses is devoted to an exposition of the brilliance of Koenig's automatic coupling of ink distribution, impression and reciprocation of the type-bed, to the accompaniment of the quarrel with his first backer, Bensley (*Les machines à imprimer depuis Gutenberg*<sup>(31)</sup>).

4.13. The cognate eclecticism of type design (i.e. the paramountcy of the mass-production criteria of "legibility" which was established once and for all in the classic fifteenth-century Venetian faces, and which permitted subsequent designers only such marginal "variations" as were compatible with the local traditions prevailing in the particular province of Europe in which they happened to work) was, of course, established by Mr. Stanley Monson's famous pre-war programme for the Monotype Corporation. (The effect of this in confining the Morrisian heresy of "free" type design to the characteristically eccentric German preoccupation with display and near-display faces, is noted in Dr. Schmidt-Künsemüller's *William Morris und die neuere Buchkunst*<sup>(32)</sup>.) Nevertheless, in a provocative essay, "Zur Stilgeschichte der Druckschriften"<sup>(33)</sup>, the Stempel A.G. typographer Hermann Zapf has examined some historical and cultural details of this distinction between the great tradition of Venetian legibility and the marginal variations of provincial "modern" faces and the like (for example, he associates the wide capitals of eighteenth-century English transitional faces with the contemporary mood of cultural self-confidence and "imperialism," and suggests a comparison with Roman lettering and Roman imperialism). This is paralleled by a remarkable and novel corroboration of the persistent eclecticism of type-design from the point of view of the contemporary reader (Sir Cyril Burt and others: "A psychological study of typography"<sup>(34)</sup>), where, for example, a correlation is suggested between the preference for modern faces and the statistically deviant "stable introvert temperament" of the scientist and technologist. Again, a conflict of interests between the designer and the "syndicates of capitalists and financiers," which is comparable to that between the printing technologist and his backers, is noted in Mr. Morison's preface to *A tally of types cut for machine composition and introduced at the University Press, Cambridge*<sup>(35)</sup>. (He then proceeds to recount his own original success in selling the idea of revived classic faces to the Monotype Corporation, omitting to comment, however, on the conspicuous rarity of such success.)

4.14. To move to the more representational, and nominally more free, aspects of book design, Mr. Charles Rosner in his pioneering study of *The growth of the book jacket*<sup>(36)</sup> has nevertheless insisted on the eclectic "editorial mind" as the *sine qua non* of the successful artist. Finally, in the introduction to the first of his above-mentioned series on natural-history book-illustration (*Die botanische Buchillustration*<sup>(20)</sup>), Dr. Claus Nissen analyses the eclecticism of that feature of the mass-produced book nearest to the single-copy tradition of European fine

art. Here again the artist has to be willing and able to visualize his subject in the flat tonality of the printed page rather than in the plenitude of tactility and colour of the individual canvas; and this he can only do by adopting the same method of ruthless dissociation of sensibility as is imposed on scientific authors and publishers committed to the mass communication of information.

#### 4.2. *The Commercial Factor*

4.21. What success has been achieved in reaching a realistic general perspective of the typographical factor in printing and publishing, then, has depended on recognizing its essential subordination to the commercial, entrepreneurial factor in actual printing situations; and perhaps the most important attempt at an "historical model" for the operation of the commercial factor has been Miss Florence Edler de Roover's deduction of the entrepreneurial problems characteristic of early printed books<sup>(37)</sup>, based on the Strozzi business archives preserved at Florence. These problems she has found to be "not unlike those of new industries today: how to attract operating capital for production and for carrying inventories, where to store a slow moving and bulky stock, and how to overcome the prejudice against a new product in order to create an extensive market."

Publishing, in other words, is characterized by a fundamentally precarious equilibrium between the small amount of fixed capital (e.g., press; type) and the magnitude of working capital (e.g., high-skilled and therefore expensive labour time; paper), which is constantly threatened by a slowness and above all unpredictability of supply (author's copy) and demand (readers).

4.22. The persistence of this instability—already evident in the well-known cases of overproduction in fifteenth-century Italy—has been shown for the eighteenth century in the early chapters of Dr. Musson's *History of the Typographical Association*<sup>(14)</sup>, and for the present day by the 1951 and 1956 PEP reports on the economics of publishing<sup>(38)</sup>. Among its typical expressions Musson notes the mushroom growth and bankruptcy of undersized and undercapitalized "wildcat" enterprises; the constant difficulty experienced even by established firms in maintaining an optimum work-relation between compositors and pressmen without recourse to job-printing (one of the chief causes of variants in Jacobean dramatic texts); and the universal pessimism and belligerence of printing labour as a result of five hundred years of this insecurity.

#### 4.3. *The Cultural-Political Factor*

The current definition of the commercial factor as unstable—or even irrational—depends, in turn, on recognizing that the ultimate sources of supply and demand are cultural-political, rather than econometrically palpable, entities. In Professor Altick's words<sup>(9)</sup>: "From the very beginnings of publishing as a profit-making enterprise, the publisher's estimate of the size of a book's potential audience, its willingness to pay the price he will ask, and above all its current tastes, has been the major consideration in his decision whether or not to send the manuscript on to the type-setter." It is the interactions of the commercial and the cultural-political factors which give the history of printing and publishing what was earlier termed its consubstantiality with general European history, and an admirably synoptic view of "the press [as] an integrated part of the entire social organism affecting and being affected by the society of which

it is part" (and therefore one of the most important books of the period has been Professor F. S. Siebert's *The freedom of the press in England, 1476-1776* (38)). To summarize: there is a complicity between the interest of any new or established ruling group in controlling the increasingly activating effect on the social organism of the mass production of texts in order to create or to preserve its cultural and political authority over that organism, and the interest of publishers in controlling the new or established sources of supply and demand created by that cultural-political authority in order to minimize their heavy capital risks.

Thus the true phases in movement of printing history can only be established according to the succession of such *complicities of interest*, or according to what Mr. S. H. Steinberg, in the liveliest general treatment to appear in the period (40), calls "the story of the relation between printing and civilization, the interdependence of printers, publishers and public."

## 5. THE PHASES IN THE GENERAL HISTORY OF PRINTING AND PUBLISHING

### 5.1. *Christian Humanism*

5.11. The first phase, as Steinberg notes, can no longer be seen in terms of *typographical* incunabula, whose supposed maturing in 1500 is a bibliophilic fantasy. It is constituted by the interest in printing of the whole cosmopolitan, mandarin, Christian Humanist cultural-political establishment, which lasts from the original archiepiscopal sponsorship of the invention at Mainz to the establishment's own final collapse in 1550 with the defeat of French Gallicanism and the exile of Robert Estienne to Geneva.

5.12. Work on the itinerant German prototypographers of the original dispersion from Mainz, therefore, has tended to emphasize their essentially marginal position within this complicity of interest: lack of the financial, editorial, typographic and marketing resources necessary to penetrate a sophisticated clientele accustomed to ornate manuscript books; hence dependence on small-run job-printing (calendars, etc.), and an annihilating rate of bankruptcy (see the latter part of Schmidt-Künsmüller's *Erfindung des Buchdrucks* (39)). In contrast, the ability of entrepreneurs in the cosmopolitan centres of early merchant-capitalism to finance ambitious editorial and typographical collaboration with bookish humanists, and in particular, their use of the system of international fairs to distribute "Italianate" literature to the book-hungry enthusiasts of North-Western Europe (whose actual travels to Italy were characteristically rare) has been well documented in Dr. Friedrich Luchsinger's study of *Der Basler Buchdruck als Vermittler des italienischen Geistes* (41), itself based on the important edition of the Amerbach correspondence by Alfred Hartmann. Merchant-capitalist techniques other than the classic Venetian partnerships are displayed in Miss de Roover's exposition of Strozzi's "putting-out system" (*Verlegung*) in her paper quoted above (37).

5.13. Finally the whole cultural and political ambivalence implicit in cosmopolitan humanist printing is brought out by the late E. Ph. Goldschmidt, who demonstrates the ephemerality of the genuinely "academic" presses set up in various traditional—and therefore inveterately hostile—seats of learning (Cambridge, Wittenberg, Erfurt, Cracow, Leipzig, etc.), rather than in th

metropolitan commercial centres (*The first Cambridge press in its European setting* <sup>(42)</sup>). Complementary to this is Mr. H. S. Bennett's study of the vernacular press in England <sup>(7)</sup>, at this time geographically, culturally and hence economically marginal (jobbing, sub-standard typography—due to the necessarily irregular supply and marketing of non-humanist, non-academic, non-ecclesiastical, local texts), but for that reason not involved, as cosmopolitan humanism was, in the conflict between the militant provincialisms which the latter's own publishing programme were doing much to evoke. This conflict, concluded by the defeat of Estienne and his friends at the French Court by the post-Tridentine Sorbonne and Sorbonne-controlled corporation of Paris stationers, has received what is perhaps its definitive documentation in Mrs. Elizabeth Armstrong's *Robert Estienne, royal printer* <sup>(43)</sup>, splendidly organized around the theme that "the full import of the discovery of printing had for the first time (in the mid-sixteenth century) been understood by everyone concerned."

### 5.2. Mercantilism: Shakespeare

5.21. The first climax in the history of printing and publishing occurs in 1550 rather than 1500, because only then were the full implications of the cultural-political dynamism inherent in the mass production of texts perceived and acted upon—not by the politically innocent humanists of the first century of printing but by the Reformation and Counter-Reformation princes and republics who emerge in the 1550s to resist the anarchy attendant on the collapse of the Holy Roman Empire, and who have their culmination in the grand European system of Louis XIV. Hence Siebert <sup>(39)</sup> defines the next complicity of interest in terms of the so-called mercantilist attempts of the Tudors and Stuarts and their contemporaries "to secure the printers as allies [for their authoritarian policies] through a system of trade protection and printing monopolies," whereby the rationalization of the local markets emerging from the wreck of the earlier free trade area, as well as the stabilization of the local religious confession, were achieved by the incorporation of stationers' companies to execute the governmental prerogatives of censorship and limitation of output (number of presses, journeymen, exclusive right to copy, etc.).

5.22. For England, little of general scope has appeared apart from the relevant chapters in Siebert (Sir Walter Greg's Ford lectures have been published after the close of our period); for France, little apart from Mr. David T. Pottinger's paper on "Censorship in France during the Ancient Regime" <sup>(44)</sup>. However the story of the conversion of Wittenberg from a predominantly agricultural town to the centre of the monopoly production of Lutheran Bibles as a result of Luther's collaboration with a succession of capitalist-publishers (Cranach, Döring, Luft, Selfisch, etc.) has been well documented by Dr. Hanz Volz's use of local archives in his *Hundert Jahre Wittenberger Bibeldruck, 1522-1626* <sup>(45)</sup>. The similar emergence of Geneva as a result of Calvin's complicity with émigré French publishers such as the Estiennes, and the city's attempts to deal with the problems of over-production, labour unrest and retaliatory censorship in foreign markets which were the inevitable concomitants of mercantilist restrictionism, have been likewise authoritatively presented by means of local archives in the latter part of Mrs. Armstrong's book on Robert Estienne <sup>(43)</sup> and by M. Paul Chaix's *Recherches sur l'imprimerie à Genève de 1550 à 1564* <sup>(46)</sup>. The long-term effect of mercantilist restrictionism on such a volatile enterprise as

27. SCARAFONI, C. S. The Union Catalogue of Italian Libraries. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (10) 1955, 214-215.
28. MICHEL, P.-H. Pour la réalisation des catalogues collectifs. *Libri* 5 (2) 1954, 162-271.
29. VOLLANS, R. E. Library co-operation in Great Britain. National Central Library, 1952. pp. xii, 139.
30. NATIONAL CENTRAL LIBRARY AND NATIONAL COMMITTEE ON REGIONAL LIBRARY CO-OPERATION. Recommendation on library co-operation, June 1954. N.C.L. 1954. pp. 7.
31. British Union-Catalogue of Periodicals: a record of the periodicals of the world, from the seventeenth century to the present day, in British libraries: ed. by James D. Stewart [and others]. Vol. 1-. Butterworths Scientific Publications, 1955-.
32. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 13 (5) 1954, 6.
33. JUNTKA, F. Zwei Jahre Zentralkatalog Sachsen-Anhalt. *Z. f. Bib.* 65 (5-6) 1951, 172-177.
34. *Mitteilungen der VÖB* 6 (2) 1953, 4-6; *Ibid.* 7 (2) 1954, 4-5.
35. RICHNELL, D. T. Subject union catalogues. See ref. 53, pp. 76-87.
36. SAUNDERS, W. L. Bibliographical co-operation between the libraries of Institutes of Education. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (10) 1955, 405-407.
37. Catalogo delle pubblicazioni periodiche esistenti in varie biblioteche di Roma e Firenze. Città del Vaticano, Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, 1955. pp. xvi, 496. (Sold by L'Indice di Arte Cristiana, Via Napoleone III, n.1, Roma.)

#### *Choice of Catalogue*

38. SAUVENIER-GOFFIN, E. Le catalogue par matières d'une bibliothèque universitaire. *Archives . . . de Belgique* 25 (1) 1954, 57-67.
39. FOSKETT, D. J. Catalogue and reference service. *Librarian* 41 (II) 1952, 213-218.
40. HILGENBERG, O. C. Der flächenhafte Realkatalog mit Dezimal-Klassifikation und Schlagwortregister. *Z. f. Bib.* 67 (7-8) 1953, 254-287; *Ibid.* (9-10) 1953, 342-357. (Bibliog.)
41. BROWN, J. D. Subject classification. 3rd ed. Grafton, 1939. (See Introduction, pp. 7-70.)
42. GRASBERGER, F. Systematischer Schlagwortkatalog. *Z. f. Bib.* 65 (7-8) 1951, 260-273.
43. KIND, H. Der Schlagwortkatalog der Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek Halle (Saale). Leipzig, Harrassowitz, 1953. pp. 89. (76. Beiheft zum *Z. f. Bib.*)
44. *J. of Cat. and Class., passim.*
45. TAUBER, M. F., ed. The subject analysis of library materials. Papers presented at an Institute, June 24-28, 1952. New York, Columbia Univ. School of Library Service, 1953, 147-266.
46. *Univ. of California Publications in Librarianship* 1, 1951, 1-18.
47. LILLY, O. L. The problems of measuring catalog use. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (3) 1954, 122-131.
48. LILLY, O. L. Evaluation of the subject catalog: criticisms and a proposal. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (2) 1954, 41-60.
49. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 10 (1) 1951, 8-9.
50. U.S. Library of Congress. Rules for descriptive cataloging . . . Supplement, 1949-51. (pp. 11-19.)
- 50a. JOLLEY, L. A note on "limited" and "simplified" cataloguing in the Library of Congress. *J. of Doc.* 8 (2) 1952, 99-105.
51. SEELY, P. A. Personnel in catalog departments in public libraries: a survey. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 8 (2) 1952, 39-69.
52. GJELSNESS, R. H. Catalogers then and now; availability and opportunities. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 9 (1) 1953, 12-17.
53. PIGGOTT, M., ed. Cataloguing principles and practice: an inquiry. Library Association, 1954. pp. viii, 159.

#### *Revision of Codes*

54. LUBETZKY, S. Cataloging rules and principles: a critique of the A.L.A. rules for entry and a proposed design for their revision. Washington, L.C. Processing Dept., 1953. pp. ix, 65.
55. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 9 (3) 1953, 123-142.
56. BORDEN, E. C. Revision of cataloging rules for serial entries proposed in the Lubetzky Report. *Serial Slants* 5 (3) 1954, 95-100.
57. KAPSNER, O. L. A manual of cataloging practice for Catholic author and title entries. Washington, D.C., Catholic Univ. of America Pr., 1954. pp. ix, 107.
58. CHICAGO ASSOCIATION OF LAW LIBRARIES. Second Workshop on Law Library Problems. Proceedings . . . 1953. Issued for the Assn. by Northwestern University School of Law Library, 1954. pp. 83. Mimeographed.

59. Revision of the A.L.A. cataloguing rules of entry for legal materials and related rules: report of the Committee on Cataloguing of the American Association of Law Libraries, adopted . . . June 30, 1954. *Law Lib. J.* 48 (1) 1955, 3-39.
60. ELLINGER, W. B. Non-author headings. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 10 (2) 1954, 61-73.
61. LUBETZKY, S. Non-author headings: a negative theory. [A reply to 60.] *Ibid.* 10 (3) 1954, 147-154.
62. WRIGHT, W. E. Catalogue code revision in the United States. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (7) 1955, 136-138.
63. Cataloguing Rules Subcommittee: statement on policy, procedure and decisions. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (9) 1955, 352-353.
64. Cataloguing Rules Subcommittee: Second statement . . . *Ibid.* 58 (7) 1956, 274.
65. Catalog code revision. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 12 (2) 1956, 103-107.
66. FRANCIS, F. C. (I), CHAPLIN, A. H. (II). A reconsideration of the British Museum rules for compiling the catalogues of printed books. See ref. 53, pp. 26-49.
67. WEISS, A. J. New developments in cataloguing in the *British National Bibliography*. See ref. 53, pp. 50-63.
68. MACDONALD, M. R. Cataloguing at the Armed Forces Medical Library, 1945-1952. *J. of Cat. and Class.* 9 (2) 1953, 58-78.
69. TOOTH, A. E. Cataloguing rules and practice: changes at University College, London, in anticipation of a revised code. *J. of Doc.* 12 (2) 1956, 88-93.
70. JACOBS, R. Whodunnit? *Ibid.* 8 (4) 1952, 227-231.
71. SALVAN, P. Catalogue code revision in France. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (7) 1956, 155-157.
72. FRANCE. DIRECTION DES BIBLIOTHÈQUES. Code de catalogue des imprimés communs. Dictionnaire des cas. Paris, AFNOR (Pr Z45-003), 1948.
73. AFNOR. Les catalogues alphabétiques d'auteurs et d'anonymes. Collectivités-auteurs, Congrès: choix de vedettes. (E.P. no. 859. Pr Z44-060.) See also 74.
74. LUBETZKY, S. Corporate authors. *L.C. Inf. Bull.* 13 (15) 1954, Appendix, pp. 3. [An English summary of 73.]
75. LA VEGA, J. LASSO DE. Revision of cataloguing rules in Spain. *Unesco Bull.* 10 (1) 1956, 9.
76. Revision of cataloguing rules in Germany. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (4) 1955, 72-73.
77. *Nach. f. wissen. Bib.* 4 (2) 1951, 32-34.
78. Instruktionen für den alphabetischen Katalog. Entwurf, vorgelegt vom Katalogausschuss des Verbandes der Bibliotheken des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen. Köln, Greven & Bechtold, 1952-55. (Originally proposed in *Mitteilungsblatt Nordrhein-Westfalen* 1 (3) 1951, 33-47, and discussed in subsequent issues.)
79. *Z. f. Bib.* 66 (5-6) 1952, 183-187.
80. Der alphabetische Katalog in allgemeinen öffentlichen Bibliotheken. Anweisungen. Teil 1: Regeln. Teil II. Beispielsammlung. Berlin, Volk und Wissen Volkseigener Verlag, 1951. (I. & II. Beiheft der Zeitschrift "Der Bibliothekar.")
81. VORSTIUS, J. Bericht über die Katalogkommission [und] Regeln für den alphabetischen Katalog an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken. *Z. f. Bib.* 68 (1-2) 1954, 29-63.
82. FUCHS, H. Für und wider die Preussischen Instruktionen. *Z. f. Bib. u. Bib.* 1 (3) 1954, 173-185.
83. FUCHS, H. Kommentar zu den Instruktionen für die alphabetischen Kataloge der preussischen Bibliotheken. Wiesbaden, Harrassowitz, 1955. pp. 302.
84. SAMULSKI, R. Die gegenwärtigen Probleme des alphabetischenkatalogs in Deutschland; der Stand der Neubearbeitung der Preussischen Instruktionen. *Mitteilungsblatt Nordrhein-Westfalen* N.F. 4 (3-4) 1954, 49-62.
85. SICKMANN, L. Die Ordnung der Sachtitel im alphabetischen Katalog nach der gegebenen Wortfolge (mechanische Ordnung). Erörterung einiger Grundprinzipien. Köln, Greven Verlag, 1955. pp. 39. (*Arbeiten aus dem Bibliothekar-Lehrinstitut des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen*. Heft 6.)
86. BAUTIUS, W. Katalogreform. *Z. f. Bib. u. Bib.* 1 (3) 1954, 185-208.
87. Revision of cataloguing rules in the Soviet Union by Inter-Library Cataloguing Commission of the Ministry of Culture of the RSFSR. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (11-12) 1955, 237-240. [Short list of Russian books and articles on cataloguing, p. 240.]
88. *Bibliothekar' (U.S.S.R.)* August 1955, 39.
89. BIENKOWSKI, W. Revision of cataloguing rules in Poland. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (10) 1955, 211-212.
90. *Türk Kütüphaneciler Derneği Bülteni* 3 (1) 1955. Ankara, pp. 142.
91. OKADA, N. Revision of cataloguing rules in Japan. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (10) 1955, 212-213.
92. KLIENEBERGER, H. R. Some current projects of catalogue-code revision. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (9) 1955, 341-344.

machining made possible by regularity of issue, and the distinction between the organization of capital and labour in newspaper and book printing—has been quite magnificently demonstrated in *Printing "The Times" since 1785. Some account of the means of production and changes of dress of the newspaper* (13).

5.33. In a remarkable examination of "the editorial problem in the eighteenth century" (60), Dr. Todd has pointed out the prevalence of *intentional variants within the edition* of a book (e.g., undenominated reprints, multiple impressions from the same setting of type labelled second and third "editions") which are characteristic of an age when not only is printing-house routine recognizably modern in its speed and efficiency, but the relations between author, author's friends and enemies, and publisher are likewise recognizably modern in their intimacy. These sorts of variants are due to such extra-printing-house dilemmas as the difficulty of correctly estimating the market for *pièces d'occasion*, or the personal idiosyncrasies of the now almost fully professionalized author (e.g., Dr. Johnson) (32), and are of a different order from the unintentional, intra-printing-house variants *within the issue* characteristic of the mercantilist irrationalities of the age of Shakespeare. Since this sort of eccentricity is intentional, correct analysis of its effect on the author's text no longer requires exhaustive preliminary collation of extant copies to establish its mere existence, so much as the interpretation of direct evidence of the intention which is either already patently there in any extant copy (e.g., press figures) or in documents which, from the "Shakespearian" point of view, would be merely incidental (e.g., contemporary advertisements and reviews). Even more effective, because even more direct evidence of intention, are company archives (e.g., account books and printing ledgers) which, in view of the growing rationalization of printing as a business, are more and more likely to have survived as we approach modern times (see Dr. Herbert Davis: "Bowyer's Paper Stock Ledger" (61)). Thus the results of Dr. Todd's current work on the ledger of one of the key publishers of the period—Strahan—are awaited with keen interest.

#### 5.4. *Mass Democracy*

5.41. The next, and latest, phase in the history of printing and publishing, then, is that constituted by the gradual superseding of the various Whig *élites*—through the Revolutions of 1789, 1848, the proto-welfare state of Bismarck and Lloyd-George and finally the first world war—by what Professor Altick calls the "mass audience" (8).

5.42. The impact of the mass audience on the typographical factor is of course well established, though despite M. Lucien Neipp's synopsis of the mechanical details of modern presses (31) a unified account of the history of machine-printing on the basis of the general engineering principles involved (inertia, friction, centrifugal force, etc.) is still a desideratum and until the inhibitions of commercial secrecy are overcome will continue to be so. However, three important pieces of work—Professor R. K. Webb's *The British working class reader, 1790-1848. Literacy and social tension* (62), Professor Altick's own paper and the second volume of Mr. Michael Sadleir's *XIXth Century Fiction* (17) dealing with cheap reprint publishing—have substantially advanced the study of its impact on the economic and cultural-political factors by showing how, in development of the eighteenth-century tendency, the chief dilemmas presented by the mass audience lay not within the printing house (where

the effect of human idiosyncrasy was reduced to its absolute minimum by mechanization) but in the field of distribution, and in particular of *price*; and how, in addition to the earlier split between newspaper and book publishing, there arose a further, and from the cultural viewpoint far more serious split between the conservative book publishers who in the crucial mid-century years refused to abandon the three-decker novel, and "book-manufacturers" (Sadleir), such as Bentley and especially Colburn, who virtually monopolized the mass market with their cheap reprints. In Allick's words: "It is fascinating to speculate what would have happened to the reading public, and to literature in general, if the firms which published most of the age's great writers—the Smith Elders, the Chapman and Halls, the Macmillans and Murrays and Longmans—had seriously attempted a policy of cheap original editions. . . . Cheaper and better books did become available to the additional millions who were made literate by the extension of education during the second half of the century. But by that time the great opportunity had passed. . . . The accidents of publishing . . . as much as any other single factor, caused the new audience to associate the reading habit with a certain type of reading matter, a type deplored by all contemporary observers and no less by those at a distance of a century. This in turn—increasingly as the mass audience began to influence editorial decisions—set the permanent course of publishing for the millions, with its implicit dismal assumptions regarding the level of popular taste, and so a vicious circle has been created, which has never been broken."

5.43. Analytical interest, then, tends to broaden from its previous preoccupation with eccentricities in the typography of a book to include those in its distribution—and indeed in its authorship—which show the effect of the mass audience. This calls for modifications in analytical concepts of a kind which before Chapter 10-12 of Bowers's *Principles* had barely been envisaged, and which are only now being worked out. "To assert (as is currently done) that a typographic alteration constitutes only a state is to exhibit imperfect knowledge of production methods of the 19th and 20th centuries. The bibliographer must recognize this and should establish a new set of terms which may be applied with greater accuracy to later conditions" (Jacob Blanck: *A bibliography of American literature* <sup>(62)</sup>, Preface). (Cf. "A calendar of bibliographical difficulties" <sup>(64)</sup>.) Thus interest is being shown in the use of contemporaneous anthologizing (Blanck, *op. cit.*) and of transatlantic piracies as instruments of mass distribution, and in the effect of their variants on the reception of an author's text (Carl J. Weber, in *Nineteenth-century English books* <sup>(65)</sup>). Many of these variants were due to the anthologist's or the pirate's necessary ignorance of the persistent revision which is coming to be seen as the hall-mark of modern, socially isolated, compulsive authorship, and as a bibliographical topic of considerable literary-critical importance (G. N. Ray: in *Nineteenth-century English books* <sup>(65)</sup>). Characteristic of this interest have been the study of the conflicts between authors and their publishers over the economic consequences of this compulsive revision (R. H. Super: *The publication of Landor's works* <sup>(66)</sup>), and, of even more direct literary-critical concern, the study of the conflicts within the author himself as revealed in his manuscripts (Fredson Bowers: *Whitman's Leaves of Grass* <sup>(67)</sup>).\*

\* I have tried to summarize the literary-critical implications of this analysis of manuscripts in my review in the December 1956 issue of *The Library*.

A related phenomenon has been the appearance of a number of descriptive bibliographies of major modern authors, containing extensive material relating to details of composition (manuscripts) and of distribution (censorship by the publisher to avoid obscene or seditious libel; number of copies per edition; reissues; price; piracies; binding variants) rather than of printing. Two of the most impressive have been that of Thomas Hardy by R. D. Purdy<sup>(68)</sup> and that of James Joyce by Slocum and Cahoon in the new series of *Soho Bibliographies*<sup>(69)</sup>.

5.44. Finally, then, the phase of the mass audience itself reaches something of a consummation in recent attempts, beginning with *Penguin New Writing*, to resolve the interlocking dilemmas of isolated authorship, price and mass distribution, by the pre-publication anthologizing of excerpts from books as a method not only of publicity, but more important, of permanent *rapprochement* between author and reader. The twenty-first anniversary history of Penguin books has unfortunately occurred outside our period, but a significant American venture in this field has been *New World Writing*<sup>(70)</sup>. In particular, the publishers' prefaces to each number provide invaluable confirmation of the *actuality* of our perspective of the interdependence of engineering, commerce and culture—for example, the reflection in the October 1955 issue that “the real revolution which this publication represents is the technological revolution”—book rotary-presses? rubber printing plates?—“which makes possible low-cost and widespread distribution of paper-bound books.”

## 6. BINDING

6.1. One is still obliged to treat this department of historical bibliography as a rather inconsequential appendix to the main body, principally because it has not—as yet—been fully penetrated by the mature analytico-historical method, which (as I hope is evident from earlier paragraphs) gives the more enterprising work on the history of printing and publishing its homogeneity. To quote from Mr. A. R. A. Hobson's brief but stimulating literature survey<sup>(71)</sup>, the study of the historical aspects of binding has barely emerged from the second, purely analytical phase represented by the pre-war work of Goldschmidt, G. D. Hobson and Duff, etc., who, “by careful comparison of surviving bindings, exposed the earlier myths and built up a corpus of agreed fact. . . . The Age of Synthesis . . . has dawned, but not much more. The writers of Phase 2 had accumulated enough knowledge to make sound general histories feasible—but though several of these are promised, not many have yet appeared.” Some of the most characteristic work of the period, then, has been content to extend this collational analysis of surviving bindings to the identification of the tools, etc., of individual binders working in countries, or in styles, on the margin of the classic tradition of luxury-binding (see, for example, W. S. Mitchell: *A history of Scottish bookbinding, 1432-1650*<sup>(72)</sup>; Maurice Craig: *Irish bookbindings, 1600-1800*<sup>(73)</sup>; J. B. Oldham: *English blind-stamped bindings*<sup>(74)</sup>). On the other hand, the original bibliophilic bias of the analytical study of extant bindings has been continued in the two splendid Roxburghe Club catalogues: *Twelve books in fine bindings from the library of J. W. Hely-Hutchinson. Described and discussed by H. M. Nixon*<sup>(75)</sup> and *French and Italian collectors and their bindings. Illustrated from examples in the library of J. R. Abbey by A. R. A. Hobson*<sup>(76)</sup>; and it is equally

symptomatic of the predominance of this bias that the one outstanding general history of the period, M. L.-M. Michon's *La reliure française* (77), is likewise more or less exclusively concerned with binding as *une industrie de luxe*.

6.2. Nevertheless, important evidence of the ripeness of the study of binding for an analytico-historical approach is provided by Mr. Graham Pollard's remarkable paper on "Changes in the style of bookbinding, 1550-1830" (78), read to the Bibliographical Society in February 1955. Here he is not concerned with itemizing the fine bindings of identifiable binders for the purpose of illuminating the history of book-collecting as an expression of taste, or the history of binding as an expression of applied art. He is concerned with establishing the approximate time and place of "the more general features" of anonymous, run-of-the-mill work for the purpose of illuminating "problems of text and authorship"; and he is driven to conceive changes at this level of generality in much the same way as one conceives changes in general printing-house practice: as determined by the operation of a limited number of basic variables such as the requirements of the average owner and bookseller (e.g., identification from spine; volume numbers), introduction of new materials (morocco, russia, marbled papers), etc.

However, Mr. Pollard concludes by confessing that "any attempt to sort binding style in categorics must start by being too dogmatic. We must have some challenging assertions before we begin to notice how wrong they are." A suitable motto, perhaps, for the work of the period as a whole.

## REFERENCES

## Notes

(1) The preceding survey has been based on the "Selective check list of bibliographical scholarship" that appears in each volume of *Studies in Bibliography*.

(2) Titles of articles in periodicals are only given below if they have not appeared in full in the text.

1. *The Doctrine*

1. FOXON, DAVID. The technique of bibliography. The National Book League, 1955. pp. 20.
2. HINMAN, CHARLTON. Variant readings in the First Folio of Shakespeare. *Shakespeare Quarterly* 4 (3) 1953, 279-288.
3. BOWERS, FREDSON. *Papers of the Bibliog. Soc. of America* 46 (3) 1952, 186-208.
4. FOXON, DAVID. *Library* 5 ser., 9 (1) 1954, 221-241.

2. *The Controversy*

5. BOWERS, FREDSON. *Ibid.* 5 ser., 8 (1) 1953, 1-22.
6. KEYNES, GEOFREY. *Religio Bibliographici*. *Ibid.* 5 ser., 8 (2) 1953, 63-76.
7. BENNETT, H. S. English books and readers, 1475-1557. Being a study in the history of the book trade from Caxton to the incorporation of the Stationers' Company. Cambridge University Press, 1952. pp. xiii, 336.
8. ALTICK, RICHARD D. *Studies in Bib.* 6, 1953, 3-24.
9. HOPKINSON, CECIL. A bibliography of the musical and literary works of Hector Berlioz, 1803-1869. With histories of the French music publishers concerned. Edinburgh, Edinburgh Bibliographical Society, 1951. pp. xix, 205. (Reviewed by A. Hyatt King: *Library* 5 ser., 6(2) 1951, 129-133.)
10. HOPKINSON, CECIL. A dictionary of Parisian music publishers, 1700-1950. The Author, 1954. pp. xiv, 131, pl. III. (Reviewed by A. Hyatt King: *Library* 5 ser., 10 (1) 1955, 67-71.)
11. EYLES, V. A. *Journal of the Society for the Bibliography of Natural History* 3 (2) 1955, 63-71.
12. MORISON, STANLEY. *Library* 5 ser., 9 (3) 1954, 153-175.
13. [MORISON, STANLEY.] Printing *The Times* since 1785. Some account of the means of production and changes of dress of the newspaper. Illustrated with . . . facsimiles of pages, etc. Times Publishing Co., 1953. pp. x, 195, pl. 52.

14. MUSSON, A. E. *The Typographical Association. Origins and history up to 1949.* Oxford University Press, 1954. pp. viii, 550.
  15. ABBEY, J. R. *Scenery of Great Britain and Ireland in aquatint and lithography, 1770-1860.* From the library of J. R. Abbey. A bibliographical catalogue. Privately printed, 1952. pp. xx, 399, pl. XXXIV.
  16. ABBEY, J. R. *Life in England in aquatint and lithography, 1770-1860.* Architecture, drawing books, art collections, magazines, navy and army, panoramas, etc. from the library of J. R. Abbey. A bibliographical catalogue. Privately printed, 1953. pp. xxi, 427, pl. XXXII.
  17. SADLEIR, MICHAEL. *XIX Century fiction. A bibliographical record based on his own collection by Michael Sadleir.* [With plates.] Constable & Co., 1951. 2 vol.
  18. LEWIS, WILMARTH S. *Collector's progress.* Constable & Co., 1952. pp. xviii, 245.
  19. *Book collecting and scholarship. Essays by Theodore C. Blegen [and others], etc.* Minneapolis, University of Minnesota Press, 1954. pp. 67.
  20. NISSEN, CLAUS. *Die botanische Buchillustration. Ihre Geschichte und Bibliographie.* Stuttgart, Hiersemann, 1951-52. 2 Bd.
  21. NISSEN, CLAUS. *Die illustrierten Vögelbücher. Ihre Geschichte und Bibliographie.* Stuttgart, Hiersemann, 1953. pp. 222, pl. 8.
3. *Printing histories of specific books*
22. TODD, WILLIAM B. *The printing of Johnson's Journey (1775).* *Studies in Lib.* 6, 1953, 247-254.
  23. MASSON, SIR IRVINE. *The Mainz Psalters and Canon Missae, 1457-1459.* The Bibliographical Society, 1954. pp. viii, 72, pl. VI.
  24. HINMAN, CHARLTON. *Mechanised collation at the Houghton Library.* *Harvard Lib. Bull.* 9 (1) 1955, 132-134.
  25. BOWERS, FREDSON. *On editing Shakespeare and the Elizabethan dramatists.* Philadelphia, University of Pennsylvania Library, 1955. pp. 131.
  26. PAINTER, GEORGE D. [Review of Masson's *Mainz Psalters and Canon Missae.*] *Book Collector* 3 (3) 1954, 232-234.
  27. SCHOLDERER, VICTOR. *Missale speciale Constantiense.* *Ibid.* 4 (1) 1955, 8-15.
  28. BLUM, RUDOLF. *Der Prozess Faust gegen Gutenberg. Eine Interpretation des Helmaspergerschen Notariatsinstruments, etc.* Wiesbaden, Harrasowitz, 1954. pp. 118. (Reviewed by Curt F. Bühler: *Papers of the Bibliog. Soc. of America* 48 (3) 1954, 283-288.)
4. *The factors in the general history of printing and publishing*
29. SCHMIDT-KÜNSEMÜLLER, F. A. *Die Erfindung des Buchdrucks als technisches Phänomen. Mainz, Gutenberggesellschaft, 1951.* pp. 124.
  30. RENKER, ARMIN. *Die Erfindung der Papiermaschine. Gutenberg Jahrbuch 1953,* 30-35.
  31. NEIFF, LUCIEN. *Les machines à imprimer depuis Gutenberg, etc.* Paris, Club bibliophile de France, 1951. pp. 444.
  32. SCHMIDT-KÜNSEMÜLLER, F. A. *William Morris und die neuere Buchkunst.* Wiesbaden, Harrasowitz, 1955. pp. 184.
  33. ZAPF, HERMANN. *Imprimatur 1950/51.* [1951.] 83-108.
  34. BURT, SIR CYRIL, and others. *British Journal of Statistical Psychology* 8 (1) 1955, 29-57.
  35. MORISON, STANLEY. *A tally of types cut for machine composition and introduced at the University Press, Cambridge.* Cambridge, Privately printed. 1953. pp. vii, 101.
  36. ROSNER, CHARLES. *The growth of the book-jacket. With 226 illustrations.* Sylvan Press, 1954. pp. xxxiii, 74.
  37. EDLER DE ROOVER, FLORENCE. *New facets on the financing and marketing of early printed books.* *Bulletin of the Business History Society* 27 (4) 1953, 222-230.
  38. P.E.P. *Economics of book publishing.* *Planning* 18 (330) 1951, 21-43.
  39. STEBERT, F. S. *Freedom of the press in England, 1476-1776. The rise and decline of government controls.* Urbana, University of Illinois Press, 1952. pp. xiv, 411.
  40. STRINBERG, S. H. *Five hundred years of printing, etc.* Harmondsworth, Penguin Books, 1955. pp. 277, pl. 32.
5. *The phases in the general history of printing and publishing*
41. LUCHSINGER, FRIEDRICH. *Der Basler Buchdruck als Vermittler des italienischen Geistes, 1470-1529.* Basel, Hellbing & Lichtenhahn, 1953. pp. vii, 144.
  42. GOLDSCHMIDT, E. PH. *The first Cambridge press in its European setting, etc.* Cambridge University Press, 1955. pp. x, 99, pl. II.

43. ARMSTRONG, A. E. Robert Estienne, royal printer. An historical study of the elder Stephanus. Cambridge University Press, 1954. pp. xx, 309, pl. 8.
44. POTTINGER, DAVID T. Censorship in France during the Ancient Regime. (Reprinted from the *Boston Pub. Lib. Q.*) Boston, Mass., Trustees of the Public Library of the City of Boston, 1954. pp. 39.
45. VOLZ, HANS. Hundert Jahre Wittenberger Bibeldruck, 1522-1626. Göttingen, Häntzschel, 1954. pp. 168.
46. CHAIX, PAUL. Recherches sur l'imprimerie à Genève de 1550 à 1564. Etude bibliographique, économique et littéraire. Genève, Droz, 1954. pp. 261.
47. HOFER, PHILIP. Baroque book illustration. A short survey from the collection in the Department of Graphic Arts, Harvard College Library. [With plates.] Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1951. pp. 43.
48. SOUTHERN, A. C. Elizabethan recusant prose, 1559-1582. A historical and critical account of the books of the Catholic refugees printed and published abroad and at secret presses in England together with an annotated bibliography of the same. Sands & Co., 1950. pp. xxxv, 553. (Reviewed by A. F. Allison and D. M. Rogers: *Library* 5 ser., 6 (1) 1951, 48-57.)
49. ALLISON, A. F. Franciscan books in English, 1559-1640. *Biographical Studies*, 1534-1539 3 (1) 1955, 16-65.
50. FORD, BORIS, ed. A guide to English literature. 2. The age of Shakespeare. Harmondsworth, Penguin Books, 1955. pp. 480.
51. GREG, SIR WALTER. The Shakespeare First Folio. Its bibliographical and textual history. Oxford, The Clarendon Press, 1955. pp. xvi, 496. (Reviewed by Alice Walker: *Library* 5 ser., 9 (1) 1956, 56-57; and by Charlton Hinman: *Shakespeare Quarterly* 7 (1) 1956, 97-101.)
52. HINMAN, CHARLTON. Cast-off copy for the First Folio of Shakespeare. *Shakespeare Quarterly* 6 (3) 1955, 259-273.
53. HINMAN, CHARLTON. Variant readings in the First Folio of Shakespeare. *Shakespeare Quarterly* 4 (3) 1953, 279-288.
54. WALKER, ALICE. Textual problems of the First Folio. A study of Richard III, King Lear, Troilus & Cressida, 2 Henry IV, Hamlet, and Othello. Cambridge University Press, 1953. pp. viii, 170.
55. WALKER, ALICE. Compositor determination and other problems in Shakespearean texts. Collateral substantive texts (with special reference to *Hamlet*). *Studies in Bib.* 7, 1955, 3-15; 51-67.
56. WILLIAMS, PHILIP. Two problems in the Folio text of *King Lear*. *Shakespeare Quarterly* 4 (4) 1953, 451-460.
57. DAVIES, DAVID W. The World of the Elseviers, 1580-1712. The Hague, Martinus Nijhoff, 1954. pp. vii, 159.
58. GASKELL, PHILIP. *Library* ser., 7 (2) 1952, 77-110; (3) 149-177.
59. GASKELL, PHILIP. *Book Collector* 1 (2) 1952, 98-111.
60. TODD, WILLIAM B. Bibliography and the editorial problem in the Eighteenth Century. *Studies in Bib.* 4, 1951, 41-55.
61. DAVIS, HERBERT. *Library* 5 ser., 6 (2) 1951, 73-87.
62. WEBB, R. K. The British working class reader, 1790-1848. Literacy and social tension. Allen and Unwin, 1955. pp. 192.
63. BLANCK, JACOB. A bibliography of American literature. Compiled by Jacob Blanck for the Bibliographical Society of America. New York, The Bibliographical Society of America, 1955.
64. BLANCK, JACOB. A calendar of bibliographical difficulties. *Papers of the Bibliog. Soc. of America* 49 (1) 1955, 1-18.
65. RAY, G. N., and others. Nineteenth-century English books. Some problems in bibliography. Urbana, University of Illinois Press, 1952. pp. xi, 88.
66. SUPER, R. H. The publication of Landor's works. The Bibliographical Society, 1954. pp. xi, 125.
67. WHITMAN, WALT. Whitman's manuscripts. *Leaves of Grass* (1860). A parallel text. Edited with notes and introduction by Fredson Bowers. Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1955. pp. lxxiv, 264.
68. PURDY, R. D. Thomas Hardy. A bibliographical study. Oxford University Press, 1954. pp. xiv, 388.

69. SLOCUM, JOHN J. and CALOON, HERBERT. A bibliography of James Joyce, 1882-1941. Rupert Hart-Davis, 1953. pp. 195.
70. New World Writing. First (etc.) Mentor Selection. New York, The New American Library, 1951- .
6. Binding
71. HOBSON, A. R. A. The literature of bookbinding. The National Book League, 1954. pp. 15.
72. MITCHELL, W. S. A history of Scottish bookbinding, 1432-1650. Edinburgh, University of Aberdeen, 1955. pp. xii, 151.
73. CRAIG, MAURICE J. Irish bookbindings, 1600-1800. Cassell and Co., 1954. pp. xi, 47, pl. 58.
74. OLDHAM, J. BASIL. English blind-stamped bindings. Cambridge University Press, 1952. pp. xiii, 72, pl. 61.
75. NIXON, H. M. Twelve books in fine bindings from the library of J. W. Hely-Fitchinson. Described and discussed by Howard M. Nixon. Oxford, Printed for presentation to members of the Roxburghe Club, 1953. pp. x, 77, pl. 14.
76. HOBSON, A. R. A. French and Italian collectors and their bindings. Illustrated from examples in the library of J. R. Abbey by A. R. A. Hobson. Oxford, Printed for presentation to members of the Roxburghe Club, 1953. pp. xliii, 190.
77. MICHON, L.-M. La reliure française. Paris, Larousse, 1951. pp. 144, pl. 64.
78. POLLARD, GRAHAM. Changes in the style of bookbinding, 1550-1830. *Library* 5 ser., 11 (2) 1956, 71-94.
79. TILLOTSON, KATHLEEN MARY. Novels of the Eighteen-forties. Oxford, The Clarendon Press, 1954. pp. viii, 328.
80. INNIS, HAROLD ADAMS. The Bias of Communication. Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 1951. pp. ix, 226.
81. INNIS, HAROLD ADAMS. Changing Concepts of Time. [Toronto], University of Toronto Press, 1952. pp. vii, 142.

## NOTE

Three important items have come to my notice too late for inclusion in the above survey: the long introductory chapter to Mrs. Kathleen Tillotson's *Novels of the Eighteen-forties* (<sup>79</sup>), and two collections of essays and lectures by H. A. Innis, late Professor of Political Economy in the University of Toronto, entitled *The bias of communication* (<sup>80</sup>) and *Changing concepts of time* (<sup>81</sup>).

Mrs. Tillotson is concerned to account for the emergence of the novel as the dominant literary form. This she does largely in terms of the unprecedented *rapport* between novelist and public, resulting from a new and economically more rational mode of mass-distribution—serial publication: and in so doing I take it she demonstrates the intimate relationship between bibliographical and literary criticism in general, and the importance of "extra-printing-house" topics for the nineteenth century in particular.

Professor Innis was attempting to assemble evidence of this conditioning effect of the "physical media of communication" as the foundation for a general critique of civilizations somewhat in the manner of A. J. Toynbee; and though he produced little more than a series of repetitive and at times disturbingly inconsequential sketches, nevertheless I take them to demonstrate at least the possibility of a similar intimate relationship between bibliographical and historical criticism. In particular, Innis' attempt to contain the peculiarities of the successive media—stone, clay, papyrus, parchment and paper—within a single conceptual scheme seems to me crucial if bibliography is ever to enter its ultimate domain, the study, in Greg's words, of "every sort of record made by the symbolic representation of language," from cuneiform cylinders onwards.

I. W.

## BIBLIOGRAPHICAL ORGANIZATION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIES

By A. J. WALFORD, M.A., PH.D., F.L.A., J.I.B., *Ministry of Defence, London*

### I. BIBLIOGRAPHICAL ORGANIZATION

THE growth of bibliographical organization, both international and national, during the period under review has been remarkable. The year 1948 is an important starting-point, since it was then that a joint Unesco/Library of Congress Bibliographical Planning Group was formed. Its recommendations, contained in Kathrine O. Murra's *Second interim report*,\* were revised in the light of national comments, and the resulting restatement was published as *Bibliographical services; their present state and possibilities of improvement*, prepared by Verner W. Clapp.† It was this document which provided the basis for discussion at the conference on the improvement of bibliographical services, held in Paris on November 7-10, 1950.

The general report of the international conference made it clear that a truly international bibliographical service could rest only on the foundation of a comprehensive range of national bibliographical services. The report went on to recommend the establishing of national bibliographical planning bodies, to enumerate the desirable parts of a national bibliography and to suggest the setting up by Unesco of an international advisory committee. Following the Unesco General Conference of November/December 1952, the International Advisory Committee on Bibliography was set up.

The provision of an annual report on the international development of bibliographical services was an early concern of the Advisory Committee. A preliminary report, *Bibliographical services: progress achieved in national and international services, November 1950-July 1951*‡ was succeeded by the detailed survey, *Bibliographical services throughout the world: first and second annual reports . . . 1951-1952, 1952-1953*, by Mlle L.-N. Malclès,§ and the third annual report, 1953-54, by R. L. Collison.¶ The Collison report gives returns for some sixty countries and areas, and the returns themselves range over nine main topics: national commission for bibliography; library co-operation; national bibliography; types of material (official publications, music, maps, theses, serials, films, etc.); periodical indexes; current bibliographies of special subjects; training in bibliography; bibliographical desiderata; and principal bibliographical publications. The appendices to these annual reports are particularly useful: Part II of the annual report for 1952-53 is devoted to the

\* Appendix to Library of Congress. *Inf. Bull.*, September 13-19, 1949.

† Washington, Unesco. 1950. ‡ Paris, Unesco. 1952. § Paris, Unesco. 1955.

¶ Paris, Unesco/CUA/72. November 10, 1955.

bibliographical activities of international organizations, while Part II of the 1953-54 report lists mapping services in sixty-two countries and areas.

Since 1951, national bodies have planned their bibliographical programmes on the lines of the ideal minimum national bibliography agreed upon at the 1950 Conference. Recommendations 1 and 2 form a valuable yardstick for the national effort; they cover the establishment of a national planning body and the following bibliographical publications<sup>(1)</sup>:

- (i) A general national bibliography of all books and pamphlets published and on sale in each country, regardless of the language in which they are written, and preferably including published academic publications, theses and Government publications of public interest. Depending on local conditions, these three categories of publications might be published in separate bibliographies.
- (ii) A bibliography of books and pamphlets published but not on sale.
- (iii) An index to important articles in periodicals, including newspapers.
- (iv) A bibliography of maps and atlases.
- (v) A bibliography of musical works.
- (vi) A bibliography of audio-visual materials.
- (vii) A bibliography of unpublished theses and academic publications.
- (viii) A bibliography of local government publications.
- (ix) A directory of periodicals and newspapers currently published.
- (x) A directory of publishers and booksellers.
- (xi) An indexed directory of learned societies, institutes, libraries, and other related organizations. Consideration should also be given to the publication of select lists, annotated or otherwise, of books and articles and periodicals.

It is significant that the British comment to Unesco on national bibliographical services emphasized the need for a national bibliography based on a well-enforced system of legal deposit in a national library; it also emphasized the role of selective bibliography<sup>(2)</sup>.

Knud Larsen's *National bibliographical services; their creation and operation*\* gives contrasted examples of national bibliographical services in the case of the U.S.A., Denmark and the Dominican Republic. As early as 1951 it was reported<sup>(3)</sup> that there were more than forty national bibliographical working groups, with four new ones in process of formation. Twelve countries which have initiated national bibliographies since 1945 are listed by V. W. Clapp and K. O. Murra<sup>(4)</sup>, and Helen F. Conover's *Current national bibliographies (1955)* mentions a number of national bibliographies which have begun publication since 1951. These fall into two groups: the Latin American countries (Brazil, Colombia, Costa Rica and the Caribbean Commission) and Eastern European countries (Czechoslovakia and Rumania).

According to Edward Carter<sup>(5)</sup>, a national bibliographical service involves not only the publication of a national bibliography, but co-operative cataloguing for the principal libraries, co-operative acquisition, advisory services, and liaison with major foreign bibliographical and abstracting services. This functional approach is also underlined by R. B. Downs<sup>(6)</sup>, who enumerates four phases of the field of bibliographical control: "(a) Complete recording of all types of printed and other types of library materials, as produced; (b) the systematic acquisition of these materials in libraries and other depositories; (c) the location of materials through union catalogs, union lists and like devices; (d) provision of subject bibliographies in all areas."

The problems of bibliographical control have been discussed at greater

\* Paris, Unesco, 1953.

length and by various specialists in *Bibliographic organization*, edited by Jesse H. Shera and Margaret E. Egan.\* Three main aspects are taken: the functional, subject and management approaches. "Subject approach" deals in some detail with the characteristics of the literature, problems of use and bibliographic organization in the fields of the humanities, social sciences and natural sciences. Dr. Shera and Miss Egan have restated the case in their "A review of the present state of librarianship and documentation" (7). The problems, for them, fall into five major groups:

- (1) those of providing physical accessibility;
- (2) those related to the provision of services ensuring content accessibility;
- (3) those deriving from the new demands being made upon classification;
- (4) problems of agency—who is to be responsible for each part of the process—and the provision of competent personnel; and
- (5) the task of stimulating research which will serve not only to disclose much-needed factual information but also to interpret the entire process of bibliographic organization as an intellectual discipline in its own right.

An important British contribution, covering in outline many phases of the subject, is Ronald Staveley's *Notes on modern bibliography*.† This timely survey is based on a series of lectures given at the School of Librarianship and Archives, University College, London. Full utilization of material, contends the author, may be hampered by what he terms "inadequate publication" (periodical form; copyright difficulties; the language problem, etc.) and "inadequate records" (bibliographies; indexes; abstracting journals; directories of sources and the like). Mechanized bibliographical aids are also touched upon.

Supplementing Staveley to some extent is a study on "Some lacuna in foreign bibliography," by R. W. Wadsworth (8). Taking as his field current national bibliographies, periodical literature and special types of material (e.g., Government publications), the author provides some significant examples of gaps.

Unesco, as the supervisory body, has been approached by the representatives of the major fields of knowledge regarding the lack of bibliographical organization in those fields. Unesco has, accordingly, set up an Advisory Committee for Documentation in the Natural Sciences, a Committee for the Co-ordination of Documentation in the Social Sciences, a Committee on bibliography of the International Council for Philosophy and Humanistic Studies, and, as we have seen, an International Advisory Committee on Bibliography. The International Council of Scientific Unions has established an International Abstracting Service, and AGARD (Advisory Group for Aeronautic Research and Development of NATO) has a Documentation Committee which attempts, among other things, to co-ordinate abstracting services in its field (9).

The investigation of gaps in bibliographical coverage becomes particularly revealing when specific subjects are examined and the opinion of experts is brought to bear. The Unesco publication, *Gaps in the existing specialized international bibliographies: enquiries into bibliographic organization in the two specific fields of astronomy and town planning*, by Paule Salvan,‡ is a specimen

\* Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1951.

† Library Association, 1954.

‡ Paris, January 21, 1955. See also "Indexing services of *Chemical abstracts*, *Current list of medical literature*, and *Quarterly cumulative index medicus* in the field of medical sciences," *Med. Lib. Assn. Bl.* 43 1955, 474-483, for world coverage of chemical and medical literature.

check—itself not wholly exhaustive—which could very profitably be extended to many other specific subject fields.

## 2. GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES

**UNIVERSAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES.** The *Library of Congress catalog . . . Books: authors* ("properly an accessions list, representing works cataloged by the Library of Congress and by the libraries contributing to its cooperative cataloging program")<sup>(10)</sup> and the *Library of Congress catalog . . . Books: subjects* (1950-) have been supplemented (1953-55) by separate parts for *Maps and atlases* (two per annum, cumulated annually); *Motion pictures and filmstrips* (three quarterly issues, cumulated annually), and *Music and phonorecords* (two per annum, cumulated annually). As an exhaustive list of U.S. maps and atlases, etc., the respective parts of the U.S. Copyright Office *Catalog of copyright entries* (3rd series, 1947-) still have pride of place.

The Catalogues of the British Museum have been authoritatively described in three articles: Part 1. Printed books, by F. C. Francis; Part 2. Manuscripts, by T. C. Skeat; Part 3. Oriental printed books and manuscripts, by F. C. Francis<sup>(11)</sup>. It has been pointed out that at the present rate of publication, the *General catalogue of printed books* (1931-) is not likely to reach the letter U (which may contain much United Nations material) until 1998<sup>(12)</sup>.

This being the present state of affairs, for those libraries which cannot afford to purchase the Library of Congress catalogues, the third supplement, 1928-50, to the *Catalogue of the London Library* (1953) is particularly welcome. The coverage dates of the *Catalogue* and the *Subject index* have been brought closer together by the appearance of Vol. 4, 1938-1953, of the *Subject index of the London Library* (1955). As bibliographical tools these two publications rank high.

**GUIDES TO REFERENCE BOOKS.** The appearance of the 7th edition of the *Guide to reference books*, by Constance M. Winchell (1951), has been a bibliographical landmark. It has some 6,500 entries, arranged roughly in Dewey order, but with emphasis on disciplines. Annotations are excellent, accuracy is of a high standard, and criteria were provided for a number of classes of material (e.g., encyclopaedias; atlases). A *Supplement, 1950-1952*, by C. M. Winchell and Olive A. Johnson (1954), adds about 1,000 items. Supplements appear regularly in the January and July issues of *College and research libraries* (1954-).

The scope in *Les sources du travail bibliographique*, by Mlle Louise-Noëlle Malclès\* is more ambitious than that of Miss Winchell's *Guide*, in that Tome 2. *Bibliographies spécialisées (sciences humaines)* includes for many subjects the principal periodicals, treatises and specialized monographs. The work is strongest, naturally, for French material and for the period 1940-50. Tome 1, *Bibliographies générales*, has a lengthy section on Slavonic and Balkan bibliographies, a pattern which is repeated in Tome 2 for the languages, literatures and histories of those countries, contributed by specialists. The same author's *Cours de bibliographie*† is intended for university students and those

\* Genève, E. Droz, t. 1-2 (3 v.), 1950-52.

† Genève, E. Droz, 1954.

taking library examinations, and has distinct limitations as a general bibliographical tool. Basic works are asterisked.

*Handbuch der bibliographischen Nachschlagewerke*, by Wilhelm Totok and Rolf Weitzel,\* includes some 2,000 reference tools, providing brief notes in most cases. The layout is admirable and the material is up to date, half of the contents being devoted to general bibliographies and reference material.

*Reference library stock*, by L. R. McColvin, assisted by R. L. W. Collison,† is intended for the reference librarian in the building up of stock and for the student. Basic items are marked accordingly. Emphasis is on British material (which includes selected periodicals in the various subjects) and there is a subject index. *Basic reference sources*, by Louis Shores,‡ a second edition of *Basic reference books*, concentrates on English-language material and, at that, is very largely American.

New editions of two esteemed guides have appeared: the second edition of A. D. Roberts's *Introduction to reference books*,§ and second and third editions of *Reference books . . .* compiled by Mary Neill Barton.||

**BIBLIOGRAPHIES OF BIBLIOGRAPHY.** The first two volumes (A-E, F-N) of an expanded, four-volume edition ("the 3rd and final edition") of Theodore Besterman's *A world bibliography of bibliographies* appeared.¶ The second edition (1947-49) had recorded 63,776 bibliographies. When completed, this new edition will list some 80,000 bibliographies of various kinds, in more than forty-five different languages, under some 12,000 headings and subheadings. It is without doubt the largest undertaking of its kind and, as the product of one man's researches, it is in very select company.

R. L. Collison's *Bibliographies, subject and national*\*\* is primarily of value to the student. The annotations are uniformly good and coverage is strong in the fields of the fine arts, language and literature, at the expense of technology. National bibliographies are confined to those of Great Britain, the United States and France, and the index is to topics only. A useful contribution is the indication, here and there, of bibliographical gaps (e.g., in the case of the Christian religions, and of sport). An admirable supplement to Collison's *Bibliographies* is the mimeographed *Handlist of bibliographies on exhibition at the Hastings Conference, 27th September to 1st October, 1954*.†† This lists 661 bibliographies, general and special, current and retrospective, with prices of items which are still in print.

Archer Taylor's *A history of bibliographies of bibliography*‡‡ is a scholarly and critical survey, at its best on earlier centuries. Locations in United States libraries are given for the rarer items mentioned. *The bibliographical history of anonyma and pseudonymia*, by Archer Taylor and Fredric J. Mosher,§§ also calls for notice here.

**INCUNABULA.** One noteworthy contribution has been the attractively produced *A catalogue of the fifteenth-century books in the University Library, Cambridge*, compiled by J. C. T. Oates.||| The 4,249 items are arranged in

\* Frankfurt am Main, Klostermann, 1954. † Grafton, 1952. ‡ Chicago, ALA, 1954.  
§ Library Association, 1951. ¶ Baltimore, Enoch Pratt Free Library, 1951; 1954.

¶ Genève, Societas Bibliographica, 1955. \*\* Crosby Lockwood, 1951.

†† Library Association, London and Home Counties Branch.

‡‡ New Brunswick, N.J., Scarecrow Press, 1955.

§§ Chicago, Univ. of Chicago Press, 1951.

||| Cambridge University Press, 1954.

"Proctor order." Entries are brief, but throughout the user is directed to the best published description of each book, and there are adequate indexes.

**NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES.** *Current national bibliographies*, compiled by Helen F. Conover,\* is of first-rate importance. The coverage indicated by the title is liberally interpreted to include not only general national bibliographies, but periodical indexes, lists of Government publications, and directories of newspapers and periodicals of sixty-seven countries and areas. Two hundred and forty-nine items are listed in all. The annotations are really informative and irregularity of publication is indicated.

The second edition of Olga Pinto's *Le bibliografie nazionali*,† by way of contrast, is confined to general national bibliographies proper and its country range is more limited; but it has the advantage of being retrospective. Arrangement is chronological under countries, which are in alphabetical order.

The *British national bibliography* (1950-) has proved itself to be an indispensable tool. As from 1951, quarterly cumulations began to appear. It was hoped to produce a five-yearly cumulation at the end of 1954, but at the time insufficient support was promised and only a *Cumulated Index, 1950-1954* was published (1955). In introducing the *B.N.B.* in its very early days, Mr. F. C. Francis noted (18) that maps and music were excluded but that, as they formed distinctive groups of their own, he hoped that the Council would eventually extend its operations to issue a separate *British national music bibliography* and a *British national map bibliography*. Nothing has so far materialized, although tentative efforts are being made in these fields, as in the field of British Government publications, to arrange for the provision of a complete bibliographical record.

P. G. Morrison has rounded off his *Index of printers, publishers and booksellers in A. W. Pollard and G. R. Redgrave, "A short title catalogue"* (1950) by completing a similar *Index of printers, publishers and booksellers in Donald Wing's "Short-title catalogue"* . . . 1641-1700.‡

In the case of German bibliography, the cleavage between East and West has become more pronounced than ever with the publication of the cumulated *Deutsche Bibliographie . . . 1945-1950* (1952-) at Frankfurt am Main, and of the parallel East German *Deutsches Bücherverzeichnis, 1941-1950* (1952-) at Leipzig (14).

The monthly *Canadiana*, cumulated annually, replaced the annual *Canadian catalogue of books*.§ It is a considerable advance on its predecessor and includes Canadian Government publications, both central and provincial. With the appearance of Marie Tremaine's *A bibliography of Canadian imprints, 1751-1800*,|| characterized by its ample bibliographical descriptions, the state of Canada's national bibliography has become increasingly satisfactory.

After an interval of some twenty years, publication has been resumed of Charles Evans's *American bibliography* [1629-1820], with Vol. 13, covering 1799-1800, edited by Clifford K. Shipton (1955).

Something has already been said of the national bibliographies which have been initiated in East European and Latin American countries. So far as the

\* Washington, Library of Congress, 1955. A revision and expansion of the list compiled by L. Heyl (1939, 1942), thereafter published serially in *L.C. Q. Jl. of current acquisitions*, 1949-53.

† Firenze, Olschki, 1951.

‡ Charlottesville, Va., University of Kentucky Press, 1955.

§ Ottawa, vol. 1- . 1951- .

|| Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 1952.

U.S.S.R. is concerned, it is interesting to note that the excellent and comprehensive Library of Congress *Monthly list of Russian accessions* (April 1948- ) dropped its unlocated-books section after July 1954. The companion, *East European accessions list*, on the same pattern, began publication with the September/October 1951 issue. A third Library of Congress venture in the field of foreign national bibliographies has been *Southern Asia publications in western languages: a quarterly accessions list* (1952-). In 1955 the scope of this list was extended to include material in non-Western languages.

PERIODICALS. Some measure of the immense growth of periodical literature in recent years may be had by comparing the 7th edition of Ulrich's *Periodicals directory*\* with the 6th edition (1951). The 7th edition carries 14,000 titles, the 6th edition 10,000 titles. Foreign coverage has been notably increased.

The problems of mobilization of periodical material have correspondingly grown, and a number of important union lists of periodicals have been put out. A handy survey of the lists appearing during the period 1945-55 has been drawn up by Miss H. Margaret Gummer in her article, "Catalogues and bibliographies of periodicals: a survey of the more important works published in the British Commonwealth and the United States of America since 1945" (15).

The most ambitious list of all has been the *British union-catalogue of periodicals: a record of the periodicals of the world, from the seventeenth century to the present day, in British libraries*. Vol. 1, covering A-C, appeared in 1955.† It is hoped to complete publication of the fourth volume by December 1957. Claiming to be fuller than any catalogue of periodicals yet published, *B.U.C.O.P.* will contain particulars of more than 140,000 titles in 440 libraries. This is a milestone in the progress of union cataloguing. Those who are accustomed to using the *World list* have found two important differences between it and *B.U.C.O.P.*: the latter enters serials under their earliest form of title, and it uses a fresh set of symbols for denoting libraries. The inclusion in *B.U.C.O.P.* of annuals is very welcome and so, too, are the entries for earlier newspapers.

In 1951 the Library of Congress began publication of the monthly *Serial titles newly received* [in the Library]. In January 1953 this publication changed its name and scope. As *New serial titles*, under the sponsorship of the Joint Committee of the "Union list of serials," it lists serials which began publication after December 31, 1949, and which are received by the Library of Congress and some 150 co-operating libraries.‡ As such, *New serial titles* serves as a continuing supplement to the *Union list of serials*, of which the second supplement, 1944-49, to the second edition, appeared in 1953.§ About a thousand new titles are listed each month in *New serial titles*, which also provides Dewey (15th edition) classification numbers. As an outcome, in 1955 *New serial titles: classed subject arrangement* began to appear monthly; this should be a welcome check-list for libraries with subject specializations.

Three period bibliographies made their appearance: *A bibliography of English corantos and periodical newsbooks, 1620-1642*, by Folke Dahl (1952);¶ an expansion of an earlier list made in 1938; *A handlist of English provincial newspapers and periodicals, 1700-1760*, by G. A. Cranfield (1952)¶ a considerable advance on

\* New York, Bowker, 1953.

† Butterworths Scientific Publications, vol. 1, 1955.

‡ Washington, Library of Congress, 1953-.

§ New York, Wilson, 1953.

¶ Bibliographical Society, 1952.

¶ Cambridge Bibliographical Society. Monographs 2. 1952.

the coverage of *The Times tercentenary handlist* within its limits; and *Index and finding list of serials published in the British Isles, 1789-1832*, by W. S. Ward (1953).<sup>\*</sup> The last-mentioned is complementary to Miss Gregory's *Union list of serials* and the *University Union catalogue* of 1937, in that it excludes holdings listed in them. It covers some 3,500 serials and gives locations (using B.U.C.O.P. symbols) in about 350 libraries, including ninety-four newspaper offices.

Following in the wake of the Cambridge University Library, the Bodleian Library produced its *Current foreign and Commonwealth periodicals in the Bodleian Library and in other Oxford libraries* (1953. First supplement, 1954). It has nearly 6,000 entries but lacks the subject indexes which appear as appendices to the two Cambridge lists.

A good example of a regional union list of periodical holdings is the *London union list of periodicals*, edited by K. A. Mallaber and P. M. de Paris (1951).<sup>†</sup> The locations, in 230 libraries in the Greater London area, of the 1,500 "carefully chosen titles" is particularly revealing regarding deficiencies. Work was begun in 1955 on a new edition of L.U.L.O.P.

The Library of Congress has been responsible for a number of admirable regional lists of serials. *Postwar foreign newspapers: a union list* (1953) records the holdings of seventy-six United States libraries. This includes Russian newspapers, but these are more fully covered in *Russian, Ukrainian and Belorussian newspapers, 1917-1953: a union list* (1953). Particularly valuable is *Serial publications of the Soviet Union, 1939-1951: a preliminary checklist*, compiled by Rudolf Smits (1951). An appendix provides a subject guide to the 3,349 periodicals listed.

Important changes have been made in the publication pattern of the Library Association's *Subject index to periodicals*. As from January/March 1954 it began to appear quarterly, the fourth quarter being the annual cumulation. This was a very necessary step in making periodical source-material more promptly available. In the same year regional lists were begun, and by the end of 1955 the only English counties not covered were Huntingdon and Rutland. Scotland is given a special list. The regional lists have enabled the compilers not only to bring into prominence local material hitherto hidden away in the *Subject index* proper, but also to intensify coverage of facilities by drawing more fully on local periodicals. The regional lists for 1955 include a check-list of relevant books and pamphlets, compiled from B.N.B.

*Index bibliographicus: directory of current periodical abstracts and bibliographies*. Vol. 1. *Science and technology* (1951); Vol. 2. *Social sciences, education, humanistic studies*<sup>‡</sup> can be conveniently dealt with at this point. The U.D.C. arrangement of the second edition of 1931 is preserved, but greater use is made of broad headings and the lack of analytical entries impedes its value as a reference tool on a specific topic. It should be added that the symbols used for denoting frequency of publication and the like are somewhat cryptic and the whole suffers by comparison with the really first-class Royal Society publication, *A list of periodicals and bulletins containing abstracts published in Great Britain* (2nd edition, August 1950). Nevertheless, the coverage of the two volumes is immense and might well serve as a point of departure for more specific projects.

The *Aslib Index to theses accepted for higher degrees in the universities of*

<sup>\*</sup> Lexington, University of Kentucky Press, 1953.

<sup>†</sup> Library Association, London and Home Counties Branch, 1951.

<sup>‡</sup> Paris, Unesco, 1952.

*Great Britain and Ireland*. Vol. I: 1950-1951 (1953); Vol. II: 1951-1952 (1955) fills an important gap as a national bibliography of theses. Vol. I lists 2,182 theses; Vol. II contains over 3,000. Each volume has a complete author index. An adequate subject index to such a work would undoubtedly be very lengthy, and it is regrettable that the subject index to Vol. II does not go far beyond mere general topic headings.

The scope of *Library science abstracts* (1950-) has been steadily widening. It now includes conference papers, reports, pamphlets and the like, as well as more than 175 periodicals. A survey of the progress made by *L.S.A.* during its first five years has been contributed by its present editor, H. A. Whatley<sup>(16)</sup>. A new venture in librarianship is *Contents in advance: current contents of library and documentation literature* (eleven issues yearly).<sup>\*</sup> This journal reproduces title pages of some 120 periodicals, and—in theory, at least—this is something which can be done without much time lag. The venture has some of the disadvantages of the short cut, since the titles of articles may well be misleading. "Signposts: some selections from the [year's] special library literature" draws upon books, pamphlets and articles, and is designed primarily to help personnel in small libraries.<sup>†</sup>

The Library Association has given praiseworthy attention to children's literature during the period. The compilation of *Books for young people. Group I: Under eleven* (1952; 2nd edition, 1955) and *Group II: Eleven to thirteen plus* (1953; 2nd edition, 1954; Supplement, 1955) has proved a highly successful operation. There is, naturally, some danger in any arbitrary adherence to a rigid age division of tastes, but on the whole the age grouping has been applied with understanding. Group III will complete the series. Finally, a specialized study—*Children's periodicals in the XIXth century*, by S. A. Egoff (1951).<sup>‡</sup>

Percy H. Muir writes primarily as a bibliographer in his attractively produced *English children's books, 1600-1900*,<sup>§</sup> which is a valuable source for references and out-of-the-way information.

The much-enlarged fifth edition of the National Book League catalogue, *Books about books* (1955), is an interesting departure from the previous edition (1944), in that it is a classified catalogue based on the Bliss Bibliographic Classification. A bibliographical gap has been filled by *Titles in series published prior to January 1953*, compiled by Eleanor A. Baer.<sup>||</sup> Seven hundred and fifty series are dealt with, and they are not confined to English language material.

**PHILOSOPHY.** One of several bibliographies published with the financial aid by Unesco is the *Bibliographia philosophica, 1934-45*, edited by G. A. de Brie. Vol. II, *Bibliographia philosophiae*, appeared in 1954.<sup>¶</sup> Its 25,000 classified entries concern the literature (books, articles, reviews) of philosophical systems. (Vol. I (1950) treats the history of philosophy.) Further volumes are planned to cover five-year periods.

The Library of Congress publication, *Philosophical periodicals: an annotated world list*, by David Baumgardt (1952), covers 489 titles in "some 71 political areas." Subject scope and nature of contents are indicated in each case.

\* Philadelphia, 1955-.

† *Aslib. Proc.*, 5 (1) 1953, 27-39 (covering 1952); 6 (2) 1954, 119-128 (covering 1953); 7 (2) 1955, 111-122 (covering 1954); 8 (2) 1956, 122-134 (covering 1955).

‡ Library Association pamphlet no. 8, 1951.

§ Batsford, 1954.

|| Washington, D.C., Scarecrow Press, 1953 (i.e., 1954).

¶ Utrecht, Spectrum, 1954.

*Professional problems in psychology*, by R. S. Daniel and C. M. Louttit\* is a guide to the literature of psychology in the practical sense: it not only provides lists of reference books and journals, but advises regarding the use of libraries and the handling of source material. It conveniently supplements C. M. Louttit's rather dated *Handbook of psychological literature* (1932).

RELIGION. A sound bibliographical tool, both broad in its range and thorough in its treatment, is *A bibliography of bibliographies in religion*, by John C. Barrow.† It is an annotated list of all separately published bibliographies and omits bibliographies appended to books. Both Christian and non-Christian religions are covered up to 1950. Arrangement is systematic, with chronological subdivision.

Dr. Williams's Library specializes in theology, ecclesiastical history, philosophy and allied subjects. Its *Catalogue of accessions, 1900-1950*‡ is an extensive author catalogue with a particularly useful supplement which lists periodicals, society publications, connected series, etc., acquired during the period.

One of the virtues of the *Index to religious periodical literature, 1949-1952*, prepared by librarians of the American Theological Library Association,§ is that it attempts to avoid overlap with existing indexing services. None of the thirty-one religious periodicals indexed is covered by the *Reader's guide to periodical literature* or the *International index to periodicals*. Indexing is thorough and includes book reviews. Vol. 1 of the *International bibliography of the history of religions*, published under the auspices of the International Council for Philosophy and Humanities, appeared in 1952 (Leiden; annual).

SOCIAL SCIENCES. The improvement of social science documentation has been an important item on the Unesco programme, particularly since 1949 and the setting up of the International Committee for Social Science Documentation. It was early realized that the documentation of the social sciences was more complex than in the case of the natural sciences; the material was more varied and scattered, and equally varied were the languages and subjects within its orbit (17). Margaret E. Egan has stressed the need for adequate abstracting services for the social sciences, while acknowledging the diversity and diffuseness of material (18).

A pioneer Unesco effort in this ill-charted expanse has been the admirable *A selected inventory of periodical publications* (Bibliographies in the social sciences, 1952); and *Supplement I* (1953). This gives systematic and detailed information on seventy-four major periodical bibliographies, indexing and abstracting services, and is supported by facsimiles and numerous indexes. With it should be coupled two volumes in the Documentation in the social sciences series—the *World list of social science periodicals* (1953) and the *International repertory of social science documentation centres* (1952). The former supplies systematic data on nearly 600 periodicals, arranged under countries and referring to the *Selected inventory* when details are available there. Again, there are numerous indexes. The *International repertory* is highly selective, singling out only some ninety national and international centres for description.

\* New York, Prentice-Hall, 1953.

‡ Dr. Williams's Trust, 1955.

† Ann Arbor (Michigan), Edwards, 1955.

§ American Theological Library Association, 1953.

Two further Unesco publications, which may well be taken together, the one being retrospective and the other current, are: *Theses in the social sciences; an analytical catalogue of unpublished doctorate theses, 1940-50* (1952), listing—for a crucial period when such theses were not likely to be published—the titles of 3,215 theses presented in the universities of twenty-three countries, and the *International register of current team research in the social sciences* (1955). In the case of the Unesco quarterly *Current sociology* (1952-), the subject scope is decidedly narrower; numbers devoted to the *International bibliography of sociology* alternate with trend reports, supported by bibliographies.

A major achievement has been the completion of Vols. VII-IX of the *London bibliography of the social sciences*, covering the period 1936-50.\* The holdings catalogued are those of the British Library of Political and Economic Science—the largest library of its kind in the world—and of the Edward Fry Library of International Law, housed in the same premises. Non-governmental periodicals and material in Slavonic languages are omitted. The subject arrangement and the wealth of official publications make this bibliography indispensable to any research worker in the field.

Statistical publications are now well served by bibliographies. The United Nations' *List of statistical series collected by international organizations*† is a subject key to fifty-three statistical year-books and bulletins issued by the U.N. Statistical Office, the Specialized Agencies, and other bodies. The Library of Congress is associated with two important lists—*Statistical yearbooks: an annotated bibliography of the general statistical yearbooks of major political subdivisions of the world*, prepared by Phyllis G. Carter (1953), which ranges over more than 200 countries and areas, giving Washington locations; and *Statistical bulletins: an annotated bibliography of the general statistical bulletins of major political subdivisions of the world* (1954). In Britain, a valuable series of statistical studies has been appearing regularly in the *Journal* of the Royal Statistical Society. Twenty of these papers have been gathered together and published under the title, *Sources and nature of the statistics of the United Kingdom*, edited by Maurice G. Kendall (Vol. 1).‡ The Interdepartmental Committee on Social and Economic Research has now published three guides to official sources: No. 1. *Labour statistics* (1948; 2nd edition, 1950), a short survey rather than a detailed key; *Census reports of Great Britain, 1801-1931* (1951), a fuller and more analytical study; and *Local government statistics* (1953).

In political science, three bibliographies emanating from Unesco deserve mention. The quarterly *International political science abstracts*, Vol. 1, No. 1, 1951- (1952-) notes articles in some eighty journals and each number carries a detailed index. The annual *International bibliography of political science*, Vol. 1, 1953- (1954-) lists some 4,000 books, documents and periodical articles. Thirdly, there is the *World list of international relations periodicals*, edited by Jean Meyriat (1951), items being arranged alphabetically under the country of origin.

*Foreign affairs bibliography, 1942-1952: a selected and annotated list of books on international relations*, compiled by Henry L. Roberts,§ is the third volume in a survey which began with the year 1919. It dovetails neatly into the pattern of

\* London University: London School of Economics, 1952-55.

† New York. Statistical papers. Series M. no. 11. Rev. 1. February 1955.

‡ Oliver and Boyd, for the Society. 1952. § New York, Harper, 1955.

the *International bibliography of political science* (Vol. 1: 1953). Some 7,000 items are critically appraised and the wide range of languages, Asiatic as well as European, is a feature.

An abstracting service which has proved its excellence in a field difficult to cover internationally is *Economic abstracts*,\* June 15, 1953-. The sub-title runs: "semi-monthly reviews of abstracts on economics, finance, trade and industry, management and labour." It conveniently covers books and pamphlets as well as periodical articles. The standard of selection is high and the abstracts are uniformly good. Countries of origin of material are normally Britain, France, Germany, the Netherlands and the U.S.A.

A further item in the Unesco Documentation in the social sciences series, and the most recent, is the *International bibliography of economics*. Vols. I-II (1955). Vol. I lists more than 7,000 items—books, articles, etc.—published in 1952, and Vol. II covers 1953. The time lag is commendably small, now that Vol. II has been published. Arrangement is systematic and items are numbered. There are adequate indexes.

A smaller area is covered more intensively by the *Bibliography on income and wealth*, issued by the International Association for Research in Income and Wealth (Vol. 1: 1937-1947).† This bibliography now appears annually (Vol. V: 1952, 1955) and the criteria for the inclusion of books, pamphlets and articles are exacting. The coverage of the mimeographed *International bibliography on income and wealth: annotated quarterly report*, intended as an interim publication, is naturally more limited, but it does bring official publications into prominence. An example of the valuable bibliographies put out by the Institute of Colonial Studies is *The economics of "underdeveloped" areas: an annotated reading list of books, articles and official publications*, compiled by Arthur Hazlewood.‡

**OFFICIAL PUBLICATIONS.** A revised *Government publications: official indexes, lists, guides, catalogues* was published by H.M.S.O. in 1955, and the *Consolidated index to government publications, 1936-1940, 1941-1945, and 1946-1950*, in 1952-54. Descriptive notes on a wide range of Government material are provided in *Government information and the research worker*, edited by Ronald Staveley.§ Some of the contributions are really comprehensive; others are very meagre. The survey as a whole is an important departure which should be followed up in detail. The emphasis in Sidney Horrocks's pamphlet, *The State as publisher*|| is on Parliamentary papers, and to these it is still a serviceable introduction. A more recent study is *A guide to Parliamentary papers*, by P. and G. Ford (1955), who had earlier won the indebtedness of research workers by the *Select list of Parliamentary papers, 1832-1899* (1953) and *A breviary of Parliamentary papers, 1917-1939* (1952).¶ For current material, Miss V. M. Carruthers's "Sources of information on public administration: central government" (19) deserves mention.

The *Bibliographie sélective des publications officielles françaises*,\*\* 1952-; semi-monthly, may be used in conjunction with the *Bibliographie de la France*, Supplément F (1950-) as a partial guide to French official publications. In the

\* The Hague, Martinus Nijhoff.

† Library Association, 1952.

‡ Oxford, Blackwell, 1955; 1953; 1952.

§ Cambridge, Bowes & Bowes, 1952-.

|| O.U.P., 1954.

¶ Library Association pamphlet no. 10, 1952.

\*\* Paris, La Documentation française.

case of Germany, official publications of the Federal Republic have been listed in *Das amtliche Schrifttum der Bundesrepublik*.<sup>\*</sup> Other recent lists are the *Monthly catalogue of Canadian government publications*<sup>†</sup> and the *Monthly catalogue of Australian government publications*.<sup>‡</sup> As a selective aid, W. Philip Leidy's *A popular guide to [U.S.] government publications*<sup>§</sup> is useful in showing the wide subject range of material involved.

Hans Aufrecht's *Guide to League of Nations publications . . . 1920-1947* is an excellent piece of work; so, too, for its basic approach, is *How to use United Nations documents*, by C. C. Moor and W. Chamberlin.<sup>¶</sup> A. D. Roberts's "Searching for the texts of treaties" (20) adds considerably to our knowledge of this type of material.

Two much-needed bibliographies of directories have recently appeared. *Current British directories, 1955*, compiled and edited by G. P. Henderson,<sup>\*\*</sup> is the second edition of a work which first appeared in 1953. Nearly 1,500 directories, local, trade and professional, are briefly described and an appendix gives a good selection of international specialized directories published abroad. Complementary to the Henderson volume in several ways is the U.S. Bureau of Foreign Commerce's *A guide to foreign business directories*,<sup>††</sup> first published in 1931. An ambitious list of the general, special and local directories (not all of them current) of seventy-nine countries is followed by a section on international directories published in the U.S.A.

A further Unesco effort—*A register of legal documentation in the world (1953)*—has been prepared by the International Committee of Comparative Law, with the support of the International Committee for Social Science Documentation. Information on legislation, the main sources of documentation (law reports, digests, etc.), legal documentation centres, law periodicals and bibliographies is recorded for eighty-four countries. The 1954 edition of *Where to look for your law*<sup>‡‡</sup> has some useful additions; it includes an alphabetical list of committees, reports, etc., for the period 1900-53, under the names of the Chairmen concerned. The first volume of the second edition of *A legal bibliography of the British Commonwealth of nations*, by W. H. and L. F. Maxwell,<sup>§§</sup> deals with English law to 1800. There are subject and author-and-title indexes.

A decided gap has been filled, partly, at least, by George Baron's *A bibliographical guide to the English educational system*,<sup>||</sup> This provides a running commentary on a selection of material, broken down into eighteen groups; official publications play a prominent part. *A select bibliography of adult education in Great Britain . . .*, edited by Thomas Kelly,<sup>¶¶</sup> covers important books and chosen pamphlets and periodical articles. Supplementing it are the *Handlist of studies in adult education, 1951 (1952)* and the *Guide to studies in adult education, 1953- (1954-)*.

Robert L. Collison's *Dictionaries of foreign languages*<sup>\*\*\*</sup> bears the sub-title "a bibliographical guide to the general and technical dictionaries of the chief foreign languages, with historical and explanatory notes and references." It

\* Bonn, Deutschen Bundes-Verlag, 1952.

† Ottawa, January 1953.

‡ Canberra, vol. 1—1952.

§ New York, Columbia University Press, 1953.

¶ New York, Columbia University Press, 1951.

¶¶ New York, University Press, 1952.

\*\* Jones & Evans' Bookshop, 1955.

†† U.S. Government Printing Office, June 1955.

‡‡ Sweet & Maxwell, 1954.

§§ Sweet & Maxwell, 1955.

|| University of London Press, 1951.

¶¶ National Institute of Adult Education, 1952.

\*\*\* New York, Hafner, 1955.

lists more than 1,400 dictionaries, covering 255 languages and dialects. Language groups are arranged in sequence from the more familiar to the less familiar, from the European to those of the Near and Middle East, Africa and Asia. Technical dictionaries are listed in an appendix, and there are adequate indexes.

The Library of Congress has covered rather less ground more intensively in *Foreign language—English dictionaries*. Vol. I: *Special subject dictionaries, with emphasis on science and technology*. Vol. II: *General language dictionaries* (1955). Emphasis is on works issued since 1940, particularly in the case of vol. I, which is arranged alphabetically by subjects, with subdivision by languages. Vol. II is arranged alphabetically by languages. Locations are given in seventy-nine U.S. libraries. The work is a substantial revision of the bibliography published in 1942 (supplement, 1944).

The Unesco *Bibliography of interlingual scientific and technical dictionaries*, published in 1953,\* is the third edition since 1951. It covers much the same ground as Vol. I of the Library of Congress list and is comparable in size. Arrangement is, however, by U.D.C. and an ingenious system is used for denoting languages. A more recent Unesco contribution is the *Bibliography of monolingual scientific and technical glossaries*, by E. Wüster. Vol. I, *National standards* (1955).

Valuable for its inclusion of glossaries hidden away in periodicals and the like is the Science Museum's *Technical glossaries and dictionaries* (Science Library bibliographical series. No. 707. [1952].† It contains about 1,200 items and is arranged by U.D.C., with an author index.

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY. This field is better organized than that of the social sciences; the terminology is more precise and internationally accepted. There have been two important conferences on the mobilization of scientific information for the user, although they are both prior to the period under review. The Royal Society Scientific Information Conference was held in 1948 and the International Conference on Science Abstracting was called by Unesco in 1949. As a result of the latter's recommendation, an International Advisory Committee for Documentation in the National Sciences was set up in 1952-53. The Royal Society's Conference, in particular, underlined existing deficiencies in the presentation and publication—not to mention accessibility—of material. A statement of the way in which its recommendations had been implemented by 1952 has been made in "A review of the results of the Royal Society Scientific Information Conference, 1948," by D. J. Urquhart, and "Action taken by Aslib to implement the Conference's report," by Leslie Wilson, the director of Aslib (21).

Some notion of the spate of scientific and technical periodicals during recent years and of indexing and abstracting deficiencies in covering them may be gained from the fact that, while *Periodica medica* (4th edition, 1952) lists some 12,000 titles, the extensive *Current list of medical literature* covers only 1,400 of these journals, with a yield, nevertheless, of some 100,000 articles per annum, while *Excerpta medica* abstracts between 2,000 and 3,000 journals.

Areas not previously covered have also come into prominence. Unesco has sponsored a list of *Scientific and technical journals of East and South-East Asia*

\* Paris, Unesco, 1953.

† Incorporating Science Library bibliographical series No. 632 (1947) and its four supplements.

(2nd edition),\* a *Bibliography of scientific publications of South Asia (India, Burma, Ceylon)* No. 1, January/June 1949- ,† and *Artículos científicos publicados en América Latina*, Vol. 1: 1948.‡ The first number of the *Insdoc list of current scientific literature*, put out by the Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre, appeared in June 1954, and a much expanded, second edition of the *Union catalogue of the scientific and technical periodicals in the libraries of Australia*, edited by Ernest R. Pitt, appeared in 1951.§

In Eastern Europe a number of abstracting services have been started. The most important of them is the *Referativnyi zhurnal* (October 1953- ), of which at least eight sections are now available, covering chemistry, astronomy and geodesy, mathematics, mechanics, physics, geology and geography (now issued separately), biology and biological chemistry (22).

The spate of new periodicals in foreign languages has set up, in its train, the problem of organized translation services. The D.S.I.R. *Translated contents lists of Russian periodicals* (1949- ) has given rise to a scheme for the translation of the articles so listed (1952- ), with eventual deposit in the Science Museum Library. One of several American schemes is the Library of Congress *Bibliography of translations from Russian scientific and technical literature* (1953- ). Two other Library of Congress publications may conveniently be mentioned here: *Scientific and technical serial publications: Soviet Union, 1945-1953* (1954), which is a special supplement to the *Monthly list of Russian accessions*, and *Chinese scientific and technical serial publications* (1955).

The mounting cost of abstracting services in the sciences and, one must add, their too limited use by libraries and relevant organizations, has led to some important changes which have affected library information services. Although D.S.I.R. provided £5,000 to enable *British abstracts* to continue publication during 1953, pending an appeal for funds, the necessary support was not forthcoming and *British abstracts* ceased to appear after the end of 1953 (23). Abstracts on applied chemistry are now covered by publications of the Society of Chemical Industry, by the Chemical Society (in *Current chemical papers*, 1954- ), and, for Section A3, *British abstracts of medical sciences*. The *Cleaver-Hume technical article index* (1952) was not intended to be more than a pilot scheme (24), but when it ceased nothing arose to take its place. However, *Technical book review* began publication in September/October 1954 and, despite its limited coverage in detail, it does something to meet a need. It is relevant to mention that the subscription rate for *Chemical abstracts*, so far as libraries are concerned, rose steeply to \$350 a year. The new rates were an attempt to make *Chemical abstracts* self-supporting, but they posed a serious problem for the smaller technical library.

*Scientific books, libraries and collectors: a study of bibliography and the book trade in relation to science* (1954), by J. L. Thornton and R. I. J. Tully,† is modestly described by its authors as "an introductory history of the production, distribution and storage of scientific literature from the earliest times." It is a mine of bibliographical information and makes an excellent point of departure for more detailed studies of the various sciences, such as the Library Association

\* Manila, South-East Asia Science Co-operation Office, Manila Branch, 1953.

† New Delhi, Science Co-operation Office for South Asia [n.d.].

‡ Montevideo, Centro de cooperación científica de la Unesco para América Latina, [n.d.].

§ Melbourne, Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization, 1951.

|| Library Association, 1954.

has in mind in its projected Guides to the literature of special subjects. A convenient descriptive list of twenty-two guides to the various branches of scientific literature has been compiled by A. C. Townsend<sup>(25)</sup>.

The event, bibliographically speaking, of 1952 was the appearance of the 3rd edition of the *World list of scientific periodicals published in the years 1900-1950*.<sup>\*</sup> It lists more than 50,000 lists and gives locations in 247 libraries, of which one-quarter are in London. The numbering given to entries in the second edition has been carried forward and changes of title are noted by cross-references. Small gaps in runs are not indicated. Notes of additions and amendments to the *World list* have been prepared by the Documentation Committee of the Society of Chemical Industry and have been published at intervals in *Chemistry and industry*. The seventh edition of the *Hand list of short titles of current periodicals in the Science Library* appeared in 1953.

The annual D.S.I.R. survey, *Scientific research in British universities*, has been on sale since the 1951-52 volume.<sup>†</sup> The first volume recorded about 4,000 research projects in hand in some sixty universities. Arrangement is by universities, colleges and faculties, and there is an author index.

*A guide to the history of science*, by George Sarton<sup>‡</sup> is in two parts, the more extensive second part being a systematic bibliographical survey. *Physics literature: a reference manual*<sup>§</sup> is described by its author, Robert H. Whitford, as "a survey of physics literature at the college level." Coverage is virtually confined to English-language material and the arrangement is by "approaches"—bibliographical, historical, biographical, experimental, mathematical, educational, terminological, etc., while a "Topical approach" lists material by subjects.

Two, contrasted, guides to the literature of geology have appeared, both of them American. Richard M. Pearl's *Guide to geologic literature*, somewhat voluminous, concentrates on the kinds of geological literature and on library facilities—in the U.S.A. The American bias is, in fact, pronounced. Brian Mason's *The literature of geology*,<sup>¶</sup> on the other hand, is pared down to essentials and is more concerned with specified fields of geology (mineralogy, geomorphology, and the like) and on the regional approach. The latter embraces maps and national geological survey reports.

*Biological sciences, serial publications: a world list, 1950-1954*, compiled by J. H. Richter and C. P. Daly (1955), compiled in the Science Division of the Library of Congress, records about 3,500 serials under sixty-four subject headings. Items are systematically annotated and there are ample indexes.

Five British publications may be taken together. Raymond Irwin's *British bird books: an index to British ornithology, A.D. 1481 to A.D. 1948*<sup>\*\*</sup> is a detailed and systematic survey, an appendix covering the years 1949-50. The sumptuous *Fine bird books, 1700-1900*, by Sacheverell Sitwell and others,<sup>††</sup> is more of a collector's piece. It is permissible to note here, rather than under the Fine Arts, S. Roscoe's *Thomas Bewick: a bibliography raisonné of the "General history of quadrupeds"*, the "History of British birds" and the "Fables of Aesop" issued in his lifetime.<sup>‡‡</sup> Geoffrey L. Keynes records the various scientific and

\* Butterworth's Scientific Publications, 1952.

† H.M.S.O., 1952. ‡ Waltham, Mass., Chronica Botanica; London, Wm. Dawson, 1952.

§ Washington, D.C., Scarecrow Press, 1954. ¶ New York, McGraw Hill, 1957.

¶ New York, the author, 1953.

\*\* Grafton, 1951.

†† Collins, 1957.

‡‡ Oxford University Press, 1953.

non-scientific writings of the great naturalist, John Ray, in his *John Ray: a bibliography*.<sup>\*</sup> Richard Curle's *The Ray Society: a bibliographical history*<sup>†</sup> has also appeared.

*World medical periodicals*, compiled by L. T. Morton, and published by the World Health Organization and Unesco<sup>‡</sup> is essentially a list of current medical journals, although it does include in its 3,908 titles those of well-known journals which ceased publication between 1900 and 1950. These latter are asterisked. An indication is given if a periodical is abstracted by any of ten major abstracting services. Another W.H.O. publication is *Current indexing and abstracting periodicals in the medical and biological sciences*,<sup>§</sup> an annotated list based on the 1,600 items available in the W.H.O. Library. Mention has already been made of *British abstracts of world medicine* (January 1954- ), a monthly which has taken the place of *British abstracts*, section A3. It includes allied fields such as biochemistry, experimental biology and microbiology. *Abstracts of world surgery*, which commenced in 1947, ceased in 1952.

The second edition of *Garrison and Morton's medical bibliography: an annotated check-list of texts illustrating the history of medicine*, by L. T. Morton, has appeared.|| It represents a considerable expansion of the first edition of 1943, carries nearly 7,000 entries, and is the indispensable bibliographical tool for medical history.

The *Bibliography of engineering abstracting services*, put out by the Special Libraries Association (1955), is a very acceptable compilation, pending the revision of Vol. 1 of *Index bibliographicus*. Arrangement is alphabetical by topics, and systematic notes are given on 231 services. Non-American abstracting journals are well represented. The Association of College and Reference Libraries has as No. 9 of its ACRL Monographs *A recommended list of basic periodicals in engineering and the engineering sciences* (1953). The 553 titles chosen are not annotated but the selection has been carefully made and a classified index follows the alphabetical list. A study of problems of documentation in electrical engineering has been made by R. C. Cole in "Periodical literature for electrical engineers"<sup>(26)</sup>. Comments on some of the author's strictures by B. M. Crowther should be read in connexion with it<sup>(27)</sup>.

A survey which admirably bring out the highlights of its subject is an article on "Current engineering literature," by A. R. Stock, formerly librarian of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers<sup>(28)</sup>. A useful appendix of book lists, indexes and abstracting services is provided.

The Library of Congress, Reference Department has added to its subject bibliographies of the U.S.S.R. with three publications: *Soviet transportation and communications: a bibliography* (1952), *Manufacturing and mechanical engineering in the Soviet Union: a bibliography*, compiled by Gisella R. Lachman (1953), and *Aeronautical sciences and aviation in the Soviet Union: a bibliography*, compiled by Bertha Kucherov (1955). Material is largely in Russian and locations are given.

"Recent bibliographies of agriculture" is the title of a brief survey of the literature made by W. J. Plumbe in 1951; a short supplement has been added by F. C. Hirst<sup>(29)</sup>. The latter has been responsible for two book lists on agriculture which are very useful for selection purposes: *A selected and classified list of books relating to agriculture, horticulture, etc., in the library of the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries* (3rd edition),¶ and the National Book League list on

\* Faber, 1951.

† Ray Society, 1954.

‡ Geneva, W.H.O.; Paris, Unesco, 1953.

§ *W.H.O. Lib. News*, 6, 1955, supp. No. 1, 42.

|| Grafton, 1954.

¶ H.M.S.O., 1954.

*Agriculture*.\* Another N.B.L. list which is worth adding is *Country books: a list of bibliographies and the organizations that publish them*.† Mention should also be made of the *Catalogue of serial publications in the Library of Rothamsted Experimental Station, 1953*, compiled by D. H. Boalch.‡ More than 4,700 titles are included, covering soil science and many marginal subjects.

There are a number of guides to the literature of chemistry. G. Malcolm Dyson's *A short guide to chemical literature*§ is intended for the student rather than the research worker, and as such this guide has an important place. Appendixes cover obsolete periodicals, the technique of searching the literature, and a table of volume number—date equivalents for periodicals. Some valuable contributions have been gathered together in two publications put out by the American Chemical Society. Division of Chemical Literature—*Searching the chemical literature*|| and *Literature resources for chemical process industries*.¶ The first of these guides consists of twenty-four papers which deal authoritatively with practically every aspect of the subject, including theses, reports and patents. The second work may be regarded as a supplement, covering subject aspects of applied chemistry, etc.

*German books on chemical and cognate subjects published 1939-1950*, by A. E. Cummins and S. Vince,\*\* is an important list which covers a wide range of subjects. Arrangement is by subject. A supplement, covering 1950-53, appeared in 1954.

John T. Milek's *Guide to foreign sources of metallurgical literature*†† belongs to what Mr. A. C. Townsend calls the "directory" type of guide. It succinctly deals with periodicals, abstracting services, books, bibliographies and official agency reports, as well as relevant bodies.

The *Bibliotheca gastronomica: a catalogue of books and documents on gastronomy*, by André L. Simon,‡‡ and *Bibliographie gastronomique*, by G. Vicaire, a reprint,§§ are attractive descriptive lists which are essentially collectors' pieces.

**FINE ARTS.** A sound selection of material on the graphic and decorative arts is provided in *The Harvard list of books on art*, by Edna Louise Lucas.|||| It is a revision of a list which was first published in 1938. There are some 3,000 entries, unannotated, in systematic order, with country subdivision. Also revised is the *Harvard outline and reading lists for Oriental art*, by Benjamin Rowland (Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1952), and first published in 1938. A twentieth-century supplement to one of the greatest of bio-bibliographies—Thieme and Becker—is now in progress: *Allgemeines Lexikon der bildenden Künstler des XX. Jahrhunderts*, by Hans Vollmer (Vol. 1-).¶¶ Living artists are included and the pattern of the original work is preserved. The current volume of the *Bibliography of the history of British art*, published by the Courtauld Institute of Art, University of London (Vol. V, 1951) covers a substantial period—1938 to 1945.

\* Cambridge University Press, 1954.

† N.B.L. and National Federation of Young Farmers' Clubs [1953].

‡ Harpenden, Rothamsted Experimental Station, 1954.

§ Longmans, Green, 1951.

|| Washington, D.C., American Chemical Society, 1951. (Advances in chemistry series, No. 4.)

¶ Washington, D.C., American Chemical Society, 1954. (Advances in chemistry series, No. 10.)

\*\* London, Lange, Maxwell and Springer, 1951.

†† Pittsburgh, Richard Rimbach Associates, 1951.

‡‡ London, Verschoyle, 1954.    §§ London, Wine and Food Society, 1953.

|||| London, Verschoyle, 1954.

¶¶ Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1952.

¶¶ Leipzig, Seemann, 1953-.

The Unesco *Catalogue of colour reproductions of paintings prior to 1860* ([1950]; 3rd edition, [1955]) and *Catalogue of colour reproductions of paintings from 1860 to 1949* ([1951]; 3rd edition, [1956]) between them cover nearly a thousand works of art, giving particulars of reproductions for sale and incidentally providing a check list of titles. The text is trilingual. Unesco has also published a guide to photographic collections—*International directory of photographic archives of works of art* (2 vols., 1950-54). Two British contributions to some extent supplement each other. *British sources of photographs and pictures*, edited by G. W. A. Nunn,\* is a mine of information, giving annotated lists of libraries, museums and art galleries, special sources, and much else, with a detailed subject index. *Library resources in the Greater London area*. No. 3. *Sources of illustrations*, by J. L. Howgego,† is a modestly produced survey of material in some fifty major collections, with an index to special subjects. R. V. Tooley's *English books with coloured plates, 1790-1860*‡ is an enlarged edition of a work first published in 1935 and describes 517 books with coloured plates. Its exclusions and its limitations as a bibliographical tool tend to restrict it to the category of a collector's piece.

MUSIC. The *Bibliographie des Musikschrifttums* (1936- ),§ an international catalogue of books and articles on music, resumed publication in 1951, after interruption during the war years. The volume issued in 1951 covers the year 1950. The *Repertorium der Musikwissenschaft, 1800-1954*, by W. Kahl and W. M. Luther,|| is a catalogue of all the important musical works published from 1800 to 1950, including locations in Germany. More than 2,500 titles are arranged in subject groups. *Fontes artis musicae: review of the International Association of Music Libraries*¶ provides an excellent check-list of recently published music.

Work has been completed on the compilation of the forthcoming union catalogue of old music in British libraries. It records the holdings of some 105 libraries and publication is expected during 1956. Another retrospective list is *A guide to English folk-song collections, 1822-1952, with an index to their contents, historical annotations and introduction*, by Margaret Dean-Smith.\*\*

Three important thematic catalogues deserve mention: O. E. Deutsch's *Schubert: thematic catalogue of all his works in chronological order*;†† C. Hopkinson's *A bibliography of the musical and literary works of Hector Berlioz, with histories of the French musical publishers concerned*;‡‡ and Georg Kinsky's *Das Werk Beethovens*.§§ In this connection one should add *A check list of thematic catalogues*, by Helen J. Sleeper.¶¶

Discography is becoming increasingly recognized as a branch of bibliography. Unesco's projected *Archives of recorded music*, which is to be a general list of recorded music in all fields, is rapidly taking shape. Vol. 1 in Series A, Western music, appeared in 1949; Vol. 1 in Series B, Oriental music, appeared in 1952 (*Catalogue of recorded classical and traditional Indian music*); and four volumes have now appeared in Series C, Ethnographic and folk music

\* Cassell, 1952.

† Library Association. Reference and Special Libraries Section (South-Eastern Group), 1955.

‡ Batsford, 1954. § Leipzig, 1937- . ¶ Kassel, Bärenreiter, 1955.

§ Kassel, Bärenreiter, 1954- . \*\* Liverpool University Press, 1954. †† Dent, 1951.

‡‡ Edinburgh Bibliographical Society, 1951. §§ Munich, Henle, 1955.

¶¶ Washington, Music Library Association, 1953.

(1952-), the latest being the *International catalogue of recorded folk music*, edited by Norman Fraser (1954). *The world's encyclopaedia of recorded music*, by F. F. Clough and G. J. Cuming\* (1952; Second supplement (1951-1952), 1953) is a virtually complete list of records issued between 1925 and 1952. Over 40,000 items are listed under the names of composers, and the work has proved itself to be indispensable. *The record guide*, by E. Sackville-West and D. Shawe-Taylor† (1951; supplemented by *The record year*, 1952-) is admittedly a selection; long-playing records are noted in an appendix.

The Royal Photographic Society's *Library catalogue*, Part 2: *Subject catalogue* (1952) is an important addition to the Author catalogue which was issued in 1939. The Cinemathèque de Belgique's *Répertoire mondial des périodiques cinématographiques; World list of film periodicals and serials*,‡ the first list of its kind, has been published with the aid of the Belgian National Commission for Unesco and the International Federation of Film Archives. Six hundred and forty-five periodicals are listed, with systematic annotations.

Miss A. M. C. Kahn has given an admirable survey of the wealth of London's theatre material in her *Theatre collections: a symposium*,§ No. 4 in the Library resources in the Greater London area series. The contributions survey in turn the holdings of national, public, special and private libraries. Miss Kahn has also compiled an annotated list of reference books and histories of the theatre in her paper, *The British theatre: a select list*.¶ Comparable, but designed primarily for the general reader, is the National Book League reader's guide, *British theatre history*, by Alec Clunes.¶ Blanch M. Baker's *Theatre and allied arts: a guide to books dealing with the history, criticism and technic of the theatre and drama, and related arts and crafts*\*\* is a much enlarged version of her *Dramatic bibliography* (1933). Supplements I and II to the British Drama League's *The players' library* (Faber & Faber, 1950) appeared in 1951 and 1954 respectively.

LITERATURE. No major English bibliography of the period beats comparison with the *Bibliography of American literature*, compiled by Jacob Blanck for the Bibliographical Society of America. Vol. 1: *Henry Adams to Donn Byrne*.†† This work is to be completed in eight or nine volumes. Vol. 2 of *English literature, 1660-1800: a bibliography of modern studies*, compiled for the *Philological quarterly* by R. S. Crane, L. I. Bredvold, and others,‡‡ lists studies published 1938-49, continuing the work of Vol. 1 (covering 1925-37) and containing an index to both volumes. The *Philological quarterly* provides annual supplements.

W. W. Greg's scholarly *A bibliography of the English printed drama, to the Restoration* (Vol. 1, 1939) is continued in Vol. 2: *Plays, 1617-1689* (including Latin plays and lost plays).§§ Important features are the wealth of facsimiles and the locations in British and American libraries. C. J. Stratman's *Bibliography of medieval drama*||| covers in detail the drama of medieval Europe and includes entries for editions of texts. *Drury's Guide to best plays*, by F. K. W. Drury,¶¶ and Joseph Gregor's *Der Schauspielführer*\*\*\* (Vols. 1-3, 1953-55; to be completed

\* Sidgwick and Jackson. † Collins.

‡ Bruxelles, La Cinemathèque de Belgique, 1955.

§ Library Association. Reference and Special Libraries Section (South-Eastern Group), 1955.

¶ North-Western Polytechnic School of Librarianship. *Occasional papers*. No. 5. January 1955.

¶¶ Cambridge University Press, 1955. \*\* New York, H. W. Wilson, 1952.

†† New Haven, Yale University Press, 1955. ‡‡ Princeton University Press, Vol. 2, 1952.

§§ Bibliographical Society, 1951. ||| Berkeley, California University Press, 1954.

¶¶ Washington, D.C., Scarecrow Press, 1953. \*\*\* Stuttgart, Hiersemann.

in five volumes) both give synopses of the plots of plays; Drury's selection consists of "more than 1,200 plays available in English which have been successful . . .": the German work covers a thousand years of German drama. A second edition of J. H. Ottemiller's *Index to plays in collections* (Washington, D.C., Scarecrow Press, 1951) indexes anthologies published 1900-1950.

An attempt to regiment the novel into categories by topic has been made by G. B. Cotton and A. Glencross in *Fiction index: a guide to over 10,000 works of fiction, including short story collections, anthologies and omnibus volumes*.<sup>\*</sup> The result is a valuable work of reference for lending libraries. The *Short story index*, compiled by Dorothy E. Cook and Isabel S. Monroe,<sup>†</sup> has the sub-title: "an index to 60,000 stories in 4,320 collections." It supersedes *Index to short stories*, by Ian Ten Eyck Firkins (1923; 1936). Wilhelm Ölbrich's *Der Romanführer*,<sup>‡</sup> a companion work to the *Schauspielführer*, provides (Vols. 1-4) synopses of the most important German novels and short stories for the period 1450-1954.

Michael Sadleir's *XIXth-century fiction: a bibliographical record, based on his own collection*<sup>§</sup> stresses the collector's angle. Vol. 1 includes first editions and comparative scarcities; Vol. 2—"yellow-back" collections and fiction series. Professor Lucien Leclaire's more specialized *A general analytical bibliography of the regional novelists of the British Isles, 1800-1950*, is a thorough piece of work. Treatment is chronological, in order to show the growth of the genre, and there are indexes of authors' names, arranged both alphabetically and under locality, and of place names.

Three period bibliographies of French literature deserve a place. The *Critical bibliography of French literature*. Vol. 4: *The eighteenth century*,<sup>¶</sup> is only the second volume of a work begun in 1947 (Vol. 1), but it is a model of its kind, both because of the range of material drawn upon (books, articles, reviews and dissertations) and because of the careful annotations and full treatment. Each section is the responsibility of an expert and 3,319 items are listed, in all. A comparable pattern is adopted in Robert Bossuat's *Manuel bibliographique de la littérature française du moyen âge*.<sup>\*\*</sup> The period covered is from the origins of French literature to 1500. Marguerite L. Drevet's *Bibliographie de la littérature française, 1940-1949*<sup>††</sup> continues the detailed survey begun by Thienie (1800-1930) and carried forward by S. Dreher and M. Rolli (1930-39).

Only a selection can be given of the numerous author-bibliographies published during 1951-55. Soho bibliographies<sup>‡‡</sup> include the following: *A bibliography of the works of Max Beerbohm*, by A. E. Gallatin and L. M. Oliver (1952); *A bibliography of Rupert Brooke*, by G. L. Keynes (1954); *A bibliography of James Joyce, 1882-1941*, by John J. Slocum and H. Cahoon (1953); *A bibliography of the writings of W. B. Yeats*, by Allan Wade (1951); and *A bibliography of Norman Douglas*, by Cecil Woolf (1954); A few others may be cited: *Jane Austen: critical bibliography*, by R. W. Chapman<sup>§§</sup> (1953, 2nd edition, 1955); *Robert Browning: a bibliography, 1830-1950*, compiled by L. N. Broughton and others<sup>¶¶</sup> and *Thomas Hardy: a bibliographical study*, by R. L. Purdie.<sup>¶¶¶</sup>

\* A.A.L. 1953. † New York, Wilson, 1953.

‡ Stuttgart, Hiersemann, 1950.

§ Los Angeles, California University Press, 2 vols., 1951.

¶ Paris, Société d'Édition "Les Belles Lettres," 1954.

‡‡ Syracuse, N.Y., Syracuse University Press, 1951.

\*\* Melun, Librairie d'Argences, 1951.

†† Genève, Librairie E. Droz, 1954.

‡‡ Hart-Davis.

§§ Oxford University Press.

¶¶ Ithaca (N.Y.), Cornell University Press, 1953.

¶¶¶ Oxford University Press, 1954.

HISTORY. *Historical abstracts*: a quarterly covering the world's periodical literature, 1775-1945\* (1955- ; quarterly) has carefully defined limits. It is intended for those engaged in historical research and teaching, and for those working in related disciplines. It excludes local history and the history of special fields of knowledge. Each issue carries some 900 abstracts and the arrangement, following a general section, is by period.

Eleanor Stuart Upton's *Guide to sources of English history from 1603 to 1660 in reports of the Royal Commission on Manuscripts*† is a useful subject index. *Bibliography of British history: the eighteenth century, 1714-1789*, edited by Stanley Pargellis and D. J. Medley,‡ is the third of three well-known bibliographies issued under the direction of the American Historical Association and the Royal Historical Society, and covering the period 1485-1789. The subject range is wide, covering political, constitutional, legal, ecclesiastical, economic, military, naval, social, cultural and local history. Contemporary publications and source material are given priority and there are helpful annotations.

Two pamphlets deserve mention: the second edition of the very handy *English local history handlist: a short bibliography and list of sources for the study of local history and antiquities*,§ and the British Records Association's *Handlist of Scottish and Welsh record publications* (the Scottish section by Peter Gouldesbrough and A. P. Kup; the Welsh section by Idwal Lewis).||

There is a real need, so far as the bibliography of British history is concerned, for a guide to the literature of British history. Jesse H. Shera's *Historians, books and libraries*¶ provides an informal guide, based on a series of lectures, to the literature of American history, or rather, to history with examples mainly drawn from American sources. The sub-title of the book reads: "a survey of historical scholarship in relation to library resources, organization and services."

BIOGRAPHY. It may be argued that Max Anin's *Internationale Personalbibliographie, 1800-1943*,\*\* being an index to bibliographies of individuals, should be classed as a general bibliography, but it may be conveniently dealt with here. This second edition is a considerable expansion of the first edition (1936), which covered the period 1850-1935. It provides an average of two or three references (to books, articles or bibliographies) for each of the 60,000 writers named. Living persons are included. The fact that it refers to other bibliographies, such as Poggendorff, makes it, in effect, a partial key to such works. Much the same may be said of A. M. Hyamson's *A dictionary of universal biography*, the second edition of which appeared in 1951,†† a considerable advance on the first edition of 1916. Hyamson is virtually an index to entries in twenty-four standard biographical dictionaries, general and special. It contains some 50,000 entries. W. Matthews, author of *British diaries: an annotated bibliography of British diaries written between 1442 and 1942* (1950), has recently compiled a parallel list entitled *British autobiographies: an annotated bibliography of British autobiographies published or written before 1951*.‡‡

\* Vienna, Historisches Seminar, Universität Wien.

† Washington, D.C., Scarecrow Press, 1952.

‡ Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1951.

§ Historical Association, 1952.

|| British Records Association, 1954.

¶ Cleveland, Press of Western Reserve University, 1953.

\*\* Leipzig, Hiersemann, 1944-52. 2 vols.

†† New York, Dutton, 1951.

‡‡ Berkeley, University of California Press, 1953.

GEOGRAPHY. The Royal Geographical Society's half-yearly publication, *New geographical literature and maps* (1951-) is a select list of additions to the library; it includes all new atlases and maps received, and in this latter respect is superior to the American Geographical Society's extensive *Current geographical publications* (1938-). Important periodical articles also find a place in the R.G.S. list. For the convenience of British users, titles of foreign works appear in translated form. The scope of *A geographer's reference book*\* is not so much that of a general bibliographical guide as an aid to the teacher of geography; it gives details of appropriate organizations, provides a bibliography of local surveys, has a section on "Current sources on reference material and statistics" and a well-documented article on "Some new developments in world resources."

A useful survey of London map-collections has been made by P. M. de Paris in *Library resources in the Greater London area*. No. 1. *Maps*.† Facilities available to would-be users are carefully noted and an appendix surveys briefly some sources of information on current maps. Reference has already been made to the section on carto-bibliography in the Unesco publication, *Bibliographical services throughout the world. Third annual report, 1953-1954*, by R. L. Collison (pp. 83-93), and to the Library of Congress half-yearly list, *Maps and atlases* (1953-55). R. A. Skelton's *Decorative printed maps of the 15th to 18th centuries*, a revision of A. L. Humphreys' *Old decorative maps and charts*, was published in 1952.‡

Some tribute should be paid to the various area bibliographies which have been produced. In the case of the *Arctic bibliography*, prepared under the direction of the Arctic Institute of North America§ (Vols. 1-3, 1953), there is an exhaustive, annotated catalogue of books, periodical articles, etc., on all scientific aspects of the Arctic regions; supplements are to be issued every second year. Less extensive is the U.S. Bureau of Aeronautics (Navy Department) *Antarctic bibliography* (1951). In the case of *South-east Asia: a selected bibliography*, published by the American Institute of Pacific Relations (1955), we have a select list of books up to 1955. A third example is *A selected and annotated bibliography of books and periodicals in Western languages dealing with the Near and Middle East; with special emphasis on medieval and modern times*, edited by Richard Ettinghausen (1951; 1953). The Library of Congress has published a number of area bibliographies. A few of them may be cited: *Introduction to Europe: supplement, 1950-1955* (1955); *Introduction to Africa: a selective guide to background reading* (1952); *Research and information on Africa: continuing sources* (1954); *Introduction to Asia* (1955); *The Arabian peninsula: a selected, annotated list* (1951); *Manchuria: an annotated bibliography* (1951).

Examples of area bibliographies published on behalf of learned societies are the following: *A guide to Iranian area study*, by L. P. Elwell-Sutton (published by Edwards, Ann Arbor (Michigan) for the Committee on Near Eastern studies of the American Council of Learned Societies, 1952); *Korean studies guide*, compiled by B. H. Hazard and others (published by the University of California Press for the Institute of East Asiatic Studies, 1954); and a revised edition of *A selected list of books and articles on Japan, in English, French and German*, compiled

\* Sheffield, Geographical Association, 1955.

† Library Association. Reference and Special Libraries Section (South-Eastern Group), [1953].

‡ Staples Press, 1952.

§ Washington, U.S. Department of Defense.

by Hugh Borton and others (published by the Harvard University Press for the Harvard-Yenching Institute, 1954).

In an article entitled "The analytical cataloguing of periodicals in a specialized field" (30), J. D. Pearson, librarian of the School of Oriental and African Studies, put in a plea for co-operation between libraries in the indexing of articles in specified fields. *The Far East and South-East Asia: a cumulated list of periodical articles, May 1954-April 1955*, issued by the School, is not, however, a co-operative effort, although it does index articles from periodicals which are in libraries other than that of the School.

## REFERENCES

1. FRANCIS, F. C. "Informal report on Unesco Conference on the improvement of bibliographical services." *Aslib Proc.* 3 (2), 1952, 93.
2. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 52 (12) 1950, 462-463.
3. *Unesco Bull.* 5 (10), 1951, 341.
4. *Lib. Q.* 25 (1) 1955, 91-100.
5. *Amer. Doc.* 5 (1) 1954, 2-3.
6. *Lib. Trends* 2 (4) 1954, 501-506.
7. In S. C. Bradford. *Documentation*. London, Crosby Lockwood, 2nd edition, 1953, 11-45.
8. *Lib. Q.* 24 (2) 1954, 124-137.
9. *Lib. Trends* 2 (4) 1954, 518.
10. Current national bibliographies (1955), p. 11.
11. *J. of Doc.* 4 (1) 1948, 14-40; *Ibid.* 7 (1) 1951, 18-60; *Ibid.* 7 (3) 1951, 170-183. Published by the British Museum in 1952 as a pamphlet.
12. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (5) 1953, 165-166.
13. *Aslib Proc.* 2 (3) 1950, 144.
14. See the account of German bibliography given in *Stecken-Hafner book news*, March 1952, pp. 101-102, and September 1952, p. 5.
15. *J. of Doc.* 12 (1) 1956, 24-38; for a list of foreign union catalogues and lists of holdings see *Periodicals and serials*, by D. Grenfell (*Aslib* 1953), 163-168.
16. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (5) 1955, 183-185.
17. Unesco. A selected inventory of periodical publications. Paris, 1951, 7-27.
18. *Amer. Doc.* 4 (4) 1953, 147-154.
19. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 57 (4) 1955, 135-140.
20. *J. of Doc.* 5 (3) 1949, 136-163.
21. *Aslib Proc.* 4 (4) 1952, 233-240, 241-254.
22. See *Aslib Proc.* 8 (2) 1956, 135-140.
23. *Chem. and Ind.* No. 7, Feb. 14, 1953, 148.
24. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (1) 1953, 1.
25. *J. of Doc.* 11 (2) 1955, 73-78.
26. *Ibid.* 8 (4) 1952, 209-226.
27. *Ibid.* 9 (2) 1953, 122-124.
28. *Lib. Assn. Rec.* 55 (12) 1953, 383-387.
29. *Ibid.* 53 (9) 1951, 288-291; *Ibid.* 54 (1) 1952, 24-25.
30. *Ibid.* 57 (1) 1955, 1-7.

## Chapter 27

### ARCHIVES, 1948-1955

By ROGER ELLIS, M.A., F.S.A., F.R.HIST.S., *Secretary, Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts and sometime Honorary Editor to the British Records Association*; and  
IVAR GRAHAM, M.A., *Archivist of Northern Rhodesia*

#### INTRODUCTORY

THE last period to be chronicled was one of war, of perils and emergencies and improvisations, and of the first beginnings only of recovery. In the years which have followed a very different story has unfolded itself, and the period now under review has been, in this country, one of expansion, consolidation, and generally of successful growth and advance.

This has not been the result of any statutory compulsion or enablement. Although proposals for new archive legislation have been continuously studied and canvassed throughout the period, and indeed at its close seem to be approaching at least partial fulfilment, the legal position of archives in Great Britain remains exactly what it was in 1947. The foundation of so many record offices and the flourishing growth of those already established has been due to other causes. The first of these has been the continually increasing appreciation by scholars, administrators and the public generally of the interest and importance of archives; and here credit is due to the Historical Manuscripts Commission, the British Records Association, and the National Register of Archives, by whom that interest has in great part been aroused and fostered. The second has been the break-up of landed estates and the changes in ownership of property which have turned huge quantities of family archives out of private muniment rooms and brought grave dangers of destruction or dispersal. Fortunately the county councils and other local authorities have risen to their new responsibilities. Since 1948 fifteen new record offices have been established by county councils alone, and most existing offices have enlarged their staff or their accommodation or both to deal with this new influx of documents. Every archivist has his own tales of this heroic period when priceless family archives were located and revealed, and of the means diplomatic or piratical by which owners were induced to deposit their documents and local authorities to provide more and yet more storage space. But within the last three or four years the flood has diminished to a flow (as the annual reports of many archivists have made clear) and the pressing problems have become those of repair, access, means of reference, and organization.

The growing number of archivists appointed by these local authorities formed in 1947 the Society of Local Archivists, which in 1954 was reorganized and expanded into the Society of Archivists and now publishes a printed *Journal*. This new society, of which a full account is given on pages 356-358,

has given to the British Records Association most valuable assistance in the preparation of this chapter.

A major achievement of this period was the *Survey of Ecclesiastical Archives* undertaken by the Pilgrim Trust in 1946 and completed in 1950, covering archives of the Church of England without limit of date, down to and including those of Archdeacons. This survey, which was compiled by both questionnaire and personal visit, was planned and guided by a Committee upon which the British Records Association was represented by Sir Hilary Jenkinson, who finally became its Chairman. The Report has not been printed, but duplicated copies have been placed in some libraries and form a monumental record of the extent, content, condition, and accessibility of an important body of archives not previously surveyed as a whole.

The British Records Association, among many other activities described at length on pages 344-346, produced in 1949 *Archives*, the first periodical in this country to be devoted entirely to archive matters. Its Records Preservation Section, assisted by a generous grant from the Pilgrim Trust, is at work on the examination and suitable distribution of documents accumulated in London solicitors' offices.

In the field of the Public Records the most important event has been the preparation and publication of the Report of the Committee on Departmental Records, generally known as the Grigg Committee. Its final effects on the administration of the modern records of Government departments, and upon the Public Record Office itself, are not yet known, but they are likely to be far-reaching.

Outside Great Britain the most notable development has been the greatly increased interest in Commonwealth countries in their records. During this period record offices have been established in Ceylon, Jamaica, New Zealand, the Sudan, the Gold Coast, Uganda and Nigeria, and their archivists have visited Great Britain and other countries for training and experience. An account of the development of some of these offices is given later in this chapter.

Internationally the lifting of restrictions on travel has resulted in a more than medieval movement of students, from continent to continent, and the archivists, faced with a new set of challenging problems, have founded under the auspices of Unesco the International Council on Archives, which has held three successful conferences in France, Holland and Italy and promoted the new journal *Archivum*.

It is, indeed, becoming clear that "work in archives" is now carried out on a scale too large to be summarized in a brief review. The following pages do no more than trace an outline of what has been done. The Editors offer grateful thanks to all their contributors, and wish that space and time would allow them to do justice to all the full and interesting reports which they have received.

## THE BRITISH RECORDS ASSOCIATION

With the continued development of local record offices in England and Wales, and particularly those administered by county councils, the function of the British Records Association itself, as it nears the end of twenty-five years of active and useful life, is now a matter for careful reflection. Largely as a result of the Association's work and influence, there exists a widespread awareness of

the importance and value of records and of the need for their preservation and availability in suitable conditions. The actual seeking out of records and their subsequent conservation are best left to local effort, although in one respect, viz., dealing with accumulations in the offices of London solicitors, the Association is still actively concerned. It is clear, however, that the Association must continue to be the national organization where problems can be discussed and policy formulated, and one which can create or lead public opinion on these matters, exert influence where that is required, and in general bring together all who are interested in records. The recognition of the B.R.A. by the International Council on Archives as the national representative body for Great Britain (to which the Society of Archivists has agreed) emphasizes this position.

The Association has continued to grow: the membership reached the 1,000 mark in 1949 and is now over 1,100, but there is still room for expansion. Some reorganization was effected in 1950: two of the three sections—those dealing with technical matters and with record publications—were abolished, without, however, ending the useful discussion meetings on these subjects or affecting the work that had been done by the section committees. Two special members of Council were appointed as correspondents to deal with these matters, and the system has worked well.

The work of the remaining section—the Records Preservation Section—has been very greatly expanded by a generous grant from the Pilgrim Trust over a period of five years. This has enabled the Section to employ a larger staff of qualified archivists and other helpers in order to achieve the object for which the grant was made, viz., the examination and preservation of record accumulations in the offices of London solicitors. As there are some 1,600 such legal firms the task is no light one, but good progress is being made. In this work a valuable part is played by an honorary visiting representative.

In the earlier part of the period under review the Association devoted much thought to the effects of socialization upon the records of the undertakings involved. A committee appointed by the Association investigated these problems, and the Association has been glad to note that the British Transport Commission made excellent arrangements for its records, and that the National Coal Board is also giving attention to the archives of the industry.

The Waverley Committee on the export of works of art, manuscripts, antiques, etc., sought the Association's views in 1951 on the export of archives: the Association suggested that some form of control was necessary, at the same time realizing that a complete ban was impracticable and undesirable. More recently a committee of the Association has been examining the problems connected with the classification, preservation and use of modern local government records and its work will lead to recommendations in this wide and important field.

After nearly two years of preparation the first number of *Archives*, the Association's new journal, appeared in the spring of 1949. Since then the projected two numbers have appeared each year. Despite the steep rise in printing costs, the price of *Archives* has remained at the figure fixed in 1948, nor has its subsidy of £80 yearly from the Association been increased. *Archives* has been very well received and supported, and about 600 copies of each issue now circulate to many parts of the world. It is accepted as essential reading for

everyone seriously concerned with the preservation or use of record material.

Since 1947 the British Records Association has investigated several matters concerning records and the results have appeared in print. These include the ideal layout of a record office, the exhibiting of records, the preservation of school records and the preservation of rating records. The Association also published in 1951 a *Handlist of record publications* (which dealt only with English records) and in 1954 a companion *Handlist of Scottish and Welsh record publications*.

The survey of the Association's work from 1939 to 1947 closed with a reference to the appointment of Mr. Somerville as Honorary Secretary and Mr. Ellis as Honorary Editor; the present survey coincides, in effect, with their period in office. Mr. Ellis has intimated his intention of resigning in 1957, thus completing ten years of service, and he will be succeeded by Miss Joan Lancaster, who has been assisting him for some time as Reviews Editor of *Archives*. Mr. Somerville's retirement took place towards the end of 1956, and Mr. B. C. Redwood has succeeded him. Mr. Edward Hoare, who had been Honorary Treasurer of the Association since its foundation in 1932, died in 1949 and was succeeded by Sir Reginald Hoare; on the latter's death in 1954 Mr. Richard Hoare, the present Honorary Treasurer, was appointed.

[For this communication we are indebted to Mr. Robert Somerville, C.V.O.]

## PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE

There are two ways in which wartime and post-war conditions have profoundly affected the work of the Public Record Office. On the one hand they have imposed a serious check on those scholarly activities with which the name of the Office had come by 1939 to be normally associated; and on the other they have given a new and urgent emphasis to the problem, already emerging before the war, of rapidly accumulating modern departmental records. Nor is this a problem merely of housekeeping and accommodation (though as such it is difficult enough); long before 1952 it had become clear that under existing arrangements modern departmental records were on the way to present intolerable difficulties not only to the archivist responsible for housing them but also to the research scholar anxious to exploit them, who stood in danger of being swamped by his own materials. In 1952 a committee was set up by the Master of the Rolls and the Chancellor of the Exchequer to review, under the chairmanship of Sir James Grigg, the arrangements for the preservation of departmental records "in the light of the rate at which they are accumulating and of the purposes which they are intended to serve" and to make recommendations.

This committee presented in 1954 a report of which only a confessedly inadequate summary can be attempted here. Briefly, it was recommended that the Public Record Office Acts, 1838 to 1898, should be repealed and that legislation should be introduced to transfer the headship of a reorganized Public Record Office from the Master of the Rolls to a Minister of the Crown and to authorize the adoption of a new procedure (described in detail by the committee) for the elimination of records of insufficient value to justify their permanent preservation in the Public Record Office. To supervise the introduction of the new procedure for reviewing departmental records, the

committee recommended the institution of new posts: within the Record Office, a Records Administration Officer, charged with the general oversight of records before their transfer, and a number of Inspecting Officers to assist him; and in each of the departments a Departmental Record Officer to be responsible for the care of its papers until they are disposed of either by authorized destruction or by transfer to the Public Record Office.

On behalf of the Government it was subsequently announced that the committee's recommendations had been accepted in principle and that it was intended in due course to introduce the necessary legislation to repeal the existing Public Record Office Acts and to vest the headship of the Record Office in the Lord Chancellor. Mr. J. H. Collingridge (hitherto the Assistant Keeper responsible for liaison between the Public Record Office and Government Departments) has been appointed Records Administration Officer.

*Work in Archives 1939-47* contained a full account of the "Three Repository System" evolved at the end of the war to meet special conditions, and described how it had been possible to realize the schemes for a "branch" and an intermediate repository (where, under the general supervision of the Record Office, departments might house obsolescent documents and prepare them for final transfer) by the occupation of temporary accommodation in "deep shelters" below London Underground stations. More permanent quarters have since been sought and found—in 1950 at Hayes (Middlesex), in the disused Royal Ordnance Factory, for the intermediate repository, and in 1951 at Ashridge, in buildings erected in the Park during the war, for the branch repository. The equipping and manning of these out-sections has not been accomplished without anxiety and difficulty; but the decision to institute them seems to be justifying itself. Departments making use of the facilities at Hayes (and so releasing valuable accommodation elsewhere) now number thirty, their papers filling 500,000 foot run of shelving. At Ashridge a small resident staff has been installed, and accommodation is available for a few searchers, and also for the nucleus of a photographic and a repairs section; but Ashridge's real distinction is to have made it possible for the Record Office, for the first time in its history, to press departments to transfer their non-current records.

From January 1, 1950, students have been able to spend an additional hour daily in the Round Room from Mondays to Fridays. At the moment when this report goes to press it has been found necessary, owing to the introduction of the five-day working week in the Civil Service, to make some adjustments to the Search Room hours of opening, which are now as follows:

*Round Room* (Literary Searches):

Mondays to Fridays: 9.30 a.m. to 5 p.m. Saturdays: 9.30 a.m. to 1 p.m.

*Long Room* (Searches subject to fees):

Mondays to Fridays: 9.30 a.m. to 5 p.m. Saturdays: *Closed*.

Publication, at one time the activity by which the Record Office expected chiefly to be judged, has been slow to return to anything like its pre-war volume, partly owing to the delays and difficulties which have beset printing of all kinds, partly owing to the preoccupation of experienced staff with non-editorial duties. The review of the Office's publishing policy, which was touched upon in *Work in Archives 1939-47*, has, however, produced some

concrete results. New volumes have appeared in the following series since 1947:

- Calendar of Patent Rolls, Eliz. I, Vol. II.*  
*Calendar of Close Rolls, Edw. IV, Vols. I and II.*  
 " " Edw. IV—Edw. V—Ric. III (1 vol.).  
 " " Hen. VII, Vol. I.  
*Calendar of Fine Rolls, Vol. XX.*  
*Calendar of Inquisitions post Mortem, Edw. III, Vols. XIII and XIV.*  
 " " Hen. VII, Vol. III.  
*Curia Regis Rolls, Vols. IX-XI.*  
*Treaty Rolls, Vol. I.*  
*Calendar of State Papers Foreign, Eliz. I, Vol. XXIII.*  
*Calendar of State Papers Colonial, Vols. XLI and XLII.*  
*Calendar of State Papers Spanish, Vols. XII, XIII, Vols. I and II.*  
*Calendar of Papal Registers, Vol. XIII\** (in 2 parts).  
*Acts of the Privy Council, Vol. XLIII.*  
*Calendar of Treasury Books, Vols. XX-XXVII* (all in several parts to each vol.).

Some of the above volumes had been set up before the war, but from about 1949 the changes in typography and format concerted between the Public Record Office and H.M. Stationery Office began to transform the traditional (and, it must be owned, faintly archaic) appearance of Record publications. These changes were intended, so far as typography and layout were concerned, to make the volumes more readable and at the same time more economical in production; and it is hoped that the plan of issuing each series in a distinctively coloured and embellished binding will prove more acceptable to modern taste than the uniform green cloth and blind blocking which formed the livery of Record publications for two or three generations.

The Consultative Committee on Publication has met regularly throughout the period, and its university members have rendered valuable service to the responsible officers of the Record Office in both formal and informal discussions of policy and practice. Much thought has been devoted to the matter of a new *Guide to the Public Records*. The first of a series of handbooks (which should collectively constitute a sectional guide) was published in 1949; it was introductory in nature and contained a short account of the history of the Record Office, its organization and functions. This proved highly successful and a second printing was necessary within six months. Further publications in the same format have since appeared—a *Guide to seals in the Public Record Office* and *Domesday re-bound*, the latter an account of the physical or external characteristics of Domesday Book as revealed by a detailed examination for which the opportunity was created by the re-binding of the volumes in 1953. By 1955 the Consultative Committee had reached the opinion that the "sectional guide" plan, thoroughly laudable in principle, did not promise to produce a comprehensive guide to the Public Records soon enough for the needs of students. The Committee therefore recommended that as a first step the Record Office should undertake the issue of a revised and up-to-date edition of Giuseppi's *Guide to the Public Records* (now out of print) and should postpone further work on the separate handbooks until this new edition had appeared.

\* The first fruits of an arrangement whereby the Record Office trained and assisted an editor provided by the Irish Manuscripts Commission.

During the period under review, photography has come to be more and more clearly seen as a form of, or a substitute for, publication. The Office's Photographic Section has increased its output every year since 1947. Apart from this quantitative increase, there has been an expansion of the services offered to the public by the section. The making of paper prints from negative microfilm is now regularly undertaken; and the provision of positive microfilms was begun in 1955.

The Record Office Museum has been from time to time much in the news. The practice of mounting special temporary exhibitions was inaugurated with an exhibition of Treaties, in 1948, which was followed in 1950 by an exhibition of Naval Records. Each of these exhibitions was marked by the publication of an illustrated catalogue. In 1952 it became necessary, owing to the need for staff economies, to close the Museum entirely; when it was reopened, in 1953, it was in a modified form in the room previously devoted to special temporary exhibitions. The closing of the building on the site of the former Rolls Chapel gave the Ministry of Works an opportunity to renovate it and to carry out a general improvement in the lighting, heating and display equipment there. When the building was reopened to the public in June 1956, a comprehensive re-selection of documents for exhibition had been carried out; and about a quarter of the Museum's present contents are now on permanent view for the first time.

[For this communication we are indebted to Mr. L. C. Hector.]

## HISTORICAL MANUSCRIPTS COMMISSION

The Commission's work has three main functions: a comprehensive enquiry on the location and extent of archives (other than those of the central Government) in general, the publication of detailed reports, and the provision of advice to owners on the care and accessibility of MSS. and to students on the opportunities of access. Although the National Register of Archives is in theory concerned only with the first of these, there is no strict demarcation between them; the second function, though primarily exercised through the Commission's printed reports, is also to be found in the increasing consultation by students of the detailed reports available at the Register's headquarters, while it has from the first been difficult, even if desirable, to dissociate the Register's staff, with its extensive local contacts, from the general advisory functions of the Commission, especially in the matter of arranging for the deposit of MSS. in local record offices or other public repositories.

This article, however, as in 1939-47, deals with the Commission's work under the separate headings of the Commission and the Register, the first part being concerned with changes in the membership of the Commission and its staff and with the Commission's printed reports, while the second part is concerned with the principal work of the Register.

### THE COMMISSION AND ITS GENERAL WORK

Since 1947 many of the Commission's most valued members have died. Professor Pollard, who had resigned in July 1948, died two months later, and in the same month the Commission lost its former Secretary, Mr. S. C. Ratcliff, I.S.O., who had also been an active and helpful member of the Commission

since his retirement in 1938. In 1952 the Commission had to lament the deaths of three more members: Lord Greene, its former chairman, in April; Sir Frederic Kenyon, its senior member, in August; and Sir William Llewellyn Davies in November. Lord Greene's health had in fact necessitated his resignation from the mastership of the Rolls on June 17, 1949, when he was succeeded as Chairman of the Commission by Sir Raymond (now Lord) Evershed, who, in spite of many more urgent calls on his time, continues to take an active and helpful interest in its work; Lord Greene was reappointed as a member of the Commission, but was unhappily too ill to take any active part in the work and resigned his membership on May 30, 1951. During the twelve years of his chairmanship he had given the Commission his constant and active support, especially during the war, and was instrumental in securing the inception of the National Register of Archives to revive and extend the Commission's original function by making a more comprehensive survey than had recently been possible. A further vacancy in the Commission was caused by the resignation of Professor Pares from ill health in December 1952, and four new members were appointed on March 31, 1953: the Bishop of Ely, Professors J. G. Edwards and G. R. Potter, and the first woman member, Miss C. V. Wedgwood. Sir Hilary Jenkinson, C.B.E., having resigned the Deputy Keepership of the Public Records in April 1954, was succeeded as Executive Commissioner by Mr. D. L. Evans, O.B.E., the present Deputy Keeper, on May 24, 1954, but reappointed as a member of the Commission. The title of Executive Commissioner had been substituted for the rather misleading one of Acting Commissioner in December 1952.

A further vacancy not yet filled was caused by the lamented death on January 12, 1956, of Dr. William Angus, who had represented Scottish interests on the Commission since 1938.

The Commission has also lost the first Registrar of the National Register of Archives, Colonel Malet, whose protracted ill health, impaired by unsparring devotion to duty, ended in his deeply regretted death on August 1, 1952. His energy, ability and personality had built up the Register from small beginnings to an active and widespread organization, as is described in the later section of this report.

Progress on the Commission's printed reports has been lamentably slow and no volumes have in fact been issued since 1947. At that date the main delays were attributable to the printers; now the chief difficulty is that of getting the material from the editors. A notable exception to this is the third volume of the *Finch MSS.*, edited by Mr. Bickley, the text of which has been passed for press. The fourth volume of *Bath*, begun as long ago as 1939, is still proceeding very slowly.

Of the other two volumes authorized in 1946, the nineteenth volume of *Salisbury (Cecil)* has been most sadly interrupted by the death on February 12, 1953, of its Editor, Mr. M. S. Giuseppe, I.S.O., who had edited Vols. XV-XVIII, which appeared between 1930 and 1942 and whose connection with the Cecil Calendar went back to 1891, since from his earliest years in the Public Record Office he was one of those employed on this work after office hours. Vol. XIX is being ably and energetically continued by Mr. D. McN. Lockie, but progress is hampered by the academic work which is his principal employment.

The other report in the press is the second volume of the Cranfield papers,

part of the *Sackville (Knole)* MSS., of which a considerable part is in type. Material for other volumes, such as *De L'Isle & Dudley V. Polwarth V. Finch IV.* and *Salisbury (Cecil) XX*, is practically ready for the printers but cannot well be sent until at least one volume now in the press has been issued.

Work has also continued on the *General Guide* to the Commission's printed Reports. It will be remembered that *Part I* of this, published in 1914 and now out of print, is an *Index of places* for the Reports issued up to 1911, while *Part II* is an *Index of persons* for the same Reports issued in two sections in 1935 and 1938. Unfortunately the stock of the second (I-Z) section was destroyed by enemy action in 1940, but arrangements were eventually made for the provision by I.I.M.S.O. of photographic copies of this section. *Part III* consists of an *Index of persons* for the Reports published between 1912 and 1947: it has been compiled mainly by Major A. L. S. Hall under the supervision of Mr. Francis Bickley and is almost ready to go to press. The need for an *Index of places* for the 1912-47 Reports will, it is hoped, eventually be met by an enlarged reissue of *Part I* to include the whole period. *Part IV*, also now in preparation, consists of an *Analytical survey & key to the reports*, beginning with a summary of the general contents and scope of each collection mentioned in the Reports, followed by tabular analyses of the main periods and subjects dealt with in them. This is being undertaken by Mr. Bickley.

Material for a further (*Twenty Third*) Report to the Crown has for long been in preparation. The last one, now practically out of print, contained appendices on the present ownership and location of the privately-owned collections dealt with in the Commission's printed Reports. Information on this subject is constantly accruing and the appendices are very much in need of revision, largely as a result of the Commission's own efforts to find accommodation in public repositories for MSS. for which the owners can no longer conveniently find room or make accessible to students.

This is one of the most important of the Commission's advisory functions and is exercised either directly through the Secretary (especially if the MSS. are among those dealt with in its printed Reports) or through the Register, and often involves delicate and protracted negotiations.

Among the MSS. dealt with in the printed Reports may be mentioned the *Fgmont* and the *Calthorpe (Yelverton)* MSS., now in the British Museum; part of the *Loseley* MSS. in the Guildford muniment room; the *Downshire* MSS. now in the Berkshire Record Office, *Graham of Fintry* in the Scottish Record Office, and *Lindsey* in the Bodleian. The *Cranfield* papers required for the report now in progress are still in the Commission's charge, but a very much larger part of Lord *Sackville's* MSS. from Knole are on deposit in the Kent Archives Office at Maidstone. Some of these deposits have been acquired by the repositories concerned as gifts or purchases; but what the Commission most frequently recommends is a deposit on permanent loan which makes the documents accessible and saves trouble to the owner without impairing his rights of ownership, an important consideration if the papers are in the charge of trustees. If a formal agreement is made for such a deposit, a stipulation is usually made that the owner will, if he recalls the deposit, recoup the repository for any expenditure it may have incurred on its repair, listing, or general custody. The most notable of the numerous deposits arranged through the Register is that of the *Fitzwilliam* MSS. from Wentworth Woodhouse, now in the Sheffield

Public Library, and another important one is that of the Newcastle MSS., sometime at Clumber, in the University Library at Nottingham.

The varied interest and importance of the MSS. remaining in their owners' custody was well illustrated by the Loan Exhibition, held by the Commission through the active instrumentality of the Master of the Rolls, at the Old Hall of Lincoln's Inn in the summer of 1951. 100 exhibits lent by sixty-six private owners were on view and comprised more than 210 individual documents.

The Ministry of Works was most co-operative in providing for the lighting and a descriptive catalogue was issued by H.M.S.O. Numerous helpers from the Public Record Office, especially the repair staff, contributed materially to the success of the exhibition, not to mention the unwearied efforts of the Registrar and other members of the Commission's own staff. Over 5,000 visitors attended the exhibition during the fifteen days that it was on view.

The Commission submitted evidence to two important committees in 1949 and 1951. The Gowers Committee on Houses of National Importance gave careful consideration to the Commission's written statement on the subject of the archives normally to be found in such houses, and to oral evidence given by Sir Hilary Jenkinson, the Secretary, and the Registrar; but their recommendations on archives, though satisfactory so far as they went, were not given much prominence in the report and attracted no public attention. Some measure of liaison has been established with the Historic Buildings Council, which was appointed as a result of the committee's recommendation; but it is regrettable that the Council contains no member with any active concern for archives.

A similar hearing was given to the Commission's representatives by the Committee on the Export of Antiquities, presided over by Lord Waverley, since its terms of reference regarded Works of Art and Antiquities as including MSS. Here again the subject of MSS. was not given much space in the report; but the Deputy Keeper of the Public Records is regularly consulted when applications for export licences come before the Reviewing Committee set up as a result of the Waverley Report. It must be understood, however, that the system of export licences is not one set up in response to this committee's recommendation but the temporary continuance of arrangements made during the war for another purpose.

The Commission's staff and finances are now, mainly owing to the inception and growth of the National Register of Archives, on a very much larger scale than they were before the war. Until 1945 the Commission's staff consisted only of the Secretary, who combined this work with the duties of an Assistant Keeper of the Public Records; editorial work was, as it mainly still is, done by persons not in the Civil Service employed *ad hoc* and paid by fees; while typing was done by the Record Office typists in the course of their normal work.

The National Register of Archives started with a Registrar and Assistant Registrar as temporary civil servants to whom were later added a clerk and a typist. The staff gradually expanded, though in a much lesser degree than the increase of work, and now, including the Secretary, comprises twelve; the Secretary has been since 1954 wholly on the Commission's strength instead of being on the Record establishment. After protracted negotiations, the five members of the Register's staff were established at the end of 1953 as permanent

civil servants: the Registrar (Miss W. D. Coates, B.Litt.), the Chief Assistant Registrar (Lt.-Col. R. P. F. White, M.C.), and three Assistant Registrars (Messrs. S. D. Freer, A. E. B. Owen, and H. M. G. Baillie). The other members of the staff are still temporary civil servants (two temporary assistants, one photo-printer, one clerk, and two typists).

The Commission's annual vote, which exceeded £1,000 in 1953-54 for the first time since 1914, amounts in the year 1956-57 to £12,565. This is mainly accounted for by the salaries of the headquarters staff (£9,585); £1,680 is allowed for editors and £1,300 for travelling and incidental expenses. This includes £400 allowed for the expenses of voluntary helpers, a figure which varies very considerably, since a few counties submit regular claims while others (especially those in which the county archivist is the Register's most active representative) put in little or nothing.

The nature and extent of this organized voluntary help is dealt with in the succeeding section on the National Register of Archives, from which it may also be seen that the financial increase (which largely reflects the reduced value of money) is not out of proportion to the very large expansion of the work since 1945.

#### THE NATIONAL REGISTER OF ARCHIVES

The last contribution on this subject to *The Years' work in Archives* was made by the late Lt.-Col. Malet, O.B.E., whose deeply regretted death has already been recorded, and described the start made in its first three years. His travels in all seasons and weathers built up a remarkable organization of voluntary helpers in almost every English county and in parts of Wales. In *The Years' work in archives 1939-1947*, it was stated that 500 reports had been received: by the time of his death the number was over 3,000, and by the end of 1955 the total reached nearly 8,000.

When the Register was started in 1945, the reports received were intended to provide information for the compilation of a card index of archives arranged under the places of location. The direct consultation of the reports by scholars, and in consequence their circulation, were developments in response to an unexpected demand. As a result, the system of indexing the contents of the reports had to be altered to meet this need and there are now three such indexes at the Register's headquarters in process of compilation, namely a topographical index and selective indexes of persons and subjects.

Among the reports received are reckoned those done by voluntary helpers, whether at the Register's headquarters or in the provinces, those done by the owners themselves, and those sent in by county archivists and other custodians of MSS. in various public and local repositories. The following may be mentioned, as of special interest. (1) The Archives of the Marquess of Anglesey include diplomatic correspondence from the time of Henry VIII, some sixteenth-century maps, and stray late medieval records of the diocese of Coventry and Lichfield. (2) The Records of the Borough of King's Lynn, include a series of minutes from 19 Edward III to date, General Registers from 35 Edward I to 1661; other classes of medieval records are Chamberlains' Accounts, Guild Accounts and Guild Minutes. (3) Some early Cheshire deeds were rescued by Mr. F. E. Barker; many are undated but can be placed in the early thirteenth century, and some mention sheriffs of Chester unknown to Ormerod. (4) The Bedford Charity (Harpur Trust), has deeds from 1552 and a very detailed series

of accounts from 1760, including marriage portions, apprenticeship fees, expenses of a hospital in Bedford, and rents received from estates in Holborn. (5) Colonel Miles Backhouse owns an interesting group of letters of a Quaker family in the North from 1745-1867, with some canal and coal-mining deeds of the same period. (6) The Borough of Warwick has acquired the household accounts of the Earl of Warwick (R. Beauchamp) at Rouen, 1431-32. (7) The Archives of Captain W. J. C. Berington, heir of a Worcestershire Roman Catholic family, include, besides deeds from the thirteenth century and estate papers from the eighteenth, a fine series of domestic and family correspondence from the sixteenth century onwards, including letters of English nuns at Rouen. (8) The minutes of the Oakley Hunt extend from 1842 to date. (9) Letters belonging to the Earl of Iddesleigh are the official and other correspondence of his grandfather Sir Stafford Northcote, later 1st Earl of Iddesleigh, from 1850-85. The correspondents include Queen Victoria, Prince Albert, Disraeli, Gladstone and Lord Salisbury, and the subjects range from parochial affairs to the Abyssinian campaign. (10) The Metropolitan Water Board has records of many earlier undertakings, including some surviving records of the New River Company from 1609 onwards. (11) The archives of the Earl of Albemarle contain intelligence reports sent to the 2nd Earl on Scottish and Continental campaigns, 1745-49; and naval letter books of Admiral Viscount Keppel, 1748-82, as well as estate and household accounts from the eighteenth century. (12) The Archives of Rugby School from 1567 include those of the whole of the Lawrence Sheriff Charity and the Records of the Lawrence Sheriff School from 1878. Some letters and diaries of Dr. Arnold are preserved there.

In addition to reports received from outside sources, the examination and reporting of a large number of accumulations has been carried out by the Register's own staff. Among the more important inspections made in this way may be mentioned the Sandwich papers at Illichingbrooke, which include 120 volumes of naval and diplomatic papers and correspondence of the 1st and 4th Earls of Sandwich, the Lumley MSS. at Sandbeck Park (including Royal Household accounts of the 3rd Earl when Treasurer to Frederick Prince of Wales), and Lord Hardinge of Penshurst's MSS. and diplomatic correspondence subsequently acquired by Cambridge University Library. In many cases the inspection of documents has led to their deposit on loan in a national or local repository. Among the many important deposits arranged through the Register are the papers of Spencer Perceval, the murdered Prime Minister, presented to the British Museum by the late Mr. Dudley Perceval, the Galway MSS. (naval and military and political correspondence of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries), now deposited in Nottingham University; the extensive archives of the Foundling Hospital (now the Thomas Coram Foundation), deposited with the London County Council; the Weld MSS. from Lulworth Castle in the recently established Dorset Record Office.

The most important recent deposits are the Grey MSS. from Howick, now in Durham University, and the Newcastle papers, formerly at Clumber, now in the University of Nottingham. The Grey MSS. include the political and personal papers of the first four Earls and estate papers from the fifteenth century. The total number of items in this collection is about 1,500,000. The Newcastle MSS. include part of the 1st Duke's papers (supplementary to those in the

British Museum), the most important part being his correspondence with his brother Henry Pelham, and the papers of the next six Dukes. Those of the 5th Duke are important for the Irish Famine of 1846, Colonial affairs 1852-54, and the Crimean War.

The dissemination of information about archives is another aspect of the Register's work which has extensively increased within the last few years. Printed *Bulletins* covering the general work of the Register with summaries of important reports received are now issued annually during the winter. In 1955 the work was further extended by taking over from the Institute of Historical Research the publication (as a separate issue of the *Bulletin* to appear each summer) of lists of accessions of historical manuscripts to national and local repositories in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. These *Bulletins* are distributed to the larger libraries and local record offices in the British Isles as well as to libraries and institutions throughout the Commonwealth and United States, while there is a growing demand for them in European countries.

This dissemination has been greatly facilitated by the adoption of photo-printing by the dye-line process. Production of the Register's own reports has been speeded up and it is now possible to meet more easily the growing demand for these from interested parties. In addition, copies can now be made of catalogues of important collections which could hitherto only be consulted on the spot, as only one copy existed. These are borrowed for a short time while a "master" copy is taken, from which prints are made for the Register's own use and for circulation to other institutions. A further development has been that an increasing number of record offices are now typing their own current lists on transparent "masters" for direct reproduction by this process without further copying. Examples of lists reproduced by photo-printing are the card catalogues of the manuscripts at the Birmingham Reference Library, the Manuscript catalogues of the muniments of Brasenose and Corpus Christi Colleges, Oxford, the list of the Hanbury (Pontypool Park) MSS. in the Monmouthshire Record Office, the papers of the Earl of Buckinghamshire in the Buckinghamshire Record Office, and an important part of the Mildmay (Hazelgrove) MSS., reported on by the Commission in 1879, and now in the Essex Record Office.

County organizations for the Register now cover nearly every English county and three counties in Wales. Each committee works according to its own programme, and several have undertaken special surveys, e.g. parish records, business archives, the records of non-conformist bodies, schools, county solicitors' offices and the papers of small estates. It has been realized—ever since the Register's inception—that the best way to discover local archives was in using local knowledge, and great credit is due to the Register's honorary secretaries, many of whom are local archivists or librarians, for their initiative and hard work in keeping up and often increasing the flow of reports to the Register's headquarters.

The South Yorkshire (Sheffield) Committee recently made a very successful experiment of employing a temporary full-time archivist to list accumulations for the Register. As a result, a total of 305 reports had been sent to the Register's headquarters when the scheme came to an end in December 1954, by which time the work in the area had been completed. This has been followed by the

appointment of a full-time archivist for the West Riding (Northern) Committee, who took up her duties in October 1955. In both cases the generous co-operation of many of the local authorities in the two areas made this undertaking possible. Financial help by local authorities has also been given in Sussex, where the county committee issued last year with its annual report a printed summary of 610 collections examined for the Register since 1949.

It is always a difficult task to maintain the interest of voluntary helpers once the initial enthusiasm has spent itself. During 1951 exhibitions organized by county councils in conjunction with the Register were held in many parts of the country in celebration of the Festival of Britain, in addition to the Commission's own exhibition at Lincoln's Inn, described above. On many occasions county meetings have been followed by exhibitions held by area committees. Several successful exhibitions of this kind have been held in Hertfordshire, Middlesex and Sussex. One which aroused considerable local interest was held in Portsmouth in April 1956, organized by the Portsmouth Museums Society, which acts as a committee for the Register in the South-East Area of Hampshire.

Although there is more or less continuous contact between the Register's headquarters and the local representatives, the holding of periodical conferences has been found useful, especially as they give an opportunity for informal discussion. The first one (mentioned in the previous *Year's work*) has been followed by five others in the Vintners' Hall in 1948, 1949, 1951, 1954 and 1956.

The general influence of the Register has been felt in various ways. It played a leading part in the founding of several local record offices and through its county organizations has helped to stimulate interest in the study and preservation of local records. The restarting of the work on *The Victoria County History of Essex* was due to the Register's Committee there, and from Hertfordshire it has been reported that a number of recently-formed historical or archaeological societies have been set up or revived through the Register's activities.

It will be seen from this brief outline of the Register's work that the original concept as a directory of archive collections has been developed into a general centre of advice and information for owners and custodians of archives, and for their users at home and overseas.

[For this communication we are indebted to the late Mr. R. L. Atkinson, O.B.E., M.C., and to Miss W. D. Coates, who has contributed the section on the National Register.]

## THE SOCIETY OF ARCHIVISTS

In February 1946 a group of archivists, employed by various local authorities in England, approached the British Records Association with a request that the Association should establish a local archivists' section to cater for the special interest of their steadily growing numbers. The Association's rules, however, not permitting the formation of exclusive specialist sections, it was decided that a new Society of Local Archivists should be founded as an entirely separate body.

Between June 1946 and January 1947, the preparatory work of establishing the Society and drawing up a Constitution and scheme of organization was

undertaken under the leadership of Mr. Richard Holworthy, the Society's first chairman. The Constitution set out the Society's aims as the promotion of the better administration of local repositories for archives and the provision of facilities to discuss common problems, all persons responsible for the care of local archives being eligible for membership. The administration of the Society's affairs was placed in the hands of its Council, which consisted of the officers, six councillors elected by the general body of members, and another six councillors, one nominated by each region. The country was split into six regions, each of which pursues a separate existence within the general framework of the Society, electing its own officers and committees and arranging its own activities. Some regions are very active, but there are others where geographical factors and lack of numbers limit an active organization. Slight amendments to the Constitution were made in 1952 in an attempt to define eligibility for membership more closely, but it was not until 1954, after considerable discussion, that any major change took place.

In October 1953, the suggestion was made by Mr. V. W. Hiller that the Society of Local Archivists might well, by widening its membership, provide a professional association which would foster a close relationship between all archivists in both Britain and the Commonwealth. The idea, once planted, was nurtured during the succeeding year, and the support and views of archivists in the British Isles and Commonwealth canvassed. As a result, the Constitution was revised in December 1954 and the present Society of Archivists brought into being, whose membership is open to all "primarily occupied in the practical care of archives in the British Isles and Commonwealth." The word "Local" was dropped from the Society's title and it entered a new period of life. Some fifty archivists throughout the Commonwealth have joined, as have a number in the British Isles whose appointments are anything but local in character.

In December 1955, the Society elected as its first President Sir Hilary Jenkinson, and as its first Vice-Presidents Dr. W. Kaye Lamb, Dominion Archivist of Canada, and Colonel W. le Hardy, Chairman of the Society from 1949 to 1954.

Under its original title, the Society issued, at first irregularly and later twice annually, a *Bulletin* containing notes and articles on archival topics. The *Bulletin's* first honorary editor was Miss A. G. Foster, who was followed by Mr. F. G. Emmison; he was succeeded in 1950 by Dr. A. E. J. Hollaender, who still holds the office and has been responsible for the steady growth in size and importance of the Society's periodical. With the change in the Society came a change in the periodical, now known as the *Journal* and published, twice a year, in printed form.

Libraries in many parts of the world subscribe to the *Journal* and a plan is being considered for its exchange with similar publications throughout the world. A technical and professional library is in process of formation and is housed at Westminster City Library, by kind permission of the City Librarian, under the care of Mr. G. F. Osborn, the Society's Honorary Librarian.

In 1953, the Society, in conjunction with the County Councils Association and the Library Association, published *Local Records: their nature and care*, a co-operative work by some thirty-five members, under the joint editorship of the late Miss L. J. Redstone and Mr. F. W. Steer, Honorary Treasurer of the Society since 1947. This work, which is primarily a practical handbook of

archive administration, is in many senses complementary to the *Manual* from its President's pen.

An annual conference is held each year outside London to enable members to gain some knowledge of the practical workings of a variety of archive repositories and to provide an occasion for informal discussions and meetings. Conferences have so far been held at Warwick, Salisbury, Preston, Bristol and York.

The Society has dealt with many practical problems and has been concerned in the organization of the Course in Document Repair at the London School of Printing, and in working out principles for the disposal of useless papers accumulating in local government offices; and the training of archivists has also been discussed with the directors of the archive schools at Liverpool and London Universities. It has always worked in close and friendly liaison with the British Records Association, and in 1956 a "standing joint committee" of three members from both bodies was set up for the discussion of questions with which both might be concerned. One regional group is compiling a glossary of terms used in the description of documents, and another is enquiring into the application of photographic methods to archive work.

In the ten years of its existence, the Society has progressed from a small group of archivists to a body of some 250 members, representing all ranks and aspects of the archival profession throughout the British Isles and Commonwealth. The Society has a measure of solid achievement behind it and an interesting and worthwhile future ahead.

[For this communication we are indebted to Mr. Peter Walne.]

#### UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON: THE SCHOOL OF LIBRARIANSHIP AND ARCHIVES

The Academic Postgraduate Diploma in Archive Administration was instituted by the University of London in 1947, and courses for this Diploma are offered at the School of Librarianship and Archives, University College, London, where it forms a useful parallel to the course for the Diploma in Librarianship. Admission is restricted to candidates with a first or second class Honours degree in Arts. During recent years the number of students accepted has averaged from four to six each session, but with the number of openings at local record offices increasing to some extent, the annual entry may well rise to ten or twelve. On the whole, students are obtaining satisfactory appointments after training without unreasonable difficulty.

Certain changes have been made in the syllabus for the Diploma. The two papers on the Palaeography and Diplomatic of English Archives have been divided by date, the first dealing with material after A.D. 1500, and the second with earlier documents. A new alternative paper has been added for the benefit of archive students on the printed materials and sources needed for the study of archives. A second part has been added to the course, comparable to Part II of the Diploma in Librarianship requiring the submission of a thesis consisting of a Descriptive List or Index of, or other work upon, an original Document or Class of Documents in a record office. This is carried out by the student after passing the main examination, and the subject would normally not be presented for approval till he has received an appointment at a record office. Though the

nomenclature is different, the course in general follows similar lines to that offered by the University of Liverpool.

With a new profession such as this, the academic course must always be under review, and with this in mind contact is maintained not only with the Public Record Office (which from the beginning has supplied some of the lecturers for the course) but with the Society of Local Archivists. One major difficulty is the shortage of candidates possessing a definite vocation for archive work combined with high academic qualifications. The prospect of new legislation, with the consequent expansion of the profession and higher salaries, may improve the position in this respect.

The Diploma course is designed in the main to meet the needs of English archivists, and in consequence it must to some extent be inappropriate to the overseas student. The foreign archivist visiting England for training can usually, however, find profit in attendance at certain of the lecture courses, if this can be combined with practical work at a record office.

The Churchill-Jenkinson Prize, offered annually to the most distinguished of the candidates in the Diploma Examination, has been awarded as follows: 1948, Jean M. Inray; 1949, Bridget E. Totten; 1950, J. H. Hodson; 1951, Brenda M. Tidman, Susan M. G. Reynolds (divided); 1952, No award; 1953, J. M. Dodgson; 1954, No award; 1955, No award.

The Cowley Prize, awarded annually to the most distinguished of the candidates for the thesis or bibliography required under Part II of the Diploma in Librarianship, is now offered also to candidates for Part II of the Diploma in Archive Administration; no award has, however, yet been made to archive students.

[For this section we are indebted to Professor Raymond Irwin.]

## LONDON COUNTY COUNCIL: COURSE IN RECORD AND DOCUMENT REPAIR

In 1950 a course of practical instruction in Record Repair was initiated at the London School of Printing and Graphic Arts, following joint action by the Society of (Local) Archivists, by the British Records Association, and by the Public Record Office from whose staff both instructor and examiner were drawn. The first Session was opened by Sir Hilary Jenkinson in September 1950, since which time a course has been held each year, with classes taking place once a week during the Session. These weekly classes have in effect limited attendance to residents in the London area, and so far it has not been possible to hold a continuous course of several weeks together; nevertheless during the first five Sessions fifty-eight students attended the classes and took the examination. The course is now offered by the London County Council as part of its normal programme of instructional classes.

## THE SCOTTISH RECORD OFFICE

There has been no new legislation affecting the Scottish Record Office since the Public Registers and Records (Scotland) Act, 1948, which restored the Record Office's status and divided the surviving duties of the former Deputy Clerk Register between the Keeper of the Registers and the Keeper of the Records, the latter having charge of the Records. The grade of Assistant

Keeper was introduced in 1950. Six Assistant Keepers were in post by the end of that year, of whom two were former Executive Officers, two had been Temporary Assistants, and two were newly recruited. Two more Assistant Keepers were added to the establishment in 1951, and another two in December 1954, bringing the staff on this grade up to ten. There have also been some small additions to the lower administrative grades. Four repairers were added to the binding staff in 1950.

With this augmented force a very considerable attack has been made on the accumulated arrears of work in sorting, cataloguing, and repairing, both of the public records and of the numerous private collections accepted for preservation with them.

The deposit of private collections rose to a peak in the years following World War II, but since 1952 few of great size or importance have been received—the *Seaforth MSS.* (1527-1926), *Kinross House MSS.* (1486-1904), *Graham of Fintry MSS.* (mostly already printed by the H.M.C.), *Balfour of Burleigh MSS.* (fourteenth to seventeenth centuries), and *Mar and Kellie MSS.* Earlier deposits, however, since 1948 included some of great value for historical study, notably the family muniments of Admiral Sir Angus Cunninghame Graham of Ardoch, Sir Douglas Ramsay of Banff, Lord Elibank, Sir John Chancellor of Shieldhill, the Earls of Galloway, Dalhousie, Eglinton, Lindsay, and Rothes; the superb collection of Melrose Abbey charters belonging to the Duke of Buccleuch; and the surviving letter books and ledgers of the Carron Company.

Under section 2 (1) of the Public Records (Scotland) Act, 1937, the Sheriff Court records of Perth, Nife, Cromarty, Argyll, and Stirling have been transferred to the Register House by order of the Lord President of the Court of Session.

Nine burghs have deposited their older records in terms of the same Act, section 5 (2): Haddington, Dunbar, St. Andrews, Musselburgh, Dunfermline, Maybole, Elie and Earlsferry, Burntisland, and Irvine.

Under section 5 (1) of the same Act, and the subsequent decision of the Master of the Rolls, a number of thirteenth-century Treasury documents removed from Scotland by Edward I was returned to the Register House in 1949, and the Secretary of State's Warrant Books of 1670-1708 were transferred here in 1950. A missing volume of the Comptroller's Accounts, 1495-99, was recovered from private hands in 1954.

Calendars of private collections completed since 1949 include those of the *Leven and Melville*, *Forbes*, *Seaforth*, *Rollo*, *Kinross House*, and *Kinnaird MSS.*, to name only the largest; and work on the vast *Ailsa*, *Airlie*, *Eglinton*, *Dalhousie*, and *Clerk of Penicuik* collections is well advanced. This work has not only provided valuable experience for the younger Assistant Keepers but has brought to light some strayed public records, besides quantities of unknown or virtually unknown historical material. It has not, however, diverted attention from the public records. The whole *Register of the Great Seal* has now been indexed from 1668, when the last volume of printed abstracts concludes, to the present day; the Exchequer, Excise and Customs records, which some years ago were in considerable confusion, have been sorted and put in order; and indexes to Sheriff Court Records and unextracted processes of the Court of Session are in preparation.

Publication of the records and of indexes thereto was resumed in 1952 after

years of suspension caused by the late war and other factors, and eight volumes have been issued.

An innovation since 1949 has been the regular display of special exhibitions from the records and the private collections in the Dome gallery, where there is also a small permanent museum. Each has been on view from May to September. The most successful have been those of 1952 on the bicentenary of the Appin murder, which attracted 9,937 visitors, and of 1955 on the history of the Regalia (6,448). The current exhibition is of autographs and other documents connected with Sir Henry Raeburn.

Her Majesty the Queen paid an official visit to the Register House on June 27, 1952, the first reigning Sovereign of Great Britain to enter the building.

[For this communication we are indebted to Sir James Fergusson, Bt.]

### PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE OF NORTHERN IRELAND

The Record Office is in Law Courts Building, May Street, Belfast. In addition to this main centre, which houses the Treasury, Public Search Room, repair room and offices, we have a store nearby which is furnished with roller-racking and contains the extant Crown and Peace Records for Northern Ireland up to the year 1935. The problem of storage is again becoming acute and we are trying to obtain additional storage centres elsewhere. In 1955, our Public Search Room was entirely remodelled, and the seating capacity doubled.

Dr. D. A. Chart, who had been Deputy Keeper since the office was set up in 1924, retired in 1948, and was succeeded by Mr. E. Heatly, B.A., LL.B. Mr. Heatly retired in July 1955, and the present Deputy Keeper is Mr. Kenneth Darwin, M.A.

The office staff consists of the Deputy Keeper, two Assistant Archivists, four clerks and two attendants who are in charge of the Treasury and repairs. We hope to appoint an additional graduate Assistant Archivist in the near future to make inroads in our arrears of uncatalogued records, and organize exhibitions throughout the Province.

Several important collections of documents have been deposited here since 1948. These are:

*Macartney Papers 1764-1804*

Papers and correspondence of George, 1st Earl Macartney, Chief Secretary for Ireland. Illustrative of English and Irish politics in that period. East India Company affairs. Diplomatic Papers c. 1780-1800.

*Viscount Massereene Family Papers. Eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries*

These include the papers of Anthony Foster, Chief Baron of the Exchequer, Ireland, and his son, John, last Speaker of the Irish House of Commons. They contain material on political, economic, social, church and legal questions in that period.

*Duke of Abercorn Documents, Co. Tyrone. Late seventeenth and eighteenth centuries*

Estate and family papers. The latter contain political papers, including the letter books of the 1st Duke, and the papers of the Duke of Manchester when Ambassador to Paris (1699-1701). Also material on European, Anglo-French and Jacobite affairs.

*Marquess of Anglesey Papers. Early nineteenth century*

Correspondence of the 1st Marquess, Lord Lieutenant of Ireland 1828-33,

with most of the important figures of the day. A source for political information on Ireland in the period of the Emancipation Bill.

*Baroness De Ros documents, Strangford, Co. Down. Late seventeenth and eighteenth centuries*

Letters of De Ginckell, concerning William III's campaigns in Ireland, and including those of the Coningsby family in the eighteenth century. Correspondence with most of the important political figures of late seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.

*Montgomery Documents, Fivemiletown, Co. Tyrone. 1650-1900*

Estate and family papers. A complete series from 1650-1900. Important for Irish political events in the late nineteenth and twentieth centuries, and the Land League Movement.

*Hill Papers. 1802-1830*

Political papers of the Rt. Hon. Sir George Fitzgeralld Hill, Bt., Vice-Treasurer of Ireland and Governor of Trinidad.

*Black Papers, Belfast. Nineteenth century*

Commercial and economic letters from Dr. Joseph Black the chemist to Alexander and James Black dealing with the manufacture of glass and iron. Material on the wine trade between Belfast and Cadiz and Bordeaux. Journal of Robert Black when travelling through Spain, France, Flanders, Holland, Germany and Italy in 1727.

*Armagh Primatial Registers. Fourteenth and fifteenth centuries*

Microfilm and photostat copies of the Registers of the Primates of Armagh. Work on these is being carried out by the History Department of Queen's University, Belfast, in conjunction with the Public Record Office, and they are being published by H.M.S.O.

Calendaring of Records continues and the calendars are bound for the use of the Public in the Search Room.

#### PUBLICATIONS

The Report of the Deputy Keeper of the Records has been published for the years 1946-47 (Pub. 1948), 1948 (Pub. 1949), 1949-50 (Pub. 1952) and 1951-53 (Pub. 1956). These contain lists of all accessions, individual reports on the more important collections, and an index to all documents received. Published by H.M.S.O.

Office hours are nine-thirty to five Monday to Friday, and to twelve noon on Saturdays. Inspection of the Records is free to research students. Photostat copies of documents are issued on payment of fees.

We try to maintain close co-operation with all repositories in the British Isles, the British Records Association, the Society of Archivists and the Irish Association for Documentation. The Deputy Keeper, Mr. K. Darwin, is *ex officio* a vice-President of the British Records Association. Miss Johnston, Assistant Archivist, visited the United States and Canada when on a research fellowship.

Several exhibitions have been given throughout the Province since our first exhibition for the Festival of Britain in 1951. Regular exhibitions are taken each summer to county agricultural shows, and these have resulted in the acquisition of many important collections. Apart from these we have prepared exhibitions, illustrating the types of documents found in solicitors' offices (1953).

in commemoration of the birth of Lord Carson (1954), illustrating the Plantation of Ulster 1572-1629 (1954), and for the North of Ireland Law Society in 1955. A Handwriting Exhibition, in co-operation with Dr. Crowder of the Department of Palaeography of Queen's University, is being held in April 1956, when the Standing Conference of National and University Libraries meets in Belfast.

A pilot scheme for a Register of Archives was undertaken in 1953-54 by the Public Record Office, covering the Coleraine area in Co. Londonderry. This experiment showed that much hitherto unknown material existed. We are now compiling a Register of Business Archives in co-operation with Queen's University, Belfast. This was launched in January 1956, and a full-time research assistant has been appointed. Results so far have been encouraging.

[For this section we are indebted to Mr. Kenneth Darwin.]

## ARCHIVE WORK BY LOCAL AUTHORITIES, LIBRARIES, AND PRIVATE BODIES

### BUILDINGS

In 1947 more plans than progress had to be recorded under this head, but since that time expansion has been general and few record offices are unable to report additions to storage space, or office space, or both. Since most record offices are housed in the building of the larger authority which they serve, these extensions have usually been contrived by absorbing and equipping adjoining rooms; sometimes by adapting separate premises, either as a branch or as a new home for the whole record office; or even by new building, though this is exceptional. Search rooms and students' facilities have been enlarged at *Bedfordshire*, the *London County Council*, and *Sheffield City Library*; *Buckinghamshire* and *Shropshire* have enlarged their offices; *Hertfordshire* has absorbed part of the former county library (adjoining the record office) to provide a search room and a reference library. *Bedfordshire* and the *Borough Library at Shrewsbury* have each added a strong-room, the *John Rylands Library* has added two, and *Worcestershire* and the *Sheffield City Library* three. *Berkshire*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Gloucestershire* and the *Westminster City Library* all report increase of storage room, and at *Warwickshire* it has been nearly doubled. All these are examples of expansion by absorption, which does not, however, exhaust the ingenuity of the archivist. Private houses are in use in a number of places, though opinion is divided about their suitability. *Northamptonshire* believes *Lampert Hall* most suitable in all but situation and is considering another house more accessibly placed; *Essex* has acquired *Ingatstone Hall* as a repository, a study centre, and a stage for exhibitions; the *Norfolk and Norwich Archaeological Society*, having received a house from a benefactor, has installed its library there; and *Leicestershire* has fitted up search room, offices, repair shop and a photographic studio in a converted private house in whose garden a new record room has been built. *Somerset*, on the other hand, has accepted storage in two private houses only as a most temporary measure, till better arrangements can be made, and the *University Library at Nottingham* has left some *Portland MSS.* at *Belvoir Castle* only because its strong-rooms, though twice enlarged, are still too small. Castles are in use at *Lincoln*, where the record office has taken over the old prison, and at *Lewes*, where the *Sussex Archaeological Society* has

moved its MSS. to the Barbican; and *Worcestershire* Record Office is moving entirely to a former church, equipped for the purpose. The *British Transport Commission* is expanding in a novel way by opening branches in Edinburgh and in York. *Winchester* City Record Office, like *Leicestershire*, reports a new building; Bristol has specially arranged quarters in the new Council House; and *Middlesex* now has entirely fresh quarters in the former Passport Office remodelled to its needs. The new (1953) *Huntingdonshire* Record Office occupies premises released by the County Council. *Exeter* Cathedral Library, with the help of the Pilgrim Trust, has been rehoused in the Bishop's Palace, while the former library now contains the records of the Dean and Chapter. *St. John's College* has set an example to other *Oxford*—and *Cambridge*—colleges by equipping a new muniment room for the college records. Probably the most spectacular scheme is that in progress at the *House of Lords*, where the Victoria Tower is being gutted and refitted to provide 24,000 cubic feet of storage space. In these new or extended repositories the equipment shows a preference for steel shelving (*Winchester* City is an exception) and air-conditioning; the *House of Lords*, where wooden racking was formerly favoured, has adopted both; the ten strong-rooms of *Lancashire* are all air-conditioned; at *Buckinghamshire* an air-drying plant has kept humidity down to 55 per cent; and the *Westminster* City Library has installed a glass fibre intake filter. The stage is now past when any storage space was better than none. The best conditions of storage, and the means of providing and preserving them, increasingly engage the archivist's attention.

#### ACCESSIONS

Administrative documents naturally continue to accrue to record offices which serve an active authority, and form their first charge, though the terminal date of the transfer may vary widely. The *City of London* Record Office has records of the Public Health Department down to 1947, but of Quarter Sessions to 1834 only. At *Bristol* the Corporation records are "quickly and regularly" transferred; *East Suffolk* receives the records of the Clerk's department and is arranging to receive others and working out a classification; and *Grimby* accepts no deposits of other documents until the arrears of six centuries of administrative records have been put in order. *Leicester* Corporation has transferred to the City Museum its records from the twelfth century to 1835. At *Bedford* Corporation records, including counterparts of leases of corporation property, are being assembled after dispersal.

The *London County Council* Record Office has set an excellent example to all local archivists by circulating to all departments of the Council a memorandum on the make-up, weeding and transfer of modern records, while the *Berkshire* Record Office has a system of weeding and disposal which in some respects anticipated the Grigg Report. At *Leicestershire* special attention is paid to modern county council records; but first in this field is certainly *Worcestershire*, where records of the Clerk's and other departments are transferred as soon as they cease to be current, "weeding" is in continuous operation, there is provision for review after twenty years, and the transferred records are classified according to a specially evolved scheme. The whole question of the transfer and elimination of the records of local authorities is now being studied by a committee of the British Records Association.

A principal development in this field has been the great increase in holdings

of ecclesiastical records. Very many repositories of lay origin have been recognized as diocesan record offices and have received deposits of records both directly from diocesan registries—*Birmingham* Reference Library, for instance, has received local title documents—and from individual parishes. Most parish records of the City of London, together with probate records, are now deposited in the *Guildhall Library*; records from one-third of the parishes in *Warwickshire* are now in the County Record Office; *West Sussex* reports deposits from sixty parishes; while the *Berkshire* Record Office, which began a systematic survey of parish records in 1951, now has on deposit records of 130 parishes out of 160. *West Sussex* has also received the records of the Dean and Chapter of Chichester, and included with them the probate records from the archdeaconry—one of an increasing series of transfers of earlier testamentary records of the ecclesiastical courts of which *East Sussex* also, *East and West Suffolk*, *Leicestershire*, *Hertfordshire*, *Bedfordshire* and *Essex*, among many others, afford examples. The records of the archdeaconry of St. Albans, now at *Hertfordshire*, run from 1414 to 1857, and those of the archdeaconry of Leicester from 1491 to 1857 and have contemporary indexes. Records of other religious bodies also have not been neglected, and both *Kent* and *Glamorgan* have received records of the Society of Friends.

The exploration of solicitors' offices has only begun, and no one can yet tell what they may finally yield up. Besides the London scheme of the British Records Association, country solicitors' offices have handed over documents to (among others) *Winchester* City Record Office, the City Libraries at *Sheffield* and at *Nottingham* (1,859 MSS. during this period), *Middlesex*, and *Lincoln*, where estate agents have also been approached.

Private and family archives have, however, formed the bulk of the intake. These deposits are of the most diverse nature, varying in size from the great *Wentworth Woodhouse* archive, now in *Sheffield* City Library, to the records of small estates received by *Cornwall*; and in condition from the sadly decayed *Loseley* MSS. received at *Guildford* Muniment Room to the beautifully bound and repaired *Portland* MSS. now in the *Hampshire* Record Office. They cover all periods: some are predominantly of one century, like the *Hotham* papers now in the record office of the *East Riding*, or the *Panshanger* papers at *Hertfordshire*; others run from medieval to modern times, such as the *Addington* records received by the *Devon* Record Office (thirteenth to twentieth century) and the *Beaumanor* records deposited at the *Leicestershire* Record Office (thirteenth to twentieth century), including letters of Robert Herrick. Some very large archives, covering estates in several parts of the country, have been divided, so that *Middlesex*, for example, shares the *Jersey* records with the *Oxford* Record Society, and the *Anglesey* records with *Staffordshire*. *Essex* is probably alone in being able to report that "the county has nearly been exhausted in regard to the securing of estate and family archives from mansions and solicitors' offices"; but the gift to the *Brotherton Library* of an English archive which for a hundred years had lain hidden abroad suggests that unexpected sources may still be found.

The pressing need for a record of all these accessions has now been met by the National Register of Archives, which will in future publish a periodical *Bulletin* listing all accessions reported to the Register. The first of these *Bulletins* appeared in the summer of 1955.

## MEANS OF REFERENCE

It is encouraging to discover that the provision of these, rather than of accommodation, has now become the archivist's most pressing task. The most notable achievement has been the increasing—and continuing—number of printed *Guides* which record offices have issued. The *Essex Record Office* led the way, and by 1948 had produced the second part of its *Guide*, covering estate, ecclesiastical, and other deposited archives; and this was followed in the same year by the *Guide to the Lancashire Record Office*. These are full-dress printed volumes, as are the *Guides to the Berkshire, Shropshire and Caernarvonshire Record Offices* (1952), to *East and West Sussex* (1954), and the co-operative *Guide to the Records in the Corporation of London Record Office and in the Guildhall Library Muniment Room* (1950). Elsewhere, as at *Northamptonshire and Leicester*, summary or pamphlet *Guides* have been produced to serve until time and staff allow a fuller work; or, as at *Monmouth*, the *Guide* is still being compiled. *Chester Record Office* suggests another possibility with a combined *Guide to the Charters, Plate and Insignia*. All these *Guides*, large and small, have one feature in common, viz., they not only guide the student while working on the records but prepare him for his visit beforehand by indicating what material he may find. (*Essex* adds a leaflet describing all the other means of reference, sent to students in advance of their visit.) It is to be hoped that in due course all record offices will have their *Guides*, and that these will be widely available to students both in other parts of Great Britain and abroad. The *Guides* and *Reports* of all British record offices are already on the open shelves at the *Bodleian Library*; and the great increase of business at the *Berkshire Record Office* following brisk sales of its *Guide* abroad is significant.

The student who works in several record offices will find their "finding aids" in very various stages of development. Every office knows what it needs, but by no means all have the staff to provide it. He will also find wide divergence from the older view that all means of reference should be based closely upon the archive group, and a general effort to answer satisfactorily the first question which a searcher will ask, viz., in what group or class of records his material will be found. Thus at *Essex* the subject index is regarded as a vital means of reference, and is supplemented by an index of personal names and another of parishes. The difficulty of providing indexes of this kind increases enormously with the size of the archive, but where they are practicable they do greatly facilitate the early stages of research. Subject indexes are in use also at *Gloucestershire, Hertfordshire* (based on the catalogues), at the *British Transport Commission*, and at the *Hampshire Record Office*, and a beginning has been made at the *National Maritime Museum*. The *Birmingham Reference Library* is probably ahead of everyone in providing separate indexes to personal names, place names, occupations and seals. At the other end of the scale are the record offices sparsely staffed but with large deposits of records, which report (as *Wiltshire* does) that detailed listing is out of the question and they must concentrate on ability to produce. In between, stands, for instance, *Gloucestershire*, concentrating on summary catalogues of all classes and detailed lists or calendars only of outstanding items. One practice (specifically mentioned by *Warwickshire* but apparently general) is the making of preliminary lists directly a deposit is received, which serve as a receipt, as a means of immediate

reference, and as a basis for more detailed listing later on. The detailed listing of deposited records indeed proceeds at very varying rates, since many record offices, unlike libraries, are obliged to give priority to the care of the records of the authority which controls them (as was described above under *Accessions*): and here libraries are at an advantage, *Nottingham University Library*, for example, reporting the detailed listing of four important family archives and work well advanced on two more.

In general, despite the huge increase in records transferred or deposited, the provision of means of reference to them has been rapid and well conceived, and the searcher's only complaints are likely to be that there is even more variety among "means of reference" than among the records, and that the terms used to describe them (Inventory, Catalogue, Schedule, etc.) have different meanings in different places. Here is a field for action by the Society of Archivists.

#### PUBLICATIONS

The story here is of a struggle to maintain quality and regularity of publication despite continually rising costs. Record offices, publishing occasionally and with a finance committee behind them, can adapt their programme to their means and publish less than they would like. Local record publishing societies face a dilemma with converging horns. On the one hand is the dwindling membership, the pre-war subscription rate, and the unabated demand for a well-printed, well-edited volume every year. On the other are the rising costs of printing, paper, binding, illustration, and even parcel postage, and the inability of competent editors to give months or years of their time *gratis* as they once did. The uncanny success of the societies in so far overcoming these difficulties is shown every year at the Institute of Historical Research, which mounts for the Anglo-American conference an exhibition of volumes produced during the past year. These impressive displays show unabated quality of print, format and editorial competence, and a choice of material if anything more enterprising than before. The societies have, in fact, made what is without question the right choice: to maintain their standards, and to find the money somehow, somewhere. The next issue of *Work in Archives* will, it is to be hoped, reveal what these hitherto undeveloped sources of revenue may be. Meanwhile plans are on foot for creating a new home market by allowing members of one society to buy the publications of another at members' rates, and for extending sales abroad by exhibitions and suitable advertisement; and application has been made to the British Academy, by the British Records Association, for an annual grant from which all record publishing societies (not, perhaps, simultaneously) could benefit. The British Records Association has also discussed aspects of record publishing at every one of its annual conferences, and the meetings of editors arranged by Dr. Hassall have become a regular event of real value.

There is neither place nor space here for a list of record publications throughout the period—in any case this information is available elsewhere—and in a field where the standard is high it is hard, and no less invidious, to single out publications for particular mention. Among record offices, however, *Essex* are acknowledged to be first in the field with their range of scholarly, well-produced and financially profitable volumes; while among the record societies the *Northamptonshire Record Society* has not only issued two volumes of

special merit—*Sir Christopher Hatton's Book of Seals* and the *Duppa-Isham Correspondence* (the latter, it must be admitted, in return for two years' subscriptions)—but has founded and maintained the illustrated monthly journal *Northamptonshire past and present*. Several record offices—*Worcestershire*, *Berkshire* and *Lincoln* in particular—print full annual reports of interest to both archivist and historian. From many quarters comes welcome evidence of collaboration in publishing between record offices, record societies and local authorities: the *Bedfordshire Historical Records Society* has published material from both the county and the corporation record offices; in *Nottingham* the *Extent of Upton* of 1431 in the Public Library has been printed by the Thoroton Society, and a history of the city and continuing volumes of selected borough records by the Corporation; at *Bristol* the Great Red Book in the Corporation archives has been published by the Bristol Record Society. At *Winchester* the city charters are to be published by the Cambridge University Press, by authority of the City Council; and the borough of *Stratford on Avon* has published a history of the borough based largely upon its own records. These communal ventures in record publishing may, perhaps, be the answer to rising costs.

#### STAFF

No record office has had to diminish its staff during this period, and most report an increase, sometimes substantial. At *Worcestershire*, for example, the increase has been from two to ten, at *Middlesex* from three to eight, at *Leicestershire* and *Staffordshire* from one to five; and an increase of two or three is usual. The smaller additions generally consist of trained assistant archivists, a repairer (full- or part-time) or a typist; the larger increases are due to local development of some particular activity, as, for example, the collaboration between archives and education in *Essex*, where half the salaries of a total staff of seventeen is borne by the County Education Committee and a grant from the Ministry of Education becomes thereby payable—an arrangement which deserves study by other record offices.

There has also been a steady development of the arrangements by libraries for the care of archives and MSS., in some by the appointment of trained and full-time archivists, in others by training the library staff in the care of archives. At *Nottingham*, for instance, the Public Library has an archivist and a trained assistant, who work also at the Guildhall on the Corporation records; and the University Library appointed a full-time archivist in 1947. In London archivists have been appointed by the Borough Library of *St. Marylebone* (to take charge of the local collections), by the *Minet Library*, and by the Central Library at *Hammersmith*, where a repairer also is being trained. The *Sheffield City Library* has appointed an "archivist-librarian" with a trained assistant archivist, and a sub-librarian as part-time helper, all three being graduates in history. The Public Libraries at *Shrewsbury* and *Dudley* are among those which have appointed no additional staff but have arranged archive training for their library staff.

No library or record office has complained of difficulty in finding staff. The courses at London and Liverpool Universities have continued, with the number of students fluctuating but not failing; and record offices themselves have played an increasing part in the training of archivists, by accepting students for periods of attachment as part of their graduate course, and also (less

intentionally) by allowing their junior staff to depart, after a year or two of practical experience, towards senior and better-paid posts elsewhere. The starting pay is as low as the qualifications required are high, and it is a testimony to the interest and value of the work that students of the right calibre continue to present themselves for training.

#### PHOTOGRAPHY

It is now recognized that no record repository is effectively equipped without facilities for making and reading photographic copies. The list of repositories which possess their own equipment is now too long to be detailed, and of those which do not none are quite without access to such facilities, either through a related department or by employing a commercial operator. Meanwhile it is being discovered by experience what types of equipment are most suitable. The *Leicestershire* Record Office, among others, has found that the county surveyor's reflex box is not suitable for copying a document, such as a large parchment, which cannot be absolutely flattened, and has obtained a camera for experimental work. *Birmingham* Reference Library uses a photostat apparatus for large documents and an Azoflex for small ones. Rutherstat machines are in use at *Westminster* and *Nottingham* Public Libraries and at the *University College of North Wales*, and Copycats at *Essex* and at the *Warrington* Municipal Library. The Contoura is gaining in popularity and is now in use at *Lincoln*, *Somerset* and *East Suffolk*. How to make the best use of another department's equipment is shown by *Grimsby* with access to all the special facilities, including infra-red photography, of the police photographic department there; and outstandingly by *Worcestershire*, where the whole of the county council's photographic section has now been placed under the control of the County Archivist.

In general this photographic work is undertaken to supply the needs of copies for the public, security and substitution. At *St. Pancras* Borough Library the rate books before 1830, being too fragile for handling, have been microfilmed, and at *Essex* and *Wiltshire* photostats rather than originals are produced of enclosure award maps. At the *House of Lords* all original Acts are being microfilmed, at *Glamorgan* all the quarter sessions minute books before 1888, at *Leicestershire* both the main series of corporation records and the Act Books of Leicester archdeaconry, and by the *Hudson's Bay Company* all the Company's records down to 1870; this last enterprise is undertaken in conjunction with the Dominion Archives of Canada, and the Company has done much preparatory work on the presentation of microfilm copies so that they shall form an acceptable and accurate substitute for the original. Practically every library or record office can and does supply copies for research purposes, from the single photostat sheet to such extensive programmes as that of the *Society for the Propagation of the Gospel*, whose records are being microfilmed for universities, libraries, and archives in the United States, Canada and Mauritius, and the copying for use in the United States of the correspondence of Joseph Priestley in the *Warrington* Public Library. Some repositories not only emit but receive: *Westminster* Public Library borrows documents of local import and makes and retains copies, and *Glamorgan* has a plan to do so; and the microfilm reader has become a normal item of record office equipment.

## ACCESS

The provision of this is taken for granted as a primary duty, and varies only in degree. In some of the smaller record offices notice of a visit is still needed, though when this is given facilities are generally ample: e.g., at *Winchester College*, where notice of a visit is required, but the students' room is open until 7 p.m. for visitors from a distance.

In all reference libraries students of the manuscripts are able to use the normal readers' facilities and to benefit by the long hours during which most such libraries are open. At *Birmingham Reference Library* the reading rooms are open for twelve hours a day, and one member of the special archives staff is always available. A number of record offices also, however, have been enabled by increase in their staffs to open for longer: *Essex*, a leader in this field as in many others, continues to keep the search room open till 9 p.m., and *Guildford* and *Northamptonshire* are among those which are open on a Saturday afternoon.

All record offices have been concerned to develop and improve their facilities for research, and have placed this high on the list of their tasks. Not all have been as fortunate and successful as *Hertfordshire*, (see under "Buildings") in providing a search room; and even some of the most progressive record offices—*Worcestershire*, for example—lament a deficiency of search-room space. *Somerset*, in planning a new building, has stood out for a search room large enough to hold a class of school-children, who pay organized and frequent visits to the record office. Difficulty of access to the repository itself is stressed by *Northamptonshire* and *Cornwall* (a large county with indifferent communications). The standards of accommodation for students clearly vary widely; but in every library or record office a student can now at least be sure of a chair, a table and a welcome, while in an ever-increasing number he will find comfort, space and the necessary apparatus of research. That full advantage is taken of this is clear from the figures of attendance, *Lincoln* for example recording a steady 1,000 visitors per year.

In some offices there are certain restrictions upon production of documents which are no barrier to research. For some of the larger loan deposits at *Sheffield City Library*, for example, a special form must be filled in, while at *Warwickshire* certain deposits may not be searched without the owner's permission. Fees for the use of the records are exceptional, and where they are charged are confined to, e.g., solicitors and Government departments; the general practice is to allow private individuals access to the records without any charge.

## EXHIBITIONS

In 1948 the hope was recorded that "the display and circulation of records (with proper safeguards) will henceforth be accepted as part of the archivist's duties." By 1955 the County Archivist of *Hertfordshire* was able to write that the mounting of exhibitions had become "an integral part of office routine." Few if any of his colleagues would disagree. The needs of advertisement, education, study and celebration have, in the past seven years, evoked more exhibitions than can be even listed here, and it is no longer in doubt that they fulfil a primary duty of the archivist—that of making the records available to the authority which preserves them—by bringing the records before the ratepaying citizen in a manner which he can understand and even enjoy.

Moreover, their catalogues, often illustrated and finely produced, survive the dispersal of the exhibitions as valuable works of reference. More and more record offices now maintain a permanent show-case containing documents changed at appropriate intervals, and nearly all report exhibitions continually arranged *ad hoc* to illustrate talks and lectures.

Large-scale special exhibitions naturally attract more attention. The very numerous and extensive exhibitions put on to celebrate the Festival of Britain in 1951 and the Coronation in 1953 have already been described elsewhere.\* Local celebrations, however, have called forth exhibitions no less impressive. The centenary of Garibaldi's visit to *Newcastle upon Tyne* in 1854 was celebrated by the City Library there with an exhibition which was later transferred to the *Italian Institute* in London; and other anniversaries have been marked by *Somerset* (1954, the borough charter of Yeovil); by *Nottingham City Library* (the quincenary in 1949 of the city charter); and by *Winchester College* (1954, the 550th anniversary of William of Wykeham). Sometimes the theme has been a character or activity of special local interest, such as those at *East Suffolk* of "Six Suffolk Characters" (in 1953, coinciding with the Aldeburgh Festival of Music) and "Seven Centuries of Surveying in Suffolk" (1954); the *Leicester City Museum's* exhibition of "Staunton Harold, its Lords and Lands"; and *Warwickshire's* of the life and work of Thomas Dugdale, which attracted over 5,000 visitors. At *Sheffield City Library* in 1948 and at *Stafford* in 1951 the exhibitions coincided with inaugural meetings of the National Register, and another notable joint occasion occurred in 1952 when the *St. Pancras Borough Library* and the *London County Council* exhibited the history and topography of the King's Cross area while British Railways were celebrating the anniversary of the station. All these exhibitions have been highly successful, and the layman's interest in documents has proved as satisfactory as surprising. But documents unrelieved can be tiring to the layman (they are not always as brilliant and romantic as those shown at "Heraldry in Essex" in 1953), and they will in due course lose their present novelty as a show. It may be guessed that in time to come the most successful exhibitions will be those in which records find their appropriate due place among pictures, plate, furniture, weapons and tools as part of the normal apparatus of life.

#### THE DEVELOPMENT OF DOCUMENT REPAIR

During the earlier part of the period the demand for repair facilities became acute. The repair workshops of local record offices, even where they existed in 1947, were on a modest scale, and under the flood of deposited family archives—almost all ravaged by neglect and decay—they were soon overwhelmed. The Repairing and Binding Section of the Public Record Office, with a waiting list of three years for "private repairs," declared a moratorium. Materials were in short supply; trained repairers were not to be had; and not every local authority would agree that money should be spent on repairing old papers belonging, frequently, to someone else.

There was, however, no lack of interest and activity, and within the last five years the scene has vastly altered. Local authorities have proved understanding and often generous in providing funds and quarters for repair workshops, and the necessary craftsmen (and craftswomen) have been trained

\* Archives 1 (6), 47-51, pp. 47-50; and 2 (10), 70-73.

both through visits to the Public Record Office, which has opened its doors very wide for this purpose, and at the L.C.C. course, though the classes here, being held weekly, have benefited only those within reach of London. Some of these craftsmen have also been binders, as at the *Nottingham City Library*, *Leicestershire*, *West Sussex* and the *Winchester City Record Office*, while some have received training also at other local record offices such as *Somerset*, *Bedfordshire* (where seven repairers have been trained) and *Lancashire*, to which the Borough Librarian of *Warrington* posted himself for instruction. (The Director of the *Hastings Borough Museum* attended the L.C.C. course.) The scale and scope of these services still varies widely. Some, as at *Birmingham City Library*, are in their earliest stages, but with plans for expansion. *Warwickshire* and *Lancashire*, on the other hand, can tackle even the repair of maps, upon their map tables of Public Record Office pattern. *Wiltshire* acquired a full-time repairer in 1951 and can now undertake all their own repairs. The *House of Lords Record Office*, with access also to Stationery Office binders and map-mounters, has repaired and filed all its main papers from 1497 to 1660. In many offices, for example, in *Leicestershire*, the binder or repairer is required also to make up the minute books and other current records of the employing authority. The standard and quantity of work achieved in these local repair workshops were most strikingly shown by an exhibition of repaired documents held at the British Records Association's annual conference in 1953, at which twenty-three local record offices exhibited their work, while many more were excluded by modesty or lack of space.

Those authorities which have not yet appointed their own repairers are also better served than formerly. The Public Record Office still accepts "private" work, though in greatly reduced volume. Some of the local repair workshops are sufficiently well established to accept some outside work, for example the *Sheffield City Library*, *Somerset*, and the *City Record Office at Winchester*. *Kingston-on-Thames* votes an annual sum for repairs, which are carried out near by at the *Surrey Record Office*. Here clearly is an opportunity for co-operation and sharing of resources by authorities in the same area. Private enterprise has also entered the field: one far-sighted firm now specializes in the supply of materials for repair, while a number of private binders and craftsmen have studied at the L.C.C. course and are undertaking document repair of every kind.

The methods used in all these workshops are, with small variation, those of the Public Record Office. With one big exception orthodoxy prevails, and innovation is confined to details: at *Hertfordshire*, for instance, flaking ink is sprayed with a shellac fixative, and the *House of Lords Record Office*, backed by a powerful technical advisory committee, has discarded thymol for Santobrite as a fungicide. The big exception is, of course, the installation at the British Museum of a Barrow laminator, which has appeared among conservative repairers as George Stephenson's *Rocket* appeared to the horsemen in 1829. Automation may yet reach the repair workshops before it reaches the dictionary.

#### LIAISON AND CO-OPERATION

Apart from one or two areas in which a cold war is still perceptible, this is now very generally taken for granted. Continual exchanges are made between record offices and libraries of material found to relate to each other's areas, and

when for any reason the actual documents cannot be transferred (e.g., when the archives of a family relate to estates in several counties), either microfilm is used or, more usually, the relevant portions of the lists are copied and transferred. Similarly agreement has been reached in most places on how deposits of records should be apportioned between a county record office, for example, and a borough library. Sometimes the division is on a territorial basis, as in *Surrey* where the County Record Office and the *Guildford* Muniment Room share out the county between them, east and west; or in *Warwickshire*, where the county record office receives records of county import but leaves those of *Birmingham* interest to the City Library there, while the County Archivist acts also as *ex officio* Archivist to the Borough of *Warwick*. In the City of London, on the other hand, the division is between administrative and deposited archives, the former being preserved in the Corporation's Record Office and the latter in the Guildhall Library. The least tractable situation is that of a recently created county record office confronting an old-established City Library which has for years assembled and cared for manuscripts of county interest. Add a young and vigorous University Library, or an archive-conscious Dean and Chapter, and the triangle may remain eternal but for local diplomacy and goodwill and the realization that there are, in the long view, more than enough records to go round. *Winchester* is an encouraging example of how county, city, cathedral and college archives may all be separately administered yet co-operate harmoniously. Of a closer relation *Lincoln* is the classic instance, where three county authorities, a city and a cathedral have united their resources to maintain one joint record office; and a similar, though less extensive, plan has been discussed at *Leicester*. And the enlightened manner in which documents are now distributed is attested by the report from *Eastbourne* Public Library of documents sent on to the county record office of *Hampshire* and the county and borough libraries of *Flint*, *Cornwall* and *St. Marylebone*. Participation in university activities is particularly mentioned by *Leicestershire*, which assisted the University College's summer school in local history, and *Berkshire*, where material in the county record office has formed the basis of studies for the final honours examination in history at Reading University. With local antiquarian and record societies, too, relations are generally excellent; in *Norfolk*, for example, the Norfolk and Norwich Archaeological Society deposits record material with the Norwich Public Library; while in *Sussex* the County Archivist is on the Council of the Sussex Archaeological Society, which is considering the transfer of its manuscript collections to the county record office. This general attitude of collaboration is due in greatest part to the good sense and good will of local archivists and librarians, but much credit is due also to the Historical Manuscripts Commission, and to its grown-up daughter the National Register of Archives, which have gained the confidence of administrators and owners, as well as of archivists and librarians, and convinced almost all that in archive matters their interests are the same.

### SOME COMMONWEALTH ARCHIVES

*Previous issues of Work in Archives have included reports from a number of record offices abroad and in the British Commonwealth. The development of Commonwealth archives has lately been so extensive as to form a major feature of the*

*period under review, and it has therefore been determined to devote the whole of this section to them. The important developments in the old-established record offices of Europe may readily be learnt either from their own printed reports and periodicals or from the international archive journal Archivum.*

#### PUBLIC ARCHIVES OF CANADA

Three major developments have taken place in the Public Archives of Canada in the period under review. The department has become a full-fledged public record office; it has assembled a large collection of papers relating to the post-Confederation period; and the use of microfilm has been introduced on an extensive scale, both in Ottawa and in the branch offices in London and Paris.

The record office plan was a project of long standing. It was clearly in the minds of those who in 1903 drafted an order-in-council directing that public papers should be "assembled in one place and put in the custody of one person, and so arranged and classified as to be easily accessible to all persons interested therein." But the new building provided for the Archives in 1906 was quite inadequate for the purpose in view, and even when it was enlarged in 1926 the space available was far too limited to enable the department to accommodate the great volume of material that should have been transferred to it.

The first sketch plans for a Public Archives Records Centre were prepared in 1949, and the design was modified and developed in the course of many discussions during the next few years. The contract for the building was let in 1954, and the Centre was completed in January 1956. Situated in Tunney's Pasture, in Ottawa West, the new Centre is approximately 200 feet square, and its five storeys provide more than four acres of floor space. In addition to receiving rooms, sorting rooms, search rooms and offices it contains thirty-five storage or stack rooms, which, when fully equipped, will provide over sixty-two miles of shelving.

Departments and agencies of the Government of Canada are now sending to the Centre large quantities of records classed as "dead" or "dormant." The former will be reviewed by the staff of the Archives, in consultation with departmental officials, and files that have no long-term usefulness or historical value will be destroyed. In the case of records classed as "dormant" (a term intended to indicate that they are required relatively seldom), the Centre offers three types of reference service. If the information needed can be secured from a file easily and quickly, the staff of the Centre will do their best to answer inquiries by telephone. If a longer search is required, the search rooms in the Centre are at the disposal of departmental officials. If a department prefers to do the searching in its own offices, the Centre will make the necessary files available on loan.

The opening of the Records Centre is an event of importance to scholars in many fields. Within a few years it should be possible for the Archives to make available for their use a substantial part of the Government's records relating to the period since Confederation. The variety and extent of governmental activities have increased enormously during the last eighty years, and official files now constitute one of the most valuable sources of information on many questions.

To supplement the official records the Public Archives has been making a special effort to build up its collection of private papers relating to the period

since 1867. This has met with most gratifying success. To cite one important example: the department now has possession of the papers of every Prime Minister of Canada since Confederation, with the single exception of the Rt. Hon. R. B. (later Lord) Bennett, whose papers are in the Library of the University of New Brunswick. Many of the collections are extensive. The personal papers of Sir Wilfrid Laurier (Prime Minister from 1896 to 1911) consist of approximately 350,000 pages; those of his successor, Sir Robert Borden, run to about 250,000 pages. The papers of the Rt. Hon. W. L. Mackenzie King, which have been deposited in the Archives but are still controlled by his literary executors, consist of no less than a million and a half pages.

The files accumulated by Canada's Prime Ministers are supplemented by those of cabinet ministers and a host of others who have taken a prominent part in many aspects of the development of the Dominion. Much still remains to be done, but the material already gathered constitutes a collection of the first importance.

Microphotography has brought about important changes in the operations of the Archives. Many of the key files of both official and private papers are being microfilmed. This is being done primarily as a precautionary measure, but it will serve other purposes as well. By degrees, as funds permit, a library of extra positive prints is being assembled, and the intention is to make these available on loan. In a country as physically vast as Canada, in which the average scholar works at a distance of hundreds of miles from the Archives, this is an important consideration.

Overseas, microphotography has transformed the work of the branch offices in London and Paris. For over seventy years the Public Archives has been engaged in a copying programme, designed to bring to Canada copies of documents in Europe that relate to the history of the Dominion. Photostat reproductions were made in a few instances, but the vast majority of the papers were transcribed by hand. Since 1950 microfilming has been substituted, except in the few instances when the original documents cannot be photographed. As a consequence the flow of material to Ottawa has increased enormously, and the number of pages copied each year has jumped from thousands to hundreds of thousands.

Microphotography has now become an integral part of modern record-keeping, and it is employed extensively by the Government of Canada. It is interesting to note that the close association of the Archives with both official records and microfilming was recognized early in 1950, when the Government's Central Microfilm Unit was placed under the administration of the Public Archives.

[For this communication we are indebted to Dr. W. Kaye Lamb.]

#### AUSTRALIA: COMMONWEALTH AND STATES

1948-1956 saw a general awakening throughout Australia in which most aspects of archives and manuscripts work received attention. Emphasis was, of course, varied in each institution.

**PUBLIC ARCHIVES.** Two major occurrences materially affected public archive development, particularly in the Commonwealth.

The publication in 1949 of the United States Hoover Commission report on records management aroused great interest in Australia; the resulting Commonwealth record survey and arrangements for the control of semi-current records demonstrate a new recognition that continuous disposal of records is an essential part of the public records management and that records management should play an increasingly important part in administration. Public Service Boards of the various governments, particularly of the Commonwealth, are promoting a modern approach to records problems and indeed are largely responsible for the strength of the new attitude.

The public archives movement was further advanced by the visit in 1954 of Dr. T. R. Schellenberg, Director of Archival Management in the United States National Archives and Records Service. His visit, under the Fulbright programme, was sponsored by the Commonwealth National Library after a conference in 1949 between Commonwealth and State Archives. An intensive and most successful programme of lectures, discussions and seminars in all capital cities further stimulated the interest of public service authorities and encouraged the development of archival method. It is most appropriate that Dr. Schellenberg's manual on modern archives practice (*Modern archives—principles and techniques*. F. W. Cheshire, Melbourne, 1956), which he began in Australia, should have been published by an Australian firm.

Commonwealth-state co-operation, of which Dr. Schellenberg's visit was an outstanding example, continues to flourish. Though still on an *ad hoc* basis, arrangements for the indefinite loan of archives between various states and the Commonwealth (for example, to avoid breaking series of archives which extend beyond the transfer of the function concerned from the states to the Commonwealth) are now a permanent feature of the Australian archives scene. At present, however, the most promising feature is the joint project, worked out in detail at Dr. Schellenberg's seminar in Canberra, for the preparation of a guide to the public archives of the pre-Federation period. Each state will prepare its own section, while the Commonwealth, in addition to describing pre-Federation records, transferred at Federation to its custody, is providing co-ordinating services pending a decision on final editing arrangements by the proposed Australian Advisory Council on Bibliographical Services. There are several problems associated with the venture, the main ones being the differing stages of archival development in the various states and the fact that the total of public records in archival custody varies from state to state. However, the advantages are great. It will not only open a vast field of source material for the nineteenth century but it also provides, at an early stage, a focal point for the development of common, or at least similar, techniques for arrangement and description throughout Australia. The first inventories are now being submitted for comparison of methods.

Naturally there has been an increasing analysis of the theory and practice of archives and records management. It is too early to report results, but the main emphasis is in two directions—on the modification of current records systems to meet the dual requirements of more efficient reference service and disposal requirements, and on the modification of archive group arrangement techniques to deal with the relatively new problem of complex and often interwoven series of registry files.

PRIVATE ARCHIVES AND MANUSCRIPTS. There have been important advances in the field of non-public archives also. The National Library and the State Libraries have always been strong in collections of private manuscripts and papers. Their main current accessions are reported regularly in *Historical studies—Australia and New Zealand*. Now some of the emphasis is being turned towards business archives with the formation in New South Wales of a Business Archives Council, which, despite its short history, has an excellent record of activity. It aims to encourage business firms to ensure preservation of their earlier records, either in their own custody or that of the appropriate library. Preparations are in hand for a similar organization in Victoria. The Archives Section of the Library Association of Australia has established a committee to tackle the problem of preparing rules for the description of historical manuscripts. Other developments in this field are described in succeeding sections.

Commonwealth-state co-operation in the field of private archives and historical manuscripts is being extended. The Commonwealth National Library and the Public Library of New South Wales in association have microfilmed records relating to Australia in the Public Record Office, 125,000 feet of positive microfilm having now been delivered to each of the two participating libraries and to certain state libraries. This programme will eventually cover records relating to Australia in other institutions abroad.

The National Register of Archives in London has recently offered to direct to Australian libraries documents of Australian interest for which they are the appropriate repositories, and the National Library is discussing with the state libraries suitable machinery for the allocation of this material in Australia.

#### COMMONWEALTH

##### (The Commonwealth National Library)

PUBLIC ARCHIVES. In 1950 the Archives Division of the National Library joined with representatives of the Public Service Board in surveying the records of all Commonwealth offices in Australian capital cities. There were several important results of the survey.

(i) While the more easily identifiable series of valueless records were earmarked for destruction, others of permanent or temporary value but infrequently used for current business were transferred to repositories of the Archives Division established in the larger state capitals and Canberra. Much valuable office space was saved in the city areas.

(ii) The disposal of records, controlled by disposal schedules, came to be regarded as an essential part of administration and not merely a way of selecting archives.

(iii) The resources of the Archives Division were, until recently, almost entirely turned towards the comprehensive disposal programme and the provision of intermediate record (including potential archives) services.

Following the record survey in 1950-51, the Government decided that, to avoid duplication of activity, the National Library should be the sole archival authority for Commonwealth departments with the proviso that the Australian War Memorial would continue to house records of the fighting services and departmental records directly associated with them.

During the survey and the immediately subsequent years, the Archives

Division had actually carried out the majority of scheduling for departments. However, the Government, on the advice of the Commonwealth Archives Committee, decided that departments should resume their responsibility in this area. With this and the need for constant improvement in current record services as the stimulus, tentative plans are being made for the appointment in each department of a specially-trained records officer-archivist to organize all record-keeping and disposal activities.

Within the Division the main developments have been:

(i) A special system of accessioning all records received from departments was developed, not only to provide accurate control of records at the intermediate record stage but to provide by means of duplicate copies of the series identification sheet a means of classifying permanent records into potential archive groups.

(ii) Archivists have commenced a special programme for the arrangement and description of Commonwealth Archives up to 1929.

At the time of writing, some 80,000 running feet of records are in custody, of which perhaps 30,000 are of permanent value. Over 700,000 running feet have been destroyed under archival authorization since 1930.

Other activities have included surveying and advising on the disposal of records of such Commonwealth statutory bodies as the Australian Broadcasting Commission, the Snowy Mountains Hydro-Electric Authority, the Commonwealth Bank and the Australian Airlines Commission. The Territory of Papua-New Guinea was also surveyed and as a result is planning to set up an intermediate record centre with a records officer-archivist in charge. A number of archivists spent short training periods with the Archives Division before commencing duties with other institutions and the Division has participated actively in the records training courses run by the Public Service Board.

PRIVATE ARCHIVES AND MANUSCRIPTS. It is also the policy of the Library to collect and preserve in its Australian Branch records which do not form part of the archives of the Commonwealth Government. A special responsibility is recognized in relation to the records of banking, commercial and industrial organizations and of political movements and parties. During the period the principal accessions have been the papers of political figures and, in particular, of those associated with Commonwealth affairs. However, the Library seeks also to preserve in microfilm copy an even wider record of Australian development, and although the greater part of its holdings arise out of the joint project described earlier, it holds independently acquired microfilm copies from a number of overseas sources.

#### NEW SOUTH WALES

##### *(The Public Library of New South Wales)*

The period 1948-56 has been a significant one in New South Wales. During 1948 the Mitchell Librarian was overseas and her studies included archival methods. In 1949 an Archives Section of the Library Association of Australia was formed, its inaugural meeting and most of its activity being in New South Wales.

Increased interest in public records and also the problems of the storage of records in a period of acute shortage of city office space led in 1953 to the

appointment by the State Public Service Board of a committee to examine the organization of departmental records and to provide for their preservation and disposal. Following this report, three professional Archives Officers were appointed in November 1953, to work solely with State Archives as an Archives Department of the State Library.

The work of the Archives Department is threefold. First it deals with the older state records preserved in the Mitchell Library, which is a Department of the State Library, and in this field work has commenced on the preparation of inventories and descriptions of the records which record the settlement and development of Australia. Secondly it deals with the non-current records of departments for which an out-of-town intermediate repository, known as the Government Records Repository, was opened in 1954. At the time of writing there are over 20,000 running feet of records in this repository. These records are available for research by departmental permission. In addition to this, 14,000 running feet of records of no permanent value have been destroyed. At this stage disposal scheduling has not been attempted except experimentally, each disposal being dealt with on its merits and destruction being restricted to form series or series which may be destroyed in their entirety. Finally, at the request of the Public Service Board, the department works with Government departments in the management of their current records. Work in this field to date has been mainly experimental.

The Mitchell Library has extended its work as a repository for the archives of individuals, associations, companies, churches and other non-governmental bodies and its accessions are too great to list here.

Outside the public library, archivists have been appointed by the University of Sydney, the Bank of New South Wales, the Commonwealth Bank of Australia and the Australian Broadcasting Commission.

#### VICTORIA

##### *(Public Library of Victoria)*

The period under review opened with the Public Library of Victoria—the State Library—acting as the recognized depository for the archives of the Government. In the absence of any legislative authority, the Library had worked under a directive from successive State Premiers, that no department should destroy any of its records without reference to the Library to establish their value as archives. In accordance with this, some 4,000,000 documents were accumulated in the Library's store-rooms, gathered together over a quarter of a century. These documents were generally poorly housed, with no archivists to handle them. The Library was merely doing what it could to preserve this mass of material until such time as legal recognition, adequate space and the provision of trained staff should convert them into properly controlled and readily accessible archives.

In 1946, however, the Government appointed Mr. D. W. Baker as the state's first official archivist. He was succeeded by Miss R. M. McGowan in 1949 and by Miss P. F. Ingham in 1951. These three were Honours students in History but with no formal archivist training. Within the limitation of the space available to them and with only a junior and continually changing staff to assist them, they courageously tackled their enormous task of bringing some order into the collections already here; they were, however, unable to make any

considerable advance in the wider recognition or handling of archives throughout the departments generally. But within the Library itself, very good work was done, particularly in the arranging and boxing of the important Chief Secretary's files from 1836 to the 1870s and of the Education Department's records from 1848 onwards. The papers of the Public Works Department, the Police Department and certain sections of the Lands Department are still to be processed.

During the period 1948-56, accessions were in the nature of additions to sets of papers already here, rather than transfers from any new department. From investigations, however, it appears that nearly all departments have been meticulous in observing the Premier's directive and large quantities of records still being held in the originating agencies are due for transfer to the Library, as soon as this can possibly be done.

The visit of Dr. T. R. Schellenberg lent impetus to the proper recognition of archives and the need of staff. In 1955, therefore, the Government agreed to the employment of four graduates to serve as archivists, and the Senior Archivist, Mr. H. W. Nunn, commenced duty in November 1955. It can be expected that from now on modern archival practices will be observed and better progress made. There still remains the necessity of framing an Archives Act and securing extra accommodation, but these matters are under consideration.

Space is the immediate problem—space for shelving and space for working. The Government has been urged by the Trustees to proceed with the building of the new Latrobe wing of the Library. The foundation stone of this wing was set by the Premier in 1951 on the occasion of the centenary of self-government. It is proposed to erect a four-storey building in which the well-lit and spacious basement will be set aside for the archives. In the wing will be housed the whole Australian Collection of the Library, with space made available for the collection of the Royal Historical Society of Victoria if they should wish to make use of it.

In the period under consideration the Collection of Private Manuscripts has increased in importance. The proposed Latrobe Library has been an incentive for many people to deposit their family papers in the care of a continuing institution. So important has the Private Collection become that it was decided to reverse the decision of a few years ago and place it again under the care of one of the archives staff.

#### QUEENSLAND

No complete system of archives has yet been established in Queensland, and Part 4 of The Libraries Act, 1943-1949, still awaits proclamation. However, in anticipation, work is proceeding in several ways.

Selected public record material is being transferred to the custody of the Oxley Memorial Library, including some relating to the early administration of immigration, gold mining, convicts, education, police, customs and hospitals.

Approval has been given by the Government for the complete listing of all Government records from the beginning up to the present, to be completed in time for the celebration accompanying the centenary of responsible government in Queensland.

Arrangements have been made with the Government of New South Wales for the microfilming of all material of Queensland interest held in the New South Wales Public Library, the Mitchell Library and the New South Wales Archives.

Both projects outlined above have begun.

The Department of History and Political Science of the University of Queensland is at present holding on loan from Government House sets of dispatches to and from the Secretary of State for the Colonies, letters both private and official to and from the Governor on various persons, and Private Secretaries' letter-books.

### SOUTH AUSTRALIA

#### *(Public Library of South Australia)*

Restricted accommodation in the Archives Department retarded the addition of extensive series of archives, but smaller groups, to 1940, together with valuable accessions of private records, have been incorporated. Material now held for research purposes comprises some 400,000 documents, 26,000 views and 2,000 maps.

The resources of the department were well utilized by students, research workers, authors, journalists and the general public. Annual averages of 3,000 "transactions," ranging from simple enquiries to protracted researches, were dealt with. The yearly demand for material approximated 20,000 MSS. and 16,000 views, maps and other sources.

The preparation of indexes (mainly by supervised part-time or honorary workers) continued. The correspondence of the South Australian Colonial Secretary is now indexed in detail to 1854; indexes to lists of persons arriving from overseas have been carried to 1887; and the making of other essential finding aids were commenced, including an urgently needed, properly documented, nomenclature of the state.

Numerous theses based upon extensive studies of original material were written by university students and graduates. A marked increase was evident in the compilation of local, institutional, religious and business histories. Continued assistance was afforded to the state primary schools, where local and regional history has been studied during the past twenty-five years. Between 1948-56 the Pioneers' Association of South Australia published, mainly from archival sources, about forty pamphlets, principally of a biographical nature.

In 1951, space in a "Commonwealth Jubilee Celebrations Train" was allotted for exhibits illustrating the more striking aspects of South Australian history. To commemorate the centenary of the opening of the first Australian public railway, an exhibition of documentary and other material showing railway development in this state was arranged in May 1954 and attracted an attendance of about 12,000 persons. Suitably designed and illuminated document cabinets were installed at the Archives entrance and brought into regular use in 1955.

### WESTERN AUSTRALIA

#### *(State Library of Western Australia)*

The Archives Branch of the State Library was opened in 1945 and occupies a portion of the Library building. It exists primarily as a repository for the official records of the State Government, but it includes local and private archives as well as manuscripts of historical interest to Western Australia. There is as yet no legislation relating to the preservation of records in this state, the Archives Branch exercising its authority through the Premier's Department, which issues all its circulars and instructions to Government agencies. The

staff has recently been increased, and now consists of the archivist and three assistants.

**ACCESSIONS.** The bulk of the accessions during the period 1948-56 have been of Government records. There have been notable gifts of private records, but they are small in quantity though of considerable importance historically. Most departmental records prior to 1900 are now in the Archives, and there have been some large accessions for the period 1900-50, including records of special agencies set up during the war which have now ceased to function.

**MEANS OF REFERENCE.** Compilation of inventories for the main archival groups has begun, and a general dictionary catalogue of all the private records is kept. In most cases the original registers and indexes are transferred with departmental records, and these are available for research workers. Completion of the inventories planned is the most important work to be carried out in the field in the near future.

**PHOTOGRAPHY.** The photographic services of the Library are also available to the Archives Branch. Microfilm copies or photo-copies of records can be supplied to students as required, and microfilm copies of Western Australian material deposited elsewhere are obtained whenever possible for the Archives.

**ACCESS.** The bulk of the material in the Archives is freely available to bona fide research workers, but restrictions have been placed on certain groups of records by the departments from which they were received.

As the Archives Branch of the State Library in Western Australia was opened so recently, the years from 1948-56 have been a period of gradual development. A useful relationship has been established with Government departments, and increasing use is made of the information service on Western Australian history, but much work yet remains to be done in the collection of private archives.

#### TASMANIA

##### *(State Library of Tasmania)*

The years 1948-56 have seen the implementation in Tasmania of the Public Records Act, passed by the State Parliament in 1943. An Archivist, an Officer and other staff were appointed to the State Library of Tasmania and the task of disposing of valueless records accumulated in many Government agencies over many years, and of transferring to archival custody those records which have permanent value, has proceeded satisfactorily.

At the same time, the arranging, labelling, describing and inventorying of those records in custody at the beginning of this period, and of those transferred since that date, has been undertaken, and about 90 per cent of all records in the Archives are now fully described. Furthermore, classification and listing in inventory form, and the consequent rearrangement of items in order of groups and series, has been carried out for about 40 per cent of holdings.

The position contrasts sharply with that operating prior to 1948, when proper control was not being enforced over valuable public archives, when there was no full-time archival staff, and when considerable destruction of valuable papers, especially in municipal centres and rural police offices, was taking place.

To date seventy-nine separate transfers have been received from within the state. Besides these, four transfers have taken place from Commonwealth Government agencies. In all, 1,350 feet, by running measurement, of records have been transferred.

The total footage under archival control is now about 3,500, of which 440 feet is occupied by a set of Tasmanian newspapers, which have, since about 1820, been received by officers of the Government under the terms of various statutory and other provisions. More than half the total holdings are now arranged on new steel shelving, and an ever-increasing number of student and official enquiries is being dealt with.

Despite the extent to which archival control of non-current official papers has been established in Tasmania, much remains to be done. Only five present-day departments have made reasonably complete clearances of obsolete records, thus making available for preservation in the Archives section of the State Library all such files of permanent value. Three of the largest departments have not reviewed their record-making and -keeping practices in the light of the permanent preservation in the Archives section of papers of value in historical and sociological research. Three other large departments have made merely token transfer of their accumulated records. The Archives section is limited in the service it can render by inadequate space, and by staffing problems.

[For this contribution we are indebted to Mr. H. L. White.]

#### THE CENTRAL AFRICAN ARCHIVES

The position of the Central African Archives is a somewhat unusual one. It was created in 1935 as a Southern Rhodesia Government department at a time when the Colony possessed very few cultural institutions, and the Archives was therefore soon forced to take over tasks that would normally be carried out by several different agencies in older and more developed countries. Later the Central African Archives had to learn the art of serving several masters at the same time. In 1946 it extended its operations to Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland. When the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland came into being in 1953, the Archives became part of the Federal Government, assuming responsibility for the public records of all four governments. Moreover, the Archives is now also concerned with the preservation of local government records. The work of the Central African Archives has therefore been unusually varied, and only its most important aspects can be alluded to here.

An outstanding achievement during this period has been the creation of a records management service. This was begun in 1954 when a Centre was opened at Cranborne, Salisbury, to ensure the centralized control, storage, issue and disposal of semi-current records. Papers which have lost their administrative usefulness are destroyed after a specified number of years in accordance with standing instructions; those selected for preservation will be transferred periodically to the Research Centre of the Central African Archives, which houses the public archives and a comprehensive research library. The disposal of records by destruction or transfer is carried out systematically with the aid of a punched card system. About one and a half miles of records have now been deposited in the Records Management Centre. The new service has already led to considerable economies in the use of office space and strong-rooms, as well as in increased administrative efficiency. In evolving the methods of

records management used, the Central African Archives has been able to draw to a considerable extent on experiences accumulated in connection with older material. Rhodesia has no ancient archives; European administration and written Government records only came into being from 1890 onwards; even the country's oldest official documents would be classed as modern overseas, and the archivist's general approach towards problems of processing, classification and so forth has thus differed somewhat from that prevailing in older countries.

During 1955 the Central African Archives also created a new division designed to take care of the archives belonging to local government authorities. This material provides an important source of historical and sociological information. Unfortunately it has hitherto suffered from considerable neglect because the local government authorities generally lack both the financial and technical resources to safeguard the records they have accumulated. But a beginning has now been made with their preservation. A preliminary survey of local government records in Southern Rhodesia has been completed; much has already been collected and the Local Government Division of the Central African Archives can probably claim to be the first of its kind ever to have been brought into being by any central government archival agency.

Since its inception, the Central African Archives has also built up a considerable body of historical manuscripts. Nearly all of these have been acquired by gift. The most important of the many new accessions consists of a large number of papers accumulated by David Livingstone and his family.

The Research Library is charged with administering various laws providing for the compulsory deposit of every book, newspaper and journal published within the Federation. It also acquires work of general interest to this part of Africa and, with its 38,000 printed items, the Library now possesses the largest collection of Rhodesiana in the world.

During the period, this institution has also managed to carry out a considerable publications programme. Rhodesia is still a young country; it lacks as yet any sizeable body of works on local history and related subjects, and the Publications Division therefore has an important part to play in the creation of a national tradition. Fortunately it has been able to draw on the generous and far-sighted co-operation of influential business corporations and individuals. With their help the *Oppenheimer Series*, a collection of published historical manuscripts of Rhodesian interest, has been extended by an additional seven volumes. Two more volumes are in the course of preparation. Moreover, an exhaustive *Guide to the public records of Southern Rhodesia under the Régime of The British South Africa Company 1890-1923* has now been completed. The work amounts to over 300 pages and includes a description of the public archives, a general historical survey, detailed notes on the administrative history of the various departments and an exhaustive index. Its appearance marks the opening of the pre-1923 Southern Rhodesia records to accredited research workers, who will, it is hoped, find the work a valuable aid in their studies. Other publications include a popularly-written history of the Central African Archives and a portfolio of historical paintings, *Thomas Baines: his art in Rhodesia*.

The Central African Archives has therefore engaged in a very wide range of activities and has served many different enquirers. But its primary justification lies in its practical, administrative usefulness. With the experience which it has gathered, it has been able to play a not inconsiderable part in national

administration and the new archives legislation now in preparation will further increase its usefulness and authority. Not only will the records of local governments and statutory bodies come under its jurisdiction, but it will also take a more active part in the control and supervision of records during the whole of their life cycle.

[For this communication we are indebted to Mr. V. W. Hiller, O.B.E.]

### CEYLON ARCHIVES

**HISTORY AND CONTENT.** Ceylon's archives date from March 1640 when the Dutch were beginning to displace the Portuguese as rulers of the seaboard. The oldest documents are the minutes of a Dutch military council held in the warship *Utrecht* off Galle harbour shortly before the fortress was attacked and taken. None of the records of the Portuguese era have survived; they were burnt to save them from the invaders.

In the main the Dutch bestowed great care on their archives; ensured their physical safety, winnowed them clean of all useless elements, and compiled full lists. Indeed, they had even begun to use the designation "Archivaris" for their record keeper, already in the latter part of the eighteenth century. Whatever loss or damage did occur could be traced not to any fault in the general policy, but to the negligence of junior functionaries. There was wisdom at the head, but sometimes weakness in the extremities.

When the British took control in 1796, they claimed the delivery of "all public papers" under the terms of the capitulation. They also felt that the importance of these records justified the choice of an official of the highest rank as custodian. Accordingly, in 1798, Hugh Cleghorn, the first British Chief Secretary of the Island, was also appointed its first archivist. A few years after this spectacular start, however, the post of archivist sank back into a position of the fourth or fifth magnitude. During the nineteenth century the Government's interest in its old records proved only intermittent and fluctuating. The office of Keeper fell many times into abeyance and a line of minor scribes carried out the few simple routine duties thought to be enough to satisfy the public appetite.

This state of comparative neglect was brought to an end in 1902, chiefly through the activities of a certain retired civil servant who launched a series of land suits against the Crown and claimed huge tracts of property on the basis of a number of Dutch documents, alleged to be land grants. The Government was unwilling to admit these exorbitant demands and yet unable to refute them, without recourse to the relevant Dutch originals, enfolded somewhere among its impenetrable archives. In this emergency the post of Government Archivist was reborn in its modern shape.

The Archives offices formed a wing of the Chief Secretary's department until the political changes of October 1947. Thereafter it was raised to the plane of a separate unit with its own Head of Estimates in the Ministry of Education. At the same time its sphere was enlarged to include, besides the Archives proper, the following branches: Office for the receipt and registration of all books and newspapers printed in the island; the Record Office: containing the vast accumulation of files less than fifty years old, left by the former Chief Secretary's office, which had been the hub of the whole administration. These are not open to public inspection.

The combined bulk of all these groups covered eight miles of shelving and numbered upwards of 150,000 pieces.

At this stage they were housed in a disused armoury at Nuwara Eliya, the hill station, to which they had been evacuated during the war. This building or emergency bolt-hole, in appearance half barn, half shanty, had endeared itself to the Government because it stood on Crown land and was therefore rent free. Soon it was crammed to suffocation; albeit the records could still be properly arranged.

The staff then consisted of the Archivist and his assistant with one technical assistant who directly supervised the work of five repairers.

THE YEARS 1948-56. Better accommodation, new equipment, a specialist training for the staff were claims that called for early fulfilment. A photostat apparatus was installed in 1948, and, soon afterwards, the Archivist (the present writer) left for Europe on a study tour; the bulk of his time was spent at the Public Record Office in London.

In 1950, a mansion of twenty-six rooms, which had before been used as an hotel, was taken on rent to form the administrative and repairs block and absorb part of the earliest records. That same year, with powerful support from the Minister of Education and his Permanent Secretary, both of whom paid several visits to the Archives and stayed and worked in the building, further advances were made in all directions towards an improved archival service. A microfilm camera was set up; the staff was increased; more funds were voted for the work of the Historical Manuscripts Commission, which now issued its third report.

The editorial side of archival work could not be neglected in a country which as yet had little knowledge of the proper functions of an archivist. By means of public lectures and exhibitions of historical manuscripts some little success was achieved in dispelling false notions and showing that emphasis today is laid on the technical more than the literary aspects of archival economy. However, two works were produced, the Historical Maps of Ceylon and the Secret Minutes of the Dutch Council of 1762, with notes and an English translation. Further material is also now ready for the Press.

A notable event at the beginning of 1955 was the arrival of Mr. S. M. Cockerell of Letchworth to give the bindery staff an intensive course in the latest and most economical methods of document repair and hand binding. During his short but very active stay (for three months under the Colombo Plan) he brought in many innovations, established a finishing room and has set high, on a firm and abiding basis, the level of craftsmanship in the Ceylon archives.

The sanctioned strength of the department now stands at six senior officers: the Archivist and five assistants, one of whom has read Law so as to take charge of the judicial records; one technical assistant; twenty-three repairers and binders; twelve clerks and cataloguing assistants; and fifteen sweepers, attendants and other minor employees. Funds have been provided for new and better showcases for the Museum section.

In the near future the Archives will be moved to Maharagama, ten miles south-east of Colombo. The site, a dozen acres on high ground, has been chosen and a sum of approximately £120,000 earmarked under the Colombo Plan Capital Aid Scheme for a new repository with all necessary equipment.

[ For this communication we are indebted to Mr. J. H. O. Paulusz. ]

## WORK IN GOLD COAST ARCHIVES

The development of archives in the Gold Coast entered its third phase with the promulgation of the Public Archives Ordinance in November 1955. This Ordinance establishes the National Archives of the Gold Coast and provides for the preservation and centralization, under the control of the Archivist, of all public records that have enduring or permanent value. This legal recognition is all the more important because it has come, first, to crown nine years of pioneering work in organizing what once appeared to be mere junk in the central Secretariat of the Government and, second, to crystallize the growing public awareness of the usefulness and value of archives as the life-blood of historical research.

The first phase of this development began in 1946 and ended in 1949. For, realizing the need to develop its archives, the Government of the Gold Coast appointed in 1946 Miss M. A. Harris, a librarian by profession, as Archivist to put its archives in order. She managed, during her eighteen-month tour, to accession the public records stored in Government House and the central Secretariat record rooms, viz., dispatches to and from the Secretary of State for the Colonies, gazettes, Blue books, sessional papers, reports, and various Government publications.

This was the situation when the writer assumed duty as Archivist in January 1950. The second phase then began—a phase during which the foundation for the establishment of an archival service in the Gold Coast modelled partly on the practices of the British Public Record Office in London and partly on those of the National Archives of the United States, Washington, D.C., were laid.

During this period, efforts were made to trace records relating to the country preserved in European archive repositories. The association of the Gold Coast with the Western world did not begin abruptly in the nineteenth century with the assumption of direct control in 1843 by the British Government: one of four letter-books left by the African Company of Merchants goes back to 1776. But long before this date the Gold Coast had been a scene of much activity. Both the French and the Portuguese claim to have been the first to reach the Gold Coast—the former in 1346 and the latter in 1471. Besides these two nations, the English (by the voyages of Sir John Tintam and Sir William Fabian in April 1482, and the formation of the Company of Adventurers of London in 1631), the Dutch in 1595, the Swedes in 1645 and the Danes in 1657 had all had transactions with the country.

Hence in Copenhagen the records cover the period 1671-1859; in Stockholm 1652-1718; in The Hague 1634-1872; and in London 1664 (according to the summary C.O. Class List at the P.R.O.). No lists of records have been supplied by the Archivist of the Royal Archives of Portugal, but it is understood that the records there go back to 1518. Then there are the records of the various missionary societies that operated in the Gold Coast in the nineteenth century and helped to shape the country's destiny. The bodies are the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel, from 1752; the Basel Mission Society, from 1828; the Wesleyan (now Methodist) Mission Society, from 1835; and the Bremen Mission Society, from 1854.

These overseas papers represent no small break in the records assembled

here; yet the records assembled in the National Archives during the second phase have been considerable. These have been classified into 250 record groups under the ADM. (Administration) code reference. The ADM. series of records include letter-books of the African Company of Merchants between 1776 and 1820; original correspondence comprising dispatches to and from the Secretary of State, dating from 1843; duplicate letter-books from 1852; minute papers from 1849; and the records (including court record books which go back to 1858) of the various district offices and regional administration headquarters scattered over the length and breadth of the country. Of the sessional papers record group it is worth while to mention that the first minute book of the Legislative Council when it was first constituted by Letters Patent on April 30, 1850, is extant. The records of the office of the Secretary for Native Affairs, which is now defunct, contain material of great variety and import on native affairs. There are also Gold Coast Ordinances from 1843, Blue books from 1850, Government gazettes from 1872, maps and plans from 1756, and printed copies of treaties concluded with native chiefs from 1642.

To supplement and elucidate these public records, it was necessary to acquire the private archives of well-known Gold Coast personalities of the nineteenth century. Six groups of such records have been traced and catalogued, some of which have, with the permission of the owners, been photostated. These are the papers of George Blankson of Anomabu, 1809-98, the first full-blooded African member of the Legislative Council in 1861; of James Bannerman, 1790-1858 (a mulatto of Scottish and African descent), foundation member of the Legislative Council when it met in 1850 and the first African Lieutenant-Governor; of the Reverend T. B. Freeman, 1809-90, pioneer in the spread of Methodism in the Gold Coast; of Hendrik Vroom, C.M.G., who was appointed District Commissioner in 1880; of John Sarbah, a wealthy merchant of Anomabu and second African member of the Legislative Council in 1889; and the papers of the Fanti Confederation which was formed in 1869 as a direct result of the Anglo-Dutch Exchange of Territory Treaty signed on March 6, 1867, and of King Gharthey IV of Winneba was first President.

As a result, however, of long years of neglect and poor conditions of storage a great many of these records were, on examination, found to be in need of rehabilitation. A Preservation Services Branch (comprising Repairing, Guarding and Filing, and Binding Sections) was therefore established in May 1952 to handle them. Here decayed documents are cleaned, repaired, sized and either guarded and filed or bound and made suitable for another century of use. A Kodak model 4 Photostat machine has also been installed, to supply copies to searchers and to provide copies of irreplaceable documents.

Now classified lists of all the records in the Repository are available in the Search Department for use of research workers, who include civil servants, university lecturers, teachers, undergraduates, research graduates, and members of the public generally. There have been postal inquiries, too—from England, Scotland, U.S.A., Australia, India, Sierra Leone and Nigeria. Access to the records is free, and is open to the period before 1902 (as approved by the Secretary of State for the Colonies).

Yet another high-light of the second phase was an exhibition of historical records relating to the Gold Coast, the first of its kind in the history of the country. It was held under the distinguished patronage of His Excellency the

Officer then Administering the Government, and was shown at Accra, Kumasi and Cape Coast. More than 7,000 people saw this exhibition. It is claimed that the exhibition achieved the purpose for which it was organized—which was to introduce the general public to the wealth of historical material available at the National Archives and to induce owners of valuable private archives to make them available to the nation. It has more than anything else helped to dispel the “dead office paper” view of archives which had been prevalent for some time in this country.

As a measure of the marked increase in the public appreciation of the value of archives and of the services available in the National Archives, the number of those who used the archives in 1955 totalled 500, as compared with ninety-two in 1950. At the same time revenue derived from the sale of certified true copies of documents rose from £2 16s. to £190 18s.

All this development has taken place in spite of the fact that the archives are housed in temporary premises where storage conditions are not ideal. Even in this matter of accommodation the second phase has an achievement to record; for it saw the acquisition of a site for the proposed new buildings of the National Archives of the Gold Coast, for which it is hoped funds will be made available during the Government's second development plan period beginning July 1957. Meanwhile every effort is being made to improve storage conditions; for example, two Biddle Dehumidifiers will shortly be installed to offset the ravages of damp. It is hoped, too, that in due course copies of the overseas records may be available for study in the Gold Coast in the form of microfilm copies. Following the passing of the Public Archives Ordinance, these measures are only tokens of the varied programme of the National Archives that will be implemented during the third phase.

[For this communication we are indebted to Mr. J. M. Akita.]

#### JAMAICA

The most important events during this period have been the visit in 1950 of Sir Hilary Jenkinson and the appointment in 1954 of the Government Archivist. Sir Hilary paid an official visit to survey the Island's records and to make a report, which was published that year. One of its most important recommendations was the extension of the scope of the Island Record Office, which by law is charged with the proper conservation of “documents of any kind of a public nature.” The law, up to that time, had been only partially implemented; many specified classes of records—including those produced by departments of Central Government and by the courts—were not transferred to the Island Record Office. Another important recommendation was the devising of a system of treatment of the archives of all other categories, besides those of central administration. To secure the implementation of these and the other recommendations, the report proposed the setting up of an Archives Committee under the chairmanship of the Chief Justice (*ex officio* Keeper of the Records).

The Archives Committee was duly appointed and met in 1953. Among its early acts was the suspension of existing regulations governing the disposal of unwanted public records by means of circular instructions. These instructions forbid the destruction of any but absolutely ephemeral documents, and lay down a general scheme for the treatment of accumulations of non-current records (in preparation for the transfer of those to be permanently kept, to the

Island Record Office) including the procedure to be followed for having classes of records scheduled for destruction—procedure based on that of the Inspecting Officers Committee, London.

The Committee further recommended (in 1954) the purchase of premises adjoining the existing archive building for the erection of a properly designed repository, having already approved plans and recommended them to the Government; and in the year following a binding and repair section was established in the Island Record Office and now includes three qualified binders among its staff.

While at present the Island Record Office serves only the Government of Jamaica, the Government Archivist has travelled to Turk's Island and (at the invitation of the Guianese Government) to British Guiana, to survey the archives there and make recommendations for their better care.

[ For this communication we are indebted to Mr. Clinton V. Black.]

#### NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF NEW ZEALAND

The National Archives is a part of the Department of Internal Affairs. This Department, before 1907 called the Colonial Secretary's Department, has been responsible for the preservation of Government archives since the establishment of British sovereignty in 1840. The awareness of this responsibility has varied over the years: at first the "Public Records of the Colony" were the object of care and consideration, later, as administration became more complex, less attention was paid to them. In 1884, for example, the Prime Minister could say that legislation to preserve valuable Government archives would be tantamount to "legislating for the abolition of waste-paper baskets."

Over the past fifty years appreciation of the value of Government archives has steadily increased. In 1907 the establishment and construction of an archives repository was recommended, but the first world war prevented any great progress being made. In 1926, however, a Chief Archivist was appointed, Dr. G. H. Scholefield, and the Dominion Archives (as it was then called) was established. Little could be done, because of lack of staff, accommodation and finance, to develop the National Archives until after the second world war.

Until comparatively recently most Government offices were housed in unsafe wooden buildings. This has meant that the archives have generally been subject to a greater or less degree of destruction by fire, and a succession of holocausts, beginning with the burning of Government House in 1848, has created serious gaps in the archives. Nor, regrettably, is everything safe yet, as a fire so recently as 1952 caused perhaps the greatest destruction of any. Other gaps have been caused by intentional destruction of records; the pressure for accommodation and the lack of a proper archives repository, or indeed anywhere to house the archives, has forced officials to destroy records with little or no attempt to appraise their value.

Since 1945 much has been done to remedy the situation but much yet remains before we may say that we have a properly established National Archives. In 1946 steps were taken to ensure that no Government records were destroyed without the permission of the National Archives and at the same time repository accommodation was increased. This was further increased in 1954, and at present the accommodation available for archives consists of about 4,000 square feet of floor space in fireproof premises in Wellington.

This accommodation is inadequate, especially if anything in the nature of a limbo or records centre is to be established. During the past eighteen months an intensive survey has been undertaken to ascertain how much accommodation will be required for archives for permanent custody in the National Archives and for records centres, at first in Wellington and Auckland and later in the other chief cities. The increased amount of Government activity and its expansion into new fields since about 1935 has been the cause of a greatly increased rate of records accumulation. The survey has for one of its objects the calculation of the rate of records creation. It is obvious, not least to the Public Service Commission and to Treasury, that steps must be taken now to initiate some orderly records disposal process.

It has also become necessary to define the authority of the National Archives, to establish it within the framework of Government administration and to regulate the relationship between the National Archives and the public generally. Legislation is necessary to effect this and a National Archives Act has been drafted for presentation to Parliament this year.

A survey of local government bodies' archives was begun in 1950 and is now almost complete. This survey, which was undertaken with the co-operation of the N.Z. Library Association, is a preliminary to the establishment of some means of ensuring the preservation of these archives. It has not yet been decided what steps, exactly, will be taken to do this, but it is apparent that the Government will have to assume more responsibilities for their preservation than is the case in England.

While these two surveys have been in progress as much as possible has been done since 1946 to facilitate inspection of the documents in the custody of the National Archives by readers. A programme for providing guides, lists, inventories and other finding aids has been undertaken and now most record groups are adequately provided with such guides. A series of published inventories was begun in 1953; only six have been published so far, but they have stimulated local interest in the National Archives.

Unfortunately the present premises do not permit exhibitions of documents to be made, nor is there space for repair equipment. Many documents are in urgent need of repair, principally those that were salvaged from the fire that took place in 1952 mentioned above. It seems apparent that the lamination process provides the most appropriate means of repairing large quantities of modern documents and when space and finance permit, lamination equipment will be installed.

Visits overseas, to Great Britain, Europe and the United States, have been made by Mr. M. W. Standish, in 1952, and by Miss P. S. Cocks, in 1955. The knowledge and experience gained by these visits to overseas archives have proved to be of great value, not least because of the friendly and pleasant meetings with colleagues in other countries.

[For this communication we are indebted to Mr. M. W. Standish.]

**THE STATE RECORDS OFFICE OF THE PUNJAB BUILDING.** As a result of the partitioning of the Punjab in 1947, a separate record office had to be started for Punjab (I). It was decided to be provisionally located at the interim capital of the state at Simla. Pending the construction of a permanent functional building for the State Records Office at the new capital

site of Chandigarh, for which plans and particulars have been submitted to the Government, the State Records Office is housed in the spacious and centrally situated building entitled St. Andrew's Church, The Mall, Simla. It comprises one big hall wherein select objects are displayed in specially-designed showcases and against the walls, while publications and records are kept in almirahs in the alcoves. The porch and the balcony to the western side provide additional space where records, etc., are lodged in improvised stacks and boxes.

**ACCESSIONS.** Consequent upon the partitioning of the Punjab under the Indian Independence Act of 1947, Punjab (I.) Government constituted the Central Records Office in the state towards the close of 1948. The repository was to receive the share of the physical assets of the Punjab Civil Secretariat (Anarkali's Tomb) Record Office, Lahore, in accordance with the agreed decisions of the Partition Council and the award of the Arbitral Tribunal. Thus 21,000 files relating to districts in the new state, the entire set of 132 rolls of Khalsa Durbar Records, over 250,000 loose sheets tied in bundles relating to civil and military departments from 1811-1948, 112 pictures, paintings and sketches of historical personages and landmarks, and all the files on the work of the Regional Committee for the Survey of Historical Materials were collected. Subsequently a vigorous campaign was launched to salvage old rare books, manuscripts, from the evacuee collections from all the districts of the state. In addition, wide publicity was given to the setting up of the archives in the state and efforts were made through the reconstituted Regional Survey Committee to acquire objects of historical significance through purchase, gift or loan. Steps were also taken to explore and acquire from divisional and district headquarters all non-current administrative records and documents. On the winding up of the Ambala Commissionership, large masses of records dating from 1803-1916, relating to old Delhi and Hissar Divisions and the erstwhile Ambala Division, were taken over. The Government has been further advised to adopt a scheme for the regular transfer into the Central Record Office of records of all the major departments of the Secretariat, as soon as they may be retired, for safe custody. When the new procedure is adopted, all papers no longer required for administrative reference will be transferred to this repository. In addition, microfilm copies have been obtained of records relating to the Punjab in other repositories, such as the National Archives of India.

**MEANS OF REFERENCE.** To facilitate search and supply of material concentrated at the State Records Office, preliminary inventories of records acquired are first prepared. The records are subsequently arranged and classified in series, and accessioned in registers maintained for each category of papers. Press lists of several important series have been prepared and others are in preparation. Handlists with brief critical notes are provided for documents of outstanding interest. Alphabetical card indexes, under title and author, are maintained of the books in the Reference Library.

**PUBLICATIONS.** Soon after the reconstitution of the State Records Office in 1948, an integrated programme of publication of historical works based on original research was undertaken, including (as at Lahore) the printing of

Ph.D. theses of merit. Three monographs on aspects of Punjab history have been brought out in the series of Punjab Government Record Office Publications.

**STAFF.** The staff consists of the Keeper of Records, two technical assistants, one junior and one senior, one restorer, one record lifter, three bookbinders, two *daftaris*, one junior grade stenographer, one junior clerk, one *peon*, one *frash*, and one *chowkidar*.

**REPAIR.** The Office is fully equipped with modern appliances for treatment, repair and rehabilitation of records. The staff engaged on this work has been trained through the special short course organized at the National Archives of India. All types of repairs are undertaken with chiffon, tissue paper and cellulose acetate foil. The scientific techniques and methods practised at the Office conform to the archive standards of the National Archives of India.

Subject to the rules governing access, the records are fully available to students. Searches can be undertaken and photographic copies supplied. Frequent exhibitions are held and are extremely well attended, and books and documents are loaned by the Office for exhibition elsewhere.

[The substance of this section has been communicated by Shri V. S. Suri, Keeper of the Records.]

#### UGANDA PROTECTORATE

The post of Archivist to the Protectorate Administration was created early in 1950. From then until October 1953 it was filled by Mr. P. T. English, who spent the greater part of his time sorting and listing a vast accumulation of files in the basement of the Secretariat building in Entebbe. When the present Government Archivist arrived in April 1955, he found these records neatly arranged and adequately listed and indexed, though it was clear that much could yet be done to provide packing and storage conditions more closely approaching the ideal.

The Secretariat is built on a slope overlooking Lake Victoria. The repository, under this building, is thus only partly subterranean being above ground on the Lake side. It is of solid concrete, and thus proof against termites, except in a few weak spots, which could be repaired without difficulty. Ventilation and fire-proofing are good. It is, however, fitted with ramshackle softwood shelving and a poor electric circuit. Plans are in hand to remedy these, the only two defects. Repository space is adequate for the time being, but new accommodation will be necessary when plans for bringing in outlying records are adopted.

The contents of the Secretariat Archives date from 1891, that is, shortly before the proclamation of a Protectorate in April 1894. They consist almost entirely of correspondence files with their attendant registers and indexes. Treaties and other instruments, committee proceedings and papers—notably those of the Executive and Legislative Councils—form small but important minor classes. So far as correspondence files are concerned, the crucial date is the end of 1905. Before then correspondence was classified by the various offices with which the Government had to deal, these being subdivided into incoming and outgoing letters. The largest of these classes are, on the one hand, the Foreign Office, and on the other, members of the Protectorate staff outside

the Secretariat Missions, business people and representatives of foreign governments form other less bulky groups. In 1905 the modern system of subject files was adopted, though minor variations in practice have resulted in the existence, to date, of four different series of files. Before 1905 the main record comprises some 250 large files; after that year and up to 1949 approximately 40,000 files were opened. These last are, of course, far less substantial documents.

There has been no deliberate, and very little accidental destruction. Mechanical wear and tear, especially in those cases where more papers have been placed on a file than the covers and fastenings can support, accounts for most of the repairs needed. So far as can be judged after the lapse of some sixty-five years, the climate of Entebbe is kind to paper, as it is to European humans.

Judged by achievements in some quarters the present "Year's Work" may not seem impressive. It must be pointed out, however, that apart from clerical assistance the Government Archivist is for the time being single-handed. Upon his arrival he had firstly to make himself thoroughly acquainted with the records in his custody and the available means of reference to them. Secondly, a certain amount of confusion owing to the interregnum between archivists had to be cleared up. Next, plans have been made and, where possible, the first steps taken towards remedying defects mentioned at the end of the first paragraph above. In addition, the Archivist has carried out a survey of the extant records of all provincial and district headquarters and of the older departments of central administration. As a result of this, the archives of one provincial office and of one district were seen to merit immediate treatment. In the former case they were brought in to Entebbe and sorted and listed there; the latter received similar treatment on the spot. The records of one department have also been transferred to Entebbe. It is with these outlying archives that the future will be largely concerned.

[ For this communication we are indebted to Mr. J. P. M. Fowle.]

## DOCUMENTARY REPRODUCTION

By GRAHAM JONES, M.A., F.L.A., Lecturer, School of Librarianship, Birmingham College of Commerce

**SCOPE.** The sections into which any survey of documentary reproduction naturally falls are (1) microcopy, (2) low reduction copying, (3) contact copying, and (4) office duplicating. First, however, the surveyor for 1951-53 must draw attention to two publications covering all these fields. The earlier of these, the *Manual on document reproduction and selection* of the Fédération Internationale de Documentation, quickly became a standard work on its publication in 1953; if its arrangement was confusing, this was due to the ambiguities of international terminology, not to the fault of the editors; and its generous inclusion of illustrated trade literature was a welcome compensation. The second book, *Information processing equipment*, edited by M. P. Doss (Reinhold, 1955), spoke in a language more familiar to English readers; it concentrated exclusively on American equipment, but its excellent photographs, clear text and numerous references complemented the *Manual* and indeed came near to offering a substitute for it. With two such works available by 1955, accounts of basic processes were no longer necessary. The purpose of this chapter, therefore, is first to summarize the technical developments made during the five years covered, and second to enquire into the interest shown by British librarians in documentary reproduction methods in this period. This enquiry is general in nature, and not devoted to the special points of view of cataloguer, reference librarian, and so on. Material presented from these points of view will no doubt be found in the appropriate chapters.

**MICROCOPY.** By 1955 the library administrator in Britain and America had long been used to technical stagnation in the micro-techniques. For years 35 mm. microfilm, stored in roll form, and glass screen viewers, large and heavy, had been familiar, and largely unchanged; the price of equipment remained forbidding, the quality of image obtained in viewers often indifferent, and administrators in Britain at least had drawn their own unfavourable conclusions as to applying film in their own libraries. Smaller university libraries made less use of the medium than was perhaps desirable; some large public libraries delayed even the purchase of a reader indefinitely.\* Cost, rather than the doubts as to the permanence of film sometimes proffered in excuse, was to blame. It was therefore particularly satisfying that in 1954 and 1955 the

\* Even in America, a survey of twenty-nine of the largest research libraries made in 1954 showed that 38 per cent of these owned neither microfilm camera nor processing equipment. (Muller, Robert H. *Microfilming services of larger university and research libraries in the United States. Coll. and Res. Libs.* 16 (3) 1955, 261-266.) Viewers, on the other hand, might be assumed in all but the smallest libraries.

artificially high price of library viewers was very successfully challenged by new models. First came the compact and portable Kangaroo, imported from France at a cost under £40, excellent for use with short strips of film, but unfortunately with no winding mechanism for full-length spool film. Then the new Pilgrim reader appeared, equally portable, priced at not quite twice the cost of the Kangaroo, but convertible for wall projection, and in two models offering a choice between a less expensive hand-operated machine and another model with motor-driven film controlled by remote press button. At last readers comparable to the continental Mikrovist and Microfiscuse were available in this country; and it was not unrealistic to hope that pocket-size viewers for brief consultation of microcopies such as the American Microskaner at \$12 or the Mikrolettera at DM.85, might be produced in this country. Was it unrealistic to hope that more, and wealthier, public libraries would join Cork, Flintshire, Newport (Mon.), Norwich—that company of smaller libraries using film in their local collections, or for more comprehensive purposes?

Rare as even conventional film was in 1951-55 among the 600 public library authorities of these islands, micro-opaques were almost unknown in any British library. True, in 1950-51 Liverpool City had pioneered in using microprint; and the Boots Research Library, Nottingham, and Manchester College of Technology could soon show microcard collections. But when the librarian's own professional literature was invaded by the A.C.R.L. Microcard Series not a single London library was known to be subscribing to this series, or contemplating a subscription; and the Atomic Energy Commission's decision in 1955-56 to distribute free to certain depository public libraries in Britain unclassified reports in microcard form raised embarrassing questions as to the choice of a viewer. 1955 closed with certain proposals for the production of an all-British reader for opaques, to be sold at well under £100, but production dates remained vague.

Comparison between the progress of Britain and other countries is inevitable. It is obvious that countries without the network of older libraries found in England from the first turned more quickly to the use of film than did Britain, e.g., America, the Commonwealth countries, Eire. There is no need in order to prove this to turn to such revealing documents as the Library of Congress Binding Committee's report in the *L.C. Quarterly journal of current accessions* for November 1954, recommending among other things that filming be, by and large, preferred to binding, and that all foreign newspapers and all material on deteriorating paper be preserved on film only. Less obvious, perhaps, is the fact that by 1951-55 microfilm was a well-established part of inter-library lending in the United States: witness the union lists of film holdings issued by the Philadelphia Bibliographic Center; whereas in Britain no standard policy existed in the Regional Library Systems as to the inclusion of microfilms, and the National Union Catalogue was the poorer thereby. But most serious from the point of view of the consumer in Britain was the fact that microcopying could hardly be said at all to be integrated in the national scheme of inter-library co-operation. The National Central Library existed primarily to arrange the loan of books; and when a wanted item was located in a library which declined to lend, the enquirer was neither informed automatically of the location nor as an alternative service automatically offered the choice of paying for a photocopy.

The number of the 600 British library authorities known to possess microfilm cameras by December 1955 was believed to be three: Glasgow, Liverpool, Manchester. Commercial filming services in the provinces were surprisingly rare.

In one small but important field—that of terminology—it is pleasant to record finally the progress of international co-operation. In the *Unesco bulletin for libraries* of May-June 1954 a "Provisional terminology of microcopies and their bases" appeared, emanating from Technical Committee 46 (Documentation) of the International Standards Organization, and a mimeographed document issued by the Association Française de Normalisation—*ISO/TC 46 Documentation. Terminologie des microcopies et de leurs supports: État d'avancement de l'étude au 4 novembre 1955*—carried the story further. "Microphotography" had definitely been replaced by microcopy; microcard seemed likely to become microfiche opaque; microfiche itself would have to be qualified to indicate whether transparent; and microprint seemed likely to become the less satisfactory "opaque microcopy sheet." Cumbersome as these seemed, anyone who had struggled to find microcard readers in the *FID Manual* would agree that standardization was very necessary.

**LOW REDUCTION COPIERS.** The choice of this heading itself may seem fastidious to those who class all such machines as "photostats," but is only fair to the manufacturers concerned. The photostat itself neither strengthened nor lost its hold on British libraries during 1951-55, although improved machines were manufactured by the Alos company of Zürich, and in America the Xerox copier offered serious competition. Xerox appeared to offer the quickest and simplest of all copying methods, reduction or contact, taking two minutes to produce good prints, but no British library was known to possess such a copier, only St. Andrews University, according to a note in the *Library world* for October 1953, planning to import one. This competition was partially met in America by the introduction of autopositive papers, invariably giving a black on white print, specially for photostat use. Inquiries among British firms in 1955 revealed no readiness to supply positive papers in the roll form necessary for photostats. This was to be regretted, for the whole trend of post-war development in contact copying had been towards the elimination of the older negative papers, and it placed the photostat in a somewhat isolated position. In cost photostat prints had already been undermined by the newer contact papers, but retained the advantage of permanence, clarity, and a right-reading print at the first operation.

**CONTACT COPYING.** It is unnecessary to trace in detail the history of post-war developments under this heading: the arrival of dyeline papers for reflex copying, cheap but impermanent; the introduction of transfer papers, cutting out the second exposure stage of ordinary reflex work; and the production of autopositive papers, with the possibility of rapid two-process developing. Sufficient to say that it was quickly established that making autopositive first reflex prints, with a final right-reading print on dyeline paper, offered the most economical combination, if not the most satisfactory or lasting image; and that larger libraries soon installed one or other of the newer machines. Fresh trade names followed one another with startling rapidity, although the underlying

processes showed no modification. The chief innovation in Britain was the marketing of the American Thermofax copier, using heat instead of light to produce an image on specially coated paper, and dispensing with developing altogether, giving a cheap but hardly a durable facsimile. In America itself, but not in Britain, Verifax appeared, a variety of the transfer process needing no special paper to receive the final image. With the customary interval, it was reasonable to expect that this, too, would ultimately reach Europe. Meanwhile, however, it was noteworthy that some busy photographic laboratories found it preferable to dispense with reflex printing entirely, microfilming all documents to be copied, and making full-sized paper prints by projection of those items which would otherwise have been done by contact.

These methods were very well for the larger libraries; what, it may be asked, could the smaller library do? Happily, the answer was plain: invest in one of the portable contact copiers publicized during the period. The Contoura caught many librarians' attention: it was light, easy to handle, unlikely to damage the book or periodical, and it sold in various models between £15 and £30. No librarian, therefore, who could afford to purchase a typewriter for his library could say that contact copying was beyond his library's means. If libraries found themselves without such aids, it could only be because little importance was attached to their possession.

**DUPLICATING AND OFFICE PRINTING.** Despite an absence of fundamental innovations in duplicating techniques in Britain, several useful improvements are to be reported. Firstly, for stencil duplicating came: (a) the inception by Gestetner in 1952 of a method of printing Braille with a duplicator, slow-drying ink being used in the machine to print text in the normal way, the paper being then coated with powder, which adheres to the ink so as to form a raised surface, and heated gently, somewhat as with xerography. (b) At about the same time the Roneo electronic stencil printing service was initiated for the mechanical reproduction of half-tones on an ordinary unsensitized stencil, the picture to be copied being wrapped around a revolving cylinder and scanned by a photo-electric television-type eye, while the impulses transmitted from the eye punch out on a stencil wrapped round a parallel revolving cylinder areas corresponding with the dark masses of the original. This method was compared favourably by a writer in *Electronics* with the similar American process of Stenafax. (c) In 1954 Gestetner improved their earlier Gesteprint method for the reproduction of pictorial matter using sensitized stencils by marketing the Photoscope cameras for stencil making. Using cream-coloured fast stencils in darkroom conditions, both these machines could print from book originals up to about an inch thick, in contrast with the Roneo method of scanning a single sheet for stencil making. One model enlarged or reduced in the ratio 1.8:1, the other producing same-size stencils from the original.

In offset-lithographic duplicating the familiar names Rotaprint and Multilith remained, with mention of another as a possible newcomer, Lithotype. Paper masters became common, allowing more economical short runs, of up to 500 prints, than the metal had done: the plastic-coated paper master met with favourable comment in *Office magazine* for April 1954. "Diapositive stencils" were publicized for the typist inexperienced in the direct typing of metal masters, the stencil being cut on the typewriter and the sensitized master prepared

by contact printing from it. Further equipment was marketed for the photographic reproduction of material for offset-litho masters by both contact and projection methods. Some machines were amusingly illustrated and methods described in the trade booklet *Hubex reproduction processes*. A competitor in the field of long-run office duplicating appeared in the Printo from Germany, printing with letters cut in relief on metal foil by a typewriter with disengaged ribbon. 50,000 copies from one foil costing 1s. 6d. were claimed. Half-tones could be printed from flexible rubber stereotypes made by the marketing company at a cost of 9d. per square inch.

In America a new duplicating process was announced in 1954 by the A. B. Dick organization. A transfer sheet was used in this system as backing in the typewriter so as to produce a mirror-reading image on the master sheet, as in the older spirit method; but the characteristic of the well-titled Azograph process was that the image emerged only after further treatment. "The coating on the Azograph transfer sheet contains two colour-forming compounds that do not unite to form colour until a third element in the Azograph fluid is introduced within the duplicator," trade literature explains. As the master used was of paper, the length of run may be presumed to correspond with that of the hectographic duplicating, while it must also be assumed that photography could not be combined with this method. Azograph was not introduced into Great Britain.

**RETROSPECT.** In conclusion, the surveyor is left with the feeling that much remained to be done in the application of modern photographic equipment in British libraries by 1955. Information about such equipment was often still difficult to get, and partial. The L.A. Research Committee began limited investigations into the provision of documentary reproduction apparatus in libraries in 1954, and 1955 saw the formation of the Aslib working group on documentary reproduction. There appeared to be a need for stimulating interest in the subject at administrative level to combat that caution towards any mechanical innovation from outside apparent in most British administrators. From America, not from Britain, came such studies as R. R. Shaw's *The use of photography for clerical routines*.

This caution is regrettable for two reasons. First, it limited the potential efficiency of libraries from an economic point of view, wasting money and wasting energy. Second, and yet more serious, it limited the usefulness of libraries in relation to their public. It is this aspect on which the surveyor ought finally to leave his emphasis.

#### REFERENCES

- Note: The following are a complement to, not a substitute for, the F.I.D. *Manual* or M. P. Doss's *Information processing equipment*. *Microcopy*
- BALLOU, HUBBARD W., and RATHER, JOHN. Microfilm and microfacsimile publications. *Lib. Trends* 4 (2) 1955, 182-194.
- CLAPP, VERNER W., and others. Are your microfilms deteriorating acceptably? *Lib. J.* 80 (6) 1955, 589-595.
- ERICKSON, EDGAR L. Microprint. *J. of Doc.* 7 (3) 1951, 184-187.
- FRONTARD, R. Present position and prospects of international standardization in the field of microcopying. *Unesco bull.* 8 (5-6) 1954, supplement (pp. ix) following p. E.8.

NATIONAL MICROFILM ASSOCIATION [of America]. Proceedings [of annual meetings,] 1952-  
 TATE, VERNON D. Microreproduction and the acquisitions program. *Lib. Trends* 3 (4) 1955, 432-447.  
 VERRY, H. R. Micro-opaques. *Aslib Proc.* 4 (3) 1952, 153-160.

#### Low Reduction Copying

Progress in photography, 1940-1950; ed. D. A. Spencer. 1951.  
*Ibid.*, 1951-1954. [Passim.]  
 JANICKI, W. Photocopying equipment manufactured by Alos A. G., Zürich. *Rev. of Doc.* 18 (3)  
 1951, 137-142.  
 OLIPHANT, W. D. Xerography. *Discovery* 14 (6) 1953, 175-179. [See also Doss, *op. cit.*]

#### Contact Copying

GRFAT BRITAIN. ADMIRALTY. COMMON SERVICES SECTION, BATH. Document copying by photo-  
 graphic processes. 1952. (T.D.S./521.) The economics of document copying. 1952. (T.D.S./522.)  
 The classification of dyeline papers. 1953. (T.D.S./523.)  
 [Some copies of these reports issued bearing the name of William Lord, chief photographer, and  
 with imprint "Admiralty Photographic Service, Bath."]  
 HAWKEN, WILLIAM, R. New methods for photocopying. *Lib. J.* 79 (12) 1954, 1115-1124.  
 [Illustrated, and informative as to American costs.]  
 HILL, T. T. Diffusion transfer processes as applied to photocopying. *Photographic engineering* 4 (4)  
 1953, 214-219.  
 [Technical, but helpful. Bibliography of thirty-seven items.]  
 MULLINS, L. Direct positive photocopying in the library. *Unesco Bull.* 9 (5-6) 1955, 106-111.  
 House journals such as Ilford's *Industrial Image* and Kodak *View* may often be profitably consulted  
 for descriptions of the basic photographic processes, as well as of new equipment.

#### Duplicating

CARUZZI, RICHARD. Offset duplicating techniques; ed. and revised Fred W. Hoch and Carl B.  
 Harris. New York, 1951.  
 [Covers the whole application of offset lithographic duplicators in commercial practice, the  
 chemistry involved, paper and binding, type and typesetting, including photographic composi-  
 tion. Glossary pp. 81-92.]  
 Hubex reproduction processes. J. J. Huber Ltd., Villiers Road, London, N.W.2. pp. 18.  
 MARKUS, JOHN. Photoelectric printing and engraving machines. *Electronics* 26 (5) 1953, 138-145.  
 Printing from metal foil. *Office magazine* 1 (11) 1954, 414-415.

#### APPENDIX ON CATALOGUE REPRODUCTION

In the *Unesco bulletin for libraries* for August-September 1953, pp. 118-122, the various ways of  
 duplicating catalogue cards have already been discussed. The following methods are known to have  
 been in operation, or to have been tried in recent years in those libraries—obviously a selection—  
 listed below.

#### Stencil duplicating of cards

Coventry City Libraries. (*Lib. World* 55 (643) 1954, 108-110); Hackney P.L. (*Ibid.* 55 (647) 1954,  
 188-189); Lindsey & Holland Co. L. (*Ibid.* 56, (650-651) 1954, 23-24); Queensland U.L. (*Aust.*  
*Lib. J.* 2 (3) 1953, 61-64; *Ibid.* 3 (2) 1954, 49-51); R.I.B.A. Library.

#### Stencil duplication of pages for book catalogues

Bristol City Libraries.

#### Spirit duplicating of cards

Islington P.L.

#### Offset litho duplication of sheaf entries

Liverpool City Libraries.

#### Offset litho duplication of cards

Capetown U.L. (*S. Afr. Bib.* 22 (3) 1955, 101). Natal University Libraries. Birmingham City  
 Libraries (lending libraries).

#### Offset litho duplication of cards, using xerographically produced masters

Chicago U.L. (*Coll. and Res. Libs.* 15 (1) 1954, 57-60).

*Addressing machines for card duplication*

Bradford City Libraries; Hampstead P.L. (*Lib. Asm. Rec.* 54 (8) 1952, 259-262); Hornsey P.L. (*Librarian* 43 (11) 1954, 209-210); Manchester City Libraries; Wandsworth P.L.

*Photographic production of cards or pages*

Liverpool U.L. (*N.W. News*, May 1954, p. 7); Croydon P.L.

Librarians investigating the possibilities of photographic reproduction also have been aware of the Copycat Varimaster system, using a strip index of translucent plastic strips so that contact prints may be made from the panel on dycline paper. Library cataloguing was specifically mentioned among the possible applications of this device.

Downloaded from www.dbraulibrary.org.in

LIBRARY AND BIBLIOGRAPHY PERIODICALS REGULARLY COVERED BY  
LIBRARY SCIENCE ABSTRACTS AND ANY ABBREVIATIONS USED

Frequency of publication: W. (weekly); Fort. (fortnightly); M. (monthly); Q. (quarterly); A. (annual);  
2-10 times a year; Irr. Irregular.

- A.B.C.D. [Archives, bibliothèques, collections, documentation] (France) 6.  
 Abstractor: occasional papers in Australian special librarianship. Irr.  
 Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia (Accad. e Bib. d'Italia) 6.  
 Actes du Conseil de la FIAB (Actes FIAB) (Netherlands) A.  
 American Archivist (Amer. Arch.) Q.  
 American Council of Learned Societies Newsletter (ACLS Newsl.) Q.  
 American Documentation (Amer. Doc.) Q.  
 American Library Association Bulletin (A.L.A. Bull.) M.  
 American Library Association Library Periodicals Round Table Newsletter (A.L.A. Lib. Per.  
 Newsl.) Q.  
 Annals of Library Science (Annals of Lib. Sci.) (India) Q.  
 Arbeiten aus den Bibliothekar-Lehrinstitut des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen (Germany) Irr.  
 Archives: Journal of the British Records Association (U.K.) 2.  
 Archives, bibliothèques et musées de Belgique (Archives . . . de Belgique) 2.  
 Archivum (France) A.  
 Aslib Proceedings (Aslib Proc.) (U.K.) Q.  
 Aspects of Librarianship (Aspects of Libnp.) (U.S.A.) Irr.  
 Assistant Librarian: official journal of the Association of Assistant Librarians (Section of the Library  
 Association) (Asst. Lib.) (U.K.) M.  
 Association des Bibliothécaires français: Bulletin d'informations (Assn. Bib. Fr. Bull.) Q.  
 Association of College and Reference Libraries Monographs (ACRL Monographs) (U.S.A.) Irr.  
 Australian Library Journal (Library Association of Australia) (Aust. Lib. J.) Q.  
 Barnard Classification Bulletin (Barnard Class. Bull.) (U.K.) Irr.  
 La Bibliofilia: rivista di arti grafiche di bibliografia ed erudizione (Italy) 3.  
 Biblioteca General (Bib. Gen.) (Higher Council for Scientific Research, Madrid, Spain) 2.  
 Bibliotecologia (Argentina).  
 Biblioteconomía (Spain) 2.  
 Bibliotekar (Bulgaria) M.  
 Bibliotekar (Jugoslavia) Q.  
 Bibliotekar (U.S.S.R.) M.  
 Bibliotekaren (Denmark).  
 Bibliotekarz (Association of Polish Librarians and Archivists) 6.  
 Biblioteksbladet (Swedish Public Library Association) M.  
 Bibliotheksgids (The Flemish Association of Library, Archives and Museum Personnel) (Belgium) 6.  
 Bibliothekleven (Netherlands Association of Librarians) M.  
 Bibliothekar (Germany) M.  
 Bibliothekswesen der Sowjetunion und der Länder der Volksdemokratie.  
 Biblos (Austria) Q.  
 Biuletyn Instytutu Bibliograficznego (Biuletyn Inst. Bib.) (Poland) Q.  
 Bliss Classification Bulletin (Bliss Class. Bull.) (U.S.A.) Irr.  
 Bodleian Library Record (Bodleian Lib. Rec.) (U.K.) 3.  
 Bogens Verden (Library Association of Denmark) 9.  
 Bok og Bibliotek (Bok og Bib.) (Norway) 6.  
 Boletín Bibliotecario Santiago (Bol. Bib. Santiago) (Chile) A.  
 Boletín de la Asociación Cubana de Bibliotecarios (Bol. Asoc. Cubana) Q.  
 Boletín de la Asociación Nacional de archiveros, bibliotecarios y arqueólogos (Bol. Asoc. Nac.  
 (Spain) Irr.  
 Boletín de la Bibliotecario Nacional (Bol. Bib. Nac.) (Peru).

- Bollettino dell'Istituto di Patologia del libro "Alfonso Gallo" (Bol. dell'Istit. di Patologia del libro) (Italy) Q.
- Book Collector (U.K.) Q.
- The Bookmark (The Library. University of Idaho) (U.S.A.) Q.
- Books (National Book League) (U.K.) 8.
- Bookseller (U.K.) W.
- Børn og Bøger (Denmark) 4.
- Boston Public Library Quarterly Bulletin (Boston Publ. Lib. Q.) (U.S.A.).
- Bowater Papers (U.K.) Irr.
- British Book News (Brit. Bk. News) M.
- British Museum Quarterly (Brit. Mus. Q.).
- Bücherei und Bildung (B. u. Bild.) (Association of Public Librarians in Western Germany) M.
- Bulletin: Canadian Library Association (Bull. Can. Lib. Assn.) 6.
- Bulletin de l'Union française des organismes de documentation (Bull. de l'U.F.O.D.) (France) 6.
- Bulletin des bibliothèques de France (Bull. bib. France) M.
- Bulletin of Bibliography (Bull. of Bib.) (U.S.A.) 3.
- Bulletin of the Free Library Commission and of the State Library, Vermont (Bull. Free Lib. Comm., Vermont) (U.S.A.) Q.
- Bulletin of the John Rylands Library (Bull. J. Rylands Lib.) (U.K.) 2.
- Bulletin of the Medical Library Association (Bull. Med. Lib. Assn.) (U.S.A.) Q.
- Bulletin of the New York Public Library (Bull. N.Y. Publ. Lib.) (U.S.A.) M.
- Les Cahiers de la Documentation (Cahiers) (Belgian Association of Documentation) 10.
- Cahiers des Bibliothèques de France (Cahiers des Bib. Fr.) Irr.
- California Librarian (Calif. Lib.) (U.S.A.) Q.
- Cambridge Bibliographical Society Transactions (Camb. Bibliog. Soc. Trans.) (U.K.) Irr.
- Canadian Library Association Occasional Papers (Can. Lib. Assn. Occ. Papers) Irr.
- Catholic Library World (Catholic Lib. World) (U.S.A.) 8.
- College and Research Libraries (Association of College and Reference Libraries) (Division of the American Library Association) (Coll. and Res. Libs.) (U.S.A.) 6.
- Cuba Bibliotecológica (Cuba Bib.) Q.
- Dirección general de archivos y bibliotecas: Boletín (Dir. gen. Bol.) (Spanish Ministry of National Education) 6.
- Dokumentation (Central Office for Scientific Literature, Berlin, Germany) M.
- Dokumentation Fachbibliothek Werksbücherei (DFW) (North-West German Publishing Institute, Hanover) 6.
- Eastern Caribbean Library Review (E. Caribbean Lib. Rev.) Irr.
- Fenix: revista de la Biblioteca Nacional (Lima, Peru).
- F.I.D. Informations (Netherlands) M.
- Florida Librarians (Florida Libs.) (U.S.A.) Q.
- Fontes Artis Musicae (International Association of Music Libraries) (France) 2.
- Fundamental Education (Fund. Educ.) (Unesco, France) Q.
- Die Gemeindebücherei in Nordrhein-westfalen (Gemeindebücherei) (Germany) Irr.
- Granthalaya (Hyderabad L.A., India) M.
- Harvard Library Bulletin (Harvard Lib. Bull.) (U.S.A.) 3.
- Horn Book Magazine (U.S.A.) 6.
- Hospital Book Guide (U.S.A.) 10.
- Huntington Library Quarterly (Huntington Lib. Q.) (U.S.A.).
- Idaho Librarian (Idaho Lib.) (U.S.A.) Q.
- Illinois Librarians (Illinois Libs.) (Illinois State Library, U.S.A.) 10.
- I.L.A. Record [Illinois Library Association] (U.S.A.) Q.
- Indian Archives (Ind. Archives) 2.
- Indian Librarian (Ind. Lib.) Q.
- Iowa Library Quarterly (Iowa Lib. Q.) (U.S.A.).

- Jamaica Library Association Bulletin (Jamaica Lib. Assn. Bull.) A.  
 Journal of Cataloging and Classification (J. of Cat. and Class.) (Division of Cataloging and Classification of the American L.A., U.S.A.) Q.  
 Journal of Documentation (J. of Doc.) (Aslib, U.K.) Q.  
 Journal of the Indian Library Association (J. Ind. Lib. Assn.).  
 Journal of the Society of Archivists (J. Soc. Archivists) (U.K.).  
 Junior Bookshelf (J. Bookshelf) (U.K.) 6.
- Kent News Letter (U.K.) 6.  
 Kirjastoletti (Finland) M.  
 Kulturarbeit (Germany) M.
- Law Library Journal (Law Lib. J.) (American Association of Law Libraries, U.S.A.) Q.  
 An Leabharlann (Library Association of Ireland) Q.  
 Librarian and Book World (Librarian) (U.K.) M.  
 The Library [Bibliographical Society Transactions] (U.K.) Q.  
 Library Association Proceedings of the Annual Conference (Lib. Assn. Conf. Proc.) A.  
 Library Association Record (Lib. Assn. Rec.) (U.K.) M.  
 Library Chronicle of the University of Texas (Lib. Chron. Univ. Texas) (U.S.A.) Q.  
 Library Journal (Lib. J.) (U.S.A.) Fort.  
 Library Occurrent (Lib. Occ.) (U.S.A.) Q.  
 Library of Congress Information Bulletin (L.C. Inf. Bull.) (U.S.A.) W.  
 Library of Congress Quarterly Journal (L.C.Q.J.) (U.S.A.).  
 Library Quarterly (Library School of the University of Chicago) (Lib. Q.) (U.S.A.).  
 Library Review (Lib. Rev.) (U.K.) Q.  
 Library Trends (Lib. Trends) (Library School of the University of Illinois, U.S.A.) Q.  
 Library World (Lib. World) (U.K.) M.  
 Libri: international library review (Denmark) Q.
- Magyar Könyvszemle (Hungary) Q.  
 Malayan Library Group News Letter.  
 Manchester Review (Manch. Rev.) (U.K.) Q.  
 Microcard Bulletin (Microcard Bull.) (Microcard Foundation, U.S.A.) Irr.  
 Minnesota Libraries (Minnesota Libs.) (U.S.A.) Q.  
 Mitteilungen der Vereinigung Österreichischer Bibliothekare (Mitteilungen der VÖB) (Austria) Q.  
 Mitteilungsblatt Nordrhein-westfalen (Germany) Q.  
 MLA Bulletin (Maritime Library Association, Nova Scotia, Canada) Q.  
 Mousaion (S. Africa) Irr.
- Nachrichten/Nouvelles (der Vereinigung Schweizerische Bibliothekare) (Nach. d. Vereinigung Schweizer. Bib.) (Switzerland) 6.  
 Nachrichten für Dokumentation (Nach. f. Dok.) (Germany) Q.  
 National Library of Wales Journal (Nat. Lib. Wales J.) (U.K.) 2.  
 Neue Volksbildung (Neue Volksbild.) (Austrian Ministry of Education) M.  
 New Zealand Libraries (N.Z. Libs.) (New Zealand Library Association) 10.  
 Newsletter: American Theological Library Association (News! Amer. Theo. Lib. Assn.) 6.  
 Newsletter: North Midland Branch of the Library Association [etc.] (U.K.).  
 News Notes of California Libraries (News Notes of Calif. Libs.) (U.S.A.) Q.  
 NORBRALA: the magazine of the Northern Branch of the Library Association [etc.] (U.K.).  
 Nordisk Tidskrift för Bok- och Biblioteksväsen (Nord. Tid.) (Sweden) Q.  
 North Western Newsletter (N.W. Newsl.) (North Western Branch of the Library Association [etc.]) (U.K.) 6.  
 North-Western Polytechnic School of Librarianship: Occasional Papers (N.W. Polytechnic Sch. Lib. Occ. Papers) (U.K.) Irr.  
 Notes: Music Library Association (Notes) U.S.A.) Q.  
 Notizie A.I.B.: Bollettino dell'Associazione Italiana per le Biblioteche (Italy) Q.
- O. & M. Bulletin (O. & M. Bull.) (U.K.) 6.  
 Ontario Library Review (Ontario Lib. Rev.) (Director of Public Services, Government of Ontario, Canada) Q.

Open Access (U.K.) 6.

Outpost (U.K.) Q.

Papers of the Bibliographical Society of America (Papers of the Bibliog. Soc. of America) Q.

La Parola e il Libro (Parola) (National Institute for Popular and Learned Libraries, Rome) 6.

Pharos (U.K.) Irr.

Pioneer (Remington Rand, U.S.A.) 6.

Prakashan Samachar (Pr. Sam.) (Pakistan).

Przegląd Biblioteczny (Association of Polish Librarians and Archivists) Q.

Public Libraries (Pub. Libs.) (Public Libraries Division of the American Library Association, U.S.A.) Q.

Pustakalya Sandesh (Pust San.) (Pakistan).

Quarterly Bulletin of the International Association of Agricultural Librarians and Documentalists (Q. Bull. Int. Assoc. Agric. Libns.) (U.K.).

Quarterly Bulletin of the South African Library (Q. Bull. S. Afr. Lib.).

Review of Documentation (Rev. of Doc.) (F.I.D., Netherlands) Q.

Revista de archivos bibliotecas y museos (Rev. archivos) (Spain) 2.

Revista de la biblioteca archivo y musco (Rev. bib.) (Spain) 2.

School Librarian and School Library Review (Sch. Lib.) (School Libraries Association, U.K.) 3.

School Libraries (Sch. Libs.) (American Association of School Librarians) (Division of the American Library Association) Q.

Serial Slants (Serials Round Table of the American Library Association) Q.

South African Libraries (S. Afr. Libs.) (South African Library Association) Q.

Southeastern Librarian (U.S.A.) Q.

Special Libraries (Spec. Libs.) (Special Libraries Association, U.S.A.) 10.

State Library Newsletter (State Lib. Newsl.) (U.S.A.) Q.

Stechert-Iafner Book News (U.S.A.) M.

Studies in Bibliography: Papers of the Bibliographical Society of the University of Virginia (Studies in Bib.) (U.S.A.) A.

Studii si cercetari de bibliologie (Rumania).

Technical Information Monthly Bulletin (Tech. Inf. Bull.) (European Productivity Agency, O.E.E.C.).

Texas Library Journal (Texas Lib. J.) Q.

Tidskrift för Dokumentation (Tid. f. Dok.) (Sweden) 6.

Times Literary Supplement (T.L.S.) (U.K.) W.

Top of the News (U.S.A.) Q.

UDK Bulletin (UDK Bull.) (Norway) Q.

Unesco Bulletin for Libraries (Unesco Bull.) (France) M.

University of Illinois Library School: Occasional Papers (Univ. of Illinois Lib. Sch. Occ. Papers) (U.S.A.) Irr.

University of Tennessee News Letter (Univ. Tennessee Newsl.) (U.S.A.).

Vjesnik Bibliotekara Hrvatske (Jugoslavia) A.

WALA News (West African Library Association) 2.

Wessex Bookman (U.K.) 2.

Wilson Library Bulletin (Wilson Lib. Bull.) (U.S.A.) 10.

Yale University Library Gazette (Yale Univ. Lib. Gaz.) (U.S.A.) Q.

Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie (Z. f. Bib. u. Bib.) (Union of German Librarians, Munich) Q.

Zentralblatt für Bibliothekswesen (Z. f. Bib.) (Germany) 6.

## ABBREVIATIONS

AFNOR	Association française de normalisation
A.A.L.	Association of Assistant Librarians
ALA	American Library Association
BC	Bibliographic Classification (Bliss)
BNB	<i>British National Bibliography</i>
BNBC	British National Book Centre
BUCOP	<i>British Union Catalogue of Periodicals</i>
CC	Colon Classification
DC	Decimal Classification (Dewey)
DSIR	Department of Scientific and Industrial Research
FIAB	International Federation of Library Associations
FID	Fédération Internationale de Documentation
HMSO	Her Majesty's Stationery Office
IAML	International Association of Music Libraries
IFD	Fédération Internationale de Documentation
IFLA	International Federation of Library Associations
INSIDOC	Indian National Scientific Documentation Centre
ISO	International Standardization Organization
L.A.	Library Association
LADSIRLAC	Liverpool and District Scientific, Industrial and Research Library Advisory Council
LC	Library of Congress
LSA	<i>Library Science Abstracts</i>
MILC	Midwest Inter-Library Center
mss.	manuscripts
N.C.L.	National Central Library, London
NIJDER	Netherlands Institute for Documentation and Filing
N.Y.	New York (City or State)
N.Z.	New Zealand
P.L.	Public Library
RLB	Regional Library Bureau
SCONUL	Standing Conference of National and University Libraries
SLA	Special Libraries Association
TIDU	Technical Information and Documents Unit
UDC	Universal Decimal Classification
U.K.	United Kingdom
Unesco	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization
U.S.A.	United States of America
USIS	United States Information Services
U.S.S.R.	Union of Socialist Soviet Republics
vols.	volumes

## INDEX

A selective index of subjects and places, not of authors. National libraries are entered under their country, other libraries under their towns, unless better known by their titles.

- Aberdeen, King's College Library, 30;  
University Library, 30-1
- Abstracting, economic, 330; medical, 67-4;  
services, 333, 335
- Accessions lists, 92, 96, 101
- Accra, Public Library, 156
- Acton, Public Library, 141
- Adolescents, library service for, 175
- Adult education activities, 119-20
- Advertising, special libraries, 82
- Advisory Council on Education in Scotland, 109,  
170, 183, 259
- Advisory Council for Scientific Policy, 41,  
140
- Aegina, Kapodistriaki Library, 123
- Aeronautics, classification of, 227
- Agriculture, bibliographies of, 335-6
- Air conditioning, 279
- Airdrie, Public Library, 286
- Alabama University Medical Center, 59
- Aldershot, Public Library, 109, 150
- Algeria, National Library, 6, 156
- Alphabetical subject catalogues, 198, 201, 228,  
229
- American Association of Law Libraries, 199
- American Library Association, Adult education  
survey, 119-20; Board of Personnel  
Administration, 182-3
- *Cataloguing Rules*, 199; Committee on  
Intellectual Freedom, 120, 190
- Division of, cataloguing and classification,  
195, 229; Library Bill of Rights, 190;  
Management survey, 182; professional  
education, 276; Standards for public  
libraries, 118; Trustees section, 118
- Amsterdam University Library, 32
- Anglo-American Conference of Historians, 367
- Ankara University Library, 33
- Antrim County Library, 150
- Archives: access, 370; business, 303, 312;  
classification, 225; Commonwealth, 373-94;  
co-operation, 372-3; means of reference,  
366-7; photography, 369; preservation,  
26; publications, 367; repair, 359, 371-2;  
staff, 368-9; work by local authorities,  
363-73
- Armed Forces Medical Library, 56, 59-60, 61,  
63-4
- Arnold Engineering Development Centre, 78
- Ashanti Regional Library, 115, 156
- Aslib, conference, 76-7; index of theses, 25,  
326-7; special subject groups, 46, 81, 82,  
399; training, 80, 272
- Association Canadienne des Bibliothécaires de  
la Langue Française, 196
- Association of American Universities, 23
- Association of Assistant Librarians, 112, 183,  
268-9, 273, 275, 297
- Association of College and Reference Libraries,  
335, 396
- Association of Education Committees, 170
- Association of Metropolitan Chief Librarians,  
109, 249
- Association of Research Libraries, 22
- Association of Teachers in Technical Institutions,  
40, 46
- Association of University Teachers, 27-8
- Atlantic Research Association, 75
- Atomic Energy Commission, 396
- Auckland, Public Library, 116
- Augsburg, library service, 122
- Australia, archives, 375-83; Commonwealth  
National Library, 8, 11, 15, 377-8; rural  
libraries, 157; technical library service, 141;  
urban libraries, 114
- Austria, National Library, 7; research libraries, 4;  
(Upper Austria), cataloguing service, 196, 198
- Azograph, 399
- Backward readers, 176
- Baltimore, Public Library, 184-5
- Barnard Classification, 60, 226
- Bath Technical College Library, 44
- Battelle Memorial Institute, 83
- Battersea Polytechnic Library, 44, 46, 48
- Belfast, Queen's University Library, 31, 56, 58
- Belgium, Royal Library, 15
- Bergen University Library, 33
- Berlin, American Memorial Library, 122-3, 284;  
Deutsche Staatsbibliothek, 16; Free Uni-  
versity Library, 32, 288; Humboldt  
University, 21; Public Libraries, 230;  
union catalogue, 197
- Bermondsey, Public Library, 108
- Bersham Parish Council, 150-1
- Best-seller pressure, 190
- Bibliophily, 303
- Bibliographical Institutes, 11
- Bibliographical method, 30-3
- Bibliographical organization, 319-322

- Bibliographies; area, 341-2; general, 322-7; national, 324-5; of authors, 339; of bibliography, 323; of incunabula, 323-4; of periodicals, 325-7; of subjects, *see under* subject; universal, 322
- Bibliothèque Nationale, acquisitions, 9, 10; catalogues, 12, 13, 101, 200; reconstruction, 6, 15-6, 282
- Bick, Dr. Joseph, 7
- Binding, 13, 46, 79, 112, 153, 296-7; history of, 314-5
- Biography, bibliographies of, 340
- Biology, bibliography of, 334
- Bird books, bibliographies of, 334-5
- Birmingham, College of Art, 45; College of Technology, 41, 45, 46, 48; Public Library, 140, 285; University Library, 30, 184, 287
- Birmingham University, school librarianship course, 169
- Black classification for dental literature, 61
- Bliss Bibliographic Classification, 26, 45, 89, 96, 216, 218, 221, 224, 327
- Board of Inland Revenue Library, 89
- Board of Trade Library, 88, 89, 93, 142
- Bodleian Library, 29, 184
- Bolton Technical College, 43, 45
- Bombay State, library service, 115, 158
- Book collecting, 303-4
- Book design, 292-3, 306-7
- Book illustration, 296, 304, 306-7
- Book ordering, 111, 151
- Book production, 291-7
- Book selection, bibliographical aids, 191-2; medical libraries, 59; public libraries, 107-8, 111, 123, 151, 187-91; school libraries, 171; special libraries, 191; technical college libraries, 44; university libraries, 23, 191
- Boston (U.S.A.), Cheney Library, 26
- Bradford, Public Library, 285
- Branch libraries, buildings, 285-7; county libraries, 154
- Brisch classification, 225
- Bristol, Public Library, 190, 285  
— University Library, 30
- British Broadcasting Corporation, gramophone library, 204
- British Columbia, library service, 159
- British Commonwealth, archives, 373-94; public libraries, 113-8, 155-9, 163; university libraries, 31-2
- British Council, library service, 160, 163, 174
- British Library of Political and Economic Science, 329
- British Museum, acquisitions, 10-II; bibliographical work, 13; catalogues, 7, 12, 100, 101, 200, 322; finances, 8-9; reconstruction, 6, 15, 17
- British Museum (Natural History), 89
- British National Bibliography*, 8, 13, 111, 191-2, 196, 200, 228-9, 257, 324
- British National Book Centre, 46, 192, 258
- British Records Association, 344-6, 358, 367
- British Union Catalogue of Music, 100, 337
- British Union-Catalogue of Periodicals*, 13, 46, 197, 260-1, 325
- Brooklyn, Public Library, 120, 121, 185
- Brotherton Library, *see* Leeds University Library
- Buffalo (N.Y.), Grosvenor Library, 144; Buffalo area, 162
- Buildings, national libraries, 6, 14-6, 282-3; public libraries, 110, 283-7; special libraries, 290-1; technical college libraries, 47-8; university libraries, 29-33, 287-9
- Bulgaria, V. Kolarov State Library, 14
- Burma, library service, 158; National Library, 6
- Burton-on-Trent, Public Library, 139
- Caldecott Medal, 176
- California Library Association, 120
- California University Libraries, 23, 58, 198
- Camberwell, Public Library, 285
- Cambridge, Fitzwilliam Museum, 101; Public Library, 246; University Library, 30
- Canada, archives, 374-5; buildings, 286, 288; co-operation, 263-4; National Library, 6, 16-7, 282; National Library Advisory Council, 6, 17; professional education, 276-7; rural libraries, 158-9; school libraries, 175; urban libraries, 114
- Canadian Bibliographic Centre, 16
- Canadian Library Association, 17, 114, 276, 277
- Canterbury, Cathedral Library, 291
- Canterbury (N.Z.), Public Library, 116
- Cape Province, library service, 117, 157
- Cape Town, Public Library, 117; University Library, 31, 56-7, 291
- Cardiganshire-Aberystwyth Scheme, 153
- Carlton College Library, 32
- Carnegie Medal, 176
- Carnegie United Kingdom Trust, 44
- Catalogue cards, lay-out, 197; reproduction, 11, 83, 196, 208, 400-1
- Catalogues, published, 12, 96
- Cataloguers, 199
- Cataloguing codes, 45, 89, 199-201, 202-3
- Cataloguing, cost of, 195; Government libraries, 89; music, 101-2; national libraries, 11-12; teaching of, 208; technical college libraries, 45; university libraries, 25-6, 195
- Censorship, and libraries, 120, 123, 190-1; and publishing, 309-10
- Census of music printed before 1800, 100
- Central African Archives, 383-5
- Central bureau for public libraries (W. Germany), 122
- Central Office of Information, 89
- Central Purchasing Office (W. Germany), 122
- Centralized processing of books, 196
- Ceylon: archives, 385-6; library service, 158
- Chain indexing, 208, 229
- Charging systems, 111, 151, 181
- Chartered Institute of Secretaries Library, 94-5
- Chemical Society, 95, 333
- Chemistry, bibliographies of, 333, 336; classification of, 226; special libraries, 82
- Chicago, Association of Law Libraries, 199; Graduate Library School, 276; Industrial Oil Product Co., 87; John Crerar Library, 135, 142, 248-9; University Libraries, 32
- Children's book weeks, 175
- Children's books, 175-6
- Children's librarians, training, 175, 271
- Children's libraries, 7, 174-6, 290

- Chile National Library, 13, 15  
 China, classifications in, 230; rural libraries, 155-6  
 Circle of State Librarians, 91  
 City of London College, 45  
 Civil Defence, and libraries, 121  
 Classification, folk music, 102, 227; general theory, 216-9; medical libraries, 59-61; national libraries, 11-12; practice of, 228-30; re-classification, 229; technical college libraries, 45; textbooks, 234; university libraries, 26, 229  
 Classification Research Group, 79, 208, 217  
 Classified catalogues, 198, 208, 228-9  
 Classroom libraries, 169  
 Coding, 230, 231-2  
 Colon Classification, 216, 217, 219-21  
 Colon Library, 197  
 Colonial Office Library, 88, 89  
 Comic papers, 175-6  
 Commerce, special libraries, 290-1  
 Committee of Departmental Librarians, 91-2  
 Communications, classification of, 227  
 Connecticut, library service, 119  
 Contact copying, 397-8  
 Contents lists of periodicals, 78, 79  
 Contoura, 398  
 Co-operation, archives, 372-3; county libraries, 153; district schemes, 81, 112, 138, 140-1, 149, 188; institutes of education, 51-2; learned society libraries, 97; medical libraries, 63, 64-5; public libraries and industry, 259-60; school libraries, 149, 171, 175; special libraries, 78, 81; technical college libraries, 46; university libraries, 22-3, 26-7, 260  
 Co-operation, in Germany, 4, 122, 263, 264; in Scotland, 259; in U.S.A., 264-5  
 Co-operative cataloguing, 63, 196-7  
 Co-operative Industrial and Commercial Reference and Information Service (CICRIS), 46, 81, 138, 140-1, 144, 247-8, 250, 260  
 Co-ordinate indexing, 217, 231, 232-3  
 Copenhagen, research libraries, 4  
 Cordonnier notation, 219  
 Cornell University Library, 24, 32  
 Corporate bodies, cataloguing of, 200, 202  
 Coventry, Corporation Act, 109, 110; Public Library, 111, 190; Technical College, 46  
 Croydon, Public Library, 111-2  
 Cunningham Classification, 60  
 Cutlery Research Council, 77  
 Cybernetics, 233  
 Czechoslovakia, library service, 160  
 Dartford Technical College Library, 41, 47-8  
 Davies, Sir William Llewellyn, 7  
 Decasepel system for archives classification, 225  
 Decentralization, county libraries, 150, 151; industrial libraries, 75; medical libraries, 58, 59; national libraries, 10, 17, 183-4  
 Delhi, Central Institute, 52; Public Library, 113, 115  
 Denbighshire County Library, 150-1, 152  
 Denmark, library service, 4, 124, 161-2; Royal Library, 11, 15  
 Dental libraries, 67  
 27\*-FYWL  
 Department of Scientific and Industrial Research, 89, 90, 135, 137, 140, 200, 260, 333, 334  
 Depth classification, 220, 221  
 Derbyshire County Library, 148, 149, 181-2  
 Detroit, medical indexing project, 63  
 Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft, 4, 263, 264  
 Devon County Library, 149  
 Dewey Decimal Classification, 11, 26, 45, 89, 96, 216, 221-2, 229  
 Diazo, see Dye-line process  
 Dictionaries, bibliographies of, 331-2  
 Dictionary catalogue, 204-5, 206, 208  
 Directories, bibliographies of, 331  
 District of Columbia, Public Library, 121, 182  
 Dobie, M. R., 7  
 Documentalists, 75, 79, 272-3  
 Documentation Inc., Washington, 207  
 Documentation of Applied Chemistry, International Congress on (1955), 79  
 Documents, see Archives  
 Dortmund, library service, 122  
 "Doubtful" literature, 190-1  
 Dow Chemical Company, 75, 77  
 Drama collections, 149  
 Du Pont de Nemours Company, 76  
 Dublin, medical libraries, 56; Trinity College Library, 31  
 Duplicating processes, 398-9  
 Dundee University College Library, 31  
 Durham, County Library, 47, 148, 149, 152, 153; University Library, 30  
 Düsseldorf, library service, 122  
 Dye-line process, 355, 397-8  
 East Africa Literature Bureau, 156  
 East Coast floods, 150  
 East Midlands Regional System, 257  
 East Suffolk County Library, 151, 153  
 Eastern Caribbean Regional Library Scheme, 118, 163  
 Eccles, Public Library, 112, 246  
 Edge-notched cards, see Punched cards  
 Edinburgh, Royal Botanic Garden, 89; St. Andrew's House Library, 80; University Library, 10, 30  
 Education, bibliographies of, 331  
 Education for librarianship, see Professional education  
 Egypt, National Library, 9  
 Eire, library service, 155; National Library, 11, 14, 15  
 Electronic stencil, 398  
 Engineering, bibliographies, 335; Iron Library, 82  
 Eric County Library, 162  
 Essex County Library, 150  
 European Medical Library Association, 65  
 Evangelical Library, 208  
 Exchange of publications, 265  
 Exhibitions, 12, 45, 151, 349, 362-3, 370-1  
 Farbenfabrik Bayer Library, 83  
 Farmington plan, 192, 263, 264  
 Farradane, classification, 217, 225  
 Fiction, bibliographies of, 339; provision of, 107-8, 116, 189-90; reserve schemes, 257, 259

- Fides catalogue cards, 196  
 Filing methods, 206  
 Films, cataloguing, 204; on library work, 120, 175  
 Filmsort, 83, 102  
 Finance, medical libraries, 59; national libraries, 8-9; public libraries, 110; school libraries, 170; technical and commercial libraries, 137; technical college libraries, 43; university libraries, 22-3  
 Fine arts, bibliographies of, 336-7  
 Fines, 109, 110  
 Finland, co-operation, 263; library service, 125, 160, 282, 284; National Library, 12, 16  
 Fire Service College, 89  
 Floors, 279  
 Florida University, Medical Library, 58  
 Folk lore, classification of, 96, 102  
 Folk Lore Society, 96  
 Folk music and dance, classification of, 102, 227  
 Foreign literature, provision of, 112, 192  
 Foreign Office Library, 89, 92  
 France, buildings, 284, 288; catalogue code, 200; medical libraries, 57; medical periodicals, 62; union catalogues, 197; university libraries, 19-20  
 Fraser Valley Regional Library, 159, 284  
 Freiburg University Library, 208  
 Friends of the National Libraries, 10-11  
 Function of libraries, Government libraries, 92; industrial libraries, 75-6; national libraries, 8; technical college libraries, 42-3; university libraries, 20-1; urban libraries, 107-8  
 Fundamental categories, 227  
 Furniture, 279  
 Further Education and Training awards, 275
- Geography, bibliographies of, 341; classification of, 227  
 Gastronomy, bibliography, 336  
 Geological Society, 97  
 Geology, bibliographies of, 334  
 Germany, buildings, 284, 286, 288; children's libraries, 174; classification, 229; co-operation, 263; Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft, 4, 263; special libraries, 80, 82-3; union catalogues, 198; university libraries, 4, 21, 28, 32  
 — Westdeutsche Bibliothek, Marburg, 16; Wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken, 4  
 Germany (Eastern), catalogue code, 201; urban libraries, 123  
 Germany (Western), catalogue code, 200-1; rural libraries, 159; urban libraries, 121-2  
 Gestner machine, 398  
 Ghana, *see* Gold Coast  
 Gillingham Public Library, 109, 150  
 Glasgow, Public Library, 143, 284, 286; R. Faculty of Physicians, 67; R. Technical College, 44; University Library, 287  
 Gloucester Technical College, 45  
 Gmelin Institute, 83  
 Gold Coast, archives, 387-9; library service, 115, 156; University College, 31  
 Gorki Public Library, 126  
 Göteborg, City and University Library, 33  
 Government libraries, 87-93, 191  
 Government publications, bibliographies of, 330-1; cataloguing, 203  
 Gramophone record libraries, 102-3, 109, 112  
 Gramophone records, bibliographies, 337-8; cataloguing, 102, 204  
 Greece, urban libraries, 123  
 Greek Library Association, 123  
 Greifswald University Library, 32  
 Gutenberg, 305-6
- The Hague, medical and pharmaceutical library, 63  
 Halle University Library, 32, 198  
 Hamburg, library service, 122; State Library, 32, 288  
 Hampshire County Council, 109, 150  
 Hampstead, Public Library, 111, 285-6  
 Hans Christian Andersen prize, 176  
 Harrod's cataloguing service, 196  
 Harvard University Library, 20, 22, 23, 29, 32, 206  
 Hatfield Technical College Library, 44, 48, 144, 149  
 Heating, 279, 281  
 Helsinki, Public Library, 125; University Library, 33, 39  
 Herefordshire County Library, 148, 149  
 Hertfordshire, library co-operation, 81; technical library service, 43, 47, 144, 149  
 Hertfordshire Special Library Group, 46, 149  
 Historical manuscripts commission, 349-356  
 History, bibliographies of, 340  
 Holborn, Public Library, 283  
 Holland, co-operation, 264; industrial librarians, 80; library service, 124; medical libraries, 55; Royal Library, 10, 12; university libraries, 21  
 Home Office Library, 89  
 Hornsey, Public Library, 111, 208  
 Hull, Commercial and Technical Library, 138; Scheme for interloan of technical publications, 140, 248, 250; University Library, 30  
 Hungary, library service, 160; Szechenyi National Library, 8, 13  
 Hyderabad Libraries Act (1955), 115
- Ibadan, Unesco seminar, 113; University College, 26, 31, 287  
 Iceland, library service, 123  
 Illinois, Library School, 276; University Library, 21, 29, 32, 170, 184, 204  
 I.C.I. Ltd., libraries, 75, 77, 83, 291  
 Imperial Institute Library, 89, 92  
 In-service training schemes, 183  
 Index to selected British educational periodicals, 52  
 Indexing services, medical, 61-4; music, 101-2; special libraries, 79; techniques, 207  
 India Office Library, 93  
 India, archives, 391-3; co-operation, 263; medical libraries, 57; rural libraries, 158; urban libraries, 115  
 Indiana, library service, 162  
 Indonesia, library service, 156  
 Industry, library service for, 42-3, 75-6, 84, 136-8; special libraries, 75-86; technical college libraries, 42-3

- Information retrieval, 78-9, 83, 207-8, 230-1  
 Information services, 77-9, 138, 142  
 Institute of Aeronautical Sciences, 81  
 Institute of Bankers Library, 94-5  
 Institutes of Education, libraries, 45, 51-4, 169, 197, 198  
 Institution of Civil Engineers, 96  
 Institution of Electrical Engineers, 96  
 Institution of Mechanical Engineers, 95  
 Institution of Mining and Metallurgy Library, 95  
 Institution of Mining Engineers, 95  
 Institution of Production Engineers' Library, 95, 97  
 Institution of Professional Civil Servants, 87, 88, 90-1  
 Instruction in the use of libraries, 25, 45, 66-7  
 Insurance, classification of, 227; of university libraries, 23  
 Inter-availability of tickets, 112  
 Interior decoration, 279  
 International Association of Music Libraries, 99-100, 101  
 International Building Classification Committee, 225  
 International Congress of Libraries and Documentation Centres, Brussels (1955), 113, 202  
 International Federation for Documentation, (IFID), 220-1, 223  
 International Federation of Library Associations, 41-2, 59, 113, 202  
 International inventory of musical sources, 101  
 International Printing Machinery Exhibition, 292  
 International Society of Training College Librarians, 54  
 International Standards Organisation, 203  
 International Youth Library, Munich, 174  
 Inter-University Council for Higher Education in the Colonies, 31  
 Iowa State College Library, 23  
 Iran, library service, 156  
 Irish National Bibliography, 13  
 Israel, National and University Library, 9, 10, 14  
 Iron Library (Germany), 82  
 Issue methods, *see* Charging systems  
 Istanbul University Library, 33  
 Italy, Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale, 13; library service, 123-4, 159-60; union catalogue centre, 197, 198, 264; university libraries, 33  
 Jamaica, archives, 389-90; library service, 163, 289-90  
 Japan, buildings, 284, 288; catalogue code, 201; Committee for the improvement of bibliographical service, 14; National Diet Library, 6, 8, 13, 14, 16  
 Jena University Library, 32  
 Johannesburg, Public Library, 117, 286  
 Johns Hopkins University, 25, 25-6, 61, 231  
 Johnson, S. C. & Son, Library, 77  
 Joint Standing Committee on Library Co-operation, 27, 260  
 Kapodistriaki Library, 123  
 Kate Greenaway Medal, 176  
 Kazakstan University Library, 33  
 Kazan State University Library, 33  
 Kendal-Westmorland scheme, 112, 153  
 Kent County Library, 47, 109, 150, 189, 297  
 Kentucky, library service, 162  
 Kenyon, Sir Frederic, 7  
 Kiel, Institut für Weltwirtschaft Library, 32  
 Kiev, Public Library, 126  
 Kingston-upon-Hull, *see* Hull  
 Kumasi, College of Technology, 44, 45; Public Library, 156, 283  
 Ladsiriac, 137, 139, 141, 248  
 Lamb, Dr, William Kaye, 7  
 Lamination process, 13  
 Lanarkshire County Library, 151, 154  
 Lancashire County Library, 140, 148, 149  
 Latvia, library service, 160  
 Law, bibliographies of, 331; cataloguing, 199; Learned society libraries, 94-8  
 Leather, 297  
 Leeds, Public Library, 139; University Library, 27, 30, 288  
 Legal deposit, 9-10, 17  
 Leicester, Institute of Education, 52; University Library, 30  
 Lenin State Library, 11, 12, 14, 16, 126  
 Leningrad, Saltykov-Shchedrin Library, 126  
 Lewis's Medical, Technical and Scientific Lending Library, 46  
 Library Association, Cataloguing Rules Subcommittee, 199-200  
 — Colleges of Technology and Further Education Sub-section, 41, 42, 46-7  
 — Co-operative Provision of Books... Working Party, 258  
 — County Libraries Section, 148, 152, 153, 155  
 — Examinations, 28, 65-6, 79, 88, 90, 91, 268, 274  
 — Library Research Committee, 192, 399; *Library Science Abstracts*, 327; London and Home Counties Branch, 107, 111, 112  
 — Medical Section, 55, 59, 64; Mitchell Memorial Fund, 275; Pamphlet series, 112  
 — Reference and Special Libraries Section, 81, 83, 245, 247, 249-50; Regulations for public libraries, 103, 109; Recommendations on local government reorganization, 109  
 — Register and Examinations Executive Committee, 268, 273  
 — Special subject lists, 192; *Subject index*, 8, 326  
 — University and Research Section, 3, 24, 28, 41, 51  
 — Youth Libraries Section, 174, 271  
 Library binderies, 112, 153  
 Library bulletins, 79  
 Library legislation, 108-9, 119, 124-5, 159, 163, 259  
 Library of Congress, 6, 9, 10, 13, 17, 102, 199, 204, 207; and bibliography, 319, 320, 325, 326, 332, 333, 335  
 — Catalogue cards, 196  
 — Classification, 11, 26, 60, 89, 102, 227  
 — National Union Catalogue, 197, 322  
 Library schools, 269, 271, 273-4, 275; in U.S.A., 276  
*Library Science Abstracts*, 327

- Library Services Act, 1956 (U.S.A.), 119, 163  
 Libretti, cataloguing, 102  
 Light literature, provision of, 107-108, 189-90  
 Lighting, 155, 279, 281  
 Lille, Faculty of Medicine Library, 57, 59  
 Lindsey and Holland County Library, 150, 208  
 Literature, bibliographies, 338-9  
 Lithography, 296  
 Liverpool, College of Commerce Library, 48;  
 Medical Institution Library, 58; Public  
 Library, 101, 137, 138-9, 189, 248, 260;  
 University Library, 58, 184  
 Local government reorganization, 109  
 Local history collections, 152  
 London County Council, 47, 109, 359  
 London medical libraries co-operation scheme,  
 64  
 London reference library service, 249  
 London School of Printing, 45  
 London Union Catalogue, 197  
 London University, Institute of Classical Studies,  
 95; Institute of Commonwealth Studies, 30  
 — Institute of Education, 51, 52; King's College,  
 30  
 — Royal Holloway College, 26  
 — School of Librarianship, 25, 93, 169, 199, 274,  
 358-9; School of Oriental and African  
 Studies, 197  
 — University College, 21, 25, 26-7, 28, 30, 96,  
 101, 200  
 Londonderry, Magee University College Lib-  
 rary, 31  
 Los Angeles County Library, 162  
 Loughborough College, school librarianship  
 course, 169  
 Louvain University Library, 32, 287  
 Louisiana State University, 66  
 Lubetzky report, 199  
 Lucerne, Public Library, 125-6, 285  
 Luton and District Technical Information  
 Service, 81, 141  
 Luton, Public Library, 189  
 Lynn's Catholic Classification, 227-8  
 Lyons, Faculty of Medicine Library, 57
- Maastricht, Public Library, 124  
 McGill University Library, 20, 31-2  
 Madras, library service, 115  
 Magnetic indicator, 83  
 Mainz Psalters, 304-5  
 Mainz University Library, 32  
 Makerere College (Uganda), Medical Library, 57  
 Malaya, library service, 116, 160-1  
 Malayan Public Library Association, 160-1  
 Malmö, industrial librarians, 80; Public Library  
 111, 142; Unesco seminar, 113  
 Management theory, and libraries, 121, 181-2  
 Manchester, College of Technology Library, 41,  
 44, 46, 47  
 — Henry Watson Music Library, 101  
 — Joint Research Council Survey, 84, 139  
 — Literary and Philosophical Society, 98  
 — Medical Society Library, 58  
 — Public Library, 139, 190, 251, 286  
 Manitoba, library service, 159  
 Maps, bibliographies, 341  
 Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 83  
 Mechanical selection, 217, 226, 226-7, 229, 230-1  
 Mechanization of information work, 83, 233  
 Medellin (Colombia), Public Library, 113  
 Medical bibliography, 61-64; classifications, 226  
 Medical Librarianship, International Congress  
 on (1953), 55, 65, 93, 226  
 Medical libraries, 291  
 Medical Library Association (U.S.A.), 57, 59,  
 60, 65, 66, 67  
 Medical periodicals, 59, 61-5  
 Melbourne, Central Medical Library Organiza-  
 tion, Victoria, 65  
 Melbourne University, 31, 287  
 Mental hospital libraries, 112  
 Meteorological office, 89  
 Metropolitan Boroughs Standing Joint Commit-  
 tee, 111, 181  
 Metropolitan special collections, 112, 247, 257  
 Metallurgy, bibliography of, 336; classification,  
 225-6  
 Mexico, National Library, 9-10, 32; University  
 Library, 288  
 Michigan University, 66  
 Microcards, 46, 83, 97, 251  
 Microfilm, cataloguing, 204; equipment, 12, 46,  
 83, 396; readers, 83, 396; use of, 26, 78, 83,  
 97, 99, 102, 251, 349, 375, 380, 382, 395-7  
 Microforming of newspapers, 17  
 Mid-West Inter-library Centre, 26, 249, 263,  
 264-5  
 Middlesex County Library, 148, 152, 285  
 Minard, 83  
 Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries, 88, 89,  
 90, 92  
 Ministry of Education, 47, 169, 170, 171  
 Ministry of Fuel and Power, 89  
 Ministry of Health, 63, 88, 89, 93  
 Ministry of Housing and Local Government, 89,  
 92  
 Ministry of Labour, 89  
 Ministry of Pensions and National Insurance, 89  
 Ministry of Supply, 89, 92  
 Ministry of Transport and Civil Aviation, 89  
 Ministry of Works, 89, 92  
 Minneriya (Ceylon), library service, 158  
 Minnesota, library service, 119; University  
 Library, 102  
 Mobile libraries, county and rural, 148-9, 151,  
 154, 155, 156, 161, 162; urban, 110, 114,  
 116, 122, 124  
 Mitchell Memorial Fund, 275  
 Moderating committees, 274  
 Modular planning, 110, 278, 281  
 Molotov, Gorki Public Library, 126  
 Monotype Corporation, 306  
 Montana, library service, 163  
 Montgomery (U.S.A.), County Library, 162  
 Moscow, Lenin State Library, 126; Nekrasov  
 Public Library, 126; University Library, 33  
 Mumford, Lawrence Quincy, 7  
 Munster University Library, 32  
 Music, bibliographies, 337-8; bibliography, 303;  
 cataloguing, 203-4; classification, 227;  
 collections, 149, 203-4  
 Music Libraries, International Congress of  
 (1951), 99  
 Music Library Association (U.S.A.), 99, 102

- Natal, library service, 117, 157; University, 31  
57
- National Advisory Council on Education for  
Industry and Commerce, 40
- National Book League, 96, 170, 291, 294, 327,  
335-6, 338
- National Bureau of Standards (U.S.A.), 227, 231
- National Central Library (London), 46, 82, 92,  
97, 255-6, 258-9, 282, 396
- National Committee on Regional Library  
Co-operation, 258
- National Council for Technological Awards, 40
- National Film Library, 204
- National Institute of Economic and Social  
Research, 95, 96
- National Institutes of Health Library (U.S.A.), 57
- National Joint Council (for local authorities  
staff), 183
- National Lending Library for Science and  
Technology, 140
- National Register of Archives, 349, 350, 352-6,  
365, 377
- National Union Catalogue, 256
- Net Book Agreement, 44
- Netherlands, *see* Holland
- Newark (N.J.) Public Library, 143
- New Brunswick, library service, 159
- New Delhi, Directorate-General of Health  
Services Library, 57
- New England Deposit Library, 23
- New Jersey, library service, 119
- New South Wales, library service, 114, 158;  
Public Library, 377, 378-9; training college  
libraries, 53
- New towns, library provision, 154-5
- New York, Public Library, 175, 182, 195, 206;  
State University, 63
- New Zealand, archives, 390-1; Bibliographic  
Centre, 13; General Assembly Library, 12;  
Library Association, 7, 116; library service,  
116, 161, 174; national library, 7; university  
libraries, 19
- Newbery Medal, 176
- Newcastle upon Tyne, King's College Library,  
23-4, 30; Public Library, 101, 111, 139,  
189, 246, 250, 283, 286
- Nigeria, library service, 117, 156; medical  
libraries, 57
- Non-Europeans, library provision in South  
Africa, 117-8
- North-Western Polytechnic (London), 46, 66,  
271
- North-Western Regional Library System, 149,  
257
- North-Western University (U.S.A.), 32
- North Rhine-Westphalia, library service, 121-2,  
264
- Northampton Polytechnic (London), 41
- Northern Ireland, Library Advisory Council,  
170; school libraries, 149
- Northern Polytechnic (London), 44, 46
- Norway, library service, 4, 125, 161-2, 175;  
National Library, 33
- Notation, in classification, 217, 219, 221, 223,  
226
- Nottingham, Public Library, 139, 368; Universi-  
ty Library, 26, 352, 367, 368
- Nottinghamshire County Library, 101, 148, 151,  
152, 153, 189
- Nova Scotia, library service, 159
- Oamaru, Public Library, 116
- Oer-Erkenschwick, Public Library, 284
- Office printing, 398-9
- Offset-litho, 398-9
- Ohio, library service, 162
- Oklahoma, City Library, 120-1
- Ontario, library service, 159
- Open access, 45, 123, 228
- Operators, in classification, 217, 225
- Orange Free State, library service, 157
- Organisation and method surveys, 111, 150,  
181-2
- Orkney County Library, 150, 151
- Osborne Collection, 175
- Oslo, National and University Library, 33
- Overdue books, 79, 111
- Oxford, Bodleian Library, 29
- Pakistan, library service, 158; National Library, 6
- Pamphlets, storage, 79
- Paper, 295
- Paper-backed books, 111, 295, 314
- Paris, Bibliothèque Municipale d'Art et  
d'Industrie, 141-2
- Faculty of Medicine Library, 57, 64
- Patent Office Library, 88-9, 90, 92, 93, 140
- Patents, classification of, 226
- Pay collections, 116, 124, 190
- Peck-a-Boo cards, 231, 232-3
- Penny levy, 110
- Period classification, 218
- Penzance, Public Library, 286
- Periodicals, bibliographies of, 325-7, 332-3, 334,  
335; binding, 79; cataloguing, 208; costs of,  
10, 59, 79; in special libraries, 78, 79, 82;  
in technical college libraries, 45; medical,  
61-4, 335; selection, 192
- Personnel management, 28-9
- Peru National Library, 6, 7, 11, 14, 16
- Pharmacy, special libraries, 82
- Philadelphia, Public Library, 144, 184
- Philippines University Library, 32
- Philosophy, bibliographies of, 327-8
- Photo-charging, 111
- Photocopying, archives, 355, 369, 375, 382, 388;  
documentary reproduction, 395-9; in  
cataloguing, 208; in industrial libraries, 82,  
83; in national libraries, 12-13; in special  
libraries, 78, 97, 140; in technical college  
libraries, 46; periodical articles, 247
- Photo-mechanical collating machine, 304
- Photostats, 397
- Photo-typesetting, 295
- Physical Society, 95
- Plymouth, Public Library, 283-4
- Physics, bibliography of, 334
- Poland, catalogue code, 201; classification in,  
229; library service, 160, 174; National  
Library, 11-12, 13, 14, 16
- Polish University College (London), 31
- Political science, bibliographies of, 329-30
- Poplar Technical College, 45
- Port Arthur (Canada), Public Library, 114
- Portsmouth College of Technology, 45

- Pretoria, State Library, 8, 16  
 Primary school libraries, 169  
 Printing, 294-5; history, 304-15  
 Prison libraries, 112  
 Private presses, 297  
 Professional education, 268-77; cataloguing, 208; county libraries, 153-4; Government libraries, 87-8; medical librarianship, 65-6; special librarianship, 79-80, 272-3; school and children's libraries, 169-70, 175, 271; in U.S.A. and Canada, 276-7  
 Prussian Instructions, 200-1, 206  
 Public business libraries (U.S.A.), 120, 142-3  
 Public libraries, commercial depts., 135-45; development through Unesco, 113; finance, 110; function, 107-8; legislation, 108-9, 119; service to industry, 136-8  
 Public Library Book Central, Oslo, 125  
 Public Library Enquiry (U.S.A.), 118  
 Public Record Office, 344, 346-9, 371, 372  
 Public Record Office of N. Ireland, 362-3  
 Publicity, public libraries, 112, 120, 143, 151-2, 156, 158, 163; special libraries, 79-80; university libraries, 22  
 Publishing, history, 305-13  
 Punched cards for cataloguing, 205-6; for indexing, 61-2, 207; for information retrieval, 83, 207, 231-2, 265; for order record, 23-4; for recording serials, 10, 78; for stock records, 111  
 Punjab, archives, 391-3; library service, 115  
 Queensland, archives, 380-1; library service, 158  
 Ranganathan, S.R., 217, 219-21, 234  
 Rapid selector, 230  
 Readers' Guides (L. A. County Libraries Section), 152  
 Reading habits, 108  
 Reading, Public Library, 101, 250  
 Recruitment, 273  
 Reference books, guides to, 322-3  
 Reference service, 112, 245-51  
 Regent Street (London) Polytechnic, 43  
 Regional Advisory Councils for Higher Technological Education, 40-1  
 Regional Bureaux, 255-8  
 Regional catalogues (U.K.), 247  
 Regional depositories, 247  
 Regional libraries (Canada), 158-9  
 Regulations, public libraries, 103, 109  
 Religion, bibliographies of, 328  
 Relinquishment of library powers, 109, 150-1  
 Rendsburg (Germany), library service, 159  
 Rental collections, *see* Pay collections  
 Report literature, 78, 204  
 Repository libraries, 26  
 Reservation of books, 111, 190  
 Return of books, 79, 111  
 Roneo electronic stencil, 398  
 Roumania, cataloguing service, 196  
 Royal Aeronautical Society, 96  
 Royal Aircraft Establishment, 89, 93  
 Royal Agricultural Society, 96, 97  
 Royal College of Surgeons, 56  
 Royal College of Veterinary Surgeons, 64  
 Royal Institute of British Architects, 96, 96-7, 208  
 Royal Institution, 96, 97  
 Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors, 96  
 Royal Observatory Library, 88  
 Royal Photographic Society, 96  
 Royal Society, 94, 96  
 Royal Society of Arts, 96, 97  
 Royal Society of Medicine, 56, 291  
 Royal Society Scientific Information Conference, (1948), 24, 78, 332  
 Royal Statistical Society, 95, 96, 329  
 Rugby College of Technology, 45  
 Ruhr, library service, 121-2  
 Saarbrücken University Library, 32, 288  
 St. Andrew's House Library, 89  
 St. Andrew's University Library, 31  
 St. Thomas's Hospital Medical School, 67  
 Salaries, public libraries, 112-3, 116-7, 121; special libraries, 81; technical college libraries, 46-7; university libraries, 27-8  
 Salford, Public Library, 286  
 São Paulo, library conference, 113  
 Saskatchewan, library service, 159  
 Scandinavia, library service, 124, 174; research libraries, 4; rural libraries, 161-2; university libraries, 33  
 School librarianship courses, 169-70, 271  
 School libraries, buildings, 290; and county libraries, 149; and public libraries, 171, 175  
 School Library Association, 52, 170, 171, 271  
 Science and technology, bibliographies of, 332-5  
 Science Library (London), 46, 89, 92, 93, 140  
 Scotland, Advisory Council on Education, 109, 170, 183, 259  
 Scotland, library legislation, 108-9, 151; medical libraries, 56; National Library, 6, 10, 11, 15, 282  
 Scottish Central Library, 108, 259, 282  
 Scottish Library Association, 108, 183, 259  
 Scottish Record Office, 359-61  
 Secondary school libraries, 169-70, 170  
 Serbia, library service, 160  
 Serials, cataloguing of, 203; recording of, 10, 24  
 Service to readers, national libraries, 11; universities, 24-5  
 Shakespeare bibliography, 310-11  
 Sheffield, Interchange organisation (SINTO), 81, 140, 248, 250, 259-60; Public Library, 110, 139-40, 248, 286, 351-2, 368; University Library, 30, 288  
 Shelving, 281-2  
 Shoreditch, Public Library, 286  
 Singapore, library service, 161; Raffles Library, 116  
 Social sciences, bibliographies of, 328-9  
 Society of Antiquaries, 97  
 Society of Archivists, 343-4, 356-8  
 Sorbonne Library, 32-3  
 South Africa, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, 77; library training, 80; Public Library, 7, 8, 12, 15, 117; rural libraries, 156-7; urban libraries, 117; university libraries, 23, 291  
 South Australia, archives, 381; library service, 158; Public Library, 141, 381  
 South Eastern Regional System, 257

- South Wales and Monmouthshire, co-operation 260
- Southampton, Public Library, 286
- Southern Rhodesia, archives, 383-5; library service, 157
- Soviet Union, *see* U.S.S.R.
- Spain, catalogue code, 200; National Library, 11-12; rural libraries, 160; urban libraries, 125
- Special libraries, book selection, 191; buildings, 290-1; function, 75-6; planning, 76-7; publicity, 79-80; salaries, 81; training, 79-80
- Special Libraries Association (U.S.A.), 76, 81, 82, 84, 224, 335
- Special materials, cataloguing of, 203-4
- Staff, administration, 182-3; exchange of, 113, 153, 153-4; Government libraries, 87-8, 90-1; guilds, 153; industrial libraries, 75; manuals, 152; national libraries, 14; public libraries, 112-3, 121, 153, 183, 188; record offices, 368-9; special libraries, 79-80; technical college libraries, 46-7; training college libraries, 53; university libraries, 27-9
- Staffordshire County Library, 148, 148-9, 152
- Standing Commission on Museums and Galleries, 8
- Standing Conference of National and University Libraries (SCONUL), 3, 19, 25, 26, 260
- Stanford University Library, 23
- State aid for public libraries, 116, 119, 124-5, 161, 162, 247
- Statistics, bibliographies of, 329; county libraries, 147-8; urban libraries, 107
- Stencils, 398-9
- Stock records, 111
- Stock revision, 188
- Storage, 281-2
- Subject cataloguing, 198, 204-5, 207, 228, 229
- Subject departments, 112, 183-5, 188-9, 246, 279, 283
- Subject headings, medical literature, 62-3; music, 102
- Subject indexing, 79, 207
- Subject index to periodicals*, 8, 326
- Subject specialization, public libraries, 257; university libraries, 28, 183-5
- Sub-literature problem, 107-8, 189-90
- Subscription libraries, 116, 124, 189-90
- Sudan, Institute of Education Library, 52-3
- Summer schools, 275
- Surbiton, Public Library, 286
- Survey County Library, 108, 151, 189
- Surveys of reading, 108
- Sweden, adolescents' libraries, 175; buildings, 285, 286; research libraries, 4; rural libraries, 161-2; Royal Library, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16; technical college libraries, 43; urban libraries, 124-5
- Swedish Library Association, 125
- Switzerland, buildings, 285, 288; National Library, 8, 11, 14; urban libraries, 125-6
- Syllabus of examinations, 268-73
- Tasmania, archives, 382-3; library service, 114, 174; University, 26, 31
- Tate and Lyle Research Laboratories, 83
- Teacher-librarians, training, 271
- Technical books, selection of, 136
- Technical college libraries, 40-8, 144, 155
- Technical Services Division in libraries, 195
- Teheran University Library, 33
- Telefact Foundation, 83
- Teleprinter link, 265
- Television and libraries, 120, 176
- Telex, 139, 251
- Theatre literature, bibliographies, 338
- Thermofax copier, 398
- Thesis literature, 25, 326-7, 329
- Tighe Report, 112, 183
- Time and motion studies, 76
- Token charging, 111, 151, 181
- Toronto, Boys' and Girls' House, 174; Public Libraries, 114, 141; University, 31, 206
- Tottenham, Public Library, 108, 112, 185, 189, 246, 286
- Trade catalogues, 79
- Training college libraries, 53
- Transfer of library powers, 109, 150-1
- Translation services, 333
- Trans-iteration, 202-3
- Transvaal, library service, 118, 156-7
- Treasury Circular E.C.40/9, 87-8
- Treasury, Library, 89; O. & M. Division, 92
- Trinidad Central Library, 163
- Turkey, catalogue code, 11, 201; library service, 156; National Library, 6, 12-13, 14
- Turku University Library, 33
- Type design, 306
- Typography, 293-4
- Uganda, archives, 393-4
- Ulster Medical Society Library, 56
- Undergraduate libraries, 20-1, 25, 32
- Unesco, and bibliography, 319, 321-22, 328-9, 330, 332, 337; and cataloguing, 202, 204; and co-operation, 265-6
- medical librarianship and documentation, 61, 65, 335
- music documentation, 99, 101; national libraries, 17
- public libraries, 113, 115, 158, 174
- Union catalogues, 8, 13, 27, 51-2, 100, 107-8, 250-1, 256, 258
- Union lists of periodicals, 260-1; London, 46, 247, 326; medical, 65, 335; technical, 13, 81, 92, 140, 141, 334
- United Kingdom Atomic Energy Authority, 89-90
- U.S.S.R., bibliographies of, 335; catalogue codes, 201; classification in, 11, 230
- medical libraries, 57, 58; rural libraries, 161; urban libraries, 126; university libraries, 33
- Unit planning, 110
- United Nations publications, 203
- United States, Armed Forces Medical Library, 200, 205-6, 226, 291
- Armed Services Technical Agency, 207; Book Exchange Inc., 9, 46, 265; buildings, 282, 285, 287, 289; business libraries, 143-4; children's libraries, 174, 175; classification survey, 229; co-operation, 264-5; medical libraries, 55, 56, 57, 66-7; Patent Office, 232; professional education, 276; reference libraries, 245, 246

- United States, rural libraries, 162-3; special librarians, 81; technical college libraries, 41; university libraries, 19, 32, 184; urban libraries, 118-21
- Uniterm indexing, 62, 79, 207, 232
- Universal Decimal Classification, 45, 63, 82, 89, 96, 138, 198, 204, 216, 222-3, 225, 326
- Unpublished material, 78, 204
- Upjohn, Lilly and Squibb Companies, 82
- Uppsala University Library, 26, 33, 64
- Urquhart, Dr. D. J., 137, 144
- Vancouver, Retail Credit Bureau, 115
- Variants, 312, 313
- Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare, 204
- Verein Deutscher Elektrotechniker, 82
- Victoria (Australia), Public Library, 379-80
- Vienna University Library, 25, 32, 287
- Village centres, 154, 161
- Visible indexing, 203
- Vollans Report, 197-8, 255, 256-7
- Wales, National Library, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 14, 15
- Wandsworth, Public Library, 108, 111
- War Office, 88, 89, 92
- Warwickshire County Library, 148, 150
- Washington (D.C.), Public Library, 185
- Washington State College, 28; library service, 162-3; University Library, 208
- Washington University (St. Louis), 101-2
- Watford Technical College Library, 45, 149
- Wellcome Historical Medical Library, 64
- Wellington (N.Z.), Public Library, 116
- West African Library Association, 113, 117
- West Indies, rural libraries, 163; University College, 31; urban libraries, 118
- West of Scotland Agricultural College, 44
- Westminster, Public Library, 111, 151, 181, 187, 357; Technical College, 45
- West Riding County Library, 148, 149
- Western Australia, archives, 381-2; library service, 114, 157, 246-7
- Wigan, Public Library, 284
- Winifred Holtby Memorial Library, Johannesburg, 118
- World Health Organization, 60, 61, 63, 335
- Xerography, 78, 296, 397
- Yale University Library, 23, 26; Medical Library, 56
- Yokohama, Public Library, 284
- Zaragoza University Library, 33
- Zoological Society, 96